

ABB drives

# User's manual ACS310 drives



[www.nicsanat.com](http://www.nicsanat.com)

021-87700210



Power and productivity  
for a better world™



## List of related manuals

### Drive hardware manuals and guides

*ACS310 short form user's manual*

**Code (English)**

[3AUA0000044200](#)

*ACS310 user's manual*

[3AUA0000044201](#)

### Option manuals and guides

*MFDT-01 FlashDrop user's manual*

[3AFE68591074](#)

*MREL-01 relay output extension module user's manual for ACS310/ACS350*

[3AUA0000035974](#)

*MUL1-R1 installation instructions for ACS150, ACS310, ACS350 and ACS355*

[3AFE68642868](#)

*MUL1-R3 installation instructions for ACS310, ACS350 and ACS355*

[3AFE68643147](#)

*MUL1-R4 installation instructions for ACS310 and ACS350*

[3AUA0000025916](#)

*SREA-01 Ethernet adapter module quick start-up guide*

[3AUA0000042902](#)

*SREA-01 Ethernet adapter module user's manual*

[3AUA0000042896](#)

### Option manuals and guides

*Guide for capacitor reforming in ACS50, ACS55, ACS150, ACS310, ACS350, ACS355, ACS550 and ACH550*

[3AFE68735190](#)

You can find manuals and other product documents in PDF format on the Internet. See section [Document library on the Internet](#) on the inside of the back cover. For manuals not available in the Document library, contact your local ABB representative.

[www.nicsanat.com](http://www.nicsanat.com)

021-87700210



# User's manual

## ACS310

Table of contents



Safety



Mechanical installation



Electrical installation



Start-up and control with I/O



# Table of contents

---

|                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| List of related manuals ..... | 2 |
|-------------------------------|---|

## **1. Safety**

|  |    |
|--|----|
| What this chapter contains .....             | 15 |
| Use of warnings .....                        | 15 |
| Safety in installation and maintenance ..... | 16 |
| Electrical safety .....                      | 16 |
| General safety .....                         | 17 |
| Safe start-up and operation .....            | 17 |
| General safety .....                         | 17 |

## **2. Introduction to the manual**

|  |    |
|--|----|
| What this chapter contains .....                     | 19 |
| Applicability .....                                  | 19 |
| Target audience .....                                | 19 |
| Purpose of the manual .....                          | 19 |
| Contents of this manual .....                        | 20 |
| Related documents .....                              | 21 |
| Categorization by frame size .....                   | 21 |
| Terms and abbreviations .....                        | 21 |
| Quick installation and commissioning flowchart ..... | 22 |



## **3. Operation principle and hardware description**

|  |    |
|--|----|
| What this chapter contains .....               | 23 |
| Operation principle .....                      | 23 |
| Product overview .....                         | 24 |
| Layout .....                                   | 24 |
| Power connections and control interfaces ..... | 25 |
| Type designation label .....                   | 26 |
| Type designation key .....                     | 27 |

## **4. Mechanical installation**

|  |    |
|--|----|
| What this chapter contains .....             | 29 |
| Checking the installation site .....         | 29 |
| Requirements for the installation site ..... | 29 |
| Required tools .....                         | 30 |
| Unpacking .....                              | 31 |
| Checking the delivery .....                  | 31 |
| Installing .....                             | 32 |
| Install the drive .....                      | 32 |
| Fasten clamping plates .....                 | 34 |

---

## 5. Planning the electrical installation

|   |    |
|---|----|
| What this chapter contains  | 35 |
| Implementing the AC power line connection   | 35 |
| Selecting the supply disconnecting device (disconnecting means)   | 35 |
| European union  | 36 |
| Other regions   | 36 |
| Checking the compatibility of the motor and drive   | 36 |
| Selecting the power cables  | 36 |
| General rules   | 36 |
| Alternative power cable types   | 37 |
| Motor cable shield  | 37 |
| Additional US requirements  | 38 |
| Selecting the control cables  | 38 |
| General rules   | 38 |
| Relay cable   | 39 |
| Control panel cable   | 39 |
| Routing the cables  | 39 |
| Control cable ducts   | 40 |
| Protecting the drive, input power cable, motor and motor cable in short-circuit situations and against thermal overload | 41 |
| Protecting the drive and input power cable in short-circuit situations  | 41 |
| Protecting the motor and motor cable in short-circuit situations  | 41 |
| Protecting the drive, motor cable and input power cable against thermal overload  | 41 |
| Protecting the motor against thermal overload   | 41 |
| Using residual current devices (RCD) with the drive   | 42 |
| Implementing a bypass connection  | 42 |
| Protecting the contacts of relay outputs  | 42 |

## 6. Electrical installation

|  |    |
|--|----|
| What this chapter contains   | 45 |
| Checking the insulation of the assembly  | 45 |
| Drive  | 45 |
| Input power cable  | 45 |
| Motor and motor cable  | 46 |
| Checking the compatibility with IT (ungrounded) and corner-grounded TN systems | 46 |
| Connecting the power cables  | 47 |
| Connection diagram   | 47 |
| Connection procedure   | 48 |
| Connecting the control cables  | 49 |
| I/O terminals  | 49 |
| Default I/O connection diagram   | 52 |
| Connection procedure   | 53 |
| Connecting the embedded fieldbus   | 54 |
| Connection diagram   | 54 |

## 7. Installation checklist

|                           |    |
|---------------------------|----|
| Checking the installation | 55 |
|---------------------------|----|

## 8. Start-up and control with I/O

|  |    |
|--|----|
| What this chapter contains                         | 57 |
| How to start up the drive                          | 57 |
| How to start up the drive without a control panel  | 58 |
| How to perform a manual start-up                   | 59 |
| How to perform a guided start-up                   | 62 |
| How to control the drive through the I/O interface | 65 |

## 9. Control panels

|                                 |     |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| What this chapter contains      | 67  |
| About control panels            | 67  |
| Applicability                   | 67  |
| Basic control panel             | 69  |
| Features                        | 69  |
| Overview                        | 70  |
| Operation                       | 71  |
| Output mode                     | 74  |
| Reference mode                  | 75  |
| Parameter mode                  | 76  |
| Copy mode                       | 78  |
| Basic control panel alarm codes | 79  |
| Assistant control panel         | 80  |
| Features                        | 80  |
| Overview                        | 81  |
| Operation                       | 82  |
| Output mode                     | 86  |
| Parameters mode                 | 88  |
| Assistants mode                 | 91  |
| Changed parameters mode         | 93  |
| Fault logger mode               | 94  |
| Time and date mode              | 95  |
| Parameter backup mode           | 97  |
| IO settings mode                | 100 |

## 10. Application macros

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| What this chapter contains                               | 101 |
| Overview of macros                                       | 101 |
| Summary of the I/O connections of the application macros | 103 |
| ABB standard macro                                       | 104 |
| Default I/O connections                                  | 104 |
| 3-wire macro   | 105 |
| Default I/O connections                                  | 105 |
| Alternate macro  | 106 |
| Default I/O connections                                  | 106 |
| Motor potentiometer macro                                | 107 |
| Default I/O connections                                  | 107 |
| Hand/Auto macro  | 108 |
| Default I/O connections                                  | 108 |



|                         |     |
|-------------------------|-----|
| PID control macro       | 109 |
| Default I/O connections | 109 |
| PFC control macro       | 110 |
| Default I/O connections | 110 |
| SPFC control macro      | 111 |
| Default I/O connections | 111 |
| User macros             | 112 |
| AC500 Modbus macro      | 113 |

## 11. Program features

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| What this chapter contains                                   | 115 |
| Start-up assistant   | 115 |
| Introduction   | 115 |
| Default order of the tasks                                   | 116 |
| List of the tasks and the relevant drive parameters          | 117 |
| Contents of the assistant displays                           | 119 |
| Local control vs. external control                           | 119 |
| Local control  | 120 |
| External control   | 120 |
| Settings   | 120 |
| Diagnostics  | 121 |
| Block diagram: Start, stop, direction source for <i>EXT1</i> | 121 |
| Block diagram: Reference source for <i>EXT1</i>              | 121 |
| Reference types and processing                               | 122 |
| Settings   | 122 |
| Diagnostics  | 122 |
| Reference trimming   | 123 |
| Settings   | 123 |
| Example  | 124 |
| Programmable analog inputs                                   | 124 |
| Settings   | 124 |
| Diagnostics  | 125 |
| Programmable analog output                                   | 125 |
| Settings   | 125 |
| Diagnostics  | 125 |
| Programmable digital inputs                                  | 126 |
| Settings   | 126 |
| Diagnostics  | 127 |
| Programmable relay output                                    | 127 |
| Settings   | 127 |
| Diagnostics  | 127 |
| Frequency input  | 127 |
| Settings   | 127 |
| Diagnostics  | 128 |
| Transistor output  | 128 |
| Settings   | 128 |
| Diagnostics  | 128 |
| Actual signals   | 128 |
| Settings   | 128 |
| Diagnostics  | 129 |



|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| Power loss ride-through             | 129 |
| Settings                            | 129 |
| DC magnetizing                      | 130 |
| Settings                            | 130 |
| Maintenance trigger                 | 130 |
| Settings                            | 130 |
| Acceleration and deceleration ramps | 130 |
| Settings                            | 130 |
| Motor heating function              | 131 |
| Settings                            | 131 |
| Diagnostics                         | 131 |
| Critical speeds                     | 131 |
| Settings                            | 131 |
| Constant speeds                     | 131 |
| Settings                            | 131 |
| Custom U/f ratio                    | 133 |
| Settings                            | 133 |
| Diagnostics                         | 133 |
| IR compensation                     | 134 |
| Settings                            | 134 |
| Programmable protection functions   | 134 |
| AI<Min                              | 134 |
| Panel loss                          | 134 |
| External fault                      | 134 |
| Stall protection                    | 134 |
| Motor thermal protection            | 135 |
| Earth fault protection              | 135 |
| Incorrect wiring                    | 135 |
| Input phase loss                    | 136 |
| Pre-programmed faults               | 136 |
| Overcurrent                         | 136 |
| DC overvoltage                      | 136 |
| DC undervoltage                     | 136 |
| Drive temperature                   | 136 |
| Short circuit                       | 136 |
| Internal fault                      | 136 |
| Operation limits                    | 136 |
| Settings                            | 136 |
| Power limit                         | 137 |
| Automatic resets                    | 137 |
| Settings                            | 137 |
| Diagnostics                         | 137 |
| Supervisions                        | 137 |
| Settings                            | 137 |
| Diagnostics                         | 137 |
| Parameter lock                      | 138 |
| Settings                            | 138 |
| PID control                         | 138 |
| Process controller PID1             | 138 |
| External/Trim controller PID2       | 138 |
| Block diagrams                      | 139 |





|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Settings   | 141 |
| Diagnostics  | 141 |
| Example  | 141 |
| Sleep function for the process PID (PID1) control      | 143 |
| Example  | 144 |
| Settings   | 145 |
| Diagnostics  | 145 |
| Motor temperature measurement through the standard I/O | 145 |
| Settings   | 146 |
| Diagnostics  | 146 |
| Timed functions  | 147 |
| Examples   | 148 |
| Settings   | 149 |
| User load curve  | 150 |
| Settings   | 150 |
| Diagnostics  | 150 |
| Energy optimizer                                       | 151 |
| Settings   | 151 |
| Energy saving  | 151 |
| Settings   | 151 |
| Diagnostics  | 151 |
| Pump cleaning  | 152 |
| Settings   | 152 |
| Load analyzer  | 153 |
| Peak value logger                                      | 153 |
| Amplitude loggers                                      | 153 |
| Settings   | 154 |
| Diagnostics  | 154 |
| PFC and SPFC control                                   | 155 |
| PFC control  | 155 |
| SPFC control   | 155 |
| Settings   | 158 |
| Diagnostics  | 158 |
| Connection diagram example                             | 159 |
| Pipe fill  | 160 |
| Reference ramping                                      | 160 |
| PID reference ramping                                  | 161 |
| Settings   | 161 |

## 12. Actual signals and parameters

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| What this chapter contains                 | 163 |
| Terms and abbreviations                    | 163 |
| Fieldbus equivalent                        | 164 |
| Default values with different macros       | 165 |
| Actual signals in the short parameter view | 167 |
| 04 FAULT HISTORY                           | 167 |
| Parameters in the short parameter view     | 167 |
| 11 REFERENCE SELECT                        | 167 |
| 12 CONSTANT SPEEDS                         | 167 |
| 13 ANALOG INPUTS                           | 167 |

|                       |     |
|-----------------------|-----|
| 14 RELAY OUTPUTS      | 167 |
| 16 SYSTEM CONTROLS    | 167 |
| 20 LIMITS             | 167 |
| 21 START/STOP         | 167 |
| 22 ACCEL/DECEL        | 168 |
| 53 EFB PROTOCOL       | 168 |
| 98 OPTIONS            | 169 |
| 99 START-UP DATA      | 169 |
| All actual signals    | 170 |
| 01 OPERATING DATA     | 170 |
| 03 FB ACTUAL SIGNALS  | 173 |
| 04 FAULT HISTORY      | 175 |
| All parameters        | 177 |
| 10 START/STOP/DIR     | 177 |
| 11 REFERENCE SELECT   | 179 |
| 12 CONSTANT SPEEDS    | 183 |
| 13 ANALOG INPUTS      | 187 |
| 14 RELAY OUTPUTS      | 188 |
| 15 ANALOG OUTPUTS     | 191 |
| 16 SYSTEM CONTROLS    | 192 |
| 18 FREQ IN & TRAN OUT | 197 |
| 20 LIMITS             | 199 |
| 21 START/STOP         | 200 |
| 22 ACCEL/DECEL        | 204 |
| 25 CRITICAL SPEEDS    | 207 |
| 26 MOTOR CONTROL      | 208 |
| 29 MAINTENANCE TRIG   | 211 |
| 30 FAULT FUNCTIONS    | 212 |
| 31 AUTOMATIC RESET    | 218 |
| 32 SUPERVISION        | 220 |
| 33 INFORMATION        | 222 |
| 34 PANEL DISPLAY      | 223 |
| 35 MOTOR TEMP MEAS    | 228 |
| 36 TIMED FUNCTIONS    | 230 |
| 37 USER LOAD CURVE    | 234 |
| 40 PROCESS PID SET 1  | 236 |
| 41 PROCESS PID SET 2  | 247 |
| 42 EXT / TRIM PID     | 249 |
| 44 PUMP PROTECTION    | 251 |
| 45 ENERGY SAVING      | 256 |
| 46 PUMP CLEANING      | 257 |
| 52 PANEL COMM         | 258 |
| 53 EFB PROTOCOL       | 259 |
| 64 LOAD ANALYZER      | 262 |
| 81 PFC CONTROL        | 265 |
| 98 OPTIONS            | 283 |
| 99 START-UP DATA      | 283 |



### **13. Fieldbus control with the embedded fieldbus**

|                            |     |
|----------------------------|-----|
| What this chapter contains | 287 |
|----------------------------|-----|

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| System overview .....                                      | 287 |
| Setting up communication through the embedded Modbus ..... | 289 |
| Drive control parameters .....                             | 291 |
| Fieldbus control interface .....                           | 293 |
| Control word and Status word .....                         | 293 |
| References .....   | 293 |
| Actual values .....  | 293 |
| Fieldbus references .....                                  | 294 |
| Reference selection and correction .....                   | 294 |
| Fieldbus reference scaling .....                           | 296 |
| Reference handling .....                                   | 297 |
| Actual value scaling .....                                 | 297 |
| Modbus mapping .....                                       | 298 |
| Register mapping .....                                     | 299 |
| Function codes .....                                       | 301 |
| Exception codes .....                                      | 301 |
| Communication profiles .....                               | 302 |
| ABB drives communication profile .....                     | 302 |
| DCU communication profile .....                            | 307 |

## 14. Fault tracing

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| What this chapter contains .....                  | 311 |
| Safety .....                                      | 311 |
| Alarm and fault indications .....                 | 311 |
| How to reset .....                                | 311 |
| Fault history .....                               | 312 |
| Alarm messages generated by the drive .....       | 313 |
| Alarms generated by the Basic control panel ..... | 317 |
| Fault messages generated by the drive .....       | 320 |
| Embedded fieldbus faults .....                    | 327 |
| No master device .....                            | 327 |
| Same device address .....                         | 327 |
| Incorrect wiring .....                            | 327 |

## 15. Maintenance and hardware diagnostics

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| What this chapter contains .....                          | 329 |
| Maintenance intervals .....                               | 329 |
| Cooling fan .....   | 330 |
| Replacing the cooling fan (frame sizes R1...R4) .....     | 330 |
| Capacitors .....  | 331 |
| Reforming the capacitors .....                            | 331 |
| Power connections .....                                   | 332 |
| Control panel .....                                       | 332 |
| Cleaning the control panel .....                          | 332 |
| Changing the battery in the Assistant control panel ..... | 332 |
| LEDs .....  | 333 |

## 16. Technical data

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| What this chapter contains                            | 335 |
| Ratings   | 336 |
| Definitions   | 337 |
| Sizing  | 338 |
| Derating  | 338 |
| Fuses and alternate short-circuit protection          | 340 |
| Fuses   | 340 |
| Alternate short-circuit protection                    | 340 |
| Fuses and MMPs  | 341 |
| Size of copper conductor in cablings                  | 342 |
| Dimensions, weights and free space requirements       | 343 |
| Dimensions and weights                                | 343 |
| Free space requirements                               | 344 |
| Losses, cooling data and noise                        | 345 |
| Losses and cooling data                               | 345 |
| Noise   | 346 |
| Terminal and lead-through data for the power cables   | 346 |
| Terminal and lead-through data for the control cables | 347 |
| Electric power network specification                  | 348 |
| Motor connection data                                 | 348 |
| Control connection data                               | 350 |
| Clearance and creepage distance                       | 350 |
| Efficiency  | 350 |
| Degrees of protection                                 | 350 |
| Ambient conditions                                    | 351 |
| Materials   | 352 |
| Applicable standards                                  | 352 |
| CE marking  | 353 |
| Compliance with the European EMC Directive            | 353 |
| Compliance with EN 61800-3:2004                       | 353 |
| Definitions   | 353 |
| Category C1   | 353 |
| Category C2   | 354 |
| Category C3   | 354 |
| UL marking  | 355 |
| UL checklist  | 355 |
| C-Tick marking  | 355 |
| RoHS marking  | 356 |
| Declaration of incorporation                          | 356 |

## 17. Dimension drawings

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Frame sizes R0 and R1, IP20 (cabinet installation) / UL open | 358 |
| Frame sizes R0 and R1, IP20 / NEMA 1                         | 359 |
| Frame size R2, IP20 (cabinet installation) / UL open         | 360 |
| Frame size R2, NEMA 1  | 361 |
| Frame size R3, IP20 (cabinet installation) / UL open         | 362 |
| Frame size R3, NEMA 1  | 363 |
| Frame size R4, IP20 (cabinet installation) / UL open         | 364 |



Frame size R4, NEMA 1 ..... 365

## 18. INDEX

## 19. Further information

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Product and service inquiries .....            | 375 |
| Product training .....                         | 375 |
| Providing feedback on ABB Drives manuals ..... | 375 |
| Document library on the Internet .....         | 375 |



# 1

## Safety

---

### What this chapter contains

The chapter contains safety instructions which you must follow when installing, operating and servicing the drive. If ignored, physical injury or death may follow, or damage may occur to the drive, motor or driven equipment. Read the safety instructions before you work on the drive.



### Use of warnings

Warnings caution you about conditions which can result in serious injury or death and/or damage to the equipment, and advise on how to avoid the danger. The following warning symbols are used in this manual:



**Electricity warning** warns of hazards from electricity which can cause physical injury and/or damage to the equipment.



**General warning** warns about conditions, other than those caused by electricity, which can result in physical injury and/or damage to the equipment.

---

## Safety in installation and maintenance

These warnings are intended for all who work on the drive, motor cable or motor.

### ■ Electrical safety

---



**WARNING!** Ignoring the following instructions can cause physical injury or death, or damage to the equipment.

#### Only qualified electricians are allowed to install and maintain the drive!

- Never work on the drive, motor cable or motor when input power is applied. After disconnecting the input power, always wait for 5 minutes to let the intermediate circuit capacitors discharge before you start working on the drive, motor or motor cable.

Always ensure by measuring with a multimeter (impedance at least 1 Mohm) that there is no voltage between the drive input phases U1, V1 and W1 and the ground.

- Do not work on the control cables when power is applied to the drive or to the external control circuits. Externally supplied control circuits may carry dangerous voltage even when the input power of the drive is switched off.
- Do not make any insulation or voltage withstand tests on the drive.
- Disconnect the internal EMC filter when installing the drive on an IT system (an ungrounded power system or a high-resistance-grounded [over 30 ohms] power system), otherwise the system is connected to ground potential through the EMC filter capacitors. This may cause danger or damage the drive. See page 46. **Note:** When the internal EMC filter is disconnected, the drive is not EMC compatible.
- Disconnect the internal EMC filter when installing the drive on a corner-grounded TN system, otherwise the drive will be damaged. See page 46. **Note:** When the internal EMC filter is disconnected, the drive is not EMC compatible.
- All ELV (extra low voltage) circuits connected to the drive must be used within a zone of equipotential bonding, ie within a zone where all simultaneously accessible conductive parts are electrically connected to prevent hazardous voltages appearing between them. This is accomplished by a proper factory grounding.

#### Note:

- Even when the motor is stopped, dangerous voltage is present at the power circuit terminals U1, V1, W1 and U2, V2, W2.
-

## ■ General safety

---



**WARNING!** Ignoring the following instructions can cause physical injury or death, or damage to the equipment.

- The drive is not field repairable. Never attempt to repair a malfunctioning drive; contact your local ABB representative or Authorized Service Center for replacement.
  - Make sure that dust from drilling does not enter the drive during the installation. Electrically conductive dust inside the drive may cause damage or lead to malfunction.
  - Ensure sufficient cooling.
- 

## Safe start-up and operation



These warnings are intended for all who plan the operation, start up or operate the drive.

## ■ General safety



---



**WARNING!** Ignoring the following instructions can cause physical injury or death, or damage to the equipment.

- Before adjusting the drive and putting it into service, make sure that the motor and all driven equipment are suitable for operation throughout the speed range provided by the drive. The drive can be adjusted to operate the motor at speeds above and below the speed provided by connecting the motor directly to the power line.
- Do not activate automatic fault reset functions if dangerous situations can occur. When activated, these functions reset the drive and resume operation after a fault.
- Do not control the motor with an AC contactor or disconnecting device (disconnecting means); use instead the control panel start and stop keys  and  or external commands (I/O or fieldbus). The maximum allowed number of charging cycles of the DC capacitors (that is, power-ups by applying power) is two per minute and the maximum total number of chargings is 15 000.

### Note:

- If an external source for start command is selected and it is ON, the drive starts immediately after an input voltage break or fault reset unless the drive is configured for 3-wire (a pulse) start/stop.
  - When the control location is not set to local (LOC not shown on the display), the stop key on the control panel does not stop the drive. To stop the drive using the control panel, first press the LOC/REM key  and then the stop key .
- 







# 2

## Introduction to the manual

---

### What this chapter contains

The chapter describes applicability, the target audience and purpose of this manual. It describes the contents of this manual and refers to a list of related manuals for more information. The chapter also contains a flowchart of steps for checking the delivery, installing and commissioning the drive. The flowchart refers to chapters/sections in this manual.

### Applicability

The manual is applicable to the ACS310 drive firmware version 4.050 or later. See parameter [3301 FIRMWARE](#) on page [222](#).

### Target audience

The reader is expected to know the fundamentals of electricity, wiring, electrical components and electrical schematic symbols.

The manual is written for readers worldwide. Both SI and imperial units are shown. Special US instructions for installations in the United States are given.

### Purpose of the manual

This manual provides information needed for planning the installation, installing, commissioning, using and servicing the drive.

---

## Contents of this manual

The manual consists of the following chapters:

- *Safety* (page 15) gives safety instructions you must follow when installing, commissioning, operating and servicing the drive.
  - *Introduction to the manual* (this chapter, page 19) describes applicability, target audience, purpose and contents of this manual. It also contains a quick installation and commissioning flowchart.
  - *Operation principle and hardware description* (page 23) describes the operation principle, layout, power connections and control interfaces, type designation label and type designation information in short.
  - *Mechanical installation* (page 29) tells how to check the installation site, unpack, check the delivery and install the drive mechanically.
  - *Planning the electrical installation* (page 35) tells how to check the compatibility of the motor and the drive and select cables, protections and cable routing.
  - *Electrical installation* (page 45) tells how to check the insulation of the assembly and the compatibility with IT (ungrounded) and corner-grounded TN systems as well as connect power cables, control cables and embedded fieldbus.
  - *Installation checklist* (page 55) contains a checklist for checking the mechanical and electrical installation of the drive.
  - *Start-up and control with I/O* (page 57) tells how to start up the drive as well as how to start, stop, change the direction of the motor rotation and adjust the motor speed through the I/O interface.
  - *Control panels* (page 67) describes the control panel keys, LED indicators and display fields. It also instructs in using the panel in control, monitoring and changing the settings.
  - *Application macros* (page 101) gives a brief description of each application macro together with a wiring diagram showing the default control connections. It also explains how to save a user macro and how to recall it.
  - *Program features* (page 115) describes program features with lists of related user settings, actual signals, and fault and alarm messages.
  - *Actual signals and parameters* (page 163) describes actual signals and parameters. It also lists the default values for the different macros.
  - *Fieldbus control with the embedded fieldbus* (page 287) tells how the drive can be controlled by external devices over a communication network using embedded fieldbus.
  - *Fault tracing* (page 311) tells how to reset faults and view fault history. It lists all alarm and fault messages including the possible cause and corrective actions.
  - *Maintenance and hardware diagnostics* (page 329) contains preventive maintenance instructions and LED indicator descriptions.
-

- *Technical data* (page 335) contains technical specifications of the drive, eg ratings, sizes and technical requirements as well as provisions for fulfilling the requirements for CE and other marks.
- *Dimension drawings* (page 357) shows dimension drawings of the drive.
- *Further information* (inside of the back cover, page 353) tells how to make product and service inquiries, get information on product training, provide feedback on ABB Drives manuals and find documents on the Internet.

## Related documents

See *List of related manuals* on page 2.

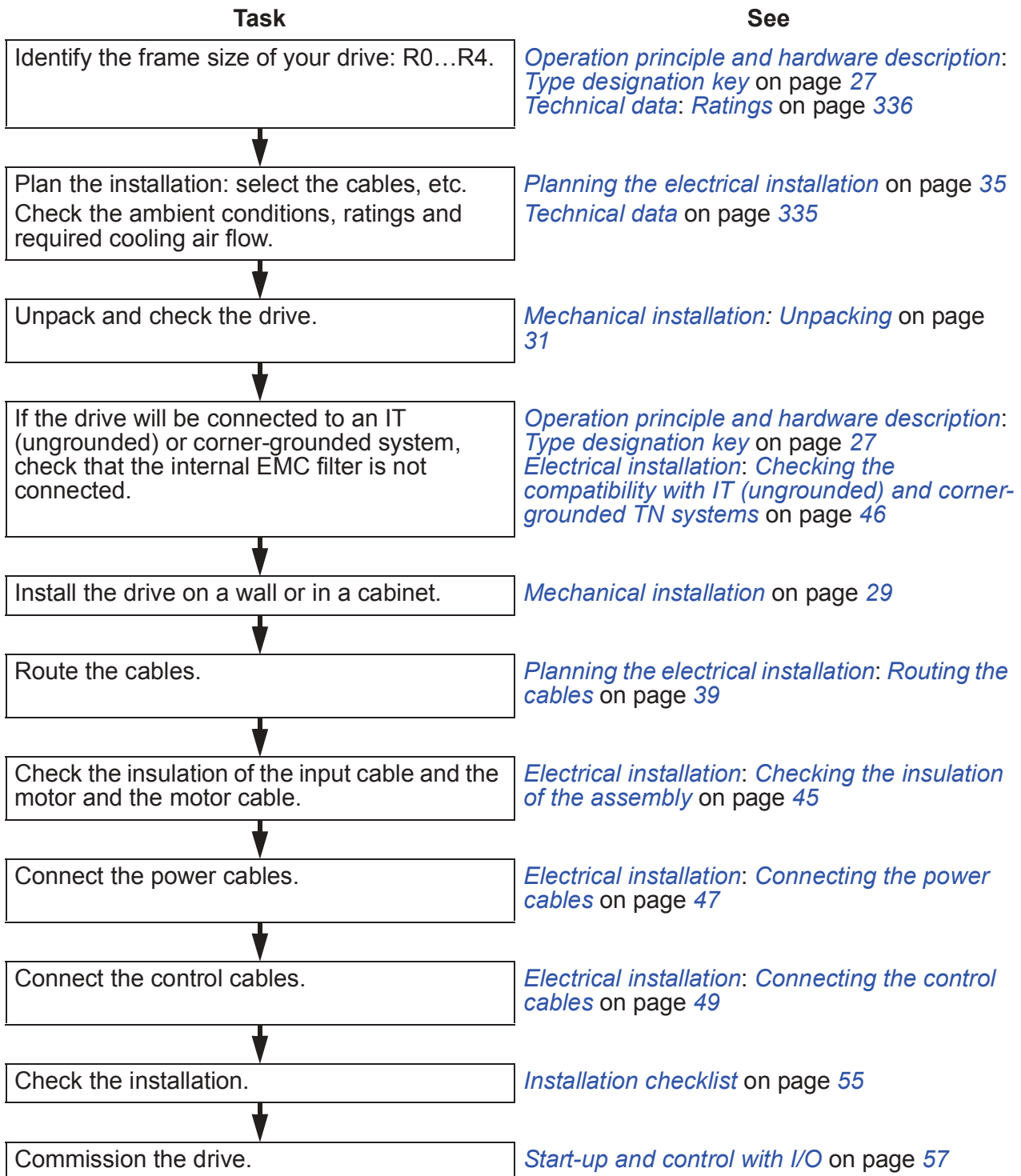
## Categorization by frame size

The ACS310 is manufactured in frame sizes R0...R4. Some instructions and other information which only concern certain frame sizes are marked with the symbol of the frame size (R0...R4). To identify the frame size of your drive, see the table in section *Ratings* on page 336.

## Terms and abbreviations

| Term         | Definition  |
|--------------|---|
| EIA-485      | Standard defining the electrical characteristics of drivers and receivers for use in balanced digital multipoint systems.   |
| EMC          | Electromagnetic compatibility   |
| FlashDrop    | Hand-held drive programming tool that can also be used to copy parameters to a drive that is not powered up.  |
| Frame (size) | Relates to the construction type of the component in question. The term is often used in reference to a group of components that share a similar mechanical construction. To determine the frame size of a component, refer to the rating tables in chapter <i>Technical data</i> . |
| IGBT         | Insulated gate bipolar transistor; a voltage-controlled semiconductor type widely used in inverters due to its easy controllability and high switching frequency.   |
| Inverter     | An inverter converts the DC voltage to AC voltage. Its operation is controlled by switching the IGBTs.  |
| I/O          | Input/Output  |
| MMP          | Manual motor protector  |
| Modbus RTU   | Open, serial messaging protocol   |
| MREL         | MREL relay output extension module  |
| MRP code     | Material Requirement Planning code  |
| Pt100        | A type of resistance thermometer (temperature sensor)   |
| PTC          | Positive Temperature Coefficient sensor (temperature sensor)  |
| RS-232       | Standard for serial binary single-ended data and control signals  |

## Quick installation and commissioning flowchart



# 3

## Operation principle and hardware description

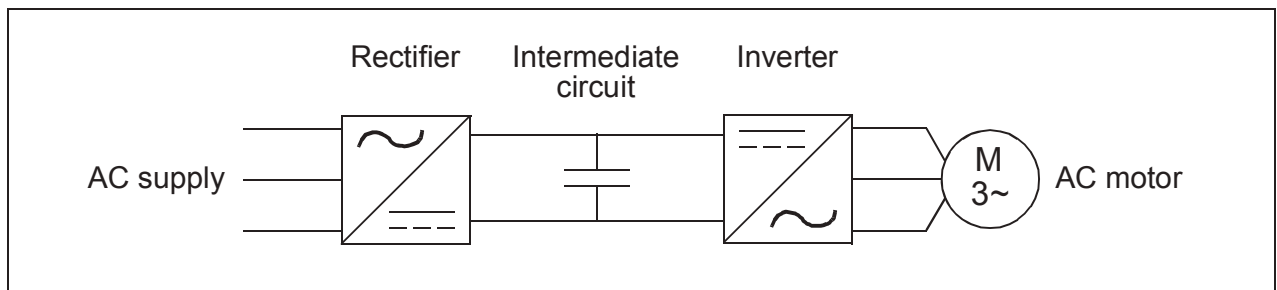
### What this chapter contains

The chapter briefly describes the operation principle, layout, type designation label and type designation information. It also shows a general diagram of power connections and control interfaces.

### Operation principle

The ACS310 is a wall or cabinet mountable drive for controlling AC induction motors.

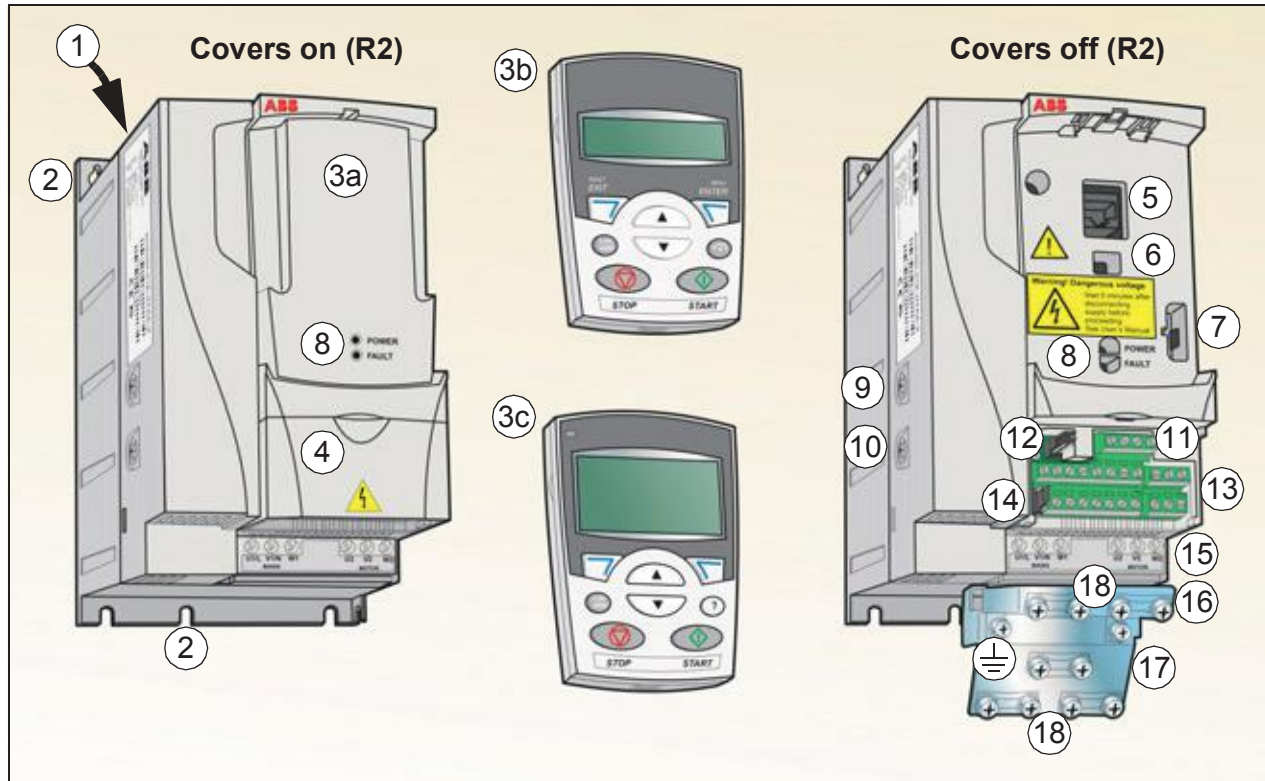
The figure below shows the simplified main circuit diagram of the drive. The rectifier converts three-phase AC voltage to DC voltage. The capacitor bank of the intermediate circuit stabilizes the DC voltage. The inverter converts the DC voltage back to AC voltage for the AC motor.



## Product overview

### Layout

The layout of the drive is presented below. The figure shows a frame size R2 drive. The construction of the different frame sizes R0...R4 varies to some extent.

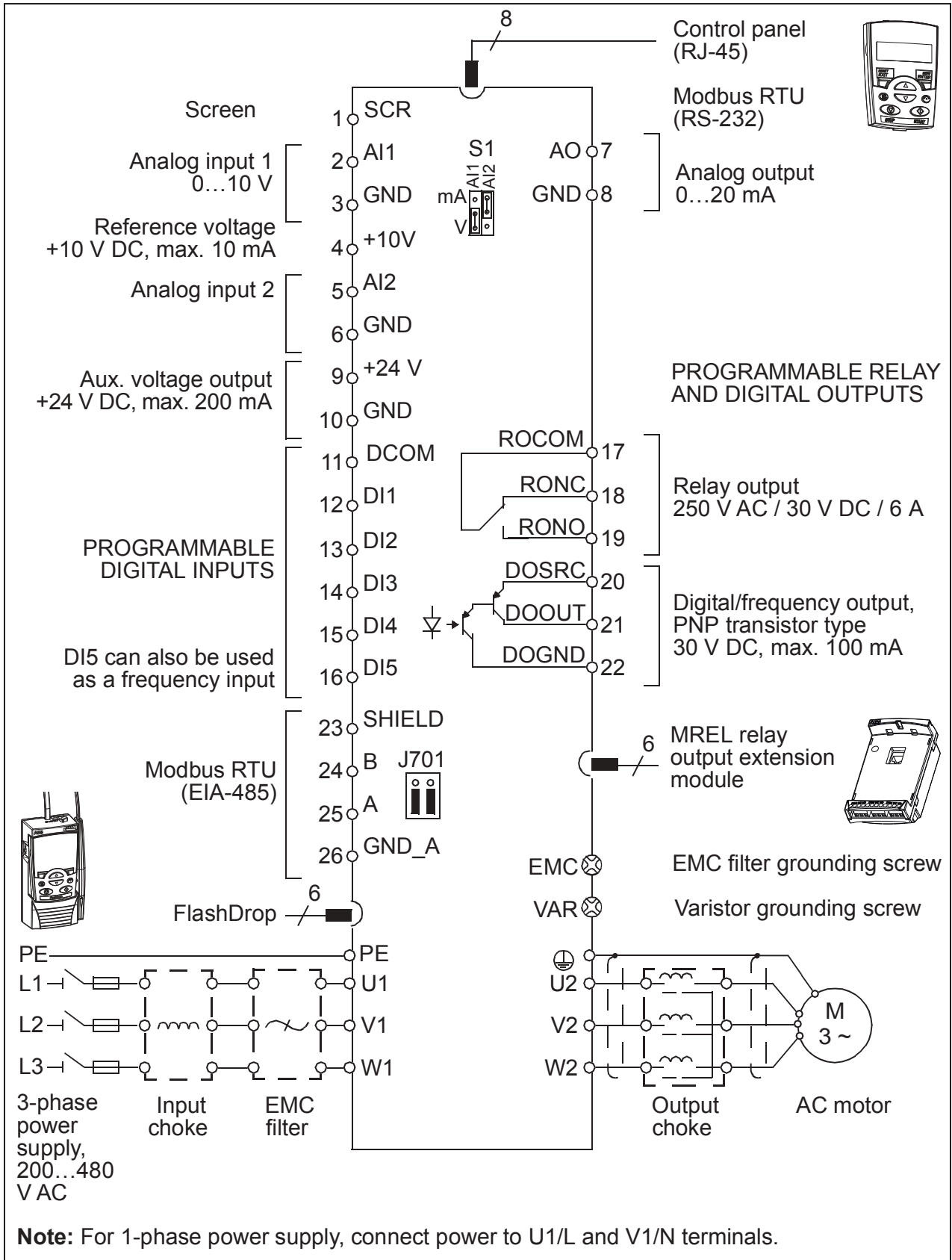


|   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 | Cooling outlet through top cover  |
| 2 | Mounting holes  |
| 3 | Panel cover (a) / Basic control panel (b) / Assistant control panel (c) |
| 4 | Terminal cover  |
| 5 | Panel connection  |
| 6 | Option connection   |
| 7 | FlashDrop connection  |
| 8 | Power OK and Fault LEDs. See section <a href="#">LEDs</a> on page 333.  |

|    |  |
|----|--|
| 9  | EMC filter grounding screw (EMC).<br><b>Note:</b> The screw is on the front in frame size R4.                    |
| 10 | Varistor grounding screw (VAR)   |
| 11 | EIA-485 connection   |
| 12 | Jumper J701 for connecting EIA-485 termination resistor  |
| 13 | I/O connections  |
| 14 | Switch S1 for selecting voltage or current for analog inputs   |
| 15 | Input power connection (U1, V1, W1) and motor connection (U2, V2, W2). (Braking chopper connection is disabled.) |
| 16 | I/O clamping plate   |
| 17 | Clamping plate   |
| 18 | Clamps   |

## Power connections and control interfaces




The diagram gives an overview of connections. I/O connections are parameterable. See chapter *Application macros* on page 101 for I/O connections for the different macros and chapter *Electrical installation* on page 45 for installation in general.





## Type designation label

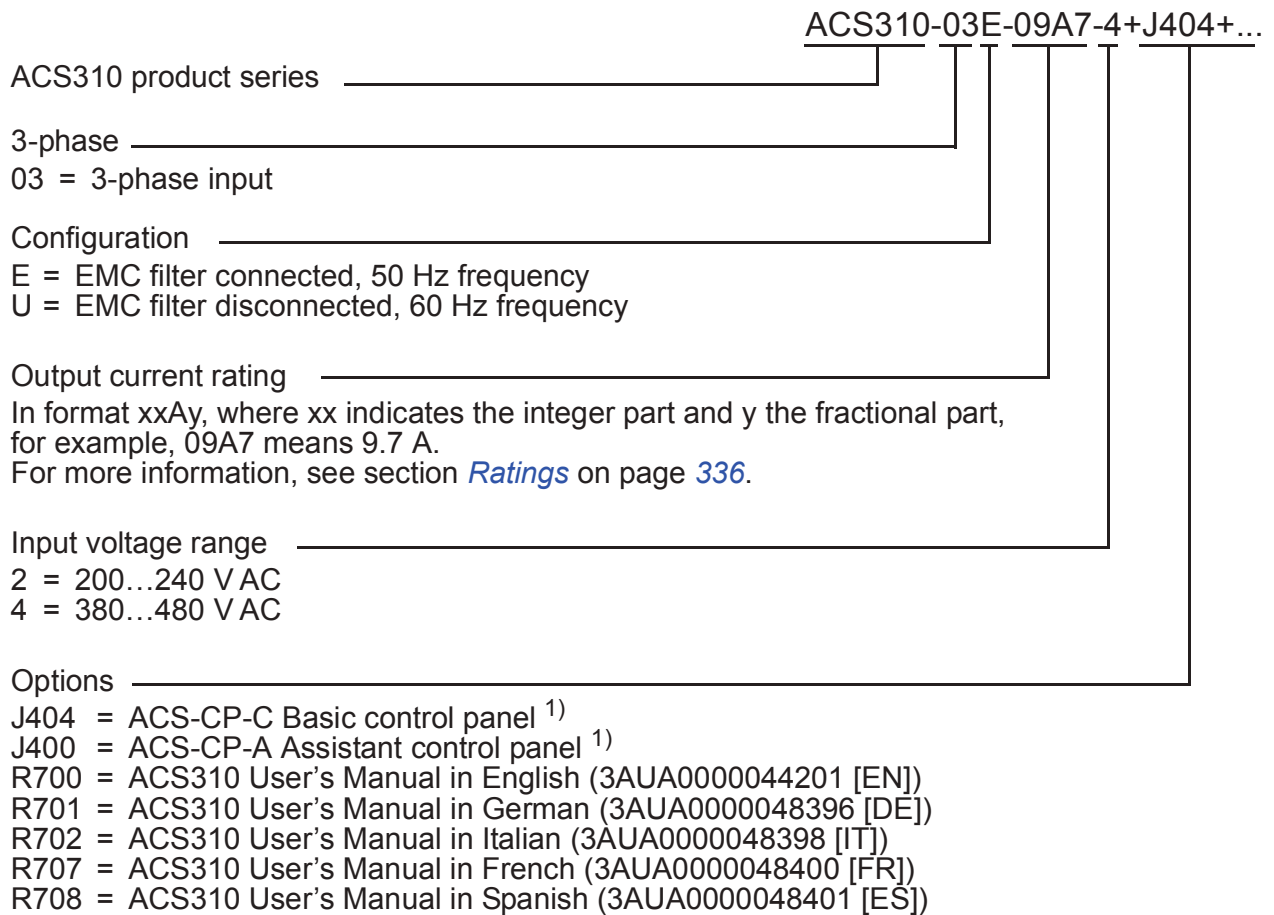
The type designation label is attached to the left side of the drive. An example label and explanation of the label contents are shown below.

|                            |   |   |
|----------------------------|---|---|
| <b>ABB</b>                 | <b>ACS310-03E-09A7-4</b>  | ① |
| IP20 / UL Open type        |   | ② |
| UL Type 1 with MUL1 option | S/N MYYWWRXXXX  | ④ |
| PN 4 kW (5 HP)             |   |   |
| U1 3~380...480 V           | 3AUA0000039632  | ⑤ |
| I1 15.0 A                  |   |   |
| f1 48...63 Hz              | RoHS  |   |
| U2 3~0...U1 V              |    | ⑥ |
| I2 9.7 A                   |   |   |
| f2 0...500 Hz              |   |   |

|   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 | Type designation, see section <a href="#">Type designation key</a> on page 27  |
| 2 | Degree of protection by enclosure (IP and UL/NEMA)   |
| 3 | Nominal ratings, see section <a href="#">Ratings</a> on page 336.  |
| 4 | Serial number of format MYYWWRXXXX, where<br>M: Manufacturer<br>YY: 09, 10, 11, ... for 2009, 2010, 2011, ...<br>WW: 01, 02, 03, ... for week 1, week 2, week 3, ...<br>R: A, B, C, ... for product revision number<br>XXXX: Integer starting every week from 0001 |
| 5 | ABB MRP code of the drive  |
| 6 | CE marking and C-Tick, C-UL US and RoHS marks (the label of your drive shows the valid markings)   |

## Type designation key

The type designation contains information on the specifications and configuration of the drive. You find the type designation on the type designation label attached to the drive. The first digits from the left express the basic configuration, for example ACS310-03E-09A7-4. The optional selections are given after that, separated by + signs, for example +J404. The explanations of the type designation label selections are described below.



<sup>1)</sup> The ACS310 is compatible with panels that have the following panel revisions and panel firmware versions. To find out the revision and firmware version of your panel, see page 68.

| Panel type                     | Type code | Panel revision | Panel firmware version |
|--------------------------------|-----------|----------------|------------------------|
| Basic control panel            | ACS-CP-C  | M or later     | 1.13 or later          |
| Assistant control panel        | ACS-CP-A  | E or later     | 2.04 or later          |
| Assistant control panel (Asia) | ACS-CP-D  | P or later     | 2.04 or later          |

Note that unlike the other panels, the ACS-CP-D is ordered with a separate material code.

www.nicsanat.com

021-87700210

NIC SANAT

نیک صنعت



# 4

## Mechanical installation

---

### What this chapter contains

The chapter tells how to check the installation site, unpack, check the delivery and install the drive mechanically.

### Checking the installation site

The drive may be installed on the wall or in a cabinet. Check the enclosure requirements for the need to use the NEMA 1 option in wall installations (see chapter [Technical data](#) on page 335).

The drive can be installed in three different ways, depending on the frame size:

- a) back mounting (all frame sizes)
- b) side mounting (frame sizes R0...R2)
- c) DIN rail mounting (all frame sizes).

The drive must be installed in an upright position.

Check the installation site according to the requirements below. Refer to chapter [Dimension drawings](#) on page 357 for frame details.

### ■ Requirements for the installation site

#### Operation conditions

See chapter [Technical data](#) on page 335 for the allowed operation conditions of the drive.

#### Wall

The wall should be as close to vertical and even as possible, of non-flammable material and strong enough to carry the weight of the drive.

---



## Floor

The floor/material below the installation should be non-flammable.

## Free space around the drive

The required free space for cooling above and below the drive is 75 mm (3 in). No free space is required on the sides of the drive, so drives can be mounted immediately next to each other.

## Required tools

To install the drive, you need the following tools:

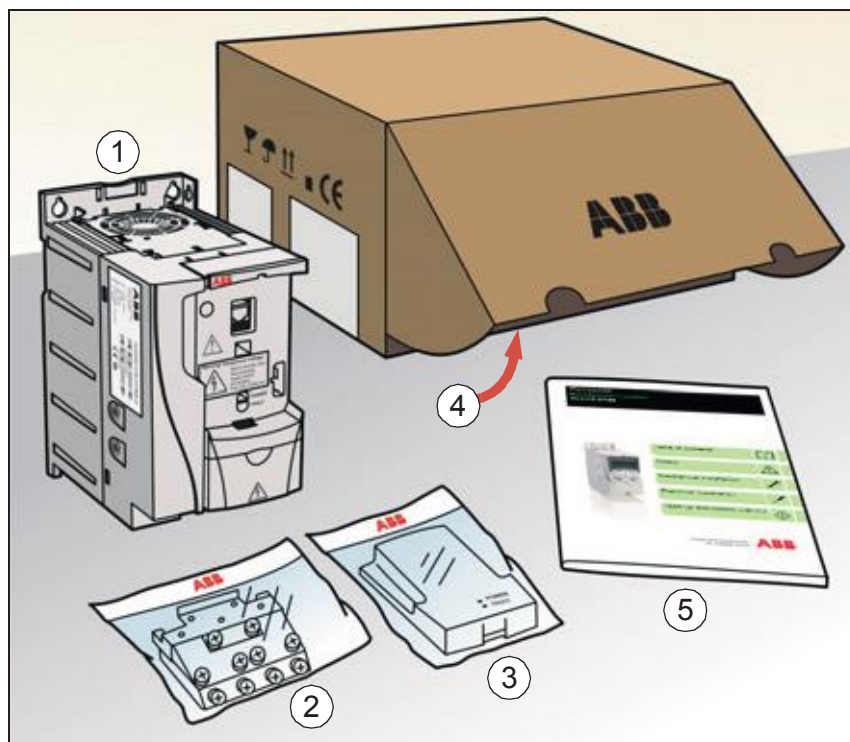
- screwdrivers (as appropriate for the mounting hardware used)
- wire stripper
- tape measure
- drill (if the drive will be installed with screws/bolts)
- mounting hardware: screws or bolts (if the drive will be installed with screws/bolts). For the number of screws/bolts, see [With screws](#) on page 32.



## Unpacking

The drive (1) is delivered in a package that also contains the following items (frame size R2 shown in the figure):

- plastic bag (2) including clamping plate (also used for I/O cables in frame sizes R3 and R4), I/O clamping plate (for frame sizes R0...R2), clamps and screws
- panel cover (3)
- mounting template, integrated into the package (4)
- short form user's manual (5)
- possible options (Basic control panel, Assistant control panel or complete User's Manual).



## Checking the delivery

Check that there are no signs of damage. Notify the shipper immediately if damaged components are found.

Before attempting installation and operation, check the information on the type designation label of the drive to verify that the drive is of the correct type. See section [Type designation label](#) on page 26.

## Installing

The instructions in this manual cover drives with the IP20 degree of protection. To comply with NEMA 1, use the MUL1-R1, MUL1-R3 or MUL1-R4 option kit, which is delivered with multilingual installation instructions (3AFE68642868, 3AFE68643147 or 3AUA0000025916, respectively).

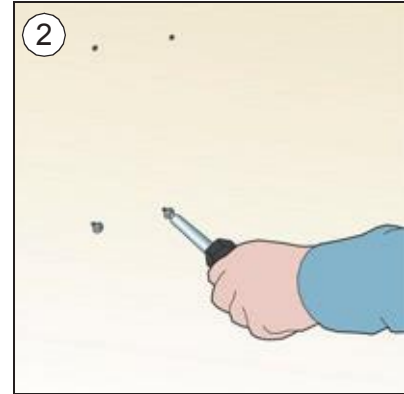
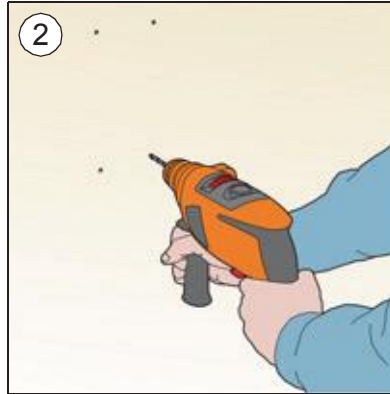
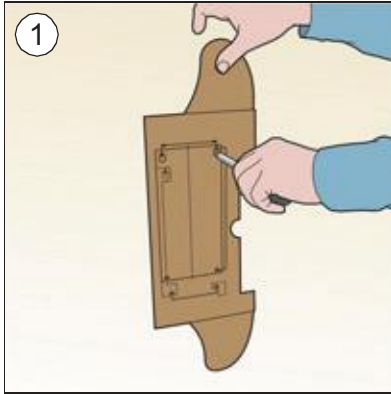
### ■ Install the drive

Install the drive with screws or on a DIN rail as appropriate.

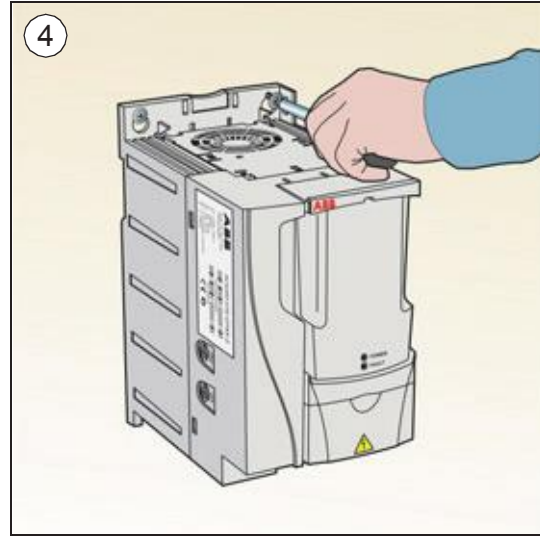
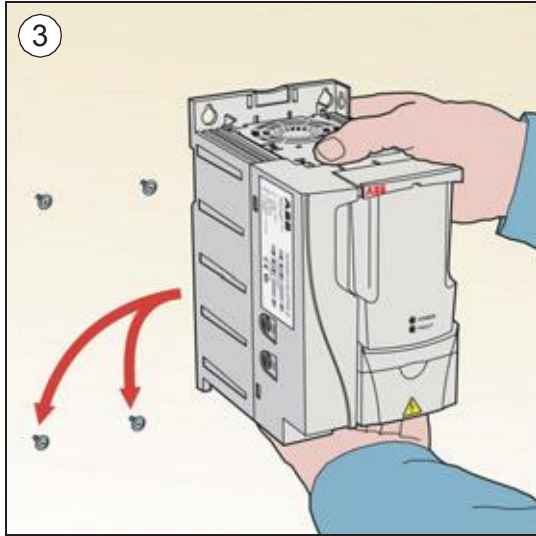
**Note:** Make sure that dust from drilling does not enter the drive during the installation.

### With screws

1. Mark the hole locations using for example the mounting template cut out from the package. The locations of the holes are also shown in the drawings in chapter [Dimension drawings](#) on page 357. The number and location of the holes used depend on how the drive is installed:
  - a) back mounting (frame sizes R0...R4): four holes
  - b) side mounting (frame sizes R0...R2): three holes; one of the bottom holes is located in the clamping plate.
2. Fix the screws or bolts to the marked locations.

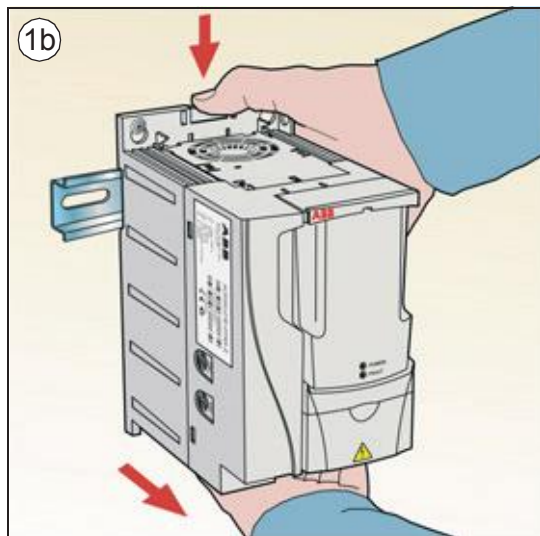
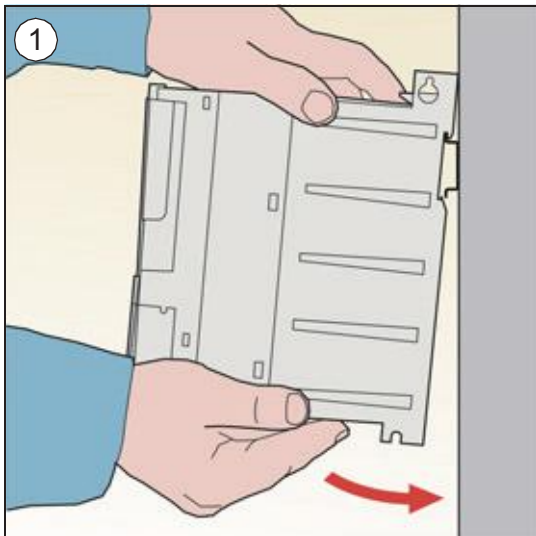


3. Position the drive onto the screws on the wall.
4. Tighten the screws in the wall securely.



### On DIN rail

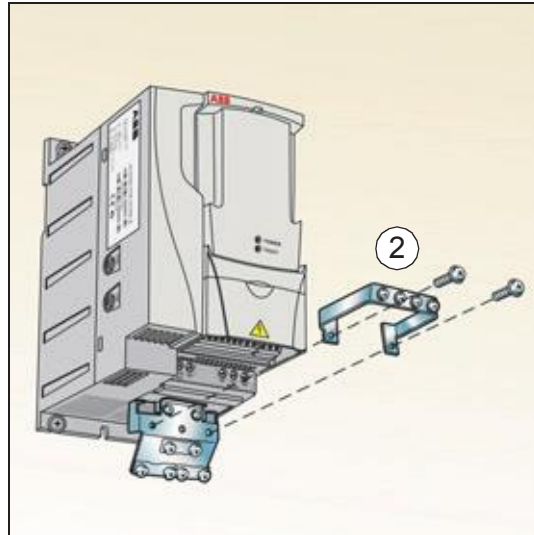
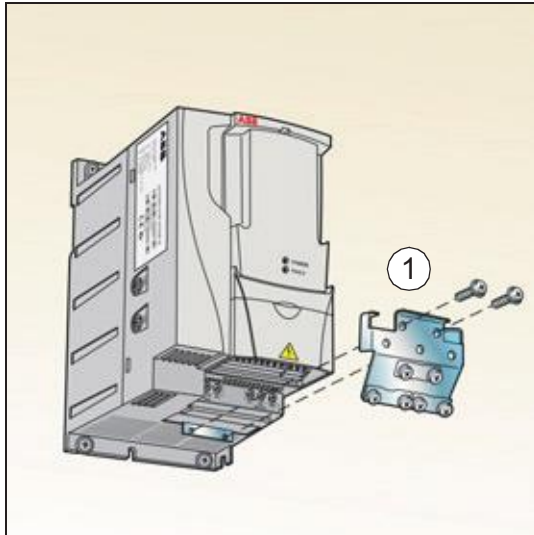
1. Click the drive to the rail.  
To detach the drive, press the release lever on top of the drive (1b).





## ■ Fasten clamping plates

1. Fasten the clamping plate to the plate at the bottom of the drive with the provided screws.
2. For frame sizes R0...R2, fasten the I/O clamping plate to the clamping plate with the provided screws.



# 5

## Planning the electrical installation

---

### What this chapter contains

The chapter contains the instructions that you must follow when checking the compatibility of the motor and drive, and selecting cables, protections, cable routing and way of operation for the drive.

**Note:** The installation must always be designed and made according to applicable local laws and regulations. ABB does not assume any liability whatsoever for any installation which breaches the local laws and/or other regulations. Furthermore, if the recommendations given by ABB are not followed, the drive may experience problems that the warranty does not cover.

### Implementing the AC power line connection

See the requirements in section *Electric power network specification* on page 348. Use a fixed connection to the AC power line.



**WARNING!** As the leakage current of the device typically exceeds 3.5 mA, a fixed installation is required according to IEC 61800-5-1.

---

### Selecting the supply disconnecting device (disconnecting means)

Install a hand-operated supply disconnecting device (disconnecting means) between the AC power source and the drive. The disconnecting device must be of a type that can be locked to the open position for installation and maintenance work.

---

## ■ European union

To meet the European Union Directives, according to standard EN 60204-1, Safety of Machinery, the disconnecting device must be one of the following types:

- a switch-disconnector of utilization category AC-23B (EN 60947-3)
- a disconnector having an auxiliary contact that in all cases causes switching devices to break the load circuit before the opening of the main contacts of the disconnector (EN 60947-3)
- a circuit breaker suitable for isolation in accordance with EN 60947-2.

## ■ Other regions

The disconnecting device must conform to the applicable safety regulations.

## Checking the compatibility of the motor and drive

Check that the 3-phase AC induction motor and the drive are compatible according to the rating table in section [Ratings](#) on page [336](#). The table lists the typical motor power for each drive type.

## Selecting the power cables

### ■ General rules

Dimension the input power and motor cables **according to local regulations**.

- The input power and the motor cables must be able to carry the corresponding load currents. See section [Ratings](#) on page [336](#) for the rated currents.
- The cable must be rated for at least 70 °C maximum permissible temperature of the conductor in continuous use. For US, see section [Additional US requirements](#) on page [38](#).
- The conductivity of the PE conductor must be equal to that of the phase conductor (same cross-sectional area).
- 600 V AC cable is accepted for up to 500 V AC.
- Refer to chapter [Technical data](#) on page [335](#) for the EMC requirements.

A symmetrical shielded motor cable (see the following figure) must be used to meet the EMC requirements of the CE and C-Tick marks.

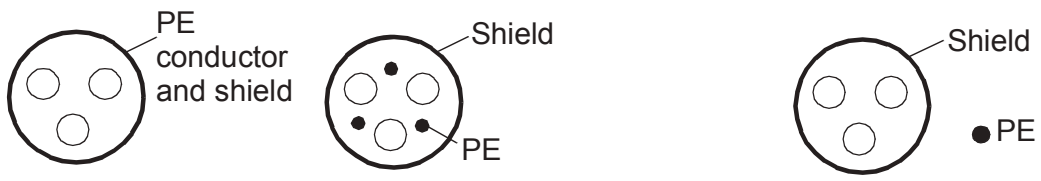
A four-conductor system is allowed for input cabling, but a shielded symmetrical cable is recommended.

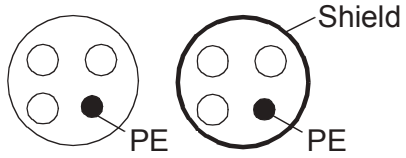
Compared to a four-conductor system, the use of a symmetrical shielded cable reduces electromagnetic emission of the whole drive system as well as motor bearing currents and wear.

---

## Alternative power cable types

Power cable types that can be used with the drive are presented below.

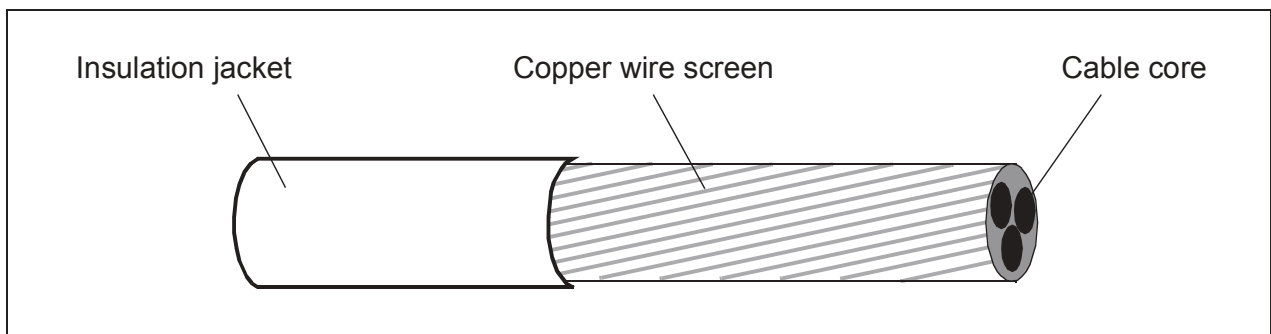
|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>Motor cables</b><br>(recommended for input cables also)<br>Symmetrical shielded cable: three phase conductors, a concentric or otherwise symmetrically constructed PE conductor and a shield | <b>Note:</b> A separate PE conductor is required if the conductivity of the cable shield is not sufficient for the purpose. |
|   |   |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>Allowed as input cables</b><br>A four-conductor system: three phase conductors and a protective conductor |  |
|--|---|

## Motor cable shield

To function as a protective conductor, the shield must have the same cross-sectional area as the phase conductors when they are made of the same metal.

To effectively suppress radiated and conducted radio-frequency emissions, the shield conductivity must be at least 1/10 of the phase conductor conductivity. The requirements are easily met with a copper or aluminium shield. The minimum requirement of the motor cable shield of the drive is shown below. It consists of a concentric layer of copper wires. The better and tighter the shield, the lower the emission level and bearing currents.



## ■ Additional US requirements

Type MC continuous corrugated aluminium armor cable with symmetrical grounds or shielded power cable is recommended for the motor cables if metallic conduit is not used.

The power cables must be rated for 75 °C (167 °F).

### Conduit

Where conduits must be coupled together, bridge the joint with a ground conductor bonded to the conduit on each side of the joint. Bond the conduits also to the drive enclosure. Use separate conduits for input power, motor and control wiring. Do not run motor wiring from more than one drive in the same conduit.

### Armored cable / shielded power cable

Six-conductor (three phases and three ground) type MC continuous corrugated aluminium armor cable with symmetrical grounds is available from the following suppliers (trade names in parentheses):

- Anixter Wire & Cable (Philsheath)
- BICC General Corp (Philsheath)
- Rockbestos Co. (Gardex)
- Oaknite (CLX).

Shielded power cable is available from the following suppliers:

- Belden
- LAPPKABEL (ÖLFLEX)
- Pirelli.

## Selecting the control cables

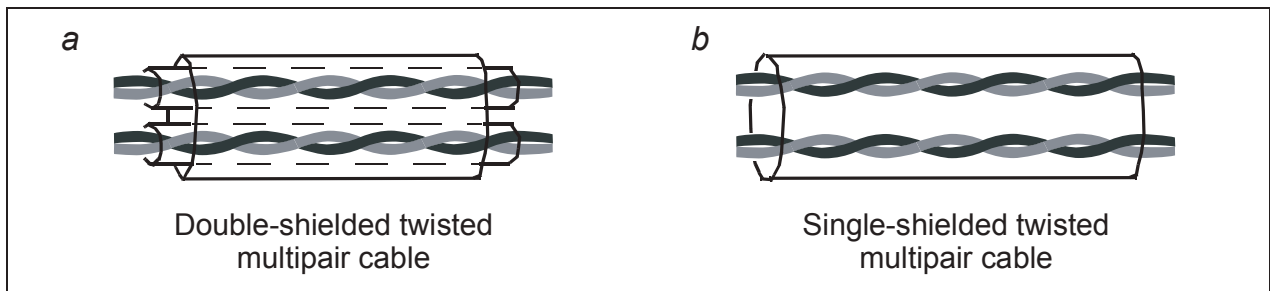
### ■ General rules

All analog control cables and the cable used for the frequency input must be shielded.

Use a double-shielded twisted pair cable (Figure a, for example, JAMAK by Draka NK Cables) for analog signals. Employ one individually shielded pair for each signal. Do not use common return for different analog signals.

---

A double-shielded cable is the best alternative for low-voltage digital signals, but a single-shielded or unshielded twisted multipair cable (Figure b) is also usable. However, for frequency input, always use a shielded cable.



Run analog and digital signals in separate cables.

Relay-controlled signals, providing their voltage does not exceed 48 V, can be run in the same cables as digital input signals. It is recommended that the relay-controlled signals are run as twisted pairs.

Never mix 24 V DC and 115/230 V AC signals in the same cable.

### ■ Relay cable

The cable type with braided metallic screen (for example, ÖLFLEX by LAPPKABEL) has been tested and approved by ABB.

### ■ Control panel cable

In remote use, the cable connecting the control panel to the drive must not exceed 3 m (10 ft). The cable type tested and approved by ABB is used in control panel option kits.

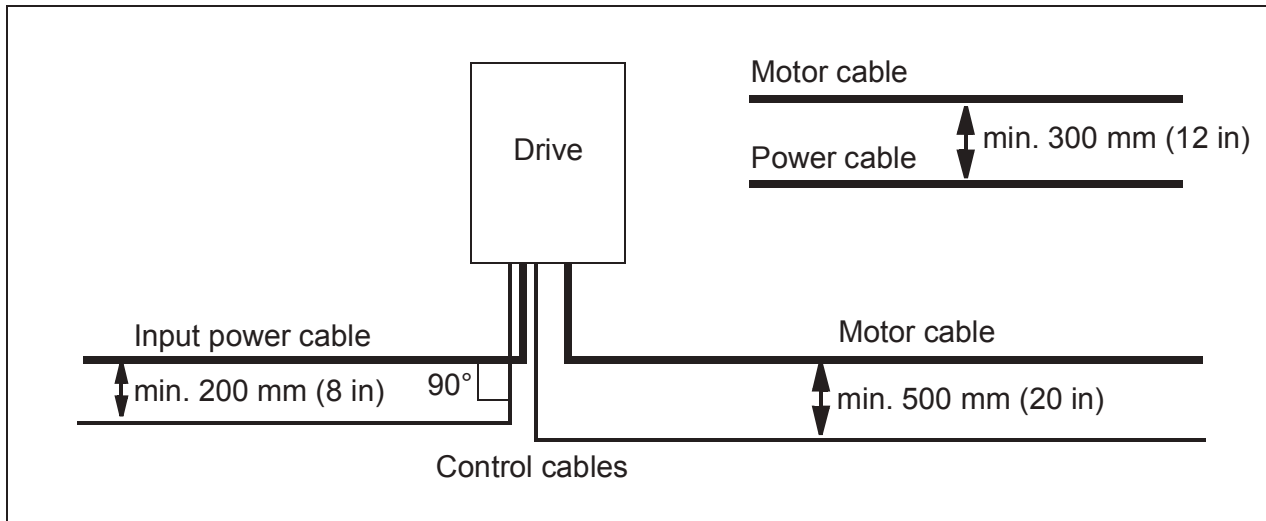
## Routing the cables

Route the motor cable away from other cable routes. Motor cables of several drives can be run in parallel installed next to each other. It is recommended that the motor cable, input power cable and control cables are installed on separate trays. Avoid long parallel runs of motor cables with other cables to decrease electromagnetic interference caused by the rapid changes in the drive output voltage.

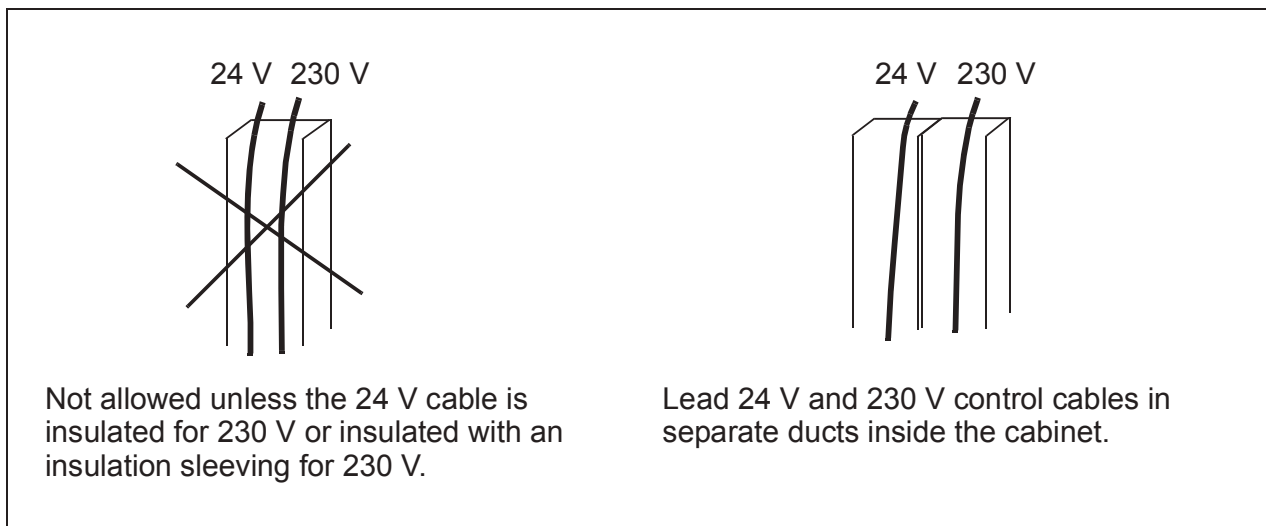
Where control cables must cross power cables make sure that they are arranged at an angle as near to 90 degrees as possible.

The cable trays must have good electrical bonding to each other and to the grounding electrodes. Aluminium tray systems can be used to improve local equalizing of potential.

A diagram of the cable routing is shown below.



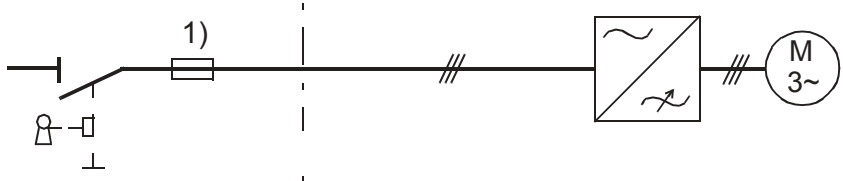
### ■ Control cable ducts



## Protecting the drive, input power cable, motor and motor cable in short-circuit situations and against thermal overload

### ■ Protecting the drive and input power cable in short-circuit situations

Arrange the protection according to the following guidelines.

| Circuit diagram  |             |       | Short-circuit protection                                       |
|--|-------------|-------|--|
| Distribution board   | Input cable | Drive | Protect the drive and input cable with fuses. See footnote 1). |
|  |             |       |  |

1) Size the fuses according to instructions given in chapter *Technical data* on page 335. The fuses protect the input cable in short-circuit situations, restrict drive damage and prevent damage to adjoining equipment in case of a short circuit inside the drive.

### ■ Protecting the motor and motor cable in short-circuit situations

The drive protects the motor and motor cable in a short-circuit situation when the motor cable is dimensioned according to the nominal current of the drive. No additional protection devices are needed.

### ■ Protecting the drive, motor cable and input power cable against thermal overload

The drive protects itself and the input and motor cables against thermal overload when the cables are dimensioned according to the nominal current of the drive. No additional thermal protection devices are needed.



**WARNING!** If the drive is connected to multiple motors, a separate thermal overload switch must be used for protecting each cable and motor. These devices may require a separate fuse to cut off the short-circuit current.

### ■ Protecting the motor against thermal overload

According to regulations, the motor must be protected against thermal overload and the current must be switched off when overload is detected. The drive includes a motor thermal protection function that protects the motor and switches off the current when necessary. It is also possible to connect a motor temperature measurement to the drive. The user can tune both the thermal model and the temperature measurement function further by parameters.



The most common temperature sensors are:

- motor sizes IEC180...225: thermal switch (for example Klixon)
- motor sizes IEC200...250 and larger: PTC or Pt100.


For more information on the thermal model, see section *Motor thermal protection* on page 135. For more information on the temperature measurement function, see section *Motor temperature measurement through the standard I/O* on page 145.

## Using residual current devices (RCD) with the drive

ACS310-03x drives are suitable to be used with residual current devices of Type B. Other measures for protection in case of direct or indirect contact, such as separation from the environment by double or reinforced insulation or isolation from the supply system by a transformer, can also be applied.

## Implementing a bypass connection

---

 **WARNING!** Never connect the supply power to the drive output terminals U2, V2 and W2. Power line voltage applied to the output can result in permanent damage to the drive.

---

If frequent bypassing is required, employ mechanically connected switches or contactors to ensure that the motor terminals are not connected to the AC power line and drive output terminals simultaneously.

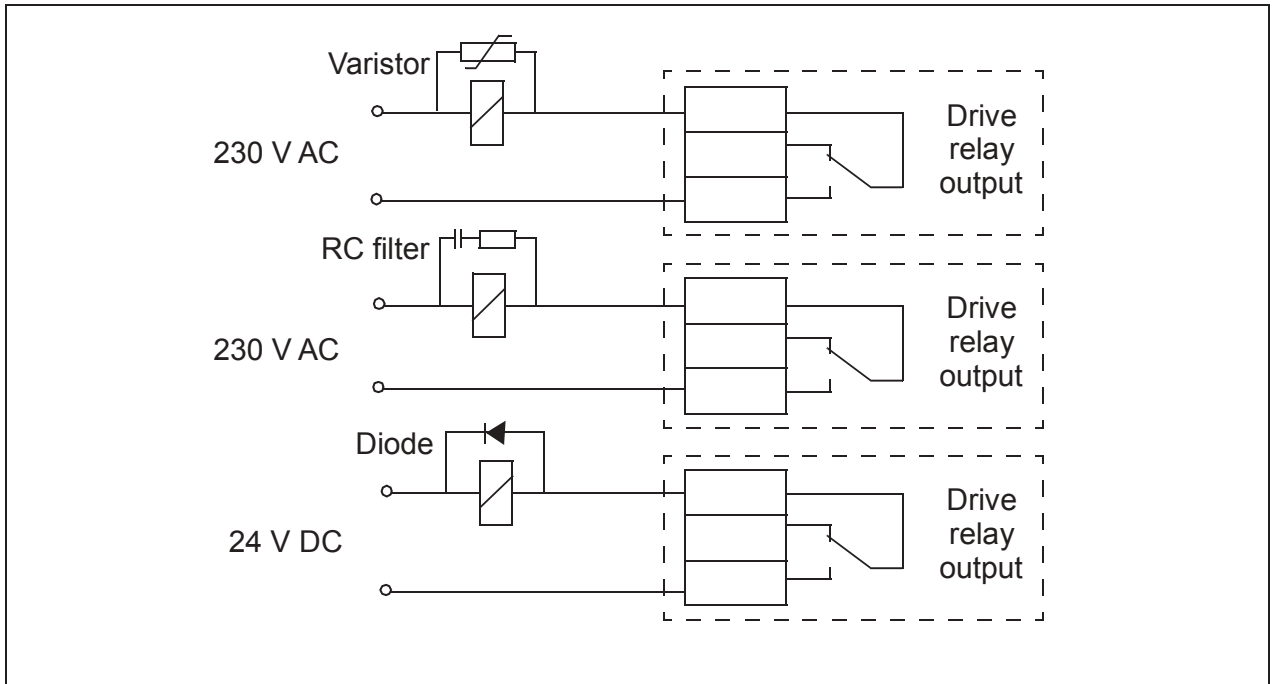
## Protecting the contacts of relay outputs

Inductive loads (relays, contactors, motors) cause voltage transients when switched off.

Equip inductive loads with noise attenuating circuits (varistors, RC filters [AC] or diodes [DC]) in order to minimize the EMC emission at switch-off. If not suppressed, the disturbances may connect capacitively or inductively to other conductors in the control cable and form a risk of malfunction in other parts of the system.

---

Install the protective component as close to the inductive load as possible. Do not install protective components at the I/O terminal block.



www.nicsanat.com

021-87700210

NIC SANAT

نیک صنعت



# 6

## Electrical installation

---

### What this chapter contains

The chapter tells how to check the insulation of the assembly and the compatibility with IT (ungrounded) and corner-grounded TN systems as well as connect power cables, control cables and embedded fieldbus.



**WARNING!** The work described in this chapter may only be carried out by a qualified electrician. Follow the instructions in chapter [Safety](#) on page 15. Ignoring the safety instructions can cause injury or death.

**Make sure that the drive is disconnected from the input power during installation. If the drive is already connected to the input power, wait for 5 minutes after disconnecting the input power.**

---

### Checking the insulation of the assembly

#### ■ Drive

Do not make any voltage tolerance or insulation resistance tests (for example, hi-pot or megger) on any part of the drive as testing can damage the drive. Every drive has been tested for insulation between the main circuit and the chassis at the factory. Also, there are voltage-limiting circuits inside the drive which cut down the testing voltage automatically.

#### ■ Input power cable

Check the insulation of the input power cable according to local regulations before connecting to the drive.

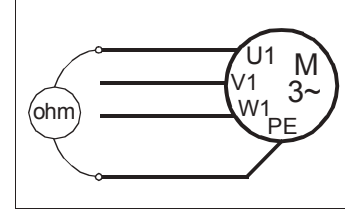
---



## ■ Motor and motor cable

Check the insulation of the motor and motor cable as follows:

1. Check that the motor cable is connected to the motor and disconnected from the drive output terminals U2, V2 and W2.
2. Measure the insulation resistance between each phase conductor and the Protective Earth conductor using a measuring voltage of 500 V DC. The insulation resistance of an ABB motor must exceed 100 Mohm (reference value at 25 °C or 77 °F). For the insulation resistance of other motors, please consult the manufacturer's instructions.



**Note:** Moisture inside the motor casing reduces the insulation resistance. If moisture is suspected, dry the motor and repeat the measurement.

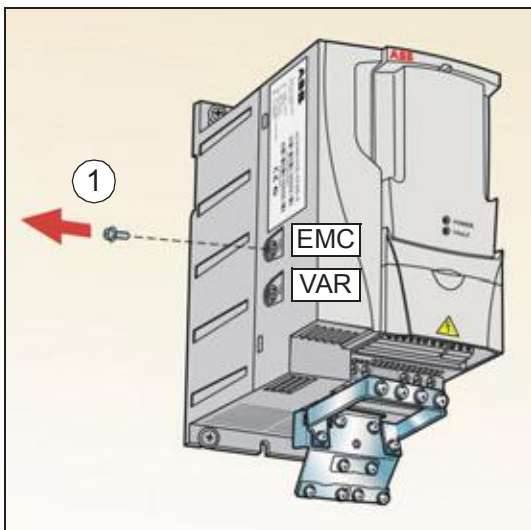
## Checking the compatibility with IT (ungrounded) and corner-grounded TN systems

**WARNING!** Disconnect the internal EMC filter when installing the drive on an IT system (an ungrounded power system or a high-resistance-grounded [over 30 ohms] power system), otherwise the system is connected to ground potential through the EMC filter capacitors. This may cause danger or damage the drive.

Disconnect the internal EMC filter when installing the drive on a corner-grounded TN system, otherwise the drive will be damaged.

**Note:** When the internal EMC filter is disconnected, the drive is not EMC compatible.

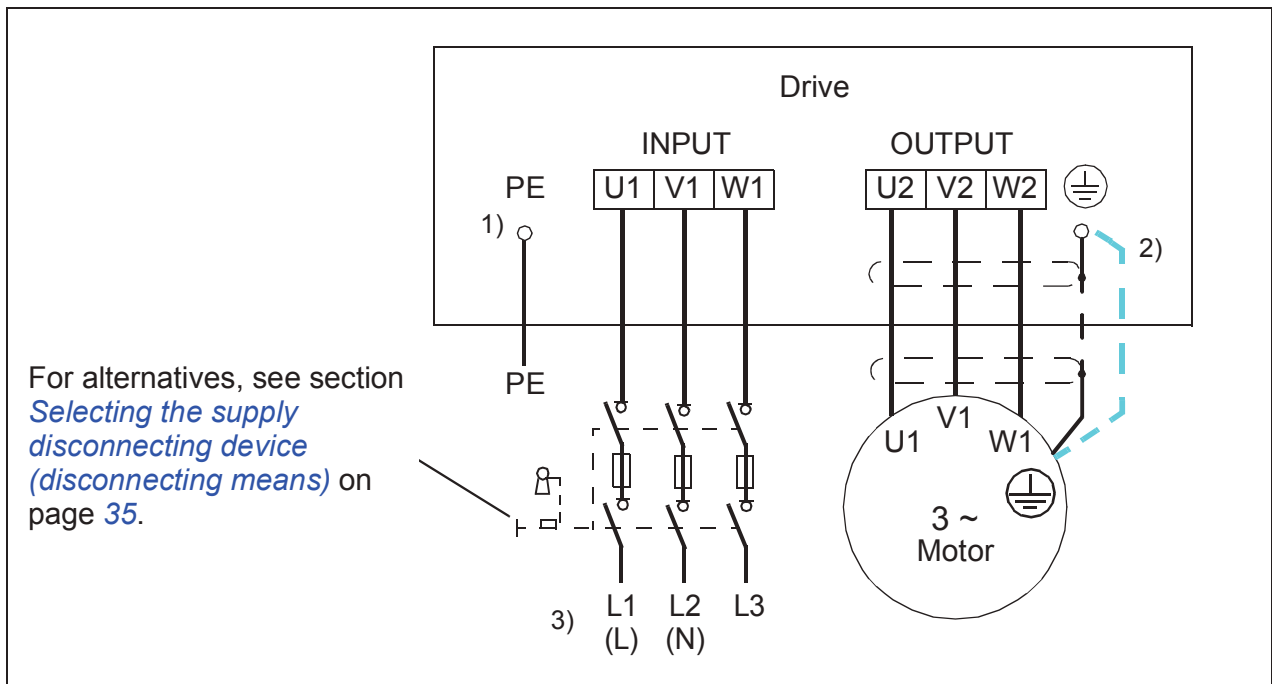
1. If you have an IT (ungrounded) or corner-grounded TN system, disconnect the internal EMC filter by removing the EMC screw. For 3-phase U-type drives (with type designation ACS310-03U-), the EMC screw is already removed at the factory and replaced by a plastic one.



**Note:** In frame size R4 the EMC screw is located to the right of terminal W2.

## Connecting the power cables

### ■ Connection diagram



- 1) Ground the other end of the PE conductor at the distribution board.
- 2) Use a separate grounding cable if the conductivity of the cable shield is insufficient (smaller than the conductivity of the phase conductor) and there is no symmetrically constructed grounding conductor in the cable. See section *Selecting the power cables* on page 36.
- 3) L and N are connection markings for 1-phase supply.

### Note:

Do not use an asymmetrically constructed motor cable.

If there is a symmetrically constructed grounding conductor in the motor cable in addition to the conductive shield, connect the grounding conductor to the grounding terminal at the drive and motor ends.

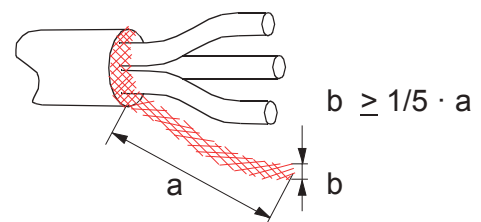
For the 1-phase supply, connect power to U1 (L) and V1 (N) terminals.

Route the motor cable, input power cable and control cables separately. For more information, see section *Routing the cables* on page 39.

### Grounding of the motor cable shield at the motor end

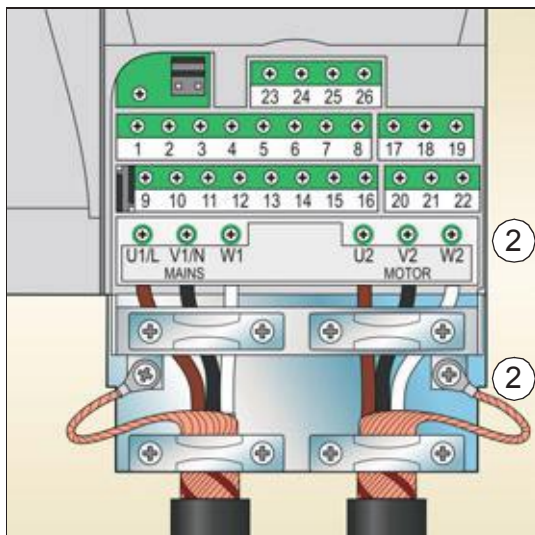
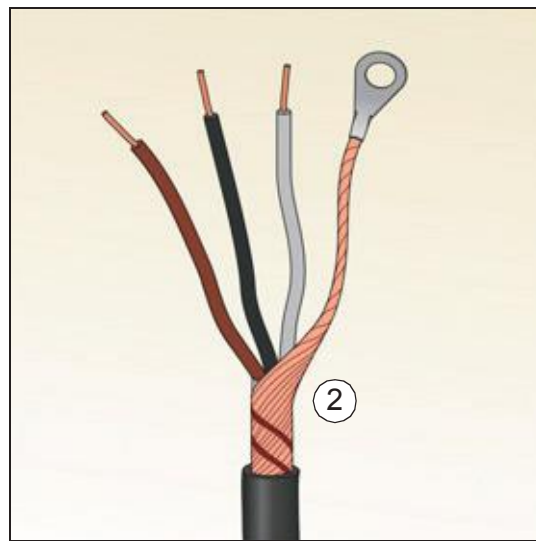
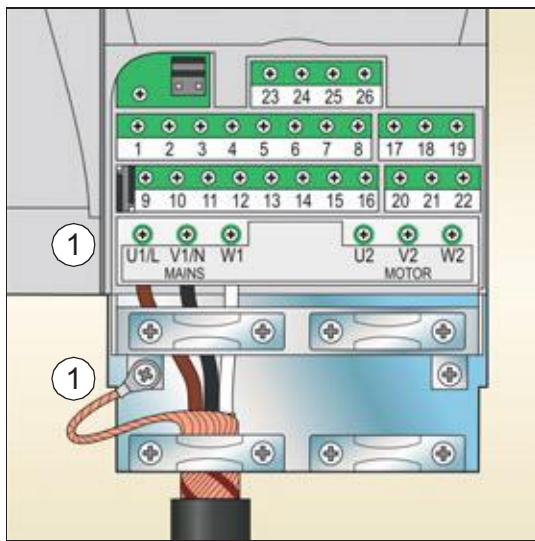
For minimum radio frequency interference:

- ground the cable by twisting the shield as follows: flattened width  $\geq 1/5 \cdot \text{length}$
- or ground the cable shield 360 degrees at the lead-through of the motor terminal box.



## ■ Connection procedure

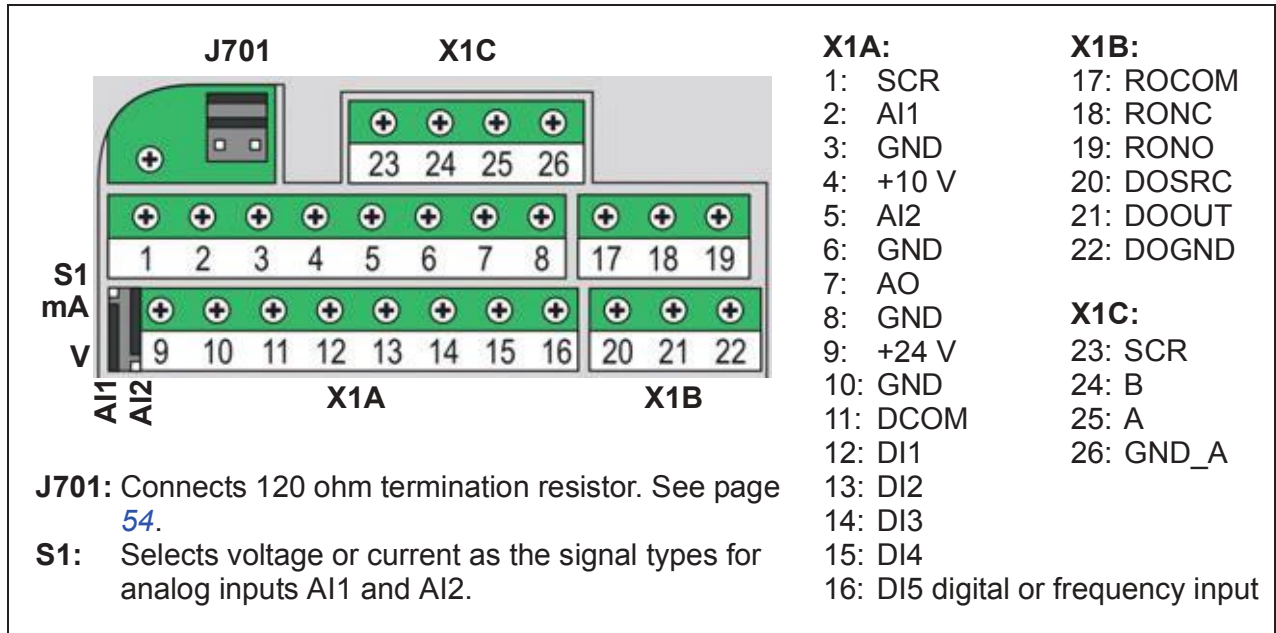
1. Fasten the grounding conductor (PE) of the input power cable under the grounding clamp. Connect the phase conductors to the U1, V1 and W1 terminals. Use a tightening torque of 0.8 N·m (7 lbf·in) for frame sizes R0...R2, 1.7 N·m (15 lbf·in) for R3, and 2.5 N·m (22 lbf·in) for R4.
2. Strip the motor cable and twist the shield to form as short a pigtail as possible. Fasten the twisted shield under the grounding clamp. Connect the phase conductors to the U2, V2 and W2 terminals. Use a tightening torque of 0.8 N·m (7 lbf·in) for frame sizes R0...R2, 1.7 N·m (15 lbf·in) for R3, and 2.5 N·m (22 lbf·in) for R4.
3. Secure the cables outside the drive mechanically.



## Connecting the control cables

### I/O terminals

The figure below shows the I/O terminals. Tightening torque is 0.4 N·m (3.5 lbf·in).

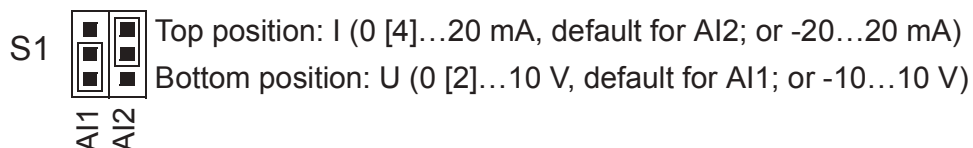


**WARNING!** All ELV (Extra Low Voltage) circuits connected to the drive must be used within a zone of equipotential bonding, i.e. within a zone where all simultaneously accessible conductive parts are electrically connected to prevent hazardous voltages appearing between them. This is accomplished by a proper factory grounding.

The terminals on the control board as well as on the optional modules attachable to the board fulfil the Protective Extra Low Voltage (PELV) requirements stated in EN 50178, provided that the external circuits connected to the terminals also fulfil the requirements and the installation site is below 2000 m (6562 ft).

### Voltage and current selection for analog inputs

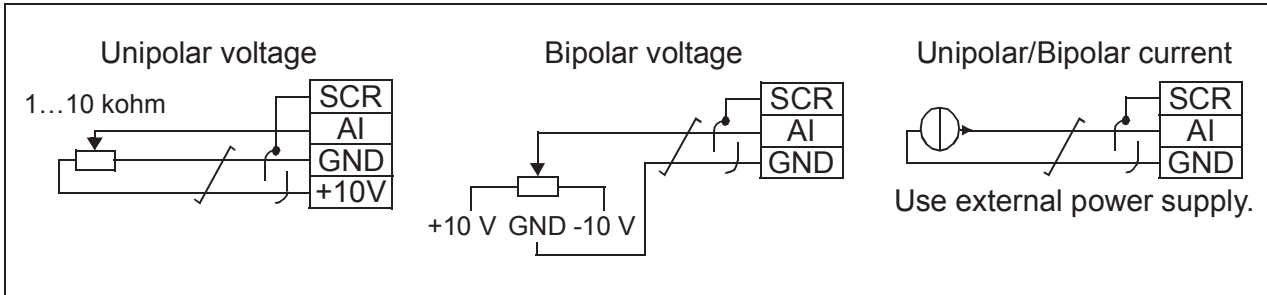
Switch S1 selects voltage (0 [2]...10 V / -10...10 V) or current (0 [4]...20 mA / -20...20 mA) as the signal types for analog inputs AI1 and AI2. The factory settings are unipolar voltage for AI1 (0 [2]...10 V) and unipolar current for AI2 (0 [4]...20 mA), which correspond to the default usage in the application macros. The switch is located to the left of I/O terminal 9 (see the I/O terminal figure above).





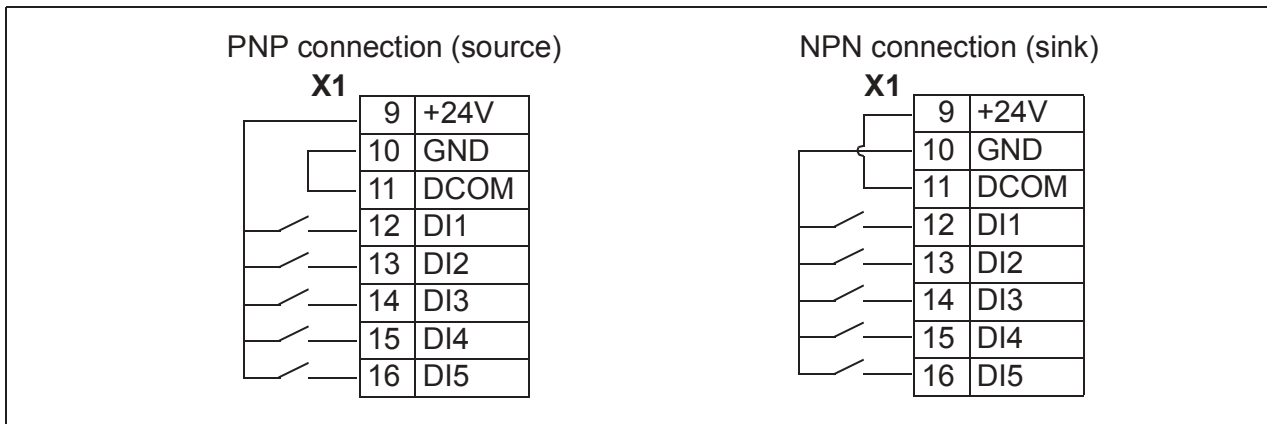
## Voltage and current connection for analog inputs

Bipolar voltage (-10...10 V) and current (-20...20 mA) are also possible. If a bipolar connection is used instead of a unipolar one, see section [Programmable analog inputs](#) on page 124 for how to set parameters accordingly.



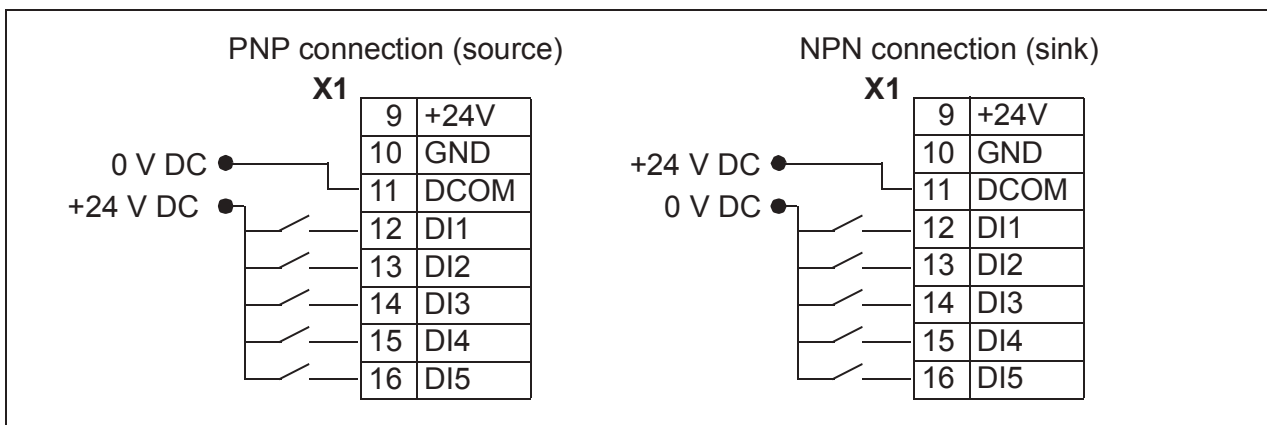
## PNP and NPN configuration for digital inputs

You can wire the digital input terminals in either a PNP or NPN configuration.



## External power supply for digital inputs

For using an external +24 V supply for the digital inputs, see the figure below.



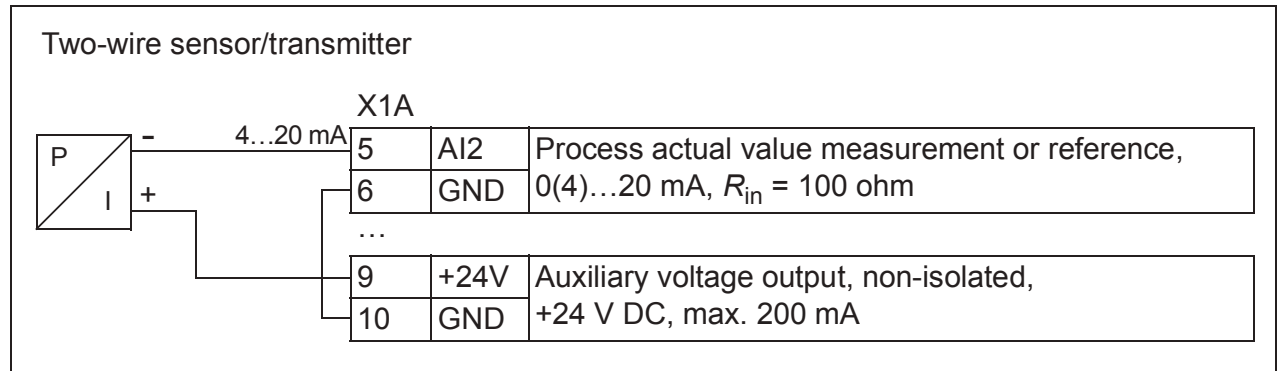
## Frequency input

If DI5 is used as a frequency input, see section [Frequency input](#) on page 127 for how to set parameters accordingly.

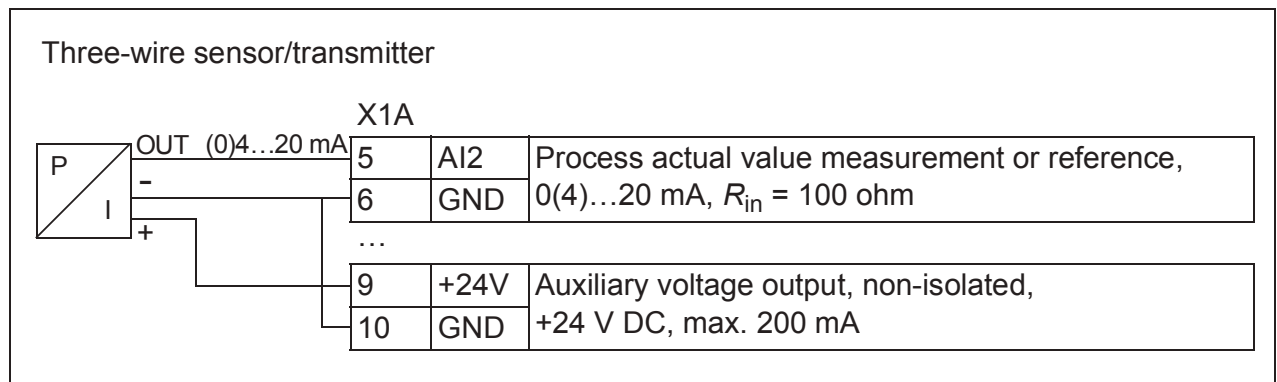
## Connection examples of two-wire and three-wire sensors

Hand/Auto, PID control, PFC control and SPFC control macros (see section [Application macros](#) on page 101) use analog input 2 (AI2). The macro wiring diagrams on these pages use an externally powered sensor (connections not shown). The figures below gives example of a connections using a two-wire or three-wire sensor/transmitter supplied by the drive auxiliary voltage output.

**Note:** Maximum capability of the auxiliary 24 V (200 mA) output must not be exceeded.



**Note:** The sensor is supplied through its current output and the drive feeds the supply voltage (+24 V). Thus the output signal must be 4...20 mA, not 0...20 mA.

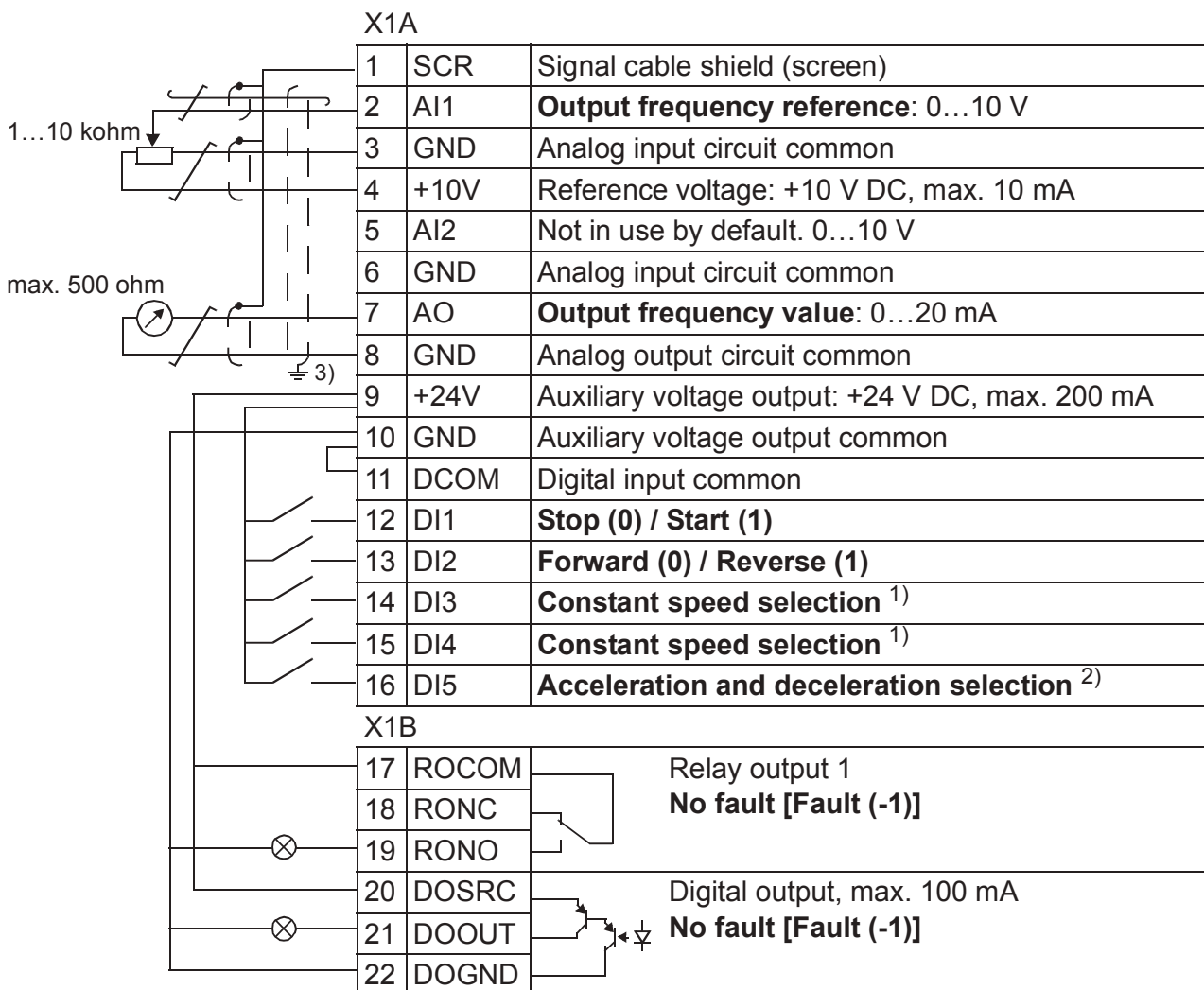


## ■ Default I/O connection diagram

The default connection of the control signals depends on the application macro in use, which is selected with parameter **9902 APPLIC MACRO**.

The default macro is the ABB standard macro. It provides a general purpose I/O configuration with three constant speeds. Parameter values are the default values given in section **Default values with different macros** on page 165. For information on other macros, see chapter **Application macros** on page 101.

The default I/O connections for the ABB standard macro are given in the figure below.



<sup>1)</sup> See parameter group **12 CONSTANT SPEEDS**:

| DI3 | DI4 | Operation (parameter)                 |
|-----|-----|---------------------------------------|
| 0   | 0   | Set speed through AI1                 |
| 1   | 0   | Speed 1 ( <b>1202 CONST SPEED 1</b> ) |
| 0   | 1   | Speed 2 ( <b>1203 CONST SPEED 2</b> ) |
| 1   | 1   | Speed 3 ( <b>1204 CONST SPEED 3</b> ) |

<sup>2)</sup> 0 = ramp times according to parameters **2202** and **2203**.

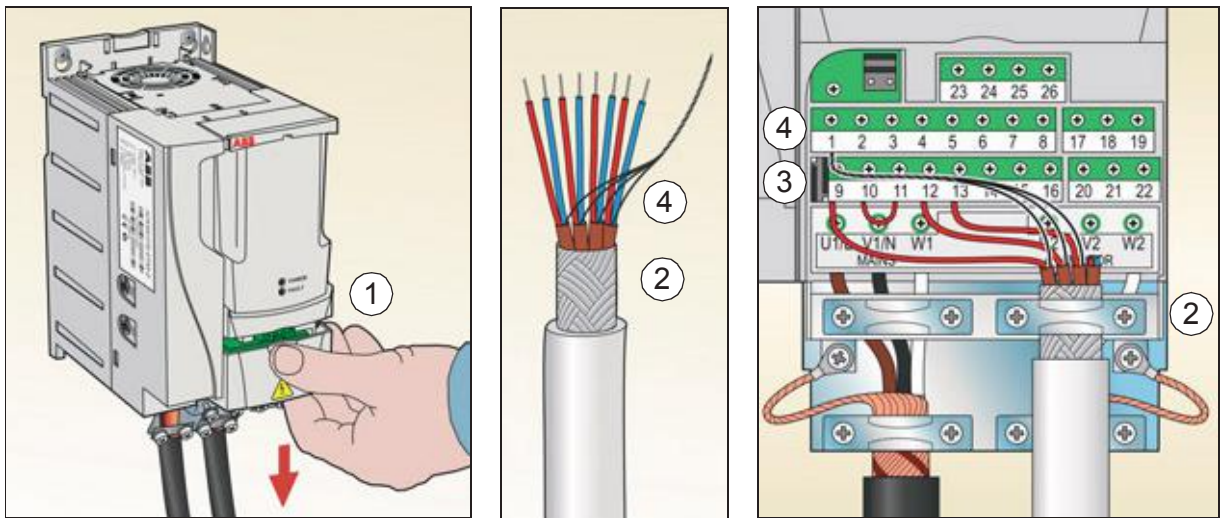
1 = ramp times according to parameters **2205** and **2206**.

<sup>3)</sup> 360 degree grounding under a clamp.

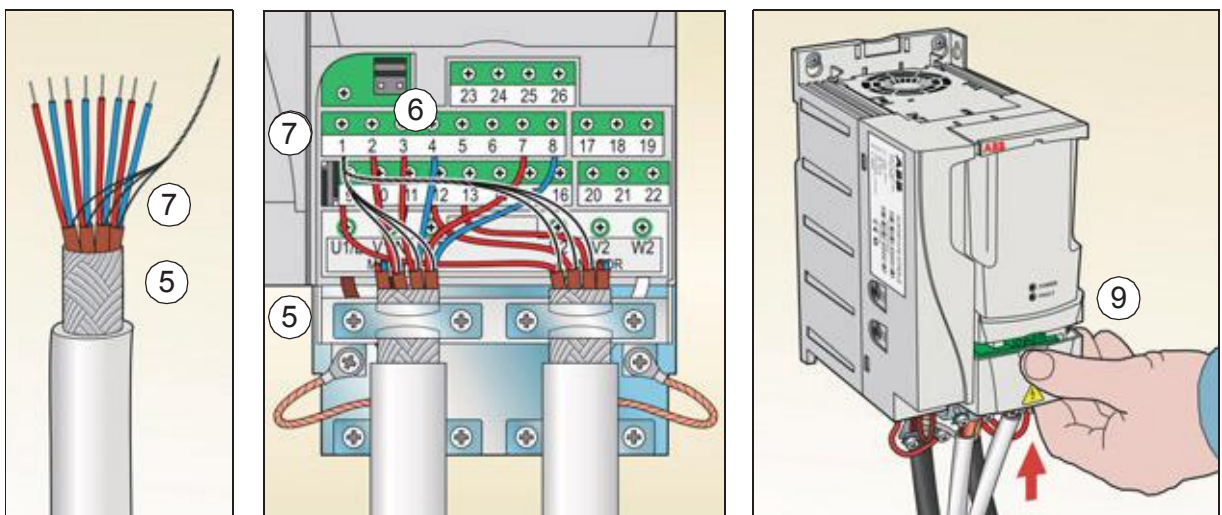
Tightening torque: 0.4 N·m (3.5 lbf·in).

## ■ Connection procedure

1. Remove the terminal cover by simultaneously pushing the recess and sliding the cover off the frame.
2. *Digital signals:* Strip the outer insulation of the digital signal cable 360 degrees and ground the bare shield under the clamp.
3. Connect the conductors of the cable to the appropriate terminals. Use a tightening torque of 0.4 N·m (3.5 lbf·in).
4. For double-shielded cables, twist also the grounding conductors of each pair in the cable together and connect the bundle to the SCR terminal (terminal 1).



5. *Analog signals:* Strip the outer insulation of the analog signal cable 360 degrees and ground the bare shield under the clamp.
6. Connect the conductors to the appropriate terminals. Use a tightening torque of 0.4 N·m (3.5 lbf·in).
7. Twist the grounding conductors of each pair in the analog signal cable together and connect the bundle to the SCR terminal (terminal 1).
8. Secure the connected cables outside the drive mechanically.
9. Slide the terminal cover back in place.



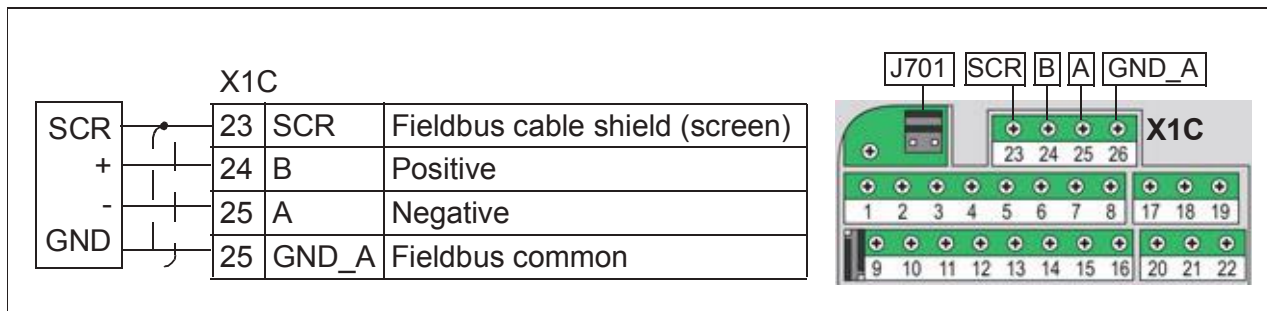
## Connecting the embedded fieldbus

Embedded fieldbus is connected to the drive with EIA-485 or RS-232.

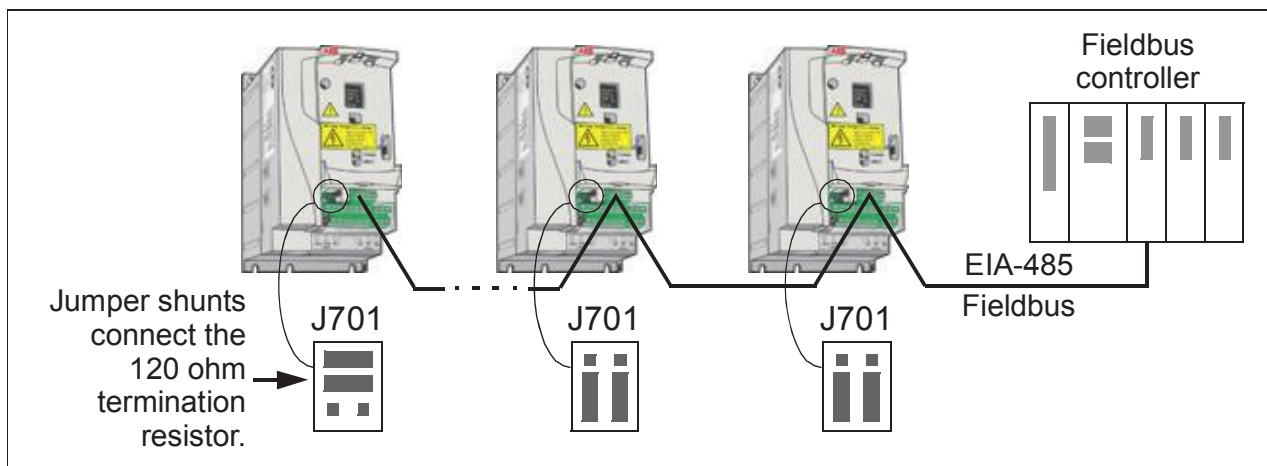
### ■ Connection diagram

#### EIA-485

The figure below shows the fieldbus connection.

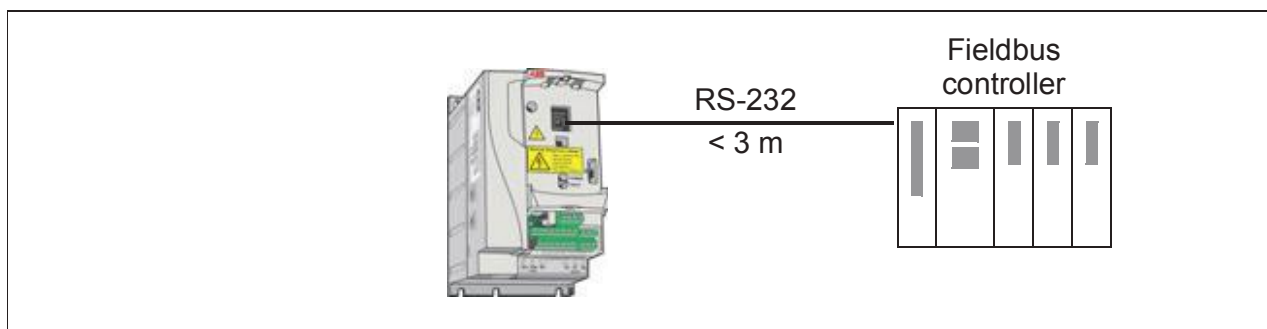


Terminate the EIA-485 bus with a 120 ohm resistor at the end of the network by setting the jumper J701 shunts as in the figure below.



#### RS-232

Plug a communication cable into the control panel connection X2. The cable must be shorter than 3 meters.



# 7

## Installation checklist

### Checking the installation

Check the mechanical and electrical installation of the drive before start-up. Go through the checklist below together with another person. Read chapter [Safety](#) on page [15](#) of this manual before you work on the drive.

| Check  |
|--|
| <b>MECHANICAL INSTALLATION</b>   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The ambient operating conditions are within allowed limits. (See <a href="#">Mechanical installation: Checking the installation site</a> on page <a href="#">29</a> as well as <a href="#">Technical data: Losses, cooling data and noise</a> on page <a href="#">345</a> and <a href="#">Ambient conditions</a> on page <a href="#">351</a> .) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The drive is fixed properly on an even vertical non-flammable wall. (See <a href="#">Mechanical installation</a> on page <a href="#">29</a> .)  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The cooling air flows freely. (See <a href="#">Mechanical installation: Free space around the drive</a> on page <a href="#">30</a> .)   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The motor and the driven equipment are ready for start. (See <a href="#">Planning the electrical installation: Checking the compatibility of the motor and drive</a> on page <a href="#">36</a> as well as <a href="#">Technical data: Motor connection data</a> on page <a href="#">348</a> .)   |
| <b>ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION</b> (See <a href="#">Planning the electrical installation</a> on page <a href="#">35</a> and <a href="#">Electrical installation</a> on page <a href="#">45</a> .)  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> For ungrounded and corner-grounded systems: The internal EMC filter is disconnected (EMC screw removed).  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The capacitors are reformed if the drive has been stored over a year.   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The drive is grounded properly.   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The input power voltage matches the drive nominal input voltage.  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The input power connections at U1, V1 and W1 are OK and tightened with the correct torque.  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Appropriate input power fuses and disconnectors are installed.  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The motor connections at U2, V2 and W2 are OK and tightened with the correct torque.  |



### Check

- The motor cable, input power cable and control cables are routed separately.
- The external control (I/O) connections are OK.
- The input power voltage cannot be applied to the output of the drive (with a bypass connection).
- Terminal cover and, for NEMA 1, hood and connection box, are in place.

# 8

## Start-up and control with I/O

---

### What this chapter contains

The chapter tells how to:

- perform the start-up
- start, stop, change the direction of the motor rotation and adjust the speed of the motor through the I/O interface

Using the control panel to do these tasks is explained briefly in this chapter. For details on how to use the control panel, refer to chapter [Control panels](#) on page 67.

### How to start up the drive

---



**WARNING!** The start-up may only be carried out by a qualified electrician.

The safety instructions given in chapter [Safety](#) on page 15 must be followed during the start-up procedure.

The drive starts up automatically at power up if the external run command is on and the drive is in the remote control mode.

Check that the starting of the motor does not cause any danger. **De-couple the driven machine** if there is a risk of damage in case of incorrect direction of rotation.

---

**Note:** By default, parameter [1611 PARAMETER VIEW](#) is set to 2 ([SHORT VIEW](#)), and you cannot see all actual signals and parameters. To be able to view them, set parameter [1611 PARAMETER VIEW](#) to 3 ([LONG VIEW](#)).

---





- Check the installation. See the checklist in chapter *Installation checklist* on page 55.

How you start up the drive depends on the control panel you have, if any.

- **If you have no control panel**, follow the instructions given in section *How to start up the drive without a control panel* on page 58.
- **If you have a Basic control panel (ACS-CP-S)**, follow the instructions given in section *How to perform a manual start-up* on page 59.
- **If you have an Assistant control panel (ACS-CP-A or ACS-CP-D)**, you can either run the Start-up assistant (see section *How to perform a guided start-up* on page 62) or perform a manual start-up (see section *How to perform a manual start-up* on page 59).

The Start-up assistant, which is included in the Assistant control panel only, guides you through all essential settings to be done. In the manual start-up, the drive gives no guidance; you go through the very basic settings by following the instructions given in section *How to perform a manual start-up* on page 59.

## ■ How to start up the drive without a control panel


| POWER-UP                        |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/>        | Apply input power and wait for a moment.                                     |
| <input type="checkbox"/>        | Check that the red LED is not lit and the green LED is lit but not blinking. |
| The drive is now ready for use. |  |

















## How to perform a manual start-up

For the manual start-up, you can use the Basic control panel or the Assistant control panel. The instructions below are valid for both control panels, but the displays shown are the Basic control panel displays, unless the instruction applies to the Assistant control panel only.

Before you start, ensure that you have the motor nameplate data on hand.

| POWER-UP  |  |         |         |      |       |       |       |  |   |    |    |       |   |       |       |      |       |    |    |      |      |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |  |
|---|--|---------|---------|------|-------|-------|-------|--|---|----|----|-------|---|-------|-------|------|-------|----|----|------|------|------|--|--|-------|----|----|------|----|------|--|--|-------|----|----|------|----|------|--|--|-------|----|----|------|----|------|--|--|-------|----|----|------|----|------|--|--|-------|----|----|------|----|------|--|--|--|
| <p><input type="checkbox"/> Apply input power.</p> <p>The Basic control panel powers up into the Output mode.</p> <p>The Assistant control panel asks if you want to run the Start-up assistant. If you press , the Start-up assistant is not run, and you can continue with manual start-up in a similar manner as described below for the Basic control panel.</p>   | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> <p>REM <span style="float: right; font-size: 2em;">0.0</span> Hz</p> <p>OUTPUT <span style="float: right;">FWD</span></p> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>REM CHOICE</p> <p>Do you want to use the start-up assistant?</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Yes</p> <p style="text-align: center;">No</p> <p style="text-align: center;">EXIT   00:00   OK</p> </div>  |         |         |      |       |       |       |  |   |    |    |       |   |       |       |      |       |    |    |      |      |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |  |
| MANUAL ENTRY OF START-UP DATA (parameter group 99)  |  |         |         |      |       |       |       |  |   |    |    |       |   |       |       |      |       |    |    |      |      |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |  |
| <p><input type="checkbox"/> If you have an Assistant control panel, select the language (the Basic control panel does not support languages). See parameter <a href="#">9901</a> for the values of the available language alternatives.</p> <p>For instructions on how to set parameters with the Assistant control panel, see section <a href="#">Assistant control panel</a> on page <a href="#">80</a>.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Enter the motor data from the motor nameplate:</p>   | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> <p>REM PAR EDIT</p> <p>9901 LANGUAGE</p> <p style="text-align: center; font-size: 1.5em;">ENGLISH</p> <p>[0]</p> <p style="text-align: center;">CANCEL   00:00   SAVE</p> </div> <p><b>Note:</b> Set the motor data to exactly the same value as on the motor nameplate. For example, if the nominal motor speed is 1470 rpm on the nameplate, setting the value of parameter <a href="#">9908 MOTOR NOM SPEED</a> to 1500 rpm results in the wrong operation of the drive.</p> |         |         |      |       |       |       |  |   |    |    |       |   |       |       |      |       |    |    |      |      |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |  |
| <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 5px;"> <p style="text-align: center; font-weight: bold; font-size: 1.2em;">ABB Motors</p> <p style="text-align: center;">3 ~ motor M2AA 200 MLA 4</p> <p style="text-align: center;">IEC 200 M/L 55</p> <p style="text-align: center;">No</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; text-align: center;"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2"></th> <th colspan="2">Ins.cl.</th> <th colspan="2">F</th> <th colspan="2">IP 55</th> </tr> <tr> <th>V</th> <th>Hz</th> <th>kW</th> <th>r/min</th> <th>A</th> <th>cos φ</th> <th>IA/IN</th> <th>tE/s</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>690 Y</td> <td>50</td> <td>30</td> <td>1475</td> <td>32.5</td> <td>0.83</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>400 D</td> <td>50</td> <td>30</td> <td>1475</td> <td>56</td> <td>0.83</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>660 Y</td> <td>50</td> <td>30</td> <td>1470</td> <td>34</td> <td>0.83</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr style="background-color: #e0e0e0;"> <td>380 D</td> <td>50</td> <td>30</td> <td>1470</td> <td>59</td> <td>0.83</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>415 D</td> <td>50</td> <td>30</td> <td>1475</td> <td>54</td> <td>0.83</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>440 D</td> <td>60</td> <td>35</td> <td>1770</td> <td>59</td> <td>0.83</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p style="text-align: center;">Cat. no 3GAA 202 001 - ADA</p> <p style="text-align: center;">6312/C3 6210/C3 180 kg</p> <p style="text-align: center;">IEC 34-1</p> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block; margin-left: 10px;"> <p style="text-align: center;">380 V<br/>supply<br/>voltage</p> </div> |  |         | Ins.cl. |      | F     |       | IP 55 |  | V | Hz | kW | r/min | A | cos φ | IA/IN | tE/s | 690 Y | 50 | 30 | 1475 | 32.5 | 0.83 |  |  | 400 D | 50 | 30 | 1475 | 56 | 0.83 |  |  | 660 Y | 50 | 30 | 1470 | 34 | 0.83 |  |  | 380 D | 50 | 30 | 1470 | 59 | 0.83 |  |  | 415 D | 50 | 30 | 1475 | 54 | 0.83 |  |  | 440 D | 60 | 35 | 1770 | 59 | 0.83 |  |  | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 5px;"> <p>REM</p> <p style="font-size: 2em; text-align: center;">9905</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PAR FWD</p> </div> |
|   |  | Ins.cl. |         | F    |       | IP 55 |       |  |   |    |    |       |   |       |       |      |       |    |    |      |      |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |  |
| V   | Hz   | kW      | r/min   | A    | cos φ | IA/IN | tE/s  |  |   |    |    |       |   |       |       |      |       |    |    |      |      |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |  |
| 690 Y   | 50   | 30      | 1475    | 32.5 | 0.83  |       |       |  |   |    |    |       |   |       |       |      |       |    |    |      |      |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |  |
| 400 D   | 50   | 30      | 1475    | 56   | 0.83  |       |       |  |   |    |    |       |   |       |       |      |       |    |    |      |      |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |  |
| 660 Y   | 50   | 30      | 1470    | 34   | 0.83  |       |       |  |   |    |    |       |   |       |       |      |       |    |    |      |      |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |  |
| 380 D   | 50   | 30      | 1470    | 59   | 0.83  |       |       |  |   |    |    |       |   |       |       |      |       |    |    |      |      |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |  |
| 415 D   | 50   | 30      | 1475    | 54   | 0.83  |       |       |  |   |    |    |       |   |       |       |      |       |    |    |      |      |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |  |
| 440 D   | 60   | 35      | 1770    | 59   | 0.83  |       |       |  |   |    |    |       |   |       |       |      |       |    |    |      |      |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• nominal motor voltage (parameter <a href="#">9905</a>)</li> </ul> <p>Setting of parameter <a href="#">9905</a> is shown below as an example of parameter setting with the Basic control panel. You find more detailed instructions in section <a href="#">Basic control panel</a> on page <a href="#">69</a>.</p>  |  |         |         |      |       |       |       |  |   |    |    |       |   |       |       |      |       |    |    |      |      |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |       |    |    |      |    |      |  |  |  |

1. To go to the Main menu, press  if the bottom line shows OUTPUT; otherwise press  repeatedly until you see MENU at the bottom.
2. Press keys /  until you see "PAR", and press .
3. Find the appropriate parameter group with keys /  and press .
4. Find the appropriate parameter in the group with keys / .
5. Press and hold  for about two seconds until the parameter value is shown with **SET** under the value.
6. Change the value with keys / . The value changes faster while you keep the key pressed down.
7. Save the parameter value by pressing .

Enter the rest of the motor data:










- nominal motor current (parameter [9906](#))  
Allowed range:  $0.2 \dots 2.0 \cdot I_{2N}$  A
- nominal motor frequency (parameter [9907](#))
- nominal motor speed (parameter [9908](#))
- nominal motor power (parameter [9909](#))

- Select the application macro (parameter [9902](#)) according to how the control cables are connected. The default value 1 (**ABB STANDARD**) is suitable in most cases.

|     |                  |      |                |
|-----|------------------|------|----------------|
| REM | rEF              | MENU | FWD            |
| REM | -01-             | PAR  | FWD            |
| REM | 9901             | PAR  | FWD            |
| REM | 9905             | PAR  | FWD            |
| REM | 400 <sup>V</sup> | PAR  | <b>SET</b> FWD |
| REM | 380 <sup>V</sup> | PAR  | <b>SET</b> FWD |
| REM | 9905             | PAR  | FWD            |
| REM | 9906             | PAR  | FWD            |
| REM | 9907             | PAR  | FWD            |
| REM | 9908             | PAR  | FWD            |
| REM | 9909             | PAR  | FWD            |
| REM | 9902             | PAR  | FWD            |



### DIRECTION OF THE MOTOR ROTATION

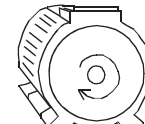
- Check the direction of the motor rotation.
  - If the drive is in remote control (REM shown on the left), switch to local control by pressing .
  - To go to the Main menu, press  if the bottom line shows OUTPUT; otherwise press  repeatedly until you see MENU at the bottom.
  - Press keys / until you see “rEF” and press .
  - Increase the frequency reference from zero to a small value with key .
  - Press  to start the motor.
  - Check that the actual direction of the motor is the same as indicated on the display (FWD means forward and REV reverse).
  - Press  to stop the motor.

To change the direction of the motor rotation:

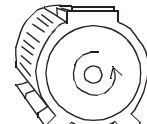
- If parameter **9914 PHASE INVERSION** is not visible, first set parameter **1611 PARAMETER VIEW** to 3 (**LONG VIEW**).
- Invert the phases by changing the value of parameter **9914** to the opposite, ie from 0 (**NO**) to 1 (**YES**), or vice versa.
- Verify your work by applying input power and repeating the check as described above. Set parameter **1611** back to 2 (**SHORT VIEW**).

LOC

XXX Hz  
SET FWD



forward direction



reverse direction

LOC

1611  
PAR FWD

LOC

9914  
PAR FWD

### FINAL CHECK

- Check that the drive state is OK.
 

**Basic control panel:** Check that there are no faults or alarms shown on the display. If you want to check the LEDs on the front of the drive, switch first to remote control (otherwise a fault is generated) before removing the panel and verifying that the red LED is not lit and the green LED is lit but not blinking.

**Assistant control panel:** Check that there are no faults or alarms shown on the display and that the panel LED is green and does not blink.













The drive is now ready for use.







## ■ How to perform a guided start-up

To be able to perform the guided start-up, you need the Assistant control panel.

Before you start, ensure that you have the motor nameplate data on hand.

| POWER-UP   |   |
|--|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Apply input power. The control panel first asks if you want to use the Start-up assistant. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press  (when <b>Yes</b> is highlighted) to run the Start-up assistant.</li> <li>Press  if you do not want to run the Start-up assistant.</li> <li>Press key  to highlight <b>No</b> and then press  if you want to make the panel ask (or not ask) the question about running the Start-up assistant again the next time you switch on the power to the drive.</li> </ul> | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;">                     REM ↻ CHOICE<br/>Do you want to use the start-up assistant?<br/><b>Yes</b><br/>No<br/>EXIT   00:00   OK                 </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">                     REM ↻ CHOICE<br/>Show start-up assistant on next boot?<br/><b>Yes</b><br/>No<br/>EXIT   00:00   OK                 </div> |
| SELECTING THE LANGUAGE   |   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> If you decided to run the Start-up assistant, the display then asks you to select the language. Scroll to the desired language with keys  /  and press  to accept.<br>If you press  , the Start-up assistant is stopped.  | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">                     REM ↻ PAR EDIT<br/>9901 LANGUAGE<br/><b>ENGLISH</b><br/>[0]<br/>CANCEL   00:00   SAVE                 </div>   |
| STARTING THE GUIDED SET-UP   |   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The Start-up assistant now guides you through the set-up tasks, starting with the motor set-up. Set the motor data to exactly the same value as on the motor nameplate.<br>Scroll to the desired parameter value with keys  /  and press  to accept and continue with the Start-up assistant.<br><b>Note:</b> At any time, if you press  , the Start-up assistant is stopped and the display goes to the Output mode.   | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;">                     REM ↻ PAR EDIT<br/>9905 MOTOR NOM VOLT<br/><b>220 V</b><br/>EXIT   00:00   SAVE                 </div>  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> The basic start-up is now completed. However, it might be useful at this stage to set the parameters required by your application and continue with the application set-up as suggested by the Start-up assistant.  | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">                     REM ↻ CHOICE<br/>Do you want to continue with application setup?<br/><b>Continue</b><br/>Skip<br/>EXIT   00:00   OK                 </div>   |








- Select the application macro according to which the control cables are connected.
- Continue with the application set-up. After completing a set-up task, the Start-up assistant suggests the next one.
- Press  (when **Continue** is highlighted) to continue with the suggested task.
  - Press key  to highlight **Skip** and then press  to move to the following task without doing the suggested task.
  - Press  to stop the Start-up assistant.

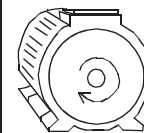
REM ↻ PAR EDIT  
9902 APPLIC MACRO  
**ABB STANDARD**  
[1]  
EXIT | 00:00 | SAVE

REM ↻ CHOICE  
Do you want to continue with EXT1 reference setup?  
**Continue**  
Skip  
EXIT | 00:00 | OK

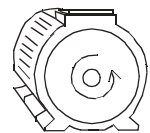
### DIRECTION OF THE MOTOR ROTATION

- Check the direction of the motor rotation.
- If the drive is in remote control (REM shown on the status line), switch to local control by pressing .
  - If you are not in the Output mode, press  repeatedly until you get there.
  - Increase the frequency reference from zero to a small value with key .
  - Press  to start the motor.
  - Check that the actual direction of the motor is the same as indicated on the display (↻ means forward and ↺ reverse).
  - Press  to stop the motor.
- To change the direction of the motor rotation:
- If parameter **9914 PHASE INVERSION** is not visible, first set parameter **1611 PARAMETER VIEW** to 3 (**LONG VIEW**).
  - Invert the phases by changing the value of parameter **9914** to the opposite, ie from 0 (**NO**) to 1 (**YES**), or vice versa.
  - Verify your work by applying input power and repeating the check as described above.
  - Set parameter **1611** back to 2 (**SHORT VIEW**).

LOC ↻ **XX.XHZ**  
**XX.X HZ**  
**X.X A**  
**XX.X %**  
DIR | 00:00 | MENU



forward direction



reverse direction

LOC ↻ PAR EDIT  
1611 PARAMETER VIEW  
**LONG VIEW**  
[3]  
CANCEL | 00:00 | SAVE

LOC ↻ PAR EDIT  
9914 PHASE INVERSION  
**YES**  
[1]  
CANCEL | 00:00 | SAVE





### FINAL CHECK

- |                          |   |  |
|--------------------------|---|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | After the whole set-up is completed, check that there are no faults or alarms shown on the display and the panel LED is green and does not blink. |  |
|--------------------------|---|--|

**The drive is now ready for use.**




## How to control the drive through the I/O interface

The table below instructs how to operate the drive through the digital and analog inputs when:

- the motor start-up is performed, and
- the default (standard) parameter settings are valid.

Displays of the Basic control panel are shown as an example.

| PRELIMINARY SETTINGS   |  |     |         |        |     |     |         |        |     |
|--|--|-----|---------|--------|-----|-----|---------|--------|-----|
| <p>If you need to change the direction of rotation, check that parameter <b>1003 DIRECTION</b> is set to 3 (<b>REQUEST</b>).</p> <p>Ensure that the control connections are wired according to the connection diagram given for the ABB standard macro.</p> <p>Ensure that the drive is in remote control. Press key  to switch between remote and local control.</p> | <p>See section <a href="#">Default I/O connection diagram</a> on page 52.</p> <p>In remote control, the panel display shows text REM.</p>  |     |         |        |     |     |         |        |     |
| STARTING AND CONTROLLING THE SPEED OF THE MOTOR  |  |     |         |        |     |     |         |        |     |
| <p>Start by switching digital input DI1 on.</p> <p><u>Basic control panel</u>: Text FWD starts flashing fast and stops after the setpoint is reached</p> <p><u>Assistant control panel</u>: The arrow starts rotating. It is dotted until the setpoint is reached.</p> <p>Regulate the drive output frequency (motor speed) by adjusting the voltage of analog input AI1.</p>  | <table border="1"> <tr> <td>REM</td> <td>0.0 Hz</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OUTPUT</td> <td>FWD</td> </tr> </table><br><table border="1"> <tr> <td>REM</td> <td>50.0 Hz</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OUTPUT</td> <td>FWD</td> </tr> </table>  | REM | 0.0 Hz  | OUTPUT | FWD | REM | 50.0 Hz | OUTPUT | FWD |
| REM  | 0.0 Hz   |     |         |        |     |     |         |        |     |
| OUTPUT   | FWD  |     |         |        |     |     |         |        |     |
| REM  | 50.0 Hz  |     |         |        |     |     |         |        |     |
| OUTPUT   | FWD  |     |         |        |     |     |         |        |     |
| CHANGING THE DIRECTION OF MOTOR ROTATION   |  |     |         |        |     |     |         |        |     |
| <p>Reverse direction: Switch digital input DI2 on.</p> <p>Forward direction: Switch digital input DI2 off.</p>   | <table border="1"> <tr> <td>REM</td> <td>50.0 Hz</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OUTPUT</td> <td>REV</td> </tr> </table><br><table border="1"> <tr> <td>REM</td> <td>50.0 Hz</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OUTPUT</td> <td>FWD</td> </tr> </table> | REM | 50.0 Hz | OUTPUT | REV | REM | 50.0 Hz | OUTPUT | FWD |
| REM  | 50.0 Hz  |     |         |        |     |     |         |        |     |
| OUTPUT   | REV  |     |         |        |     |     |         |        |     |
| REM  | 50.0 Hz  |     |         |        |     |     |         |        |     |
| OUTPUT   | FWD  |     |         |        |     |     |         |        |     |
| STOPPING THE MOTOR   |  |     |         |        |     |     |         |        |     |
| <p>Switch digital input DI1 off. The motor stops.</p> <p><u>Basic control panel</u>: Text FWD starts flashing slowly.</p> <p><u>Assistant control panel</u>: The arrow stops rotating.</p>   | <table border="1"> <tr> <td>REM</td> <td>0.0 Hz</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OUTPUT</td> <td>FWD</td> </tr> </table>  | REM | 0.0 Hz  | OUTPUT | FWD |     |         |        |     |
| REM  | 0.0 Hz   |     |         |        |     |     |         |        |     |
| OUTPUT   | FWD  |     |         |        |     |     |         |        |     |







# 9

## Control panels

---

### What this chapter contains

The chapter describes the control panel keys, LED indicators and display fields. It also instructs in using the panel in control, monitoring and changing the settings.

### About control panels

Use a control panel to control the ACS310, read status data, and adjust parameters. The drive works with either of two different control panel types:

- Basic control panel – This panel (described in section [Basic control panel](#) on page [69](#)) provides basic tools for manual entry of parameter values.
- Assistant control panel – This panel (described in section [Assistant control panel](#) on page [80](#)) includes pre-programmed assistants to automate the most common parameter setups. The panel provides language support. It is available with different language sets.

### Applicability

The manual is applicable to panels with the panel revisions and the panel firmware versions given in the table below.

| Panel type                     | Type code | Panel revision | Panel firmware version |
|--------------------------------|-----------|----------------|------------------------|
| Basic control panel            | ACS-CP-C  | M or later     | 1.13 or later          |
| Assistant control panel        | ACS-CP-A  | E or later     | 2.04 or later          |
| Assistant control panel (Asia) | ACS-CP-D  | P or later     | 2.04 or later          |

---

To find out the panel revision, see the label on the back of the panel. An example label and explanation of the label contents are shown below.



|   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 | Panel type code  |
| 2 | Serial number of format MYYWWRXXXX, where<br>M: Manufacturer<br>YY: 08, 09, 10, ..., for 2008, 2009, 2010, ...<br>WW: 01, 02, 03, ... for week 1, week 2, week 3, ...<br>R: A, B, C, ... for panel revision<br>XXXX: Integer starting every week from 0001 |
| 3 | RoHS mark (the label of your drive shows the valid markings)   |

To find out the panel firmware version of your Assistant control panel, see page [84](#).  
For the Basic control panel see page [72](#).

See parameter [9901 LANGUAGE](#) to find out the languages supported by the different Assistant control panels.



## Basic control panel

### ■ Features

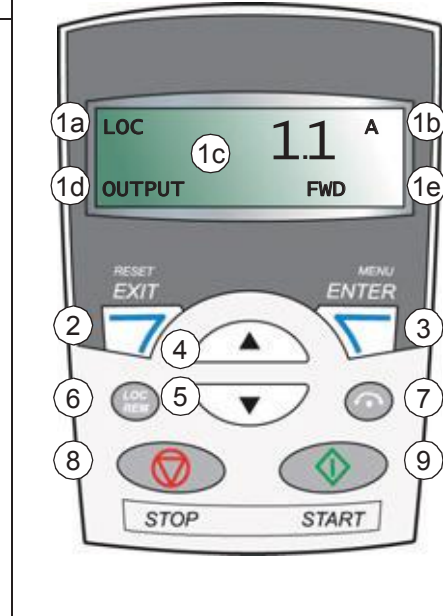
The Basic control panel features:

- numeric control panel with an LCD display
- copy function – parameters can be copied to the control panel memory for later transfer to other drives or for backup of a particular system.

## Overview

The following table summarizes the key functions and displays on the Basic control panel.

| No. | Use  |
|-----|--|
| 1   | <p>LCD display – Divided into five areas:</p> <p>a. Upper left – Control location:<br/>           LOC: drive control is local, that is, from the control panel<br/>           REM: drive control is remote, such as the drive I/O or fieldbus.</p> <p>b. Upper right – Unit of the displayed value.</p> <p>c. Center – Variable; in general, shows parameter and signal values, menus or lists. Shows also fault and alarm codes.</p> <p>d. Lower left and center – Panel operation state:<br/>           OUTPUT: Output mode<br/>           PAR: Parameter mode<br/>           MENU: Main menu.<br/> <b>FAULT</b>: Fault mode.</p> <p>e. Lower right – Indicators:<br/>           FWD (forward) / REV (reverse): direction of the motor rotation<br/>               Flashing slowly: stopped<br/>               Flashing rapidly: running, not at setpoint<br/>               Steady: running, at setpoint<br/> <b>SET</b>: Displayed value can be modified (in the Parameter and Reference modes).</p> |
| 2   | <p>RESET/EXIT – Exits to the next higher menu level without saving changed values. Resets faults in the Output and Fault modes.</p>  |
| 3   | <p>MENU/ENTER – Enters deeper into menu level. In the Parameter mode, saves the displayed value as the new setting.</p>  |
| 4   | <p>Up –</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Scrolls up through a menu or list.</li> <li>• Increases a value if a parameter is selected.</li> <li>• Increases the reference value in the Reference mode.</li> <li>• Holding the key down changes the value faster.</li> </ul>  |
| 5   | <p>Down –</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Scrolls down through a menu or list.</li> <li>• Decreases a value if a parameter is selected.</li> <li>• Decreases the reference value in the Reference mode.</li> <li>• Holding the key down changes the value faster.</li> </ul>  |
| 6   | <p>LOC/REM – Changes between local and remote control of the drive.</p>  |
| 7   | <p>DIR – Changes the direction of the motor rotation.</p>  |
| 8   | <p>STOP – Stops the drive in local control.</p>  |
| 9   | <p>START – Starts the drive in local control.</p>  |



## ■ Operation

You can operate the control panel with the help of menus and keys. You can select an option, for example, an operation mode or parameter, by scrolling the ▲ and ▼ arrow keys until the option is visible on the display and then pressing the ▢ key.

With the ▢ key, you can return to the previous operation level without saving the made changes.

The Basic control panel has five panel modes: *Output mode*, *Reference mode*, *Parameter mode*, *Copy mode* and Fault mode. The operation in the first four modes is described in this chapter. When a fault or alarm occurs, the panel goes automatically to the Fault mode showing the fault or alarm code. You can reset the fault or alarm in the Output or Fault mode (see chapter *Fault tracing* on page 311).

After the power is switched on, the panel is in the Output mode, where you can start, stop, change the direction, switch between local and remote control and monitor up to three actual values (one at a time). To do other tasks, go first to the Main menu and select the appropriate mode.



|        |         |
|--------|---------|
| REM    | 49.1 Hz |
| OUTPUT | FWD     |
| REM    | PAR     |
| MENU   | FWD     |

### How to perform common tasks

The table below lists common tasks, the mode in which you can perform them and the page number where the steps of the task are described in detail.





| Task  | Mode          | Page |
|---|---------------|------|
| How to find out the panel firmware version                    | At power up   | 72   |
| How to switch between local and remote control                | Any           | 72   |
| How to start and stop the drive                               | Any           | 72   |
| How to change the direction of the motor rotation             | Any           | 73   |
| How to browse the monitored signals                           | Output        | 74   |
| How to set the frequency reference                            | Reference     | 75   |
| How to change the value of a parameter                        | Parameter     | 76   |
| How to select the monitored signals                           | Parameter     | 77   |
| How to reset faults and alarms                                | Output, Fault | 311  |
| How to copy parameters from the drive to the control panel    | Copy          | 79   |
| How to restore parameters from the control panel to the drive | Copy          | 79   |

## How to find out the panel firmware version

| Step | Action  | Display |
|------|---|---------|
| 1.   | If the power is switched on, switch it off.   |         |
| 2.   | Keep key  pressed down while you switch on the power and read the panel firmware version shown on the display.<br>When you release the  key, the panel goes to the Output mode. | X.XX    |





## How to start, stop and switch between local and remote control

You can start, stop and switch between local and remote control in any mode. To be able to start or stop the drive, the drive must be in local control.

| Step | Action  | Display   |
|------|---|---|
| 1.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To switch between remote control (REM shown on the left) and local control (LOC shown on the left), press .</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Switching to local control can be disabled with parameter <b>1606 LOCAL LOCK</b>.</p> <p>After pressing the key, the display briefly shows message “LoC” or “rE”, as appropriate, before returning to the previous display.</p> <p>The very first time the drive is powered up, it is in remote control (REM) and controlled through the drive I/O terminals. To switch to local control (LOC) and control the drive using the control panel, press . The result depends on how long you press the key:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you release the key immediately (the display flashes “LoC”), the drive stops. Set the local control reference as instructed on page <b>75</b>.</li> <li>If you press the key for about two seconds (release when the display changes from “LoC” to “LoC r”), the drive continues as before. The drive copies the current remote values for the run/stop status and the reference, and uses them as the initial local control settings.</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To stop the drive in local control, press .</li> <li>To start the drive in local control, press .</li> </ul> | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <p>LOC <span style="float: right;">49.1 Hz</span></p> <p>OUTPUT <span style="float: right;">FWD</span></p> </div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>LOC <span style="float: right;">LoC</span></p> <p style="text-align: right;">FWD</p> </div> <p>Text FWD or REV on the bottom line starts flashing slowly.</p> <p>Text FWD or REV on the bottom line starts flashing rapidly. It stops flashing when the drive reaches the setpoint.</p> |

## How to change the direction of the motor rotation

You can change the direction of the motor rotation in any mode.

| Step | Action   | Display   |
|------|--|---|
| 1.   | If the drive is in remote control (REM shown on the left), switch to local control by pressing  . The display briefly shows message “LoC” before returning to the previous display.                                   |  |
| 2.   | To change the direction from forward (FWD shown at the bottom) to reverse (REV shown at the bottom), or vice versa, press  .<br><br><b>Note:</b> Parameter <i>1003 DIRECTION</i> must be set to 3 ( <i>REQUEST</i> ). |  |



## ■ Output mode

In the Output mode, you can:



- monitor actual values of up to three group **01 OPERATING DATA** signals, one signal at a time
- start, stop, change the direction and switch between local and remote control.

You can enter the Output mode by pressing  until the display shows text OUTPUT at the bottom.

The display shows the value of one group **01 OPERATING DATA** signal. The unit is shown on the right. Page 77 tells how to select up to three signals to be monitored in the Output mode. The table below shows how to view them one at a time.

|        |      |     |
|--------|------|-----|
| REM    | 49.1 | Hz  |
| OUTPUT |      | FWD |

### How to browse the monitored signals














| Step   | Action  | Display  |     |      |    |        |  |     |     |     |   |        |  |     |     |      |   |        |  |     |
|--------|---|--|-----|------|----|--------|--|-----|-----|-----|---|--------|--|-----|-----|------|---|--------|--|-----|
| 1.     | If more than one signals have been selected to be monitored (see page 77), you can browse them in the Output mode.<br>To browse the signals forward, press key  repeatedly. To browse them backward, press key  repeatedly. | <table border="1"> <tr> <td>REM</td> <td>49.1</td> <td>Hz</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OUTPUT</td> <td></td> <td>FWD</td> </tr> </table><br><table border="1"> <tr> <td>REM</td> <td>0.5</td> <td>A</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OUTPUT</td> <td></td> <td>FWD</td> </tr> </table><br><table border="1"> <tr> <td>REM</td> <td>10.7</td> <td>%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OUTPUT</td> <td></td> <td>FWD</td> </tr> </table> | REM | 49.1 | Hz | OUTPUT |  | FWD | REM | 0.5 | A | OUTPUT |  | FWD | REM | 10.7 | % | OUTPUT |  | FWD |
| REM    | 49.1  | Hz   |     |      |    |        |  |     |     |     |   |        |  |     |     |      |   |        |  |     |
| OUTPUT |   | FWD  |     |      |    |        |  |     |     |     |   |        |  |     |     |      |   |        |  |     |
| REM    | 0.5   | A  |     |      |    |        |  |     |     |     |   |        |  |     |     |      |   |        |  |     |
| OUTPUT |   | FWD  |     |      |    |        |  |     |     |     |   |        |  |     |     |      |   |        |  |     |
| REM    | 10.7  | %  |     |      |    |        |  |     |     |     |   |        |  |     |     |      |   |        |  |     |
| OUTPUT |   | FWD  |     |      |    |        |  |     |     |     |   |        |  |     |     |      |   |        |  |     |

## Reference mode

In the Reference mode, you can:

- set the frequency reference
- start, stop, change the direction and switch between local and remote control.

### How to set the frequency reference


















| Step | Action   | Display   |
|------|--|---|
| 1.   | Go to the Main menu by pressing  if you are in the Output mode, otherwise by pressing  repeatedly until you see MENU at the bottom.  |    |
| 2.   | If the drive is in remote control (REM shown on the left), switch to local control by pressing  . The display briefly shows “LoC” before switching to local control.<br><b>Note:</b> With group <i>11 REFERENCE SELECT</i> , you can allow the reference modification in remote control (REM).  |    |
| 3.   | If the panel is not in the Reference mode (“rEF” not visible), press key  or  until you see “rEF” and then press  . Now the display shows the current reference value with <b>SET</b> under the value.              | <br> |
| 4.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To increase the reference value, press .</li> <li>• To decrease the reference value, press .</li> </ul> The value changes immediately when you press the key. It is stored in the drive permanent memory and restored automatically after power switch-off. |    |

## ■ Parameter mode

In the Parameter mode, you can:

- view and change parameter values
- select and modify the signals shown in the Output mode
- start, stop, change the direction and switch between local and remote control.

### How to select a parameter and change its value

| Step | Action   | Display   |
|------|--|---|
| 1.   | Go to the Main menu by pressing  if you are in the Output mode, otherwise by pressing  repeatedly until you see MENU at the bottom.  | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">                     LOC<br/> <b>rEF</b><br/>                     MENU FWD                 </div>         |
| 2.   | If the panel is not in the Parameter mode ("PAR" not visible), press key  or  until you see "PAR" and then press  . The display shows the number of one of the parameter groups.  | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">                     LOC<br/> <b>PAR</b><br/>                     MENU FWD                 </div>         |
|      |  | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">                     LOC<br/> <b>-01-</b><br/>                     PAR FWD                 </div>         |
| 3.   | Use keys  and  to find the desired parameter group.  | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">                     LOC<br/> <b>-11-</b><br/>                     PAR FWD                 </div>         |
| 4.   | Press  . The display shows one of the parameters in the selected group.   | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">                     LOC<br/> <b>1101</b><br/>                     PAR FWD                 </div>         |
| 5.   | Use keys  and  to find the desired parameter.  | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">                     LOC<br/> <b>1103</b><br/>                     PAR FWD                 </div>         |
| 6.   | Press and hold  for about two seconds until the display shows the value of the parameter with <b>SET</b> underneath indicating that changing of the value is now possible.<br><b>Note:</b> When <b>SET</b> is visible, pressing keys  and  simultaneously changes the displayed value to the default value of the parameter. | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">                     LOC<br/> <b>1</b><br/>                     PAR <b>SET</b> FWD                 </div> |
|      |  | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">                     LOC<br/> <b>2</b><br/>                     PAR <b>SET</b> FWD                 </div> |
| 7.   | Use keys  and  to select the parameter value. When you have changed the parameter value, <b>SET</b> starts flashing.<br><br>• To save the displayed parameter value, press  .<br>• To cancel the new value and keep the original, press  . | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">                     LOC<br/> <b>1103</b><br/>                     PAR FWD                 </div>         |
|      |  | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">                     LOC<br/> <b>1103</b><br/>                     PAR FWD                 </div>         |

## How to select the monitored signals

| Step | Action  | Display  |
|------|---|--|
| 1.   | <p>You can select which signals are monitored in the Output mode and how they are displayed with group <b>34 PANEL DISPLAY</b> parameters. See page 76 for detailed instructions on changing parameter values.</p> <p>By default, the display shows three signals:<br/>Signal 1: <b>0103 OUTPUT FREQ</b><br/>Signal 2: <b>0104 CURRENT</b><br/>Signal 3: <b>0105 TORQUE</b></p> <p>To change the default signals, select up to three signals from group <b>01 OPERATING DATA</b> to be shown.</p> <p>Signal 1: Change the value of parameter <b>3401 SIGNAL1 PARAM</b> to the index of the signal parameter in group <b>01 OPERATING DATA</b> (= number of the parameter without the leading zero), for example, 105 means parameter <b>0105 TORQUE</b>. Value 100 means that no signal is displayed.</p> <p>Repeat for signals 2 (<b>3408 SIGNAL2 PARAM</b>) and 3 (<b>3415 SIGNAL3 PARAM</b>). For example, if <b>3401 = 0</b> and <b>3415 = 0</b>, browsing is disabled and only the signal specified by <b>3408</b> appears in the display. If all three parameters are set to 0, ie no signals are selected for monitoring, the panel displays text "n.A".</p> | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 5px;">LOC<br/><b>103</b><br/>PAR SET FWD</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 5px;">LOC<br/><b>104</b><br/>PAR SET FWD</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">LOC<br/><b>105</b><br/>PAR SET FWD</div> |
| 2.   | <p>Specify the decimal point location, or use the decimal point location and unit of the source signal (setting 9 [<b>DIRECT</b>]). Bar graphs are not available for basic control panel. For details, see parameter <b>3404</b>.</p> <p>Signal 1: parameter <b>3404 OUTPUT1 DSP FORM</b><br/>Signal 2: parameter <b>3411 OUTPUT2 DSP FORM</b><br/>Signal 3: parameter <b>3418 OUTPUT3 DSP FORM</b>.</p>  | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">LOC<br/><b>9</b><br/>PAR SET FWD</div>   |
| 3.   | <p>Select the units to be displayed for the signals. This has no effect if parameter <b>3404/3411/3418</b> is set to 9 (<b>DIRECT</b>). For details, see parameter <b>3405</b>.</p> <p>Signal 1: parameter <b>3405 OUTPUT1 UNIT</b><br/>Signal 2: parameter <b>3412 OUTPUT2 UNIT</b><br/>Signal 3: parameter <b>3419 OUTPUT3 UNIT</b>.</p>  | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">LOC<br/><b>3</b><br/>PAR SET FWD</div>   |
| 4.   | <p>Select the scalings for the signals by specifying the minimum and maximum display values. This has no effect if parameter <b>3404/3411/3418</b> is set to 9 (<b>DIRECT</b>). For details, see parameters <b>3406</b> and <b>3407</b>.</p> <p>Signal 1: parameters <b>3406 OUTPUT1 MIN</b> and <b>3407 OUTPUT1 MAX</b><br/>Signal 2: parameters <b>3413 OUTPUT2 MIN</b> and <b>3414 OUTPUT2 MAX</b><br/>Signal 3: parameters <b>3420 OUTPUT3 MIN</b> and <b>3421 OUTPUT3 MAX</b>.</p>   | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 5px;">LOC<br/><b>0.0</b> Hz<br/>PAR SET FWD</div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">LOC<br/><b>500.0</b> Hz<br/>PAR SET FWD</div>  |

## ■ Copy mode

The Basic control panel can store a full set of drive parameters and up to two user sets of drive parameters to the control panel. Uploading and downloading can be performed in local control. The control panel memory is non-volatile.

In the Copy mode, you can do the following:

- Copy all parameters from the drive to the control panel (uL – Upload). This includes all defined user sets of parameters and internal (not adjustable by the user) parameters.
- Restore the full parameter set from the control panel to the drive (dL A – Download all). This writes all parameters, including the internal non-user-adjustable motor parameters, to the drive. It does not include the user sets of parameters.

**Note:** Only use this function to restore a drive, or to transfer parameters to systems that are identical to the original system.

- Copy a partial parameter set from the control panel to a drive (dL P – Download partial). The partial set does not include user sets, internal motor parameters, parameters [9905...9909](#), [1605](#), [1607](#), [5201](#), nor any group [53 EFB PROTOCOL](#) parameters.

The source and target drives and their motor sizes do not need to be the same.












- Copy user set 1 parameters from the control panel to the drive (dL u1 – Download user set 1). A user set includes group [99 START-UP DATA](#) parameters and the internal motor parameters.

The function is only shown on the menu when User set 1 has been first saved using parameter [9902 APPLIC MACRO](#) (see section [user macros](#) on page [112](#)) and then uploaded to panel.

- Copy user set 2 parameters from the control panel to the drive (dL u2 – Download user set 2). As dL u1 – Download User set 1 above.
  - Start, stop, change the direction and switch between local and remote control.
-

## How to upload and download parameters

For the upload and download functions available, see above. Note that the drive has to be in local control for uploading and downloading.

| Step | Action   | Display  |  |
|------|--|--|--|
| 1.   | Go to the Main menu by pressing  if you are in the Output mode, otherwise by pressing  repeatedly until you see MENU at the bottom.  | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">                     LOC<br/> <div style="text-align: center; font-size: 2em; font-weight: bold;">PAr</div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"><span>MENU</span><span>FWD</span></div> </div>                         |  |
| 2.   | If the panel is not in the Copy mode (“CoPY” not visible), press key  or  until you see “CoPY”.<br><br>Press  . | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">                     LOC<br/> <div style="text-align: center; font-size: 2em; font-weight: bold;">CoPY</div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"><span>MENU</span><span>FWD</span></div> </div>                        |  |
|      |  | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">                     LOC<br/> <div style="text-align: center; font-size: 2em; font-weight: bold;">uL</div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"><span>MENU</span><span>FWD</span></div> </div>                          |  |
| 3.   | To upload all parameters (including user sets) from the drive to the control panel, step to “uL” with keys  and  .   | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">                     LOC<br/> <div style="text-align: center; font-size: 2em; font-weight: bold;">uL</div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"><span>MENU</span><span>FWD</span></div> </div>                          |  |
|      |  | Press  . During the transfer, the display shows the degree of completion in percent.  | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">                     LOC<br/> <div style="text-align: center; font-size: 2em; font-weight: bold;">uL 50 %</div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"><span>MENU</span><span>FWD</span></div> </div> |
|      |  | To perform downloads, step to the appropriate operation (here “dL A”, Download all, is used as an example) with keys  and  . | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">                     LOC<br/> <div style="text-align: center; font-size: 2em; font-weight: bold;">dL A</div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"><span>MENU</span><span>FWD</span></div> </div>    |
|      |  | Press  . During the transfer, the display shows the degree of completion in percent.  | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">                     LOC<br/> <div style="text-align: center; font-size: 2em; font-weight: bold;">dL 50 %</div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"><span>MENU</span><span>FWD</span></div> </div> |

### Basic control panel alarm codes

In addition to the faults and alarms generated by the drive (see chapter *Fault tracing* on page 311), the Basic control panel indicates control panel alarms with a code of form A5xxx. See section *Alarms generated by the Basic control panel* on page 317 for a list of the alarm codes and descriptions.

## Assistant control panel

### ■ Features

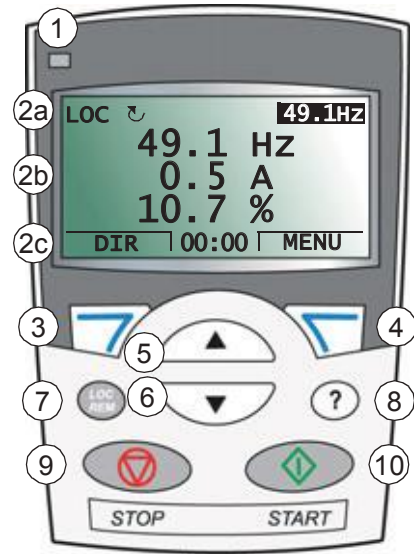
The Assistant control panel features:

- alphanumeric control panel with an LCD display
  - language selection for the display
  - Start-up assistant to ease drive commissioning
  - copy function – parameters can be copied to the control panel memory for later transfer to other drives or for backup of a particular system.
  - context sensitive help
  - real time clock.
-

## Overview

The following table summarizes the key functions and displays on the Assistant control panel

| No. | Use   |
|-----|---|
| 1   | Status LED – Green for normal operation. If LED is flashing, or red, see section <i>LEDs</i> on page 333.   |
| 2   | LCD display – Divided into three main areas:<br>2a: Status line – variable, depending on the mode of operation, see section <i>Status line</i> on page 82.<br>2b: Center – variable; in general, shows signal and parameter values, menus or lists. Shows also faults and alarms.<br>2c: Bottom line – shows current functions of the two soft keys and, if enabled, the clock display. |
| 3   | Soft key 1 – Function depends on the context. The text in the lower left corner of the LCD display indicates the function.  |
| 4   | Soft key 2 – Function depends on the context. The text in the lower right corner of the LCD display indicates the function.   |
| 5   | Up – <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Scrolls up through a menu or list displayed in the center of the LCD display.</li> <li>• Increments a value if a parameter is selected.</li> <li>• Increments the reference value if the upper right corner is highlighted.</li> </ul> Holding the key down changes the value faster.   |
| 6   | Down – <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Scrolls down through a menu or list displayed in the center of the LCD display.</li> <li>• Decrements a value if a parameter is selected.</li> <li>• Decrements the reference value if the upper right corner is highlighted.</li> </ul> Holding the key down changes the value faster.   |
| 7   | LOC/REM – Changes between local and remote control of the drive.  |
| 8   | Help – Displays context sensitive information when the key is pressed. The information displayed describes the item currently highlighted in the center of the display.   |
| 9   | STOP – Stops the drive in local control.  |
| 10  | START – Starts the drive in local control.  |







## Status line





The top line of the LCD display shows the basic status information of the drive.



| No. | Field  | Alternatives  | Significance  |
|-----|--|---|---|
| 1   | Control location                               | LOC   | Drive control is local, that is, from the control panel.  |
|     |  | REM   | Drive control is remote, such as the drive I/O or fieldbus.   |
| 2   | State  |  | Forward shaft direction   |
|     |  |  | Reverse shaft direction   |
|     |  | Rotating arrow  | Drive is running at setpoint.   |
|     |  | Dotted rotating arrow   | Drive is running but not at setpoint.   |
|     |  | Stationary arrow  | Drive is stopped.   |
|     |  | Dotted stationary arrow   | Start command is present, but the motor is not running, eg because start enable is missing.   |
| 3   | Panel operation mode                           |   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Name of the current mode</li> <li>Name of the list or menu shown</li> <li>Name of the operation state, eg PAR EDIT.</li> </ul> |
| 4   | Reference value or number of the selected item |   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reference value in the Output mode</li> <li>Number of the highlighted item, eg mode, parameter group or fault.</li> </ul>      |

## ■ Operation

You operate the control panel with menus and keys. The keys include two context-sensitive soft keys, whose current function is indicated by the text shown in the display above each key.

You select an option, eg operation mode or parameter, by scrolling the  and  arrow keys until the option is highlighted (in reverse video) and then pressing the relevant soft key. With the right soft key  you usually enter a mode, accept an option or save the changes. The left soft key  is used to cancel the made changes and return to the previous operation level.

The Assistant control panel has nine panel modes: *Output mode*, *Parameter mode*, *Assistants mode*, *Changed parameters mode*, *Fault logger mode*, *Time and date mode*, *Parameter backup mode*, *IO settings mode* and *Fault mode*. The operation in the first eight modes is described in this chapter. When a fault or alarm occurs, the panel goes automatically to the *Fault mode* showing the fault or alarm. You can reset it in the *Output* or *Fault mode* (see chapter *Fault tracing* on page 311).

Initially, the panel is in the Output mode, where you can start, stop, change the direction, switch between local and remote control, modify the reference value and monitor up to three actual values.

|     |         |         |
|-----|---------|---------|
| LOC | 49.1 Hz | 49.1 Hz |
|     | 0.5 A   |         |
|     | 10.7 %  |         |
| DIR | 00:00   | MENU    |

To do other tasks, go first to the Main menu and select the appropriate mode on the menu. The status line (see section *Status line* on page 82) shows the name of the current menu, mode, item or state.





|                    |           |       |
|--------------------|-----------|-------|
| LOC                | MAIN MENU | 1     |
| <b>PARAMETERS</b>  |           |       |
| <b>ASSISTANTS</b>  |           |       |
| <b>CHANGED PAR</b> |           |       |
| EXIT               | 00:00     | ENTER |

## How to do common tasks



The table below lists common tasks, the mode in which you can perform them and the page number where the steps to do the task are described in detail.

| Task  | Mode               | Page |
|---|--------------------|------|
| How to get help   | Any                | 84   |
| How to find out the panel version   | At power up        | 84   |
| How to adjust the display contrast  | Output             | 87   |
| How to switch between local and remote control  | Any                | 85   |
| How to start and stop the drive   | Any                | 86   |
| How to change the direction of the motor rotation   | Output             | 86   |
| How to set the frequency reference  | Output             | 87   |
| How to change the value of a parameter  | Parameters         | 88   |
| How to select the monitored signals   | Parameters         | 89   |
| How to perform guided tasks (specification of related parameter sets) with assistants   | Assistants         | 91   |
| How to view and edit changed parameters   | Changed parameters | 93   |
| How to view faults  | Fault logger       | 94   |
| How to reset faults and alarms  | Output, Fault      | 311  |
| How to show/hide the clock, change date and time formats, set the clock and enable/disable automatic clock transitions according to the daylight saving changes | Time and date      | 95   |
| How to copy parameters from the drive to the control panel  | Parameter backup   | 98   |
| How to restore parameters from the control panel to the drive   | Parameter backup   | 98   |
| How to view backup information  | Parameter backup   | 99   |
| How to edit and change parameter settings related to I/O terminals  | IO Settings        | 100  |

## How to get help





| Step | Action   | Display  |
|------|--|--|
| 1.   | Press  to read the context-sensitive help text for the item that is highlighted.<br><br>If help text exists for the item, it is shown on the display. | <pre> LOC ↵ PAR GROUPS—10 01 OPERATING DATA 03 FB ACTUAL SIGNALS 04 FAULT HISTORY 10 START/STOP/DIR 11 REFERENCE SELECT EXIT   00:00   SEL </pre> <pre> LOC ↵ HELP— This group defines external sources (EXT1 and EXT2) for commands that enable start, stop and EXIT   00:00   </pre> |
| 2.   | If the whole text is not visible, scroll the lines with keys  and  . | <pre> LOC ↵ HELP— external sources (EXT1 and EXT2) for commands that enable start, stop and direction changes. EXIT   00:00   </pre>   |
| 3.   | After reading the text, return to the previous display by pressing  .  | <pre> LOC ↵ PAR GROUPS—10 01 OPERATING DATA 03 FB ACTUAL SIGNALS 04 FAULT HISTORY 10 START/STOP/DIR 11 REFERENCE SELECT EXIT   00:00   SEL </pre>  |

## How to find out the panel version

| Step | Action   | Display   |
|------|--|---|
| 1.   | If the power is switched on, switch it off.  |   |
| 2.   | Keep key  pressed down while you switch on the power and read the information. The display shows the following panel information:<br>Panel SW: panel firmware version<br>ROM CRC: panel ROM check sum<br>Flash Rev: flash content version<br>Flash content comment.<br>When you release the  key, the panel goes to the Output mode. | <pre> PANEL VERSION INFO Panel SW:      x.xx Rom CRC:      xxxxxxxxxx Flash Rev:     x.xx xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx </pre> |

## How to start, stop and switch between local and remote control


You can start, stop and switch between local and remote control in any mode. To be able to start or stop the drive, the drive must be in local control.

| Step | Action   | Display   |
|------|--|---|
| 1.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To switch between remote control (REM shown on the status line) and local control (LOC shown on the status line), press .</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> Switching to local control can be disabled with parameter <b>1606 LOCAL LOCK</b>.</p> <p>The very first time the drive is powered up, it is in remote control (REM) and controlled through the drive I/O terminals. To switch to local control (LOC) and control the drive using the control panel, press .</p> <p>The result depends on how long you press the key:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you release the key immediately (the display flashes “Switching to the local control mode”), the drive stops. Set the local control reference as instructed on page <b>87</b>.</li> <li>If you press the key for about two seconds, the drive continues as before. The drive copies the current remote values for the run/stop status and the reference, and uses them as the initial local control settings.</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To stop the drive in local control, press .</li> <li>To start the drive in local control, press .</li> </ul> | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>LOC ↻ MESSAGE</p> <p>Switching to the local control mode.</p> <hr/> <p>00:00</p> </div> <p>The arrow (↻ or ↷) on the status line stops rotating.</p> <p>The arrow (↻ or ↷) on the status line starts rotating. It is dotted until the drive reaches the setpoint.</p> |

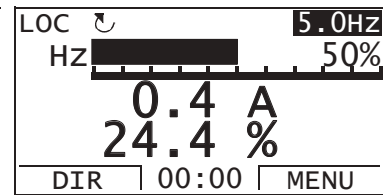
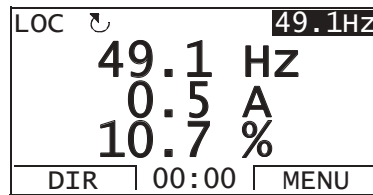
## ■ Output mode

In the Output mode, you can:


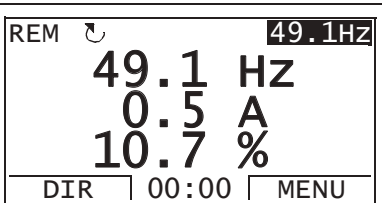


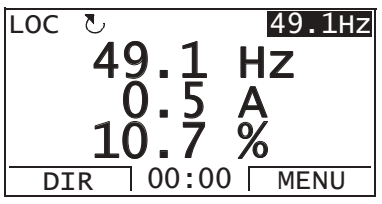




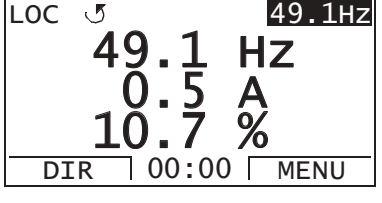

- monitor actual values of up to three signals in group **01 OPERATING DATA**
- change the direction of the motor rotation
- set the frequency reference
- adjust the display contrast
- start, stop, change the direction and switch between local and remote control.

You get to the Output mode by pressing  repeatedly.


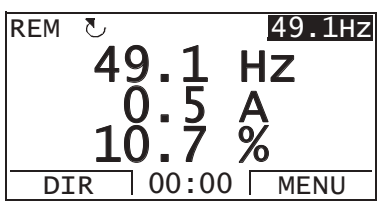

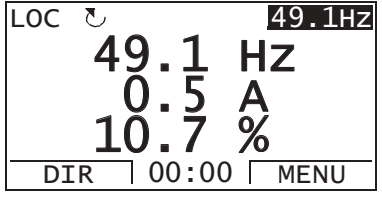


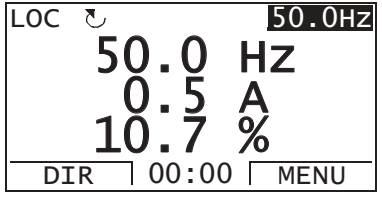
The top right corner of the display shows the reference value. The center can be configured to show up to three signal values or bar graphs; see page 89 for instructions on selecting and modifying the monitored signals.




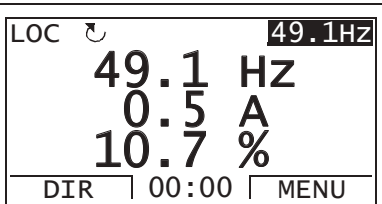




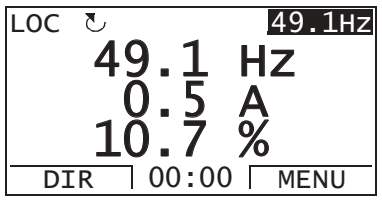
### How to change the direction of the motor rotation

| Step | Action   | Display   |
|------|--|---|
| 1.   | If you are not in the Output mode, press  repeatedly until you get there.   |  <p>REM  49.1Hz<br/>49.1 Hz<br/>0.5 A<br/>10.7 %<br/>DIR   00:00   MENU</p> |
| 2.   | If the drive is in remote control (REM shown on the status line), switch to local control by pressing  . The display briefly shows a message about changing the mode and then returns to the Output mode.   |  <p>LOC  49.1Hz<br/>49.1 Hz<br/>0.5 A<br/>10.7 %<br/>DIR   00:00   MENU</p> |
| 3.   | To change the direction from forward (  shown on the status line) to reverse (  shown on the status line), or vice versa, press  .<br><br><b>Note:</b> Parameter <b>1003 DIRECTION</b> must be set to 3 ( <b>REQUEST</b> ). |  <p>LOC  49.1Hz<br/>49.1 Hz<br/>0.5 A<br/>10.7 %<br/>DIR   00:00   MENU</p> |

## How to set the frequency reference

| Step | Action   | Display   |
|------|--|---|
| 1.   | If you are not in the Output mode, press  repeatedly until you get there.   |  |
| 2.   | If the drive is in remote control (REM shown on the status line), switch to local control by pressing  . The display briefly shows a message about changing the mode and then returns to the Output mode.<br><b>Note:</b> With group <b>11 REFERENCE SELECT</b> , you can allow the reference modification in remote control.   |  |
| 3.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To increase the highlighted reference value shown in the top right corner of the display, press . The value changes immediately. It is stored in the drive permanent memory and restored automatically after power switch-off.</li> <li>To decrease the value, press .</li> </ul> |  |

## How to adjust the display contrast














| Step | Action   | Display   |
|------|--|---|
| 1.   | If you are not in the Output mode, press  repeatedly until you get there.   |  |
| 2.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To increase the contrast, press keys  and  simultaneously.</li> <li>To decrease the contrast, press keys  and  simultaneously.</li> </ul> |  |



## ■ Parameters mode

In the Parameters mode, you can:

- view and change parameter values
- start, stop, change the direction and switch between local and remote control.

### How to select a parameter and change its value

| Step | Action  | Display   |
|------|---|---|
| 1.   | Go to the Main menu by pressing  if you are in the Output mode, otherwise by pressing repeatedly  until you get to the Main menu.   | <pre> LOC ↻ MAIN MENU — 1 <b>PARAMETERS</b> <b>ASSISTANTS</b> <b>CHANGED PAR</b> EXIT   00:00   ENTER                     </pre>  |
| 2.   | Go to the Parameters mode by selecting PARAMETERS on the menu with keys  and  , and pressing  .  | <pre> LOC ↻ PAR GROUPS — 01 <b>01 OPERATING DATA</b> 03 FB ACTUAL SIGNALS 04 FAULT HISTORY 10 START/STOP/DIR 11 REFERENCE SELECT EXIT   00:00   SEL                     </pre>  |
| 3.   | Select the appropriate parameter group with keys  and  .<br><br>Press  .  | <pre> LOC ↻ PAR GROUPS — 99 <b>99 START-UP DATA</b> 01 OPERATING DATA 03 FB ACTUAL SIGNALS 04 FAULT HISTORY 10 START/STOP/DIR EXIT   00:00   SEL                     </pre> <pre> LOC ↻ PARAMETERS — <b>9901 LANGUAGE</b> <b>ENGLISH</b> 9902 APPLIC MACRO 9905 MOTOR NOM VOLT 9906 MOTOR NOM CURR EXIT   00:00   EDIT                     </pre> |
| 4.   | Select the appropriate parameter with keys  and  . The current value of the parameter is shown below the selected parameter.<br><br>Press  .                           | <pre> LOC ↻ PARAMETERS — 9901 LANGUAGE <b>9902 APPLIC MACRO</b> <b>ABB STANDARD</b> 9905 MOTOR NOM VOLT 9906 MOTOR NOM CURR EXIT   00:00   EDIT                     </pre> <pre> LOC ↻ PAR EDIT — 9902 APPLIC MACRO <b>ABB STANDARD</b> [1] CANCEL   00:00   SAVE                     </pre>  |
| 5.   | Specify a new value for the parameter with keys  and  .<br>Pressing the key once increments or decrements the value. Holding the key down changes the value faster. Pressing the keys simultaneously replaces the displayed value with the default value. | <pre> LOC ↻ PAR EDIT — 9902 APPLIC MACRO <b>3-WIRE</b> [2] CANCEL   00:00   SAVE                     </pre>   |

| Step | Action   | Display   |
|------|--|---|
| 6.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To save the new value, press .</li> <li>To cancel the new value and keep the original, press .</li> </ul> | <pre> LOC  ↵  PARAMETERS—— 9901 LANGUAGE 9902 APPLIC MACRO       3-WIRE 9905 MOTOR NOM VOLT 9906 MOTOR NOM CURR EXIT    00:00   EDIT           </pre> |

### How to select the monitored signals

| Step | Action  | Display   |
|------|---|---|
| 1.   | <p>You can select which signals are monitored in the Output mode and how they are displayed with group <a href="#">34 PANEL DISPLAY</a> parameters. See page <a href="#">88</a> for detailed instructions on changing parameter values.</p> <p>By default, the display shows three signals:<br/>           Signal 1: <a href="#">0103 OUTPUT FREQ</a><br/>           Signal 2: <a href="#">0104 CURRENT</a><br/>           Signal 3: <a href="#">0105 TORQUE</a></p> <p>To change the default signals, select up to three signals from group <a href="#">01 OPERATING DATA</a> to be shown.</p> <p>Signal 1: Change the value of parameter <a href="#">3401 SIGNAL1 PARAM</a> to the index of the signal parameter in group <a href="#">01 OPERATING DATA</a> (= number of the parameter without the leading zero), eg 105 means parameter <a href="#">0105 TORQUE</a>. Value 0 means that no signal is displayed.</p> <p>Repeat for signals 2 (<a href="#">3408 SIGNAL2 PARAM</a>) and 3 (<a href="#">3415 SIGNAL3 PARAM</a>).</p> | <pre> LOC  ↵  PAR  EDIT—— 3401 SIGNAL1 PARAM       <b>OUTPUT FREQ</b> [103] CANCEL   00:00   SAVE  LOC  ↵  PAR  EDIT—— 3408 SIGNAL2 PARAM       <b>CURRENT</b> [104] CANCEL   00:00   SAVE  LOC  ↵  PAR  EDIT—— 3415 SIGNAL3 PARAM       <b>TORQUE</b> [105] CANCEL   00:00   SAVE           </pre> |
| 2.   | <p>Select how you want the signals to be displayed: as a decimal number or a bar graph. For decimal numbers, you can specify the decimal point location, or use the decimal point location and unit of the source signal (setting 9 [<a href="#">DIRECT</a>]). For details, see parameter <a href="#">3404</a>.</p> <p>Signal 1: parameter <a href="#">3404 OUTPUT1 DSP FORM</a><br/>           Signal 2: parameter <a href="#">3411 OUTPUT2 DSP FORM</a><br/>           Signal 3: parameter <a href="#">3418 OUTPUT3 DSP FORM</a>.</p>   | <pre> LOC  ↵  PAR  EDIT—— 3404 OUTPUT1 DSP FORM       <b>DIRECT</b> [9] CANCEL   00:00   SAVE           </pre>  |
| 3.   | <p>Select the units to be displayed for the signals. This has no effect if parameter <a href="#">3404/3411/3418</a> is set to 9 (<a href="#">DIRECT</a>). For details, see parameter <a href="#">3405</a>.</p> <p>Signal 1: parameter <a href="#">3405 OUTPUT1 UNIT</a><br/>           Signal 2: parameter <a href="#">3412 OUTPUT2 UNIT</a><br/>           Signal 3: parameter <a href="#">3419 OUTPUT3 UNIT</a>.</p>  | <pre> LOC  ↵  PAR  EDIT—— 3405 OUTPUT1 UNIT       <b>HZ</b> [3] CANCEL   00:00   SAVE           </pre>  |



| Step | Action  | Display   |
|------|---|---|
| 4.   | <p>Select the scalings for the signals by specifying the minimum and maximum display values. This has no effect if parameter <i>3404/3411/3418</i> is set to 9 (<i>DIRECT</i>). For details, see parameters <i>3406</i> and <i>3407</i>.</p> <p>Signal 1: parameters <i>3406 OUTPUT1 MIN</i> and <i>3407 OUTPUT1 MAX</i><br/>Signal 2: parameters <i>3413 OUTPUT2 MIN</i> and <i>3414 OUTPUT2 MAX</i><br/>Signal 3: parameters <i>3420 OUTPUT3 MIN</i> and <i>3421 OUTPUT3 MAX</i>.</p> | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"><p>LOC <input type="checkbox"/> PAR EDIT <input type="checkbox"/></p><p>3406 OUTPUT1 MIN<br/><b>0.0 Hz</b></p><p>CANCEL   00:00   SAVE</p></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"><p>LOC <input type="checkbox"/> PAR EDIT <input type="checkbox"/></p><p>3407 OUTPUT1 MAX<br/><b>500.0 Hz</b></p><p>CANCEL   00:00   SAVE</p></div> |

## ■ Assistants mode












When the drive is first powered up, the Start-up assistant guides you through the setup of the basic parameters. The Start-up assistant is divided into assistants, each of which is responsible for the specification of a related parameter set, for example Motor set-up or PID control. The Start-up assistant activates the assistants one after the other. You may also use the assistants independently. For more information on the tasks of the assistants, see section *Start-up assistant* on page 115.












In the Assistants mode, you can:

- use assistants to guide you through the specification of a set of basic parameters
- start, stop, change the direction and switch between local and remote control.

### How to use an assistant

The table below shows the basic operation sequence which leads you through assistants. The Motor set-up assistant is used as an example.

| Step | Action  | Display  |
|------|---|--|
| 1.   | Go to the Main menu by pressing  if you are in the Output mode, otherwise by pressing repeatedly  until you get to the Main menu.  | <pre> LOC ↻ MAIN MENU —1 PARAMETERS ASSISTANTS CHANGED PAR EXIT   00:00   ENTER </pre>   |
| 2.   | Go to the Assistants mode by selecting ASSISTANTS on the menu keys  and  , and pressing  .   | <pre> LOC ↻ ASSISTANTS —1 Start-up assistant Motor Set-up Application Speed control EXT1 Speed control EXT2 EXIT   00:00   SEL </pre>  |
| 3.   | <p>Select the assistant keys  and , and press .</p> <p>If you select any other assistant than the Start-up assistant, it guides you through the task of specification of its parameter set as shown in steps 4. and 5. below. After that you can select another assistant on the Assistants menu or exit the Assistants mode. The Motor set-up assistant is used here as an example.</p> <p>If you select the Start-up assistant, it activates the first assistant, which guides you through the task of specification of its parameter set as shown in steps 4. and 5. below. The Start-up assistant then asks if you want to continue with the next assistant or skip it – select the appropriate answer with keys  and , and press . If you choose to skip, the Start-up assistant asks the same question about the next assistant, and so on.</p> | <pre> LOC ↻ PAR EDIT — 9905 MOTOR NOM VOLT 200 V EXIT   00:00   SAVE </pre><br><pre> LOC ↻ CHOICE — Do you want to continue with application setup? Continue Skip EXIT   00:00   OK </pre> |













| Step | Action  | Display   |
|------|---|---|
| 4.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>To specify a new value, press keys  and .</li><li>To ask for information on the requested parameter, press key . Scroll the help text with keys  and . Close the help by pressing .</li></ul> | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"><p>LOC  PAR EDIT</p><p>9905 MOTOR NOM VOLT<br/><b>240 V</b></p><p>EXIT   00:00   SAVE</p></div> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"><p>LOC  HELP</p><p>Set as given on the motor nameplate.<br/>Voltage value must correspond to motor D/Y connection.</p><p>EXIT   00:00  </p></div> |
| 5.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>To accept the new value and continue to the setting of the next parameter, press .</li><li>To stop the assistant, press .</li></ul>   | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"><p>LOC  PAR EDIT</p><p>9906 MOTOR NOM CURR<br/><b>1.2 A</b></p><p>EXIT   00:00   SAVE</p></div>  |

## ■ Changed parameters mode

In the Changed parameters mode, you can:

- view a list of all parameters that have been changed from the macro default values
- change these parameters
- start, stop, change the direction and switch between local and remote control.

### How to view and edit changed parameters













| Step | Action  | Display   |
|------|---|---|
| 1.   | Go to the Main menu by pressing  if you are in the Output mode, otherwise by pressing repeatedly  until you get to the Main menu.   | <pre> LOC ↻ MAIN MENU ——— 1 PARAMETERS ASSISTANTS CHANGED PAR EXIT   00:00   ENTER                     </pre>   |
| 2.   | Go to the Changed parameters mode by selecting CHANGED PAR on the menu with keys  and  , and pressing  .  | <pre> LOC ↻ CHANGED PAR ——— 1202 CONST SPEED 1 10.0 Hz 1203 CONST SPEED 2 1204 CONST SPEED 3 9902 APPLIC MACRO EXIT   00:00   EDIT                     </pre> |
| 3.   | Select the changed parameter on the list with keys  and  . The value of the selected parameter is shown below it. Press  to modify the value.                           | <pre> LOC ↻ PAR EDIT ——— 1202 CONST SPEED 1 10.0 Hz CANCEL   00:00   SAVE                     </pre>  |
| 4.   | Specify a new value for the parameter with keys  and  . Pressing the key once increments or decrements the value. Holding the key down changes the value faster. Pressing the keys simultaneously replaces the displayed value with the default value.     | <pre> LOC ↻ PAR EDIT ——— 1202 CONST SPEED 1 15.0 Hz CANCEL   00:00   SAVE                     </pre>  |
| 5.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To accept the new value, press . If the new value is the default value, the parameter is removed from the list of changed parameters.</li> <li>• To cancel the new value and keep the original, press .</li> </ul> | <pre> LOC ↻ CHANGED PAR ——— 1202 CONST SPEED 1 15.0 Hz 1203 CONST SPEED 2 1204 CONST SPEED 3 9902 APPLIC MACRO EXIT   00:00   EDIT                     </pre> |

## ■ Fault logger mode

In the Fault logger mode, you can:

- view the drive fault history of maximum ten faults (after a power off, only the three latest faults are kept in the memory)
- see the details of the three latest faults (after a power off, the details of only the most recent fault is kept in the memory)
- read the help text for the fault
- start, stop, change the direction and switch between local and remote control.

### How to view faults

| Step | Action   | Display   |
|------|--|---|
| 1.   | Go to the Main menu by pressing  if you are in the Output mode, otherwise by pressing repeatedly  until you get to the Main menu.  | <pre> LOC ↻ MAIN MENU — 1 PARAMETERS ASSISTANTS CHANGED PAR EXIT   00:00   ENTER                     </pre>   |
| 2.   | Go to the Fault logger mode by selecting FAULT LOGGER on the menu with keys  and  , and pressing  . The display shows the fault log starting with the latest fault.<br><br>The number on the row is the fault code according to which the causes and corrective actions are listed in chapter <i>Fault tracing</i> on page 311. | <pre> LOC ↻ FAULT LOGGER — 1 10: PANEL LOSS 19.03.05 13:04:57 6: DC UNDERVOLT 7: AI1 LOSS EXIT   00:00   DETAIL                     </pre>                |
| 3.   | To see the details of a fault, select it with keys  and  , and press  .   | <pre> LOC ↻ PANEL LOSS — FAULT 10 FAULT TIME 1 13:04:57 FAULT TIME 2 EXIT   00:00   DIAG                     </pre>                                       |
| 4.   | To show the help text, press  . Scroll the help text with keys  and  .<br>After reading the help, press  to return to the previous display.  | <pre> LOC ↻ DIAGNOSTICS — Check: comm lines and connections, parameter 3002, parameters in groups 10 and 11. EXIT   00:00   OK                     </pre> |















## ■ Time and date mode






















In the Time and date mode, you can:

- show or hide the clock
- change date and time display formats
- set the date and time
- enable or disable automatic clock transitions according to the daylight saving changes
- start, stop, change the direction and switch between local and remote control.

The Assistant control panel contains a battery to ensure the function of the clock when the panel is not powered by the drive.

### How to show or hide the clock, change display formats, set the date and time and enable or disable clock transitions due to daylight saving changes

| Step | Action  | Display  |
|------|---|--|
| 1.   | Go to the Main menu by pressing  if you are in the Output mode, otherwise by pressing repeatedly  until you get to the Main menu.   | <pre> LOC ↻ MAIN MENU — 1 PARAMETERS ASSISTANTS CHANGED PAR EXIT   00:00   ENTER                     </pre>  |
| 2.   | Go to the Time and date mode by selecting TIME & DATE on the menu with keys  and  , and pressing  .  | <pre> LOC ↻ TIME &amp; DATE — 1 CLOCK VISIBILITY TIME FORMAT DATE FORMAT SET TIME SET DATE EXIT   00:00   SEL                     </pre>   |
| 3.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To show (hide) the clock, select CLOCK VISIBILITY on the menu, press , select Show clock (Hide clock) and press , or, if you want to return to the previous display without making changes, press .</li> <li>• To specify the date format, select DATE FORMAT on the menu, press , and select a suitable format. Press  to save or  to cancel your changes.</li> <li>• To specify the time format, select TIME FORMAT on the menu, press , and select a suitable format. Press  to save or  to cancel your changes.</li> </ul> | <pre> LOC ↻ CLOCK VISIB — 1 Show clock Hide clock EXIT   00:00   SEL  LOC ↻ DATE FORMAT — 1 dd.mm.yy mm/dd/yy dd.mm.yyyy mm/dd/yyyy CANCEL   00:00   OK  LOC ↻ TIME FORMAT — 1 24-hour 12-hour CANCEL   00:00   SEL                     </pre> |

| Step | Action   | Display  |
|------|--|--|
|      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set the time, select SET TIME on the menu and press . Specify the hours with keys  and , and press . Then specify the minutes. Press  to save or  to cancel your changes.</li> <li>To set the date, select SET DATE on the menu and press . Specify the first part of the date (day or month depending on the selected date format) with keys  and , and press . Repeat for the second part. After specifying the year, press . To cancel your changes, press .</li> <li>To enable or disable the automatic clock transitions according to the daylight saving changes, select DAYLIGHT SAVING on the menu and press . Pressing  opens the help that shows the beginning and end dates of the period during which daylight saving time is used in each country or area whose daylight saving changes you can select to be followed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To disable automatic clock transitions according to the daylight saving changes, select Off and press .</li> <li>To enable automatic clock transitions, select the country or area whose daylight saving changes are followed and press .</li> <li>To return to the previous display without making changes, press .</li> </ul> </li> </ul> | <p>LOC  SET TIME—</p> <p><b>15:41</b></p> <p>CANCEL   00:00   OK</p> <hr/> <p>LOC  SET DATE—</p> <p><b>19.03.05</b></p> <p>CANCEL   00:00   OK</p> <hr/> <p>LOC  DAYLIGHT SAV—1</p> <p><b>Off</b></p> <p>EU</p> <p>US</p> <p>Australia1:NSW,Vict..</p> <p>Australia2:Tasmania..</p> <p>EXIT   00:00   SEL</p> <hr/> <p>LOC  HELP—</p> <p>EU:</p> <p>On: Mar last Sunday</p> <p>Off: Oct last Sunday</p> <p>US:</p> <p>EXIT   00:00  </p> |

## ■ Parameter backup mode

The Parameter backup mode is used to export parameters from one drive to another or to make a backup of the drive parameters. Uploading to the panel stores all drive parameters, including up to two user sets, to the Assistant control panel. The full set, partial parameter set (application) and user sets can then be downloaded from the control panel to another drive or the same drive. Uploading and downloading can be performed in local control.

The control panel memory is non-volatile and does not depend on the panel battery.

In the Parameter backup mode, you can:

- Copy all parameters from the drive to the control panel (UPLOAD TO PANEL). This includes all defined user sets of parameters and internal (not adjustable by the user) parameters.
- View the information about the backup stored to the control panel with UPLOAD TO PANEL (BACKUP INFO). This includes eg the type and rating of the drive where the backup was made. It is useful to check this information when you are going to copy the parameters to another drive with DOWNLOAD FULL SET to ensure that the drives match.
- Restore the full parameter set from the control panel to the drive (DOWNLOAD FULL SET). This writes all parameters, including the internal non-user-adjustable motor parameters, to the drive. It does not include the user sets of parameters.

**Note:** Only use this function to restore a drive from a backup or to transfer parameters to systems that are identical to the original system.

- Copy a partial parameter set (part of the full set) from the control panel to a drive (DOWNLOAD APPLICATION). The partial set does not include user sets, internal motor parameters, parameters *9905...9909*, *1605*, *1607*, *5201*, nor any group *53 EFB PROTOCOL* parameters.

The source and target drives and their motor sizes do not need to be the same.

- Copy user set 1 parameters from the control panel to the drive (DOWNLOAD USER SET1). A user set includes group *99 START-UP DATA* parameters and the internal motor parameters.

















The function is only shown on the menu when User set 1 has been first saved using parameter *9902 APPLIC MACRO* (see section *user macros* on page *112*) and then uploaded to the control panel with UPLOAD TO PANEL.

- Copy user set 2 parameters from the control panel to the drive (DOWNLOAD USER SET2). As DOWNLOAD USER SET1 above.
  - Start, stop, change the direction and switch between local and remote control.
-














## How to upload and download parameters

For the upload and download functions available, see above. Note that the drive has to be in local control for uploading and downloading.

| Step | Action  | Display   |
|------|---|---|
| 1.   | Go to the Main menu by pressing  if you are in the Output mode, otherwise by pressing repeatedly  until you get to the Main menu. – If REM is shown on the status line, press  to switch to local control.   | <pre> LOC  MAIN MENU  1 PARAMETERS ASSISTANTS CHANGED PAR EXIT  00:00  ENTER </pre>   |
| 2.   | Go to the Par backup mode by selecting PAR BACKUP on the menu with keys  and  , and pressing  .  | <pre> LOC  PAR BACKUP  1 UPLOAD TO PANEL BACKUP INFO DOWNLOAD FULL SET DOWNLOAD APPLICATION DOWNLOAD USER SET1 EXIT  00:00  SEL </pre>  |
| 3.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To copy all parameters (including user sets and internal parameters) from the drive to the control panel, select UPLOAD TO PANEL on the Par backup menu with keys  and , and press . During the transfer, the display shows the degree of completion in percent. Press  if you want to stop the operation.</li> </ul> <p>After the upload is completed, the display shows a message about the completion. Press  to return to the Par backup menu.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To perform downloads, select the appropriate operation (here DOWNLOAD FULL SET is used as an example) on the Par backup menu with keys  and , and press . The display shows the degree of completion in percent. Press  if you want to stop the operation.</li> </ul> <p>After the download is completed, the display shows a message about the completion. Press  to return to the Par backup menu.</p> | <pre> LOC  PAR BACKUP Copying parameters ██████████ 50% ABORT  00:00 </pre> <pre> LOC  MESSAGE Parameter upload successful OK  00:00 </pre> <pre> LOC  PAR BACKUP Downloading parameters (full set) ██████████ 50% ABORT  00:00 </pre> <pre> LOC  MESSAGE Parameter download successfully completed. OK  00:00 </pre> |

## How to view information about the backup
















| Step | Action   | Display   |
|------|--|---|
| 1.   | Go to the Main menu by pressing  if you are in the Output mode, otherwise by pressing repeatedly  until you get to the Main menu.  | <pre> LOC  MAIN MENU-----1 PARAMETERS ASSISTANTS CHANGED PAR EXIT   00:00   ENTER </pre>  |
| 2.   | Go to the Par backup mode by selecting PAR BACKUP on the menu with keys  and  , and pressing  .   | <pre> LOC  PAR BACKUP-----1 UPLOAD TO PANEL BACKUP INFO DOWNLOAD FULL SET DOWNLOAD APPLICATION DOWNLOAD USER SET1 EXIT   00:00   SEL </pre>   |
| 3.   | Select BACKUP INFO on the Par backup menu with keys  and  , and press  . The display shows the following information about the drive where the backup was made:<br>DRIVE TYPE: type of the drive<br><b>DRIVE RATING:</b> rating of the drive in format XXXYZ, where<br>XXX: Nominal current rating. If present, an "A" indicates a decimal point, eg 9A7 means 9.7 A.<br>Y: 2 = 200 V<br>4 = 400 V<br>Z: i = European loading package<br>n = US loading package<br><b>FIRMWARE:</b> firmware version of the drive.<br>You can scroll the information with keys  and  . | <pre> LOC  BACKUP INFO----- DRIVE TYPE ACS310 3304 DRIVE RATING 9A74i 3301 FIRMWARE EXIT   00:00   </pre> <pre> LOC  BACKUP INFO----- ACS310 3304 DRIVE RATING 9A74i 3301 FIRMWARE 241A hex EXIT   00:00   </pre> |
| 4.   | Press  to return to the Par backup menu.  | <pre> LOC  PAR BACKUP-----1 UPLOAD TO PANEL BACKUP INFO DOWNLOAD FULL SET DOWNLOAD APPLICATION DOWNLOAD USER SET1 EXIT   00:00   SEL </pre>   |

## ■ IO settings mode

In the IO settings mode, you can:

- check the parameter settings related to any I/O terminal
- edit the parameter setting. For example, if “1103: REF1” is listed under Ain1 (Analog input 1), that is, parameter **1103 REF1 SELECT** has value **AI1**, you can change its value to eg **AI2**. You cannot, however, set the value of parameter **1106 REF2 SELECT** to **AI1**.
- start, stop, change the direction and switch between local and remote control.

### How to edit and change parameter settings related to I/O terminals

| Step | Action  | Display  |
|------|---|--|
| 1.   | Go to the Main menu by pressing  if you are in the Output mode, otherwise by pressing repeatedly  until you get to the Main menu.   | <pre> LOC  MAIN MENU  1 <b>PARAMETERS</b> ASSISTANTS CHANGED PAR EXIT   00:00   ENTER                     </pre>   |
| 2.   | Go to the IO settings mode by selecting IO SETTINGS on the menu with keys  and  , and pressing  .  | <pre> LOC  IO SETTINGS  1 <b>DIGITAL INPUTS (DI)</b> ANALOG INPUTS (AI) RELAY OUTPUTS (ROUT) ANALOG OUTPUTS (AOUT) PANEL EXIT   00:00   SEL                     </pre> |
| 3.   | Select the I/O group, eg DIGITAL INPUTS, with keys  and  , and press  . After a brief pause, the display shows the current settings for the selection.             | <pre> LOC  IO SETTINGS <b>-DI1-</b> 1001:START/STOP (E1) -DI2- 1001:DIR (E1) -DI3- EXIT   00:00                       </pre>   |
| 4.   | Select the setting (line with a parameter number) with keys  and  , and press  .   | <pre> LOC  PAR EDIT 1001 EXT1 COMMANDS <b>DI1,2</b> [2] CANCEL   00:00   SAVE                     </pre>   |
| 5.   | Specify a new value for the setting with keys  and  . Pressing the key once increments or decrements the value. Holding the key down changes the value faster. Pressing the keys simultaneously replaces the displayed value with the default value. | <pre> LOC  PAR EDIT 1001 EXT1 COMMANDS <b>DI1P,2P</b> [3] CANCEL   00:00   SAVE                     </pre>   |
| 6.   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To save the new value, press .</li> <li>• To cancel the new value and keep the original, press .</li> </ul>  | <pre> LOC  IO SETTINGS <b>-DI1-</b> 1001:START PLS (E1) -DI2- 1001:STOP PLS (E1) -DI3- EXIT   00:00                       </pre>                                       |



# Application macros

---

## What this chapter contains

The chapter describes the application macros. For each macro, there is a wiring diagram showing the default control connections (digital and analog I/O). The chapter also explains how to save a user macro and how to recall it.

## Overview of macros

Application macros are pre-programmed parameter sets. While starting up the drive, the user typically selects one of the macros - the one that is best suited for the purpose - with parameter **9902 APPLIC MACRO**, makes the essential changes and saves the result as a user macro.

The ACS310 has eight standard macros and two user macros. The table below contains a summary of the macros and describes suitable applications.

| Macro               | Suitable applications   |
|---------------------|---|
| ABB standard        | Ordinary speed control applications where no, one, two or three constant speeds are used. Start/stop is controlled with one digital input (level start and stop). It is possible to switch between two acceleration and deceleration times. |
| 3-wire              | Ordinary speed control applications where no, one, two or three constant speeds are used. The drive is started and stopped with push buttons.   |
| Alternate           | Speed control applications where no, one, two or three constant speeds are used. Start, stop and direction are controlled by two digital inputs (combination of the input states determines the operation).                                 |
| Motor potentiometer | Speed control applications where no or one constant speed is used. The speed is controlled by two digital inputs (increase / decrease / keep unchanged).  |
| Hand/Auto           | Speed control applications where switching between two control devices is needed. Some control signal terminals are reserved for one device, the rest for the other. One digital input selects between the terminals (devices) in use.      |

---

| Macro        | Suitable applications  |
|--------------|--|
| PID control  | Process control applications, for example different closed loop control systems such as pressure control, level control and flow control. It is possible to switch between process and speed control: Some control signal terminals are reserved for process control, others for speed control. One digital input selects between process and speed control. |
| PFC control  | Pump alternation applications, for example booster stations in buildings. The pressure in the network is adjusted by changing the speed of the pump according to the signal received from the pressure transducer and adding auxiliary pumps directly on-line when needed.   |
| SPFC control | Soft PFC control for pump alternation applications where lower pressure peaks are desirable when a new auxiliary motor is started.   |
| User         | The user can save the customized standard macro, ie the parameter settings including group <b>99 START-UP DATA</b> into the permanent memory, and recall the data at a later time.<br>For example, two user macros can be used when switching between two different motors is required.  |
| AC500 MODBUS | Application that requires a complex control logic and when several drives are connected together through a Modbus link. AC500-eCo PLC is used for controlling and monitoring the system.   |

## Summary of the I/O connections of the application macros

The following table gives the summary of the default I/O connections of all application macros.

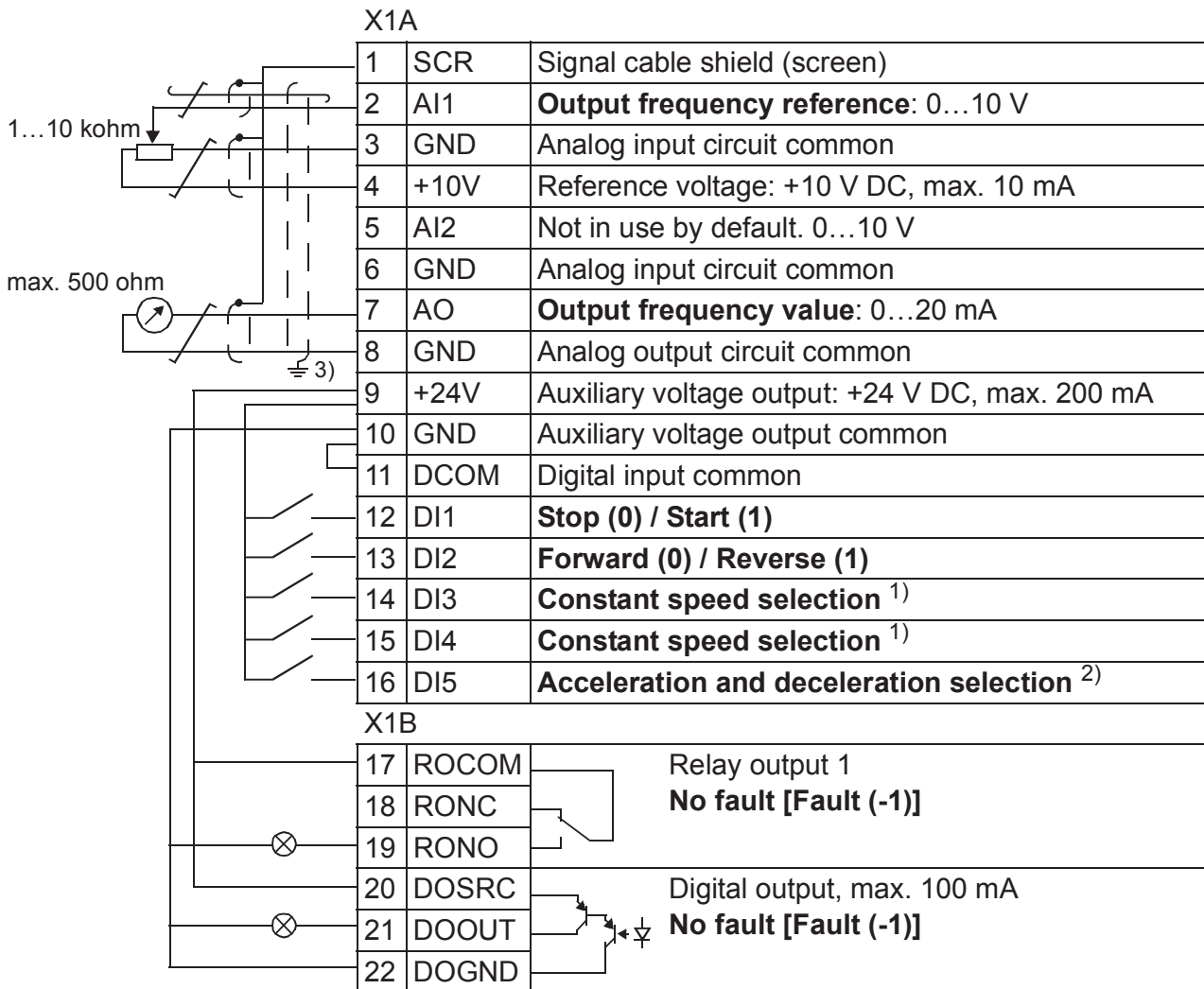
| Input/output            | Macro                |                      |                      |                  |                    |                                      |  |                      |
|-------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------------|--|----------------------|
|                         | ABB standard         | 3-wire               | Alternate            | Motor potentiom. | Hand/ Auto         | PID control                          | PFC control, SPFC control                    | AC500 Moodbus        |
| <b>AI1 (0...10 V)</b>   | Freq. ref.           | Freq. ref.           | Freq. ref.           | -                | Freq. ref. (Hand)  | Freq. ref. (Hand) / Proc. ref. (PID) | Ext. ref. 1 (Hand) / Ext. ref. 2 (PID/ PFC)  | Freq. ref.           |
| <b>AI2 (0... 20 mA)</b> | -                    | -                    | -                    | -                | Freq. ref. (Auto)  | Process value                        | Process value                                | -                    |
| <b>AO</b>               | Output freq.         | Output freq.         | Output freq.         | Output freq.     | Output freq.       | Output freq.                         | Output freq.                                 | Output freq.         |
| <b>DI1</b>              | Stop/ Start          | Start (pulse)        | Start (fwd)          | Stop/Start       | Stop/ Start (Hand) | Stop/ Start (Hand)                   | Stop/ Start (Hand)                           | Stop/ Start          |
| <b>DI2</b>              | Fwd/Rev              | Stop (pulse)         | Start (rev)          | Fwd/Rev          | Fwd/Rev (Hand)     | Hand/ PID                            | Hand/ PID,PFC                                | Fwd/Rev              |
| <b>DI3</b>              | Const. speed input 1 | Fwd/Rev              | Const. speed input 1 | Freq. ref. up    | Hand/Auto          | Const. speed 1                       | Interlock                                    | Const. speed input 1 |
| <b>DI4</b>              | Const. speed input 2 | Const. speed input 1 | Const. speed input 2 | Freq. ref. down  | Fwd/Rev (Auto)     | Run enable                           | Interlock                                    | Const. speed input 2 |
| <b>DI5</b>              | Ramp pair selection  | Const. speed input 2 | Ramp pair selection  | Const. speed 1   | Stop/ Start (Auto) | Stop/ Start (PID)                    | Stop/ Start (PID/ PFC)                       | Ramp pair selection  |
| <b>RO</b>               | Fault (-1)           | Fault (-1)           | Fault (-1)           | Fault (-1)       | Fault (-1)         | Fault (-1)                           | PFC  | Fault (-1)           |
| <b>DO</b>               | Fault (-1)           | Fault (-1)           | Fault (-1)           | Fault (-1)       | Fault (-1)         | Fault (-1)                           | PFC control: Fault (-1)<br>SPFC control: PFC | Fault (-1)           |

## ABB standard macro

This is the default macro. It provides a general purpose I/O configuration with three constant speeds. Parameter values are the default values given in section [All parameters](#) on page 177.

If you use other than the default connections presented below, see section [I/O terminals](#) on page 49.

### ■ Default I/O connections



<sup>1)</sup> See parameter group [12 CONSTANT SPEEDS](#):

| DI3 | DI4 | Operation (parameter)                          |
|-----|-----|--|
| 0   | 0   | Set speed through AI1                          |
| 1   | 0   | Speed 1 ( <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a> ) |
| 0   | 1   | Speed 2 ( <a href="#">1203 CONST SPEED 2</a> ) |
| 1   | 1   | Speed 3 ( <a href="#">1204 CONST SPEED 3</a> ) |

<sup>2)</sup> 0 = ramp times according to parameters [2202](#) and [2203](#).

1 = ramp times according to parameters [2205](#) and [2206](#).

<sup>3)</sup> 360 degree grounding under a clamp.

Tightening torque: 0.4 N·m (3.5 lbf·in).

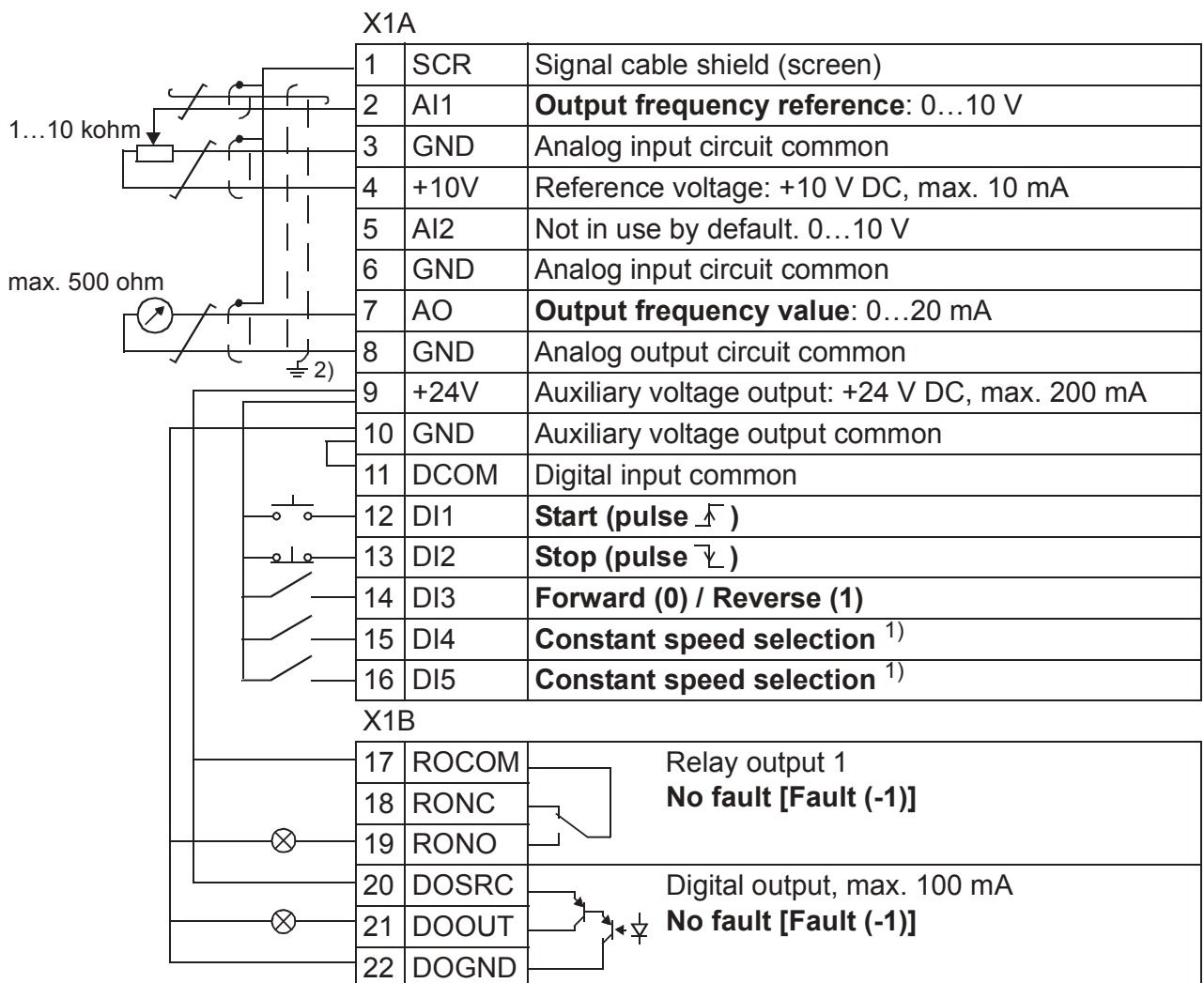
### 3-wire macro

This macro is used when the drive is controlled using momentary push-buttons. It provides three constant speeds. To enable the macro, set the value of parameter **9902 APPLIC MACRO** to 2 (**3-WIRE**).

For the parameter default values, see section *Default values with different macros* on page 165. If you use other than the default connections presented below, see section *I/O terminals* on page 49.

**Note:** When the stop input (DI2) is deactivated (no input), the control panel start and stop buttons are disabled.

#### ■ Default I/O connections



<sup>1)</sup> See parameter group **12 CONSTANT SPEEDS**:

| DI3 | DI4 | Operation (parameter)                 |
|-----|-----|---------------------------------------|
| 0   | 0   | Set speed through AI1                 |
| 1   | 0   | Speed 1 ( <b>1202 CONST SPEED 1</b> ) |
| 0   | 1   | Speed 2 ( <b>1203 CONST SPEED 2</b> ) |
| 1   | 1   | Speed 3 ( <b>1204 CONST SPEED 3</b> ) |

<sup>2)</sup> 360 degree grounding under a clamp.  
Tightening torque: 0.4 N·m (3.5 lbf·in).

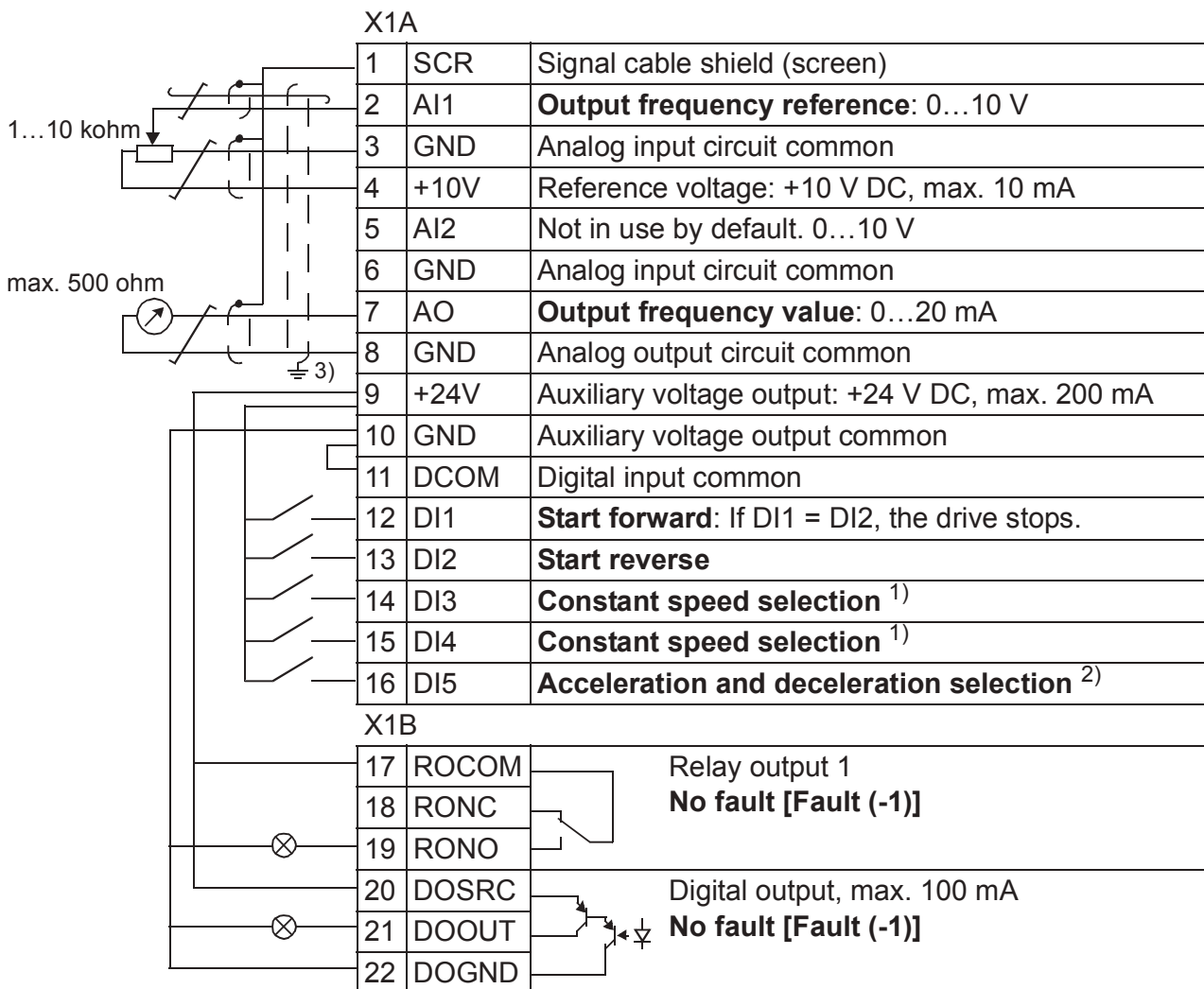


## Alternate macro

This macro provides an I/O configuration adapted to a sequence of DI control signals used when alternating the rotation direction of the motor. To enable the macro, set the value of parameter **9902 APPLIC MACRO** to 3 (**ALTERNATE**).

For the parameter default values, see section *Default values with different macros* on page 165. If you use other than the default connections presented below, see section *I/O terminals* on page 49.

### ■ Default I/O connections



<sup>1)</sup> See parameter group **12 CONSTANT SPEEDS**:

| DI3 | DI4 | Operation (parameter)                 |
|-----|-----|---------------------------------------|
| 0   | 0   | Set speed through AI1                 |
| 1   | 0   | Speed 1 ( <b>1202 CONST SPEED 1</b> ) |
| 0   | 1   | Speed 2 ( <b>1203 CONST SPEED 2</b> ) |
| 1   | 1   | Speed 3 ( <b>1204 CONST SPEED 3</b> ) |

<sup>2)</sup> 0 = ramp times according to parameters **2202** and **2203**.  
1 = ramp times according to parameters **2205** and **2206**.

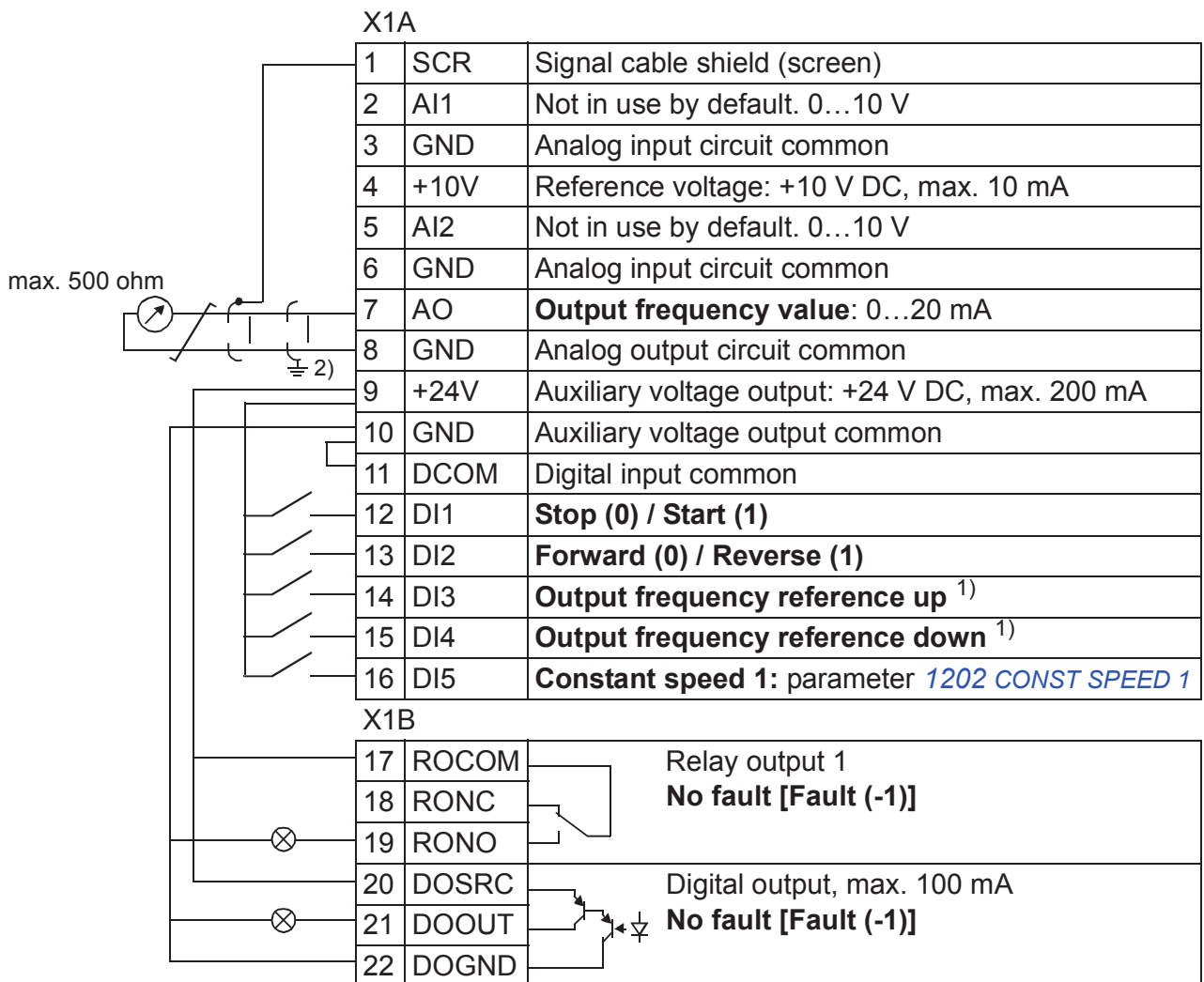
<sup>3)</sup> 360 degree grounding under a clamp.  
Tightening torque: 0.4 N·m (3.5 lbf·in).

## Motor potentiometer macro

This macro provides a cost-effective interface for PLCs that vary the speed (output frequency) of the motor using only digital signals. To enable the macro, set the value of parameter **9902 APPLIC MACRO** to 4 (**MOTOR POT**).

For the parameter default values, see section *Default values with different macros* on page 165. If you use other than the default connections presented below, see section *I/O terminals* on page 49.

### ■ Default I/O connections



<sup>1)</sup> If DI3 and DI4 are both active or inactive, the output frequency reference is unchanged.  
The existing output frequency reference is stored during stop and power down.

<sup>2)</sup> 360 degree grounding under a clamp.  
Tightening torque: 0.4 N·m (3.5 lbf·in).

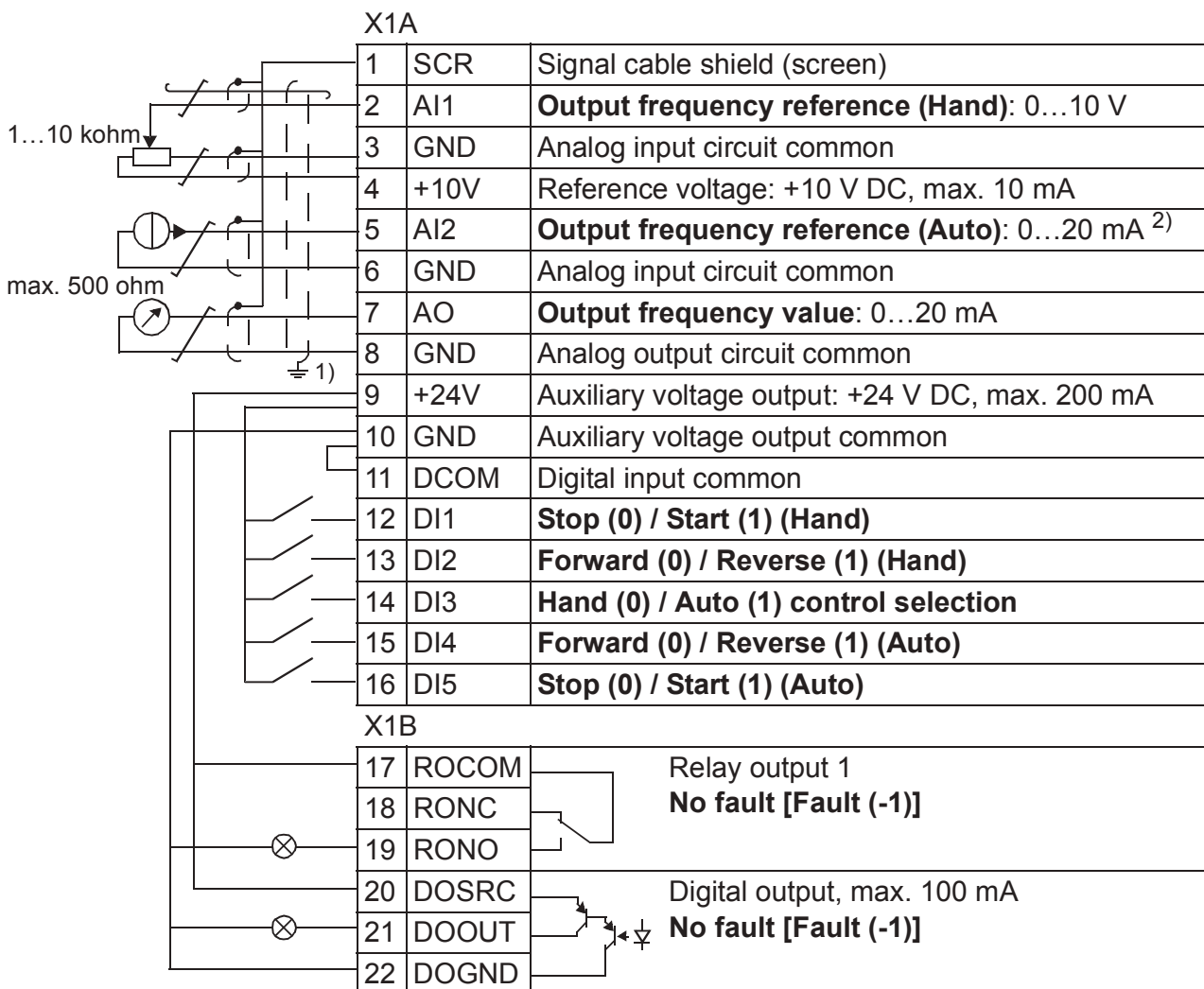
## Hand/Auto macro

This macro can be used when switching between two external control devices is needed. To enable the macro, set the value of parameter **9902 APPLIC MACRO** to 5 (**HAND/AUTO**).

For the parameter default values, see section *Default values with different macros* on page 165. If you use other than the default connections presented below, see section *I/O terminals* on page 49.

**Note:** Parameter **2108 START INHIBIT** must remain in the default setting 0 (**OFF**).

### ■ Default I/O connections



<sup>1)</sup> 360 degree grounding under a clamp.

<sup>2)</sup> The signal source must be powered externally. See the manufacturer's instructions. An example of a connection using a two-wire sensor is given on page 51.

Tightening torque: 0.4 N·m (3.5 lbf·in).

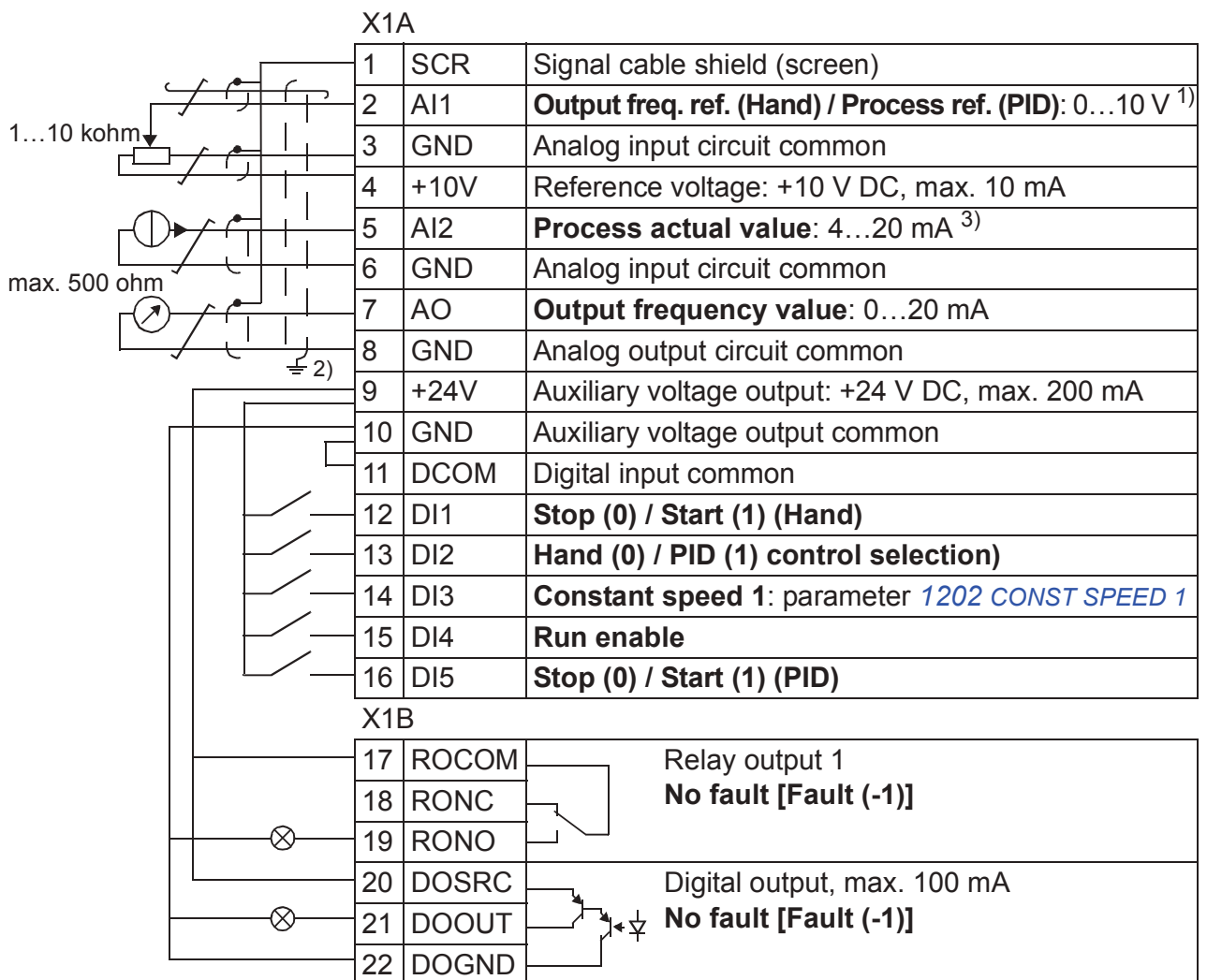
## PID control macro

This macro provides parameter settings for closed-loop control systems such as pressure control, flow control, etc. Control can also be switched to speed control using a digital input. To enable the macro, set the value of parameter **9902 APPLIC MACRO** to 6 (**PID CONTROL**).

For the parameter default values, see section **Default values with different macros** on page 165. If you use other than the default connections presented below, see section **I/O terminals** on page 49.

**Note:** Parameter **2108 START INHIBIT** must remain in the default setting 0 (**OFF**).

### ■ Default I/O connections



1) Hand: 0...10 V -> output freq. reference.  
PID: 0...10 V -> 0...100% PID setpoint.

2) 360 degree grounding under a clamp.

3) The signal source must be powered externally. See the manufacturer's instructions. An example of a connection using a two-wire sensor is given on page 51.

Tightening torque: 0.4 N·m (3.5 lbf·in).

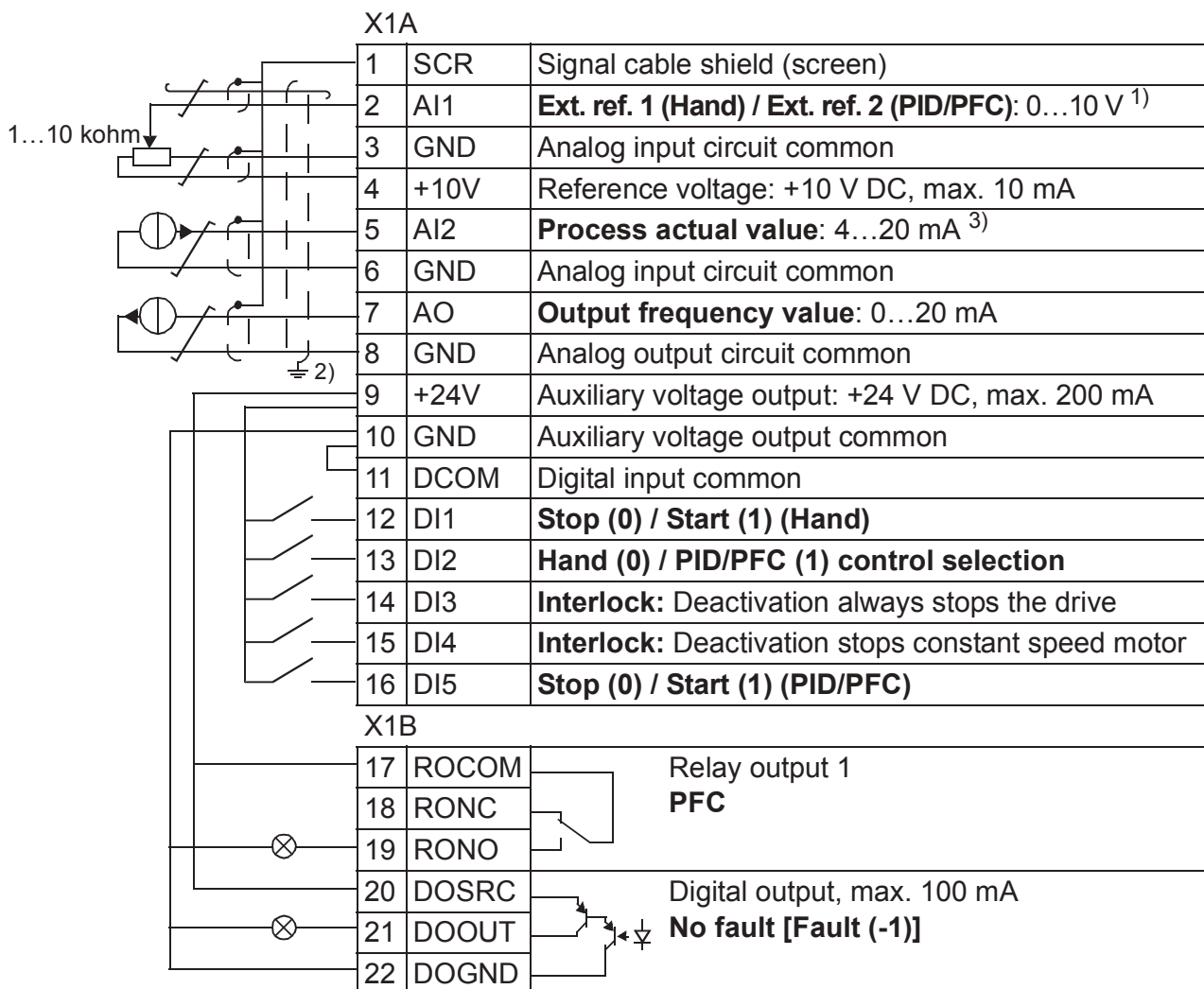
## PFC control macro

This macro provides parameter settings for pump and fan control (PFC) applications. To enable the macro, set the value of parameter **9902 APPLIC MACRO** to 7 (**PFC CONTROL**).

For the parameter default values, see section *Default values with different macros* on page 165. If you use other than the default connections presented below, see section *I/O terminals* on page 49.

**Note:** Parameter **2108 START INHIBIT** must remain in the default setting 0 (**OFF**).

### ■ Default I/O connections



<sup>1)</sup> Hand: 0...10 V -> 0...50 Hz.  
PID/PFC: 0...10 V -> 0...100% PID setpoint.

<sup>2)</sup> 360 degree grounding under a clamp.

<sup>3)</sup> The signal source must be powered externally. See the manufacturer's instructions. An example of a connection using a two-wire sensor is given on page 51.

Tightening torque: 0.4 N·m (3.5 lbf·in).

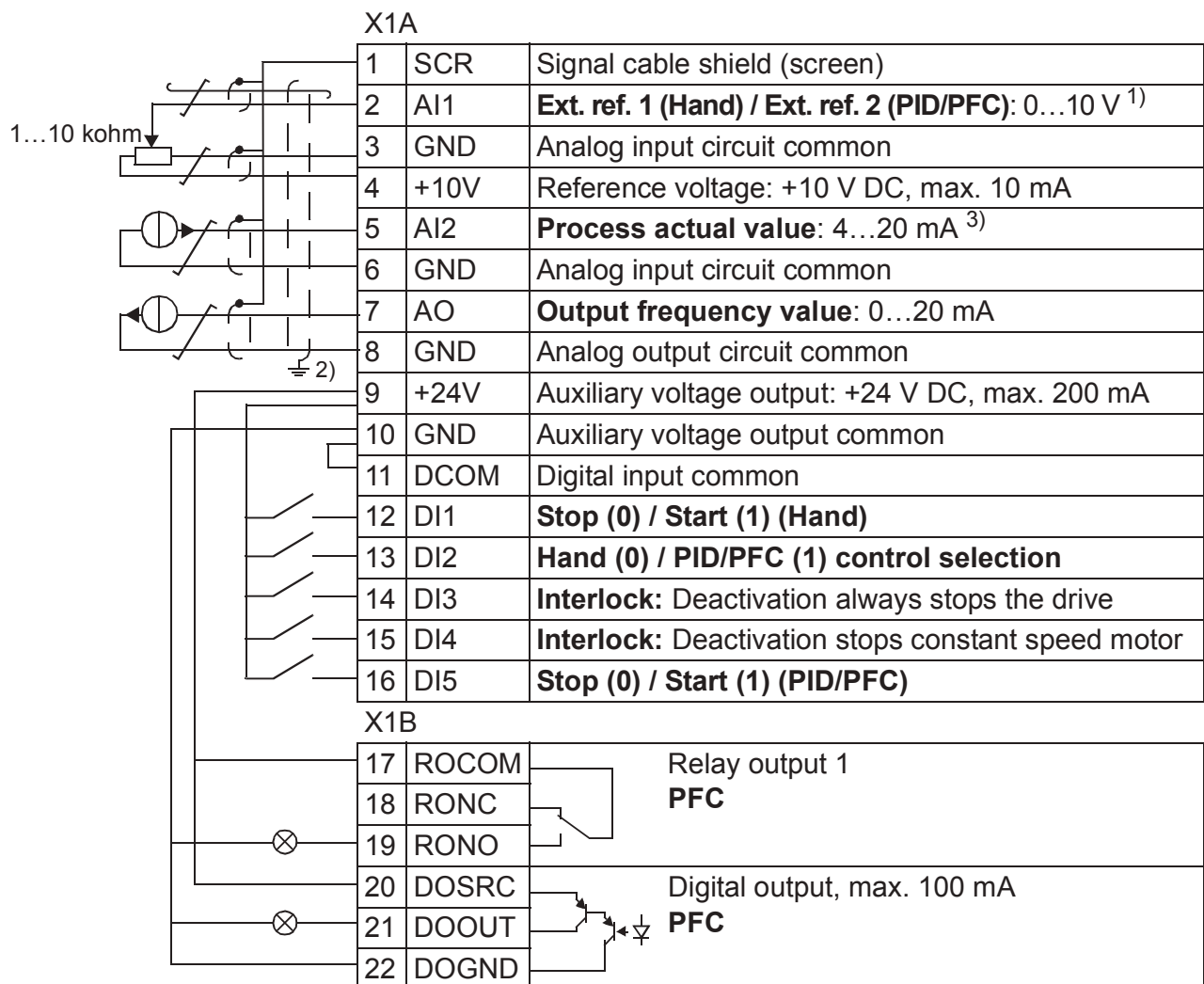
## SPFC control macro

This macro provides parameter settings for pump and fan control (SPFC) applications with a soft start function. To enable the macro, set the value of parameter **9902 APPLIC MACRO** to 15 (**SPFC CONTROL**).

For the parameter default values, see section *Default values with different macros* on page 165. If you use other than the default connections presented below, see section *I/O terminals* on page 49.

**Note:** Parameter **2108 START INHIBIT** must remain in the default setting 0 (**OFF**).

### ■ Default I/O connections



<sup>1)</sup> Hand: 0...10 V -> 0...50 Hz.  
PID/PFC: 0...10 V -> 0...100% PID setpoint.

<sup>2)</sup> 360 degree grounding under a clamp.

<sup>3)</sup> The signal source must be powered externally. See the manufacturer's instructions. An example of a connection using a two-wire sensor is given on page 51.



Tightening torque: 0.4 N·m (3.5 lbf·in).

## User macros



In addition to the standard application macros, it is possible to create two user macros. The user macro allows the user to save the parameter settings, including group **99 START-UP DATA**, into the permanent memory and recall the data at a later time. The panel reference is also saved if the macro is saved and loaded in local control. The remote control setting is saved into the user macro, but the local control setting is not.

The steps below show how to create and recall User macro 1. The procedure for the User macro 2 is identical, only the parameter **9902** values are different.

To create User macro 1:

- Adjust the parameters.
- Save the parameter settings to the permanent memory by changing parameter **9902** to -1 (**USER S1 SAVE**).
- Press  (Assistant control panel) or  (Basic control panel) to save.

To recall User macro 1:

- Change parameter **9902** to 0 (**USER S1 LOAD**).
- Press  (Assistant control panel) or  (Basic control panel) to load.

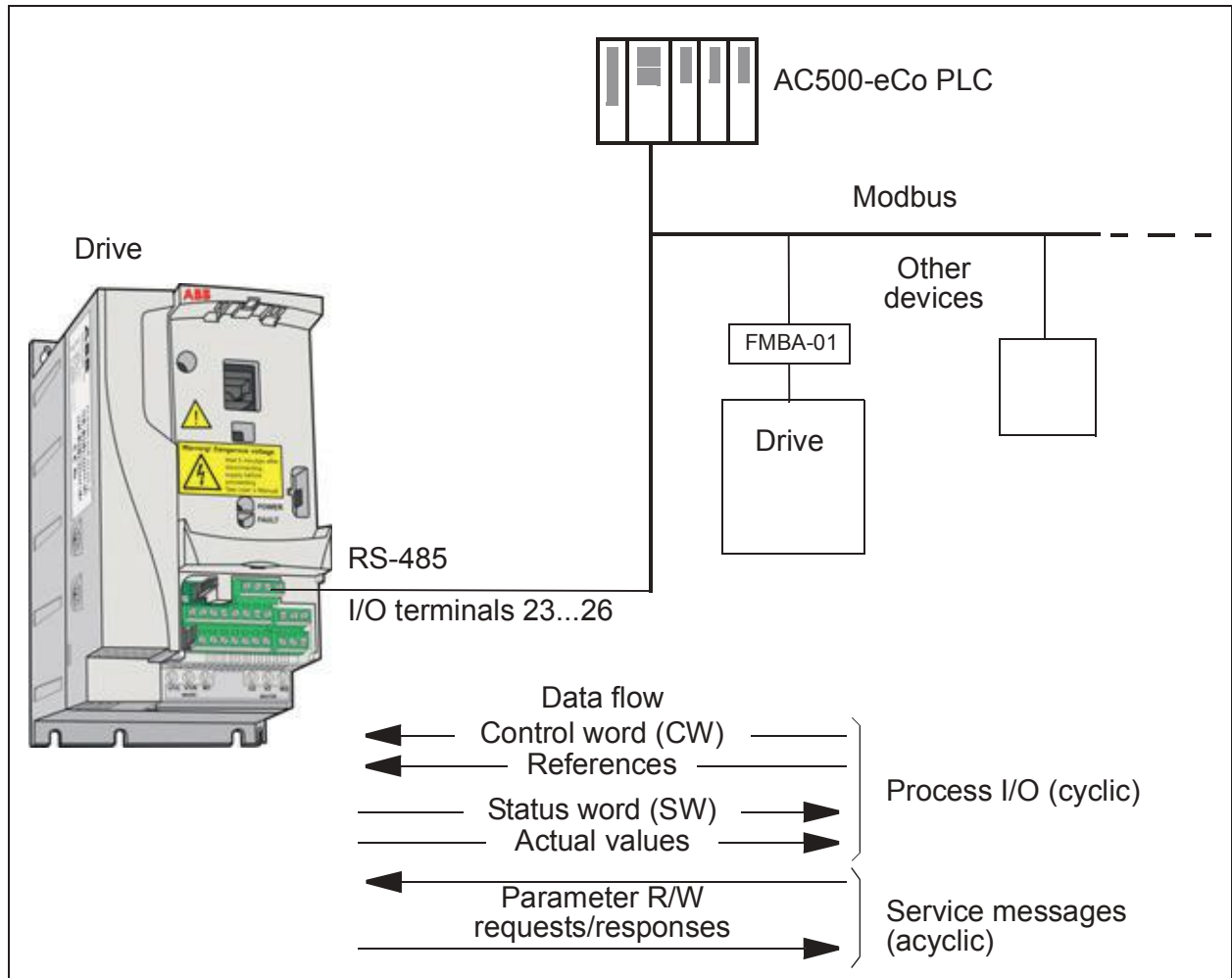
The user macro can also be switched through digital inputs (see parameter **1605**).

**Note:** User macro load restores the parameter settings, including group **99 START-UP DATA**. Check that the settings correspond to the motor used.

**Hint:** The user can for example switch the drive between two motors without having to adjust the motor parameters every time the motor is changed. The user needs only to adjust the settings once for each motor and then to save the data as two user macros. When the motor is changed, only the corresponding user macro needs to be loaded, and the drive is ready to operate.

## AC500 Modbus macro

The AC500 Modbus application macro configures the ACS310 drive communication and control parameters. The macro is available in ACS310 drives with firmware manual version 4.050 or later. To activate the macro, set parameter **9902 APPLIC MACRO** to **AC500 MODBUS**.



The AC500 Modbus application macro default values for the drive parameters correspond to the ABB standard macro (parameter **9902**, value 1 (**ABB STANDARD**)), see section **ABB standard macro** on page **104**), with the following differences:

| Parameter            | Default value     |
|----------------------|-------------------|
| 1001 EXT1 COMMANDS   | 10 (COMM)         |
| 1102 EXT1/EXT2 SEL   | 8 (COMM)          |
| 1103 REF1 SELECT     | 8 (COMM)          |
| 1604 FAULT RESET SEL | 8 (COMM)          |
| 2201 ACC/DEC 1/2 SEL | 0 (NOT SEL)       |
| 3018 COMM FAULT FUNC | 1 (FAULT)         |
| 5302 EFB STATION ID  | 2                 |
| 5303 EFB BAUD RATE   | 192 (19.2 kbit/s) |



| Parameter                    | Default value             |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 5304 <i>EFB PARITY</i>       | 1 ( <i>8 NONE 1</i> )     |
| 5305 <i>EFB CTRL PROFILE</i> | 2 ( <i>ABB DRV FULL</i> ) |
| 5310 <i>EFB PAR 10</i>       | 101                       |
| 5311 <i>EFB PAR 11</i>       | 303                       |
| 5312 <i>EFB PAR 12</i>       | 305                       |

**Note:** The default slave address of the drive is 2 (parameter *5302 EFB STATION ID*), but if several drives are used, the address must be unique for each drive.



# Program features

---

## What this chapter contains

The chapter describes program features. For each feature, there is a list of related user settings, actual signals, and fault and alarm messages.

## Start-up assistant

### ■ Introduction

The Start-up assistant (requires the Assistant control panel) guides the user through the start-up procedure, helping to enter the requested data (parameter values) to the drive. The Start-up assistant also checks that the entered values are valid, ie within the allowed range.

The Start-up assistant calls other assistants, each of which guides the user through the task of specifying a related parameter set. At the first start, the drive suggests entering the first task, Language select, automatically. The user may activate the tasks either one after the other as the Start-up assistant suggests, or independently. The user may also adjust the drive parameters in the conventional way without using the assistant at all.

See section [Assistants mode](#) on page [91](#) for how to start the Start-up assistant or other assistants.

---

## ■ Default order of the tasks

Depending on the selection made in the Application task (parameter *9902 APPLIC MACRO*), the Start-up assistant decides which consequent tasks it suggests. The default tasks are shown in the table below.

| Application selection | Default tasks  |
|-----------------------|--|
| <i>ABB STANDARD</i>   | Language select, Motor set-up, Application, Option modules, Speed control EXT1, Speed control EXT2, Start/Stop control, Timed functions, Protections, Output signals |
| <i>3-WIRE</i>         | Language select, Motor set-up, Application, Option modules, Speed control EXT1, Speed control EXT2, Start/Stop control, Timed functions, Protections, Output signals |
| <i>ALTERNATE</i>      | Language select, Motor set-up, Application, Option modules, Speed control EXT1, Speed control EXT2, Start/Stop control, Timed functions, Protections, Output signals |
| <i>MOTOR POT</i>      | Language select, Motor set-up, Application, Option modules, Speed control EXT1, Speed control EXT2, Start/Stop control, Timed functions, Protections, Output signals |
| <i>HAND/AUTO</i>      | Language select, Motor set-up, Application, Option modules, Speed control EXT1, Speed control EXT2, Start/Stop control, Timed functions, Protections, Output signals |
| <i>PID CONTROL</i>    | Language select, Motor set-up, Application, Option modules, PID control, Speed control EXT2, Start/Stop control, Timed functions, Protections, Output signals        |
| <i>PFC CONTROL</i>    | Language select, Motor set-up, Application, Option modules, Speed control EXT1, Speed control EXT2, Start/Stop control, Timed functions, Protections, Output signals |
| <i>SPFC CONTROL</i>   | Language select, Motor set-up, Application, Option modules, Speed control EXT1, Speed control EXT2, Start/Stop control, Timed functions, Protections, Output signals |
| <i>AC500 MODBUS</i>   | Language select, Motor set-up, Application, Option modules, Speed control EXT1, Speed control EXT2, Start/Stop control, Timed functions, Protections, Output signals |

## ■ List of the tasks and the relevant drive parameters

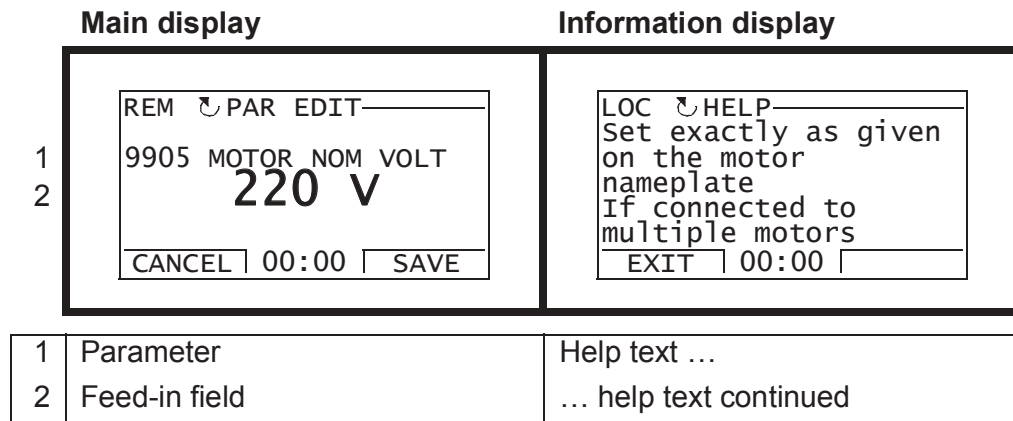
Depending on the selection made in the Application task (parameter *9902 APPLIC MACRO*), the Start-up assistant decides which consequent tasks it suggests.

| Name                      | Description   | Set parameters   |
|---------------------------|---|--|
| <b>Language select</b>    | Selecting the language  | <i>9901</i>  |
| <b>Motor set-up</b>       | Setting the motor data  | <i>9905...9909</i>   |
| <b>Application</b>        | Selecting the application macro   | <i>9902</i> , parameters associated to the macro   |
| <b>Option modules</b>     | Activating the option modules   | Group <i>35 MOTOR TEMP MEAS</i> , group <i>52 PANEL COMM 9802</i>  |
| <b>Speed control EXT1</b> | Selecting the source for the speed (output frequency) reference<br><br>(If AI1 is used: Setting analog input AI1 limits, scale, inversion)<br><br>Setting the reference limits<br><br>Setting the frequency limits<br><br>Setting the acceleration and deceleration times   | <i>1103</i><br><br>( <i>1301...1303, 3001</i> )<br><br><i>1104, 1105</i><br><br><i>2007, 2008</i><br><br><i>2202, 2203</i>       |
| <b>Speed control EXT2</b> | Selecting the source for the speed (output frequency) reference<br><br>(If AI1 is used: Setting analog input AI1 limits, scale, inversion)<br><br>Setting the reference limits  | <i>1106</i><br><br>( <i>1301...1303, 3001</i> )<br><br><i>1107, 1108</i>   |
| <b>PID control</b>        | Selecting the source for the process reference<br><br>(If AI1 is used: Setting analog input AI1 limits, scale, inversion)<br><br>Setting the reference limits<br><br>Setting the speed (reference) limits<br><br>Setting the source and limits for the process actual value | <i>1106</i><br><br>( <i>1301...1303, 3001</i> )<br><br><i>1107, 1108</i><br><br><i>2007, 2008</i><br><br><i>4016, 4018, 4019</i> |
| <b>Start/Stop control</b> | Selecting the source for start and stop signals of the two external control locations, EXT1 and EXT2<br><br>Selecting between EXT1 and EXT2<br><br>Defining the direction control<br><br>Defining the start and stop modes<br><br>Selecting the use of Run Enable signal    | <i>1001, 1002</i><br><br><i>1102</i><br><br><i>1003</i><br><br><i>2101...2103</i><br><br><i>1601</i>                             |
| <b>Protections</b>        | Setting the current limits  | <i>2003</i>  |

| Name                   | Description   | Set parameters  |
|------------------------|---|---|
| <b>Output signals</b>  | <p>Output signals Selecting the signals indicated through relay output RO1 and, if the MREL relay output extension module is in use, RO2...RO4.</p> <p>Selecting the signals indicated through analog output AO</p> <p>Setting the minimum, maximum, scaling and inversion</p>  | <p>Group 14 <i>RELAY OUTPUTS</i></p> <p>Group 15 <i>ANALOG OUTPUTS</i></p>  |
| <b>Timed functions</b> | <p>Setting the timed functions</p> <p>Selecting the timed start/stop control for external control locations EXT1 and EXT2</p> <p>Selecting timed EXT1/EXT2 control</p> <p>Activation of timed constant speed 1</p> <p>Selecting timed function status indicated through relay output RO1 or, if the MREL relay output extension module is in use, RO2...RO4</p> <p>Selecting timed PID1 parameter set 1/2 control</p> <p>Selection between different internal (constant) set points for the process PID control (PID1 parameter set 1)</p> <p>Selection between different internal (constant) set points for the process PID control (PID1 parameter set 2)</p> <p>Selecting timed Autochange control</p> | <p>Group 36 <i>TIMED FUNCTIONS</i></p> <p>1001, 1002</p> <p>1102</p> <p>1201</p> <p>1401...1403, 1410</p> <p>4027</p> <p>4039</p> <p>4139</p> <p>8126</p> |

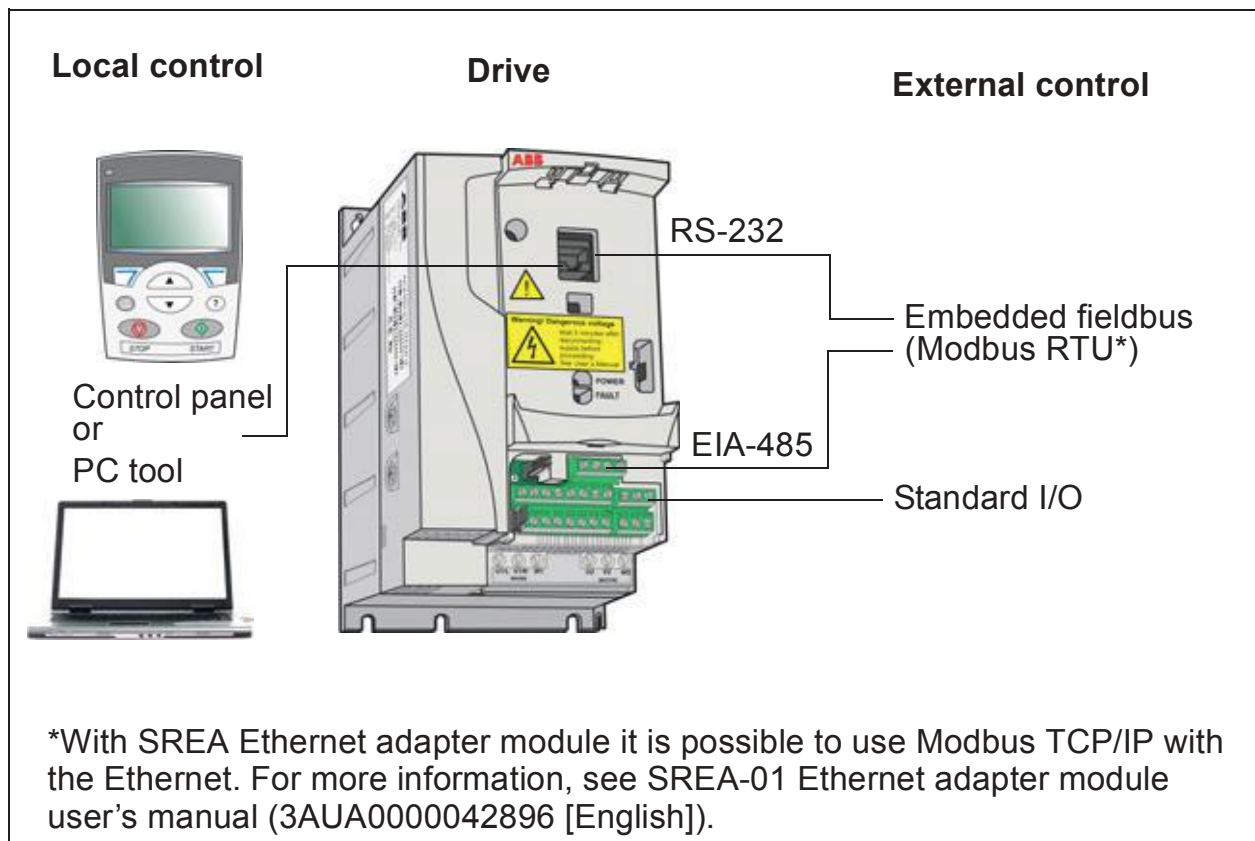
## ■ Contents of the assistant displays

There are two types of displays in the Start-up assistant: Main displays and information displays. The main displays prompt the user to feed in information. The assistant steps through the main displays. The information displays contain help texts for the main displays. The figure below shows a typical example of both and explanations of the contents.



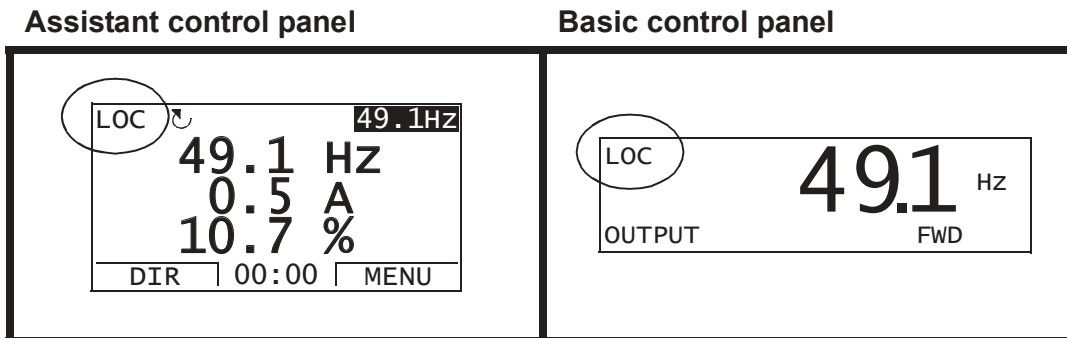
## Local control vs. external control

The drive can receive start, stop and direction commands and reference values from the control panel or through digital and analog inputs. Embedded fieldbus enables control over an open fieldbus link. A PC equipped with the DriveWindow Light PC tool can also control the drive.



## Local control

The control commands are given from the control panel keypad when the drive is in local control. LOC indicates local control on the panel display.

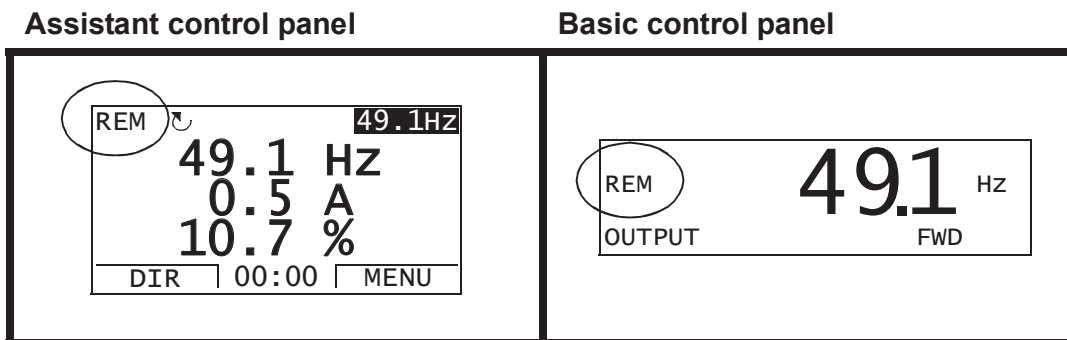


The control panel always overrides the external control signal sources when used in local control.

## External control

When the drive is in external (remote) control, the commands are given through the standard I/O terminals (digital and analog inputs) and/or the fieldbus interface. In addition, it is also possible to set the control panel as the source for the external control.

External control is indicated with REM on the panel display.



The user can connect the control signals to two external control locations, *EXT1* or *EXT2*. Depending on the user selection, either one is active at a time. This function operates on a 2 ms time level.

## Settings

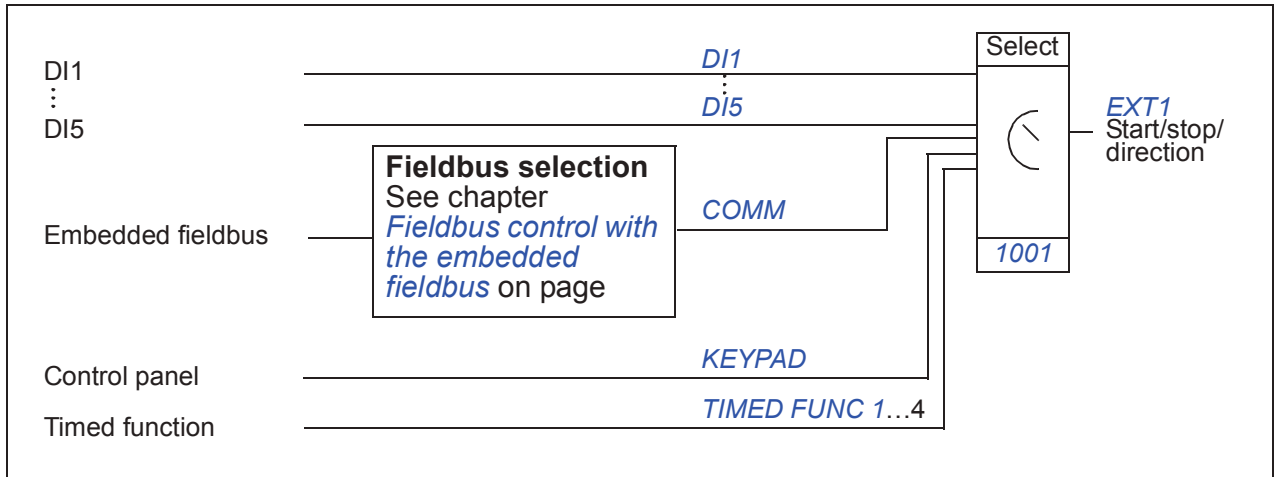
| Panel key        | Additional information                                |
|------------------|---|
| LOC/REM          | Selection between local and external (remote) control |
| <b>Parameter</b> |   |
| <i>1102</i>      | Selection between <i>EXT1</i> and <i>EXT2</i>         |
| <i>1001/1002</i> | Start, stop, direction source for <i>EXT1/EXT2</i>    |
| <i>1103/1106</i> | Reference source for <i>EXT1/EXT2</i>                 |

## ■ Diagnostics

| Actual signals | Additional information |
|----------------|------------------------|
| 0111/0112      | EXT1/EXT2 reference    |

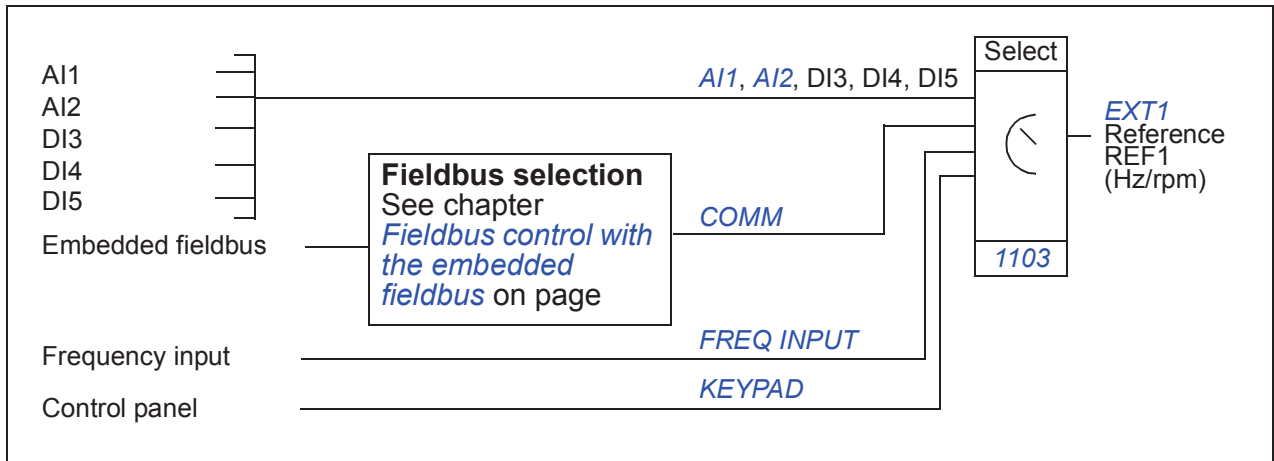
## ■ Block diagram: Start, stop, direction source for EXT1

The figure below shows the parameters that select the interface for start, stop, and direction for external control location *EXT1*.



## ■ Block diagram: Reference source for EXT1

The figure below shows the parameters that select the interface for the speed reference of external control location *EXT1*.





## Reference types and processing

The drive can accept a variety of references in addition to the conventional analog input and control panel signals.

- The drive reference can be given with two digital inputs: One digital input increases the speed, the other decreases it.
- The drive can form a reference out of two analog input signals by using mathematical functions: addition, subtraction, multiplication and division.
- The drive can form a reference out of an analog input signal and a signal received through a serial communication interface by using mathematical functions: addition and multiplication.
- The drive reference can be given with frequency input.

It is possible to scale the external reference so that the signal minimum and maximum values correspond to a speed other than the minimum and maximum speed limits.

### ■ Settings

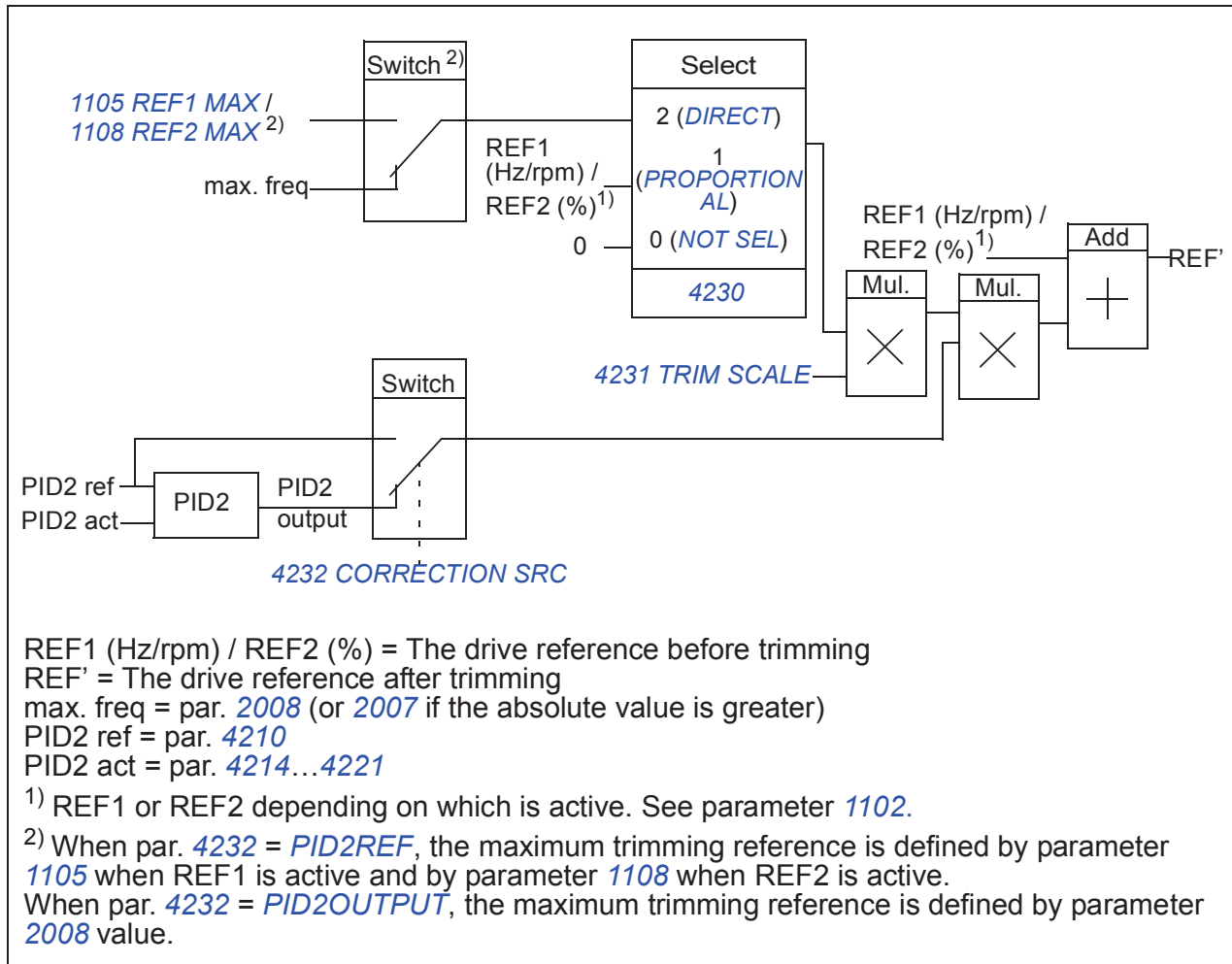
| Parameter                        | Additional information                          |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Group <i>11 REFERENCE SELECT</i> | External reference source, type and scaling     |
| Group <i>20 LIMITS</i>           | Operating limits                                |
| Group <i>22 ACCEL/DECEL</i>      | Speed reference acceleration/deceleration ramps |
| Group <i>32 SUPERVISION</i>      | Reference supervision                           |

### ■ Diagnostics

| Actual signal                     | Additional information   |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <i>0111/0112</i>                  | REF1/REF2 reference  |
| Group <i>03 FB ACTUAL SIGNALS</i> | References in different stages of the reference processing chain |

## Reference trimming

In reference trimming, the external reference is corrected depending on the measured value of a secondary application variable. The block diagram below illustrates the function.



## Settings

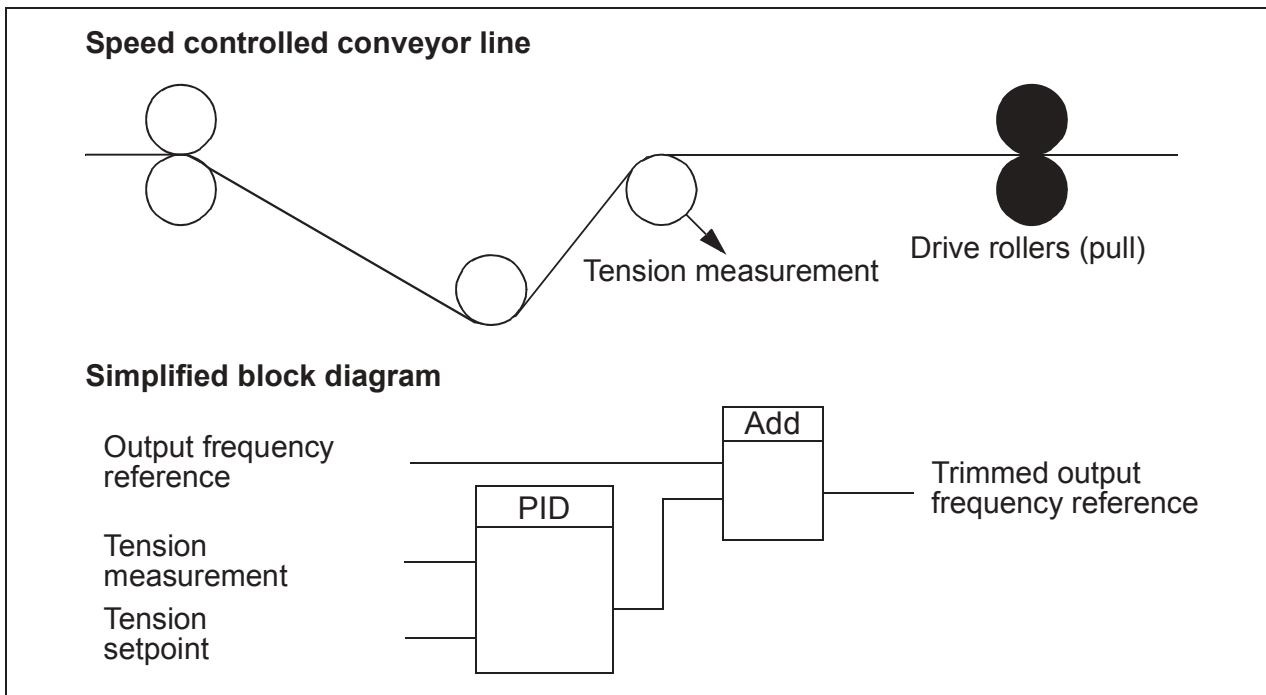
| Parameter       | Additional information     |
|-----------------|----------------------------|
| 1102            | REF1/2 selection           |
| 4230 ... 4232   | Trimming function settings |
| 4201 ... 4229   | PID control settings       |
| Group 20 LIMITS | Drive operation limits     |

## ■ Example

The drive runs a conveyor line. It is speed controlled but the line tension also needs to be taken into account: If the measured tension exceeds the tension setpoint, the speed is slightly decreased, and vice versa.

To accomplish the desired speed correction, the user

- activates the trimming function and connects the tension setpoint and the measured tension to it.
- tunes the trimming to a suitable level.



## Programmable analog inputs

The drive has two programmable analog voltage/current inputs. The inputs can be inverted, filtered and the maximum and minimum values can be adjusted. The update cycle for the analog input is 8 ms (12 ms cycle once per second). The cycle time is shorter when information is transferred to the application program (8 ms -> 2 ms).

## ■ Settings

| Parameter   | Additional information                                     |
|---|--|
| Group 11 <i>REFERENCE SELECT</i>                                  | AI as reference source                                     |
| Group 13 <i>ANALOG INPUTS</i>                                     | Analog input processing                                    |
| 3001, 3021, 3022, 3107  | AI loss supervision  |
| Group 35 <i>MOTOR TEMP MEAS</i>                                   | AI in motor temperature measurement                        |
| Groups 40 <i>PROCESS PID SET 1</i><br>...42 <i>EXT / TRIM PID</i> | AI as PID process control reference or actual value source |
| Group 44 <i>PUMP PROTECTION</i>                                   | AI as pump protection measurement source                   |

## ■ Diagnostics

| Actual signal       | Additional information   |
|---------------------|--|
| 0120, 0121          | Analog input values  |
| 1401                | AI1/A2 signal loss   |
| <b>Alarm</b>        |  |
| AI1 LOSS / AI2 LOSS | AI1/AI2 signal below limit 3021 AI1 FAULT LIMIT / 3022 AI2 FAULT LIMIT |
| <b>Fault</b>        |  |
| AI1 LOSS / AI2 LOSS | AI1/AI2 signal below limit 3021 AI1 FAULT LIMIT / 3022 AI2 FAULT LIMIT |
| PAR AI SCALE        | Incorrect AI signal scaling (1302 < 1301 or 1305 < 1304)               |

## Programmable analog output

One programmable current output (0...20 mA) is available. Analog output signal can be inverted, filtered and the maximum and minimum values can be adjusted. The analog output signals can be proportional to motor speed, output frequency, output current, motor torque, motor power, etc. The update cycle for the analog output is 2 ms.

It is also possible to write a value to an analog output through a serial communication link.

## ■ Settings

| Parameter                | Additional information              |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Group 15 ANALOG OUTPUTS  | AO value selection and processing   |
| Group 35 MOTOR TEMP MEAS | AO in motor temperature measurement |

## ■ Diagnostics

| Actual signal | Additional information                    |
|---------------|---|
| 0124          | AO value                                  |
| <b>Fault</b>  |   |
| PAR AO SCALE  | Incorrect AO signal scaling (1503 < 1502) |

## Programmable digital inputs

The drive has five programmable digital inputs. The update time for the digital inputs is 2 ms.

It is possible to delay the state change of digital inputs with delays defined in group *18 FREQ IN & TRAN OUT*. This enables very simple program sequences by connecting several functions with the same physical wire, eg to remove branches and leaves from a pipe by running the fan in reverse before normal operation.

One digital input (DI5) can be programmed as a frequency input. See section *Frequency input* on page 127.

### ■ Settings

| Parameter                              | Additional information   |
|--|--|
| Group <i>10 START/STOP/DIR</i>         | DI as start, stop, direction   |
| Group <i>11 REFERENCE SELECT</i>       | DI in reference selection, or reference source                       |
| Group <i>12 CONSTANT SPEEDS</i>        | DI in constant speed selection                                       |
| Group <i>16 SYSTEM CONTROLS</i>        | DI as external Run enable, fault reset or user macro change signal   |
| Group <i>18 FREQ IN &amp; TRAN OUT</i> | Delays in DI state changes   |
| <i>2109</i>                            | DI as external emergency stop command source                         |
| <i>2115</i>                            | DI as source for controlling motor heating                           |
| <i>2201</i>                            | DI as acceleration and deceleration ramp selection signal            |
| <i>2209</i>                            | DI as zero ramp force signal   |
| <i>3003</i>                            | DI as external fault source  |
| Group <i>35 MOTOR TEMP MEAS</i>        | DI in motor temperature measurement                                  |
| <i>3601</i>                            | DI as timed function enable signal source                            |
| <i>3622</i>                            | DI as booster activation signal source                               |
| <i>4010/4110/4210</i>                  | DI as PID controller reference signal source                         |
| <i>4022/4122</i>                       | DI as sleep function activation signal in PID1                       |
| <i>4027</i>                            | DI as PID1 parameter set 1/2 selection signal source                 |
| <i>4034/4035</i>                       | DI as PID reference/output freezing source                           |
| <i>4039/4139</i>                       | DI as PID internal setpoint selection source                         |
| <i>4228</i>                            | DI as external PID2 function activation signal source                |
| <i>4406/4414</i>                       | DI as connection signal source for pump inlet/outlet pressure switch |
| <i>4421</i>                            | DI as pipe fill enable source  |
| <i>4601</i>                            | DI as pump clean trigger source                                      |
| <i>6403</i>                            | DI as load analyzer logger reset source                              |
| <i>8120</i>                            | DI as PFC interlock source   |

## ■ Diagnostics

| Actual signal        | Additional information                          |
|----------------------|---|
| <a href="#">0160</a> | DI status                                       |
| <a href="#">0414</a> | DI status at the time the latest fault occurred |

## Programmable relay output

The drive has one programmable relay output. It is possible to add three additional relay outputs with the optional MREL relay output extension module. For more information, see *MREL-01 relay output extension module user's manual* (3AUA0000035974 [English]).

With a parameter setting it is possible to choose what information to indicate through the relay output: Ready, running, fault, alarm, etc. The update time for the relay output is 2 ms.

A value can be written to a relay output through a serial communication link.

## ■ Settings

| Parameter                              | Additional information                  |
|--|---|
| Group <a href="#">14 RELAY OUTPUTS</a> | RO value selections and operation times |

## ■ Diagnostics

| Actual signal        | Additional information                     |
|----------------------|--|
| <a href="#">0134</a> | RO Control word through fieldbus control   |
| <a href="#">0162</a> | RO 1 status                                |
| <a href="#">0173</a> | RO 2...4 status. With option MREL-01 only. |

## Frequency input

Digital input DI5 can be programmed as a frequency input. Frequency input (0...16000 Hz) can be used as external reference signal source. The update time for the frequency input is 50 ms. Update time is shorter when information is transferred to the application program (50 ms -> 2 ms).

## ■ Settings

| Parameter                                       | Additional information                                   |
|---|--|
| Group <a href="#">18 FREQ IN &amp; TRAN OUT</a> | Frequency input minimum and maximum values and filtering |
| <a href="#">1103/1106</a>                       | External reference REF1/2 through frequency input        |
| <a href="#">4010, 4110, 4210</a>                | Frequency input as PID reference source                  |

## ■ Diagnostics

| Actual signal | Additional information |
|---------------|------------------------|
| 0161          | Frequency input value  |

## Transistor output

The drive has one programmable transistor output. The output can be used either as a digital output or frequency output (0...16000 Hz). The update time for the transistor/frequency output is 2 ms.

## ■ Settings

| Parameter                              | Additional information     |
|--|----------------------------|
| Group 18 <i>FREQ IN &amp; TRAN OUT</i> | Transistor output settings |

## ■ Diagnostics

| Actual signal | Additional information      |
|---------------|-----------------------------|
| 0163          | Transistor output status    |
| 0164          | Transistor output frequency |

## Actual signals

Several actual signals are available:

- Drive output frequency, current, voltage and power
- Motor speed and torque
- Intermediate circuit DC voltage
- Active control location (LOCAL, EXT1 or EXT2)
- Reference values
- Drive temperature
- Operating time counter (h), kWh counter
- Digital I/O and analog I/O status
- PID controller actual values.

Three signals can be shown simultaneously on the assistant control panel display (one signal on the basic control panel display). It is also possible to read the values through the serial communication link or through the analog outputs.

## ■ Settings

| Parameter                   | Additional information                            |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 1501                        | Selection of an actual signal to AO               |
| 1808                        | Selection of an actual signal to frequency output |
| Group 32 <i>SUPERVISION</i> | Actual signal supervision                         |

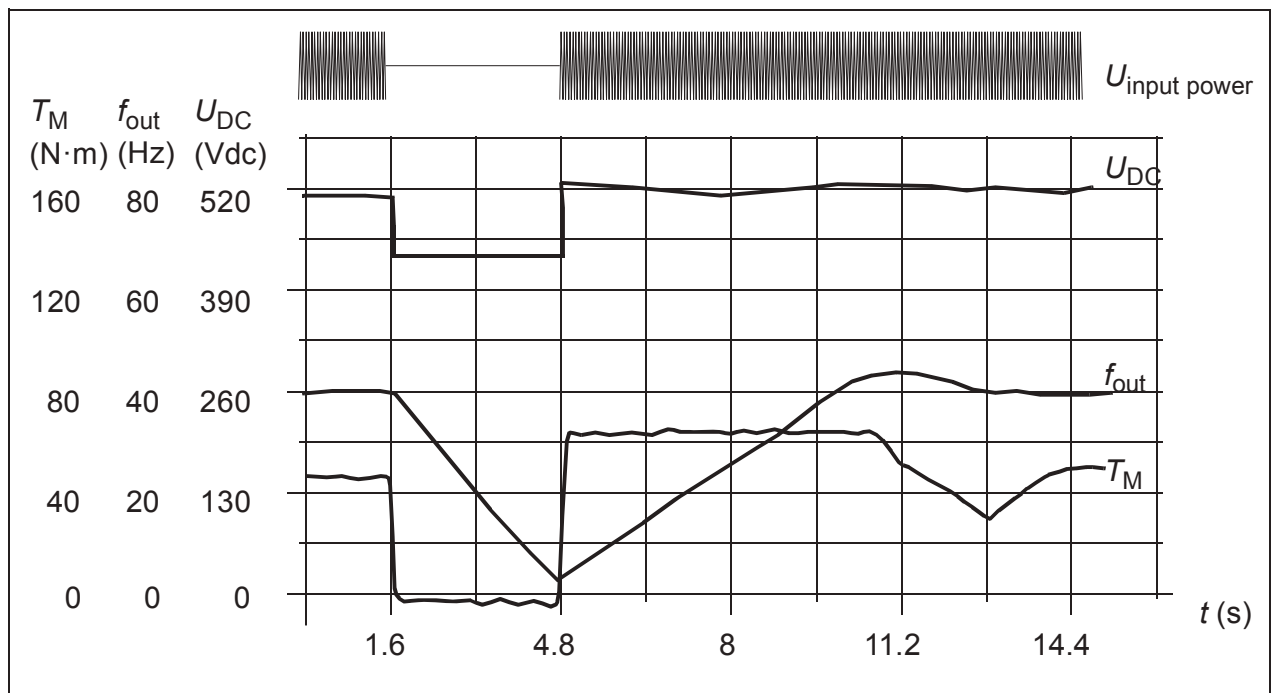
| Parameter                     | Additional information  |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Group <i>34 PANEL DISPLAY</i> | Selection of an actual signals to be displayed on the control panel |

## ■ Diagnostics

| Actual signal  | Additional information  |
|--|-------------------------|
| Groups <i>01 OPERATING DATA ...</i><br><i>04 FAULT HISTORY</i> | Lists of actual signals |

## Power loss ride-through

If the incoming supply voltage is cut off, the drive continues to operate by utilizing the kinetic energy of the rotating motor. The drive is fully operational as long as the motor rotates and generates energy to the drive. The drive can continue the operation after the break if the main contactor remained closed.



$U_{DC}$  = Intermediate circuit voltage of the drive,  $f_{out}$  = Output frequency of the drive,  
 $T_M$  = Motor torque

Loss of supply voltage at nominal load ( $f_{out} = 40$  Hz). The intermediate circuit DC voltage drops to the minimum limit. The controller keeps the voltage steady as long as the input power is switched off. The drive runs the motor in generator mode. The motor speed falls but the drive is operational as long as the motor has enough kinetic energy.

## ■ Settings

Parameter *2006 UNDERVOLT CTRL*



## DC magnetizing

When DC magnetizing is activated, the drive automatically magnetizes the motor before starting. This feature guarantees the highest possible break-away torque, up to 180% of the nominal motor torque. The Automatic start feature and DC magnetizing cannot be activated at the same time.

### ■ Settings

Parameters [2101 START FUNCTION](#) and [2103 DC MAGN TIME](#)

## Maintenance trigger

A maintenance trigger can be activated to show a notice on the panel display when eg drive power consumption has exceeded the defined trigger point.

### ■ Settings

Parameter group [29 MAINTENANCE TRIG](#)

## Acceleration and deceleration ramps

Two user-selectable acceleration and deceleration ramps are available. It is possible to adjust the acceleration/deceleration times and the ramp shape. Switching between the two ramps can be controlled through a digital input or fieldbus.

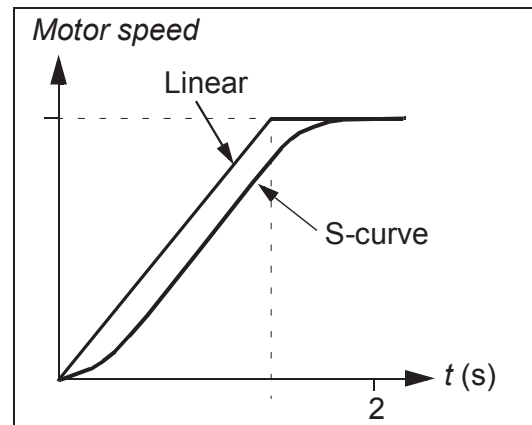
The available ramp shape alternatives are Linear and S-curve.

**Linear:** Suitable for drives requiring steady or slow acceleration/deceleration.

**S-curve:** Ideal for conveyors carrying fragile loads, or other applications where a smooth transition is required when changing the speed.

### ■ Settings

Parameter group [22 ACCEL/DECEL](#)



## Motor heating function

With the motor heating function, DC current can be injected into the motor to keep it warm in low temperatures. The function can be enabled with parameter [2104 DC HOLD CTL](#). The source to activate the function is selected with parameter [2115 MOT. HEATING SEL](#).

Parameter [1805 DO SIGNAL](#) and the relay outputs 1...4 (parameters [1401...1403](#) and [1410](#)) can be used to indicate the status of motor heating.

### ■ Settings

| Parameter                                 | Additional information   |
|---|--|
| <a href="#">2104 DC HOLD CTL</a>          | Activates the motor heating feature  |
| <a href="#">2114 HEATING CURR REF [%]</a> | A percentage of nominal current that is to be dc injected into the motor windings. |
| <a href="#">2115 MOT. HEATING SEL</a>     | Defines the input that turns On/Off motor heating.                                 |

### ■ Diagnostics

| Alarm                                | Additional information |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <a href="#">20381) MOTOR HEATING</a> | Motor heating active   |

## Critical speeds

Critical speeds function is available for applications where it is necessary to avoid certain motor speeds (drive output frequencies) or speed bands (output frequency bands) because of eg mechanical resonance problems. The user can define three critical frequencies or frequency bands.

### ■ Settings

Parameter group [25 CRITICAL SPEEDS](#)

## Constant speeds

It is possible to define seven positive constant speeds. Constant speeds are selected with digital inputs. Constant speed activation overrides the external speed reference.

Constant speed selections are ignored if

- PID reference is being followed, or
- drive is in the local control mode.

This function operates on a 2 ms time level.

### ■ Settings

Parameter group [12 CONSTANT SPEEDS](#)

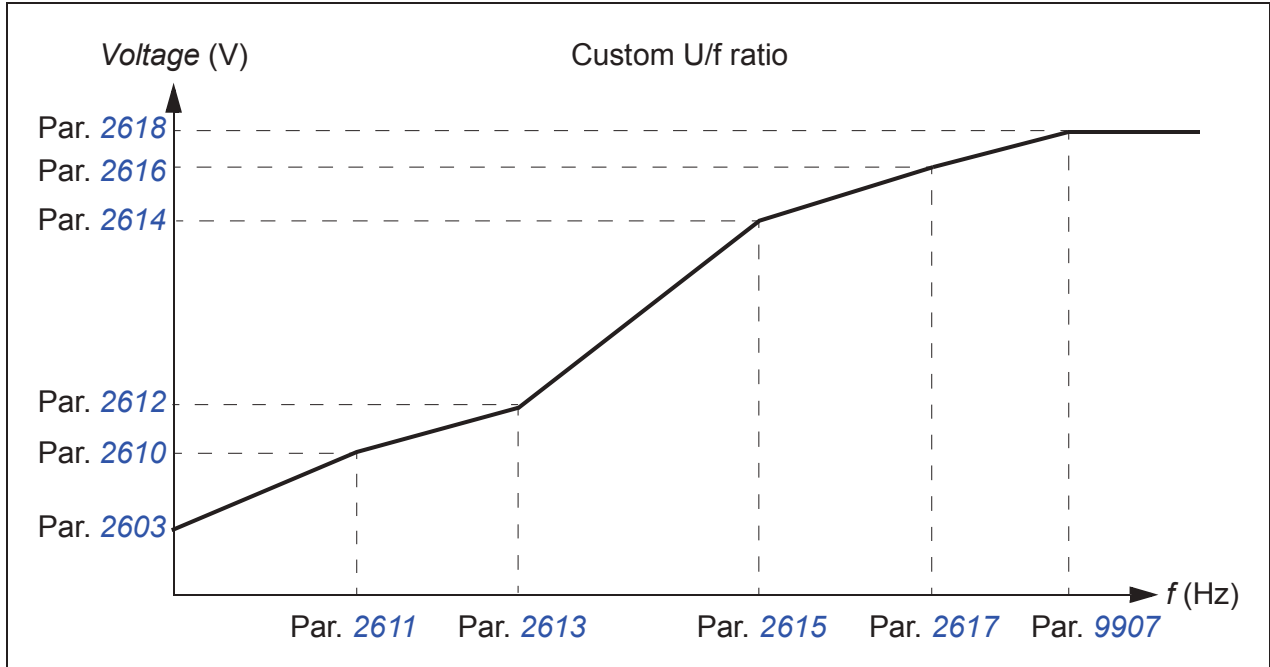
---



Constant speed 7 (*1208 CONST SPEED 7*) is also used for fault functions. See parameter group *30 FAULT FUNCTIONS*.

## Custom U/f ratio

The user can define a U/f curve (output voltage as a function of frequency). This custom ratio is used only in special applications where linear and squared U/f ratio are not sufficient (eg when motor break-away torque needs to be boosted).



**Note:** The voltage and the frequency points of the U/f curve must fulfill the following requirements:

$$2610 < 2612 < 2614 < 2616 < 2618 \text{ and} \\ 2611 < 2613 < 2615 < 2617 < 9907$$



**WARNING!** High voltage at low frequencies may result in poor performance or motor damage (overheating).

### Settings

| Parameter   | Additional information      |
|-------------|-----------------------------|
| 2605        | Custom U/f ratio activation |
| 2610...2618 | Custom U/f ratio settings   |

### Diagnostics

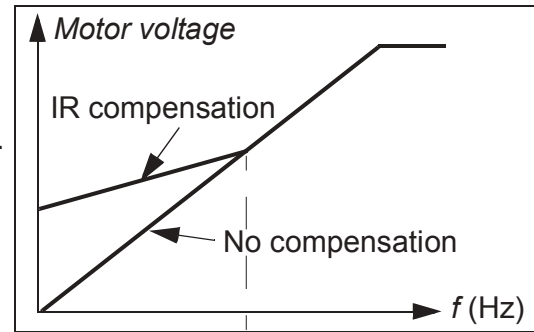
| Fault                | Additional information |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| PAR USER DEFINED U/F | Incorrect U/f ratio    |

## IR compensation

When IR compensation is activated, the drive gives an extra voltage boost to the motor at low speeds. IR compensation is useful in applications that require high break-away torque.

### ■ Settings

Parameter [2603 IR COMP VOLT](#)



## Programmable protection functions

### ■ AI<Min

AI<Min function defines the drive operation if an analog input signal falls below the set minimum limit.

### Settings

Parameters [3001 AI<MIN FUNCTION](#), [3021 AI1 FAULT LIMIT](#) and [3022 AI2 FAULT LIMIT](#)

### ■ Panel loss

Panel loss function defines the operation of the drive if the control panel selected as the control location for the drive stops communicating.

### Settings

Parameter [3002 PANEL COMM ERR](#)

### ■ External fault

External faults (1 and 2) can be supervised by defining one digital input as a source for an external fault indication signal.

### Settings

Parameters [3003 EXTERNAL FAULT 1](#) and [3004 EXTERNAL FAULT 2](#)

### ■ Stall protection

The drive protects the motor in a stall situation. It is possible to adjust the supervision limits (frequency, time) and choose how the drive reacts to the motor stall condition (alarm indication / fault indication & drive stop / no reaction).

### Settings

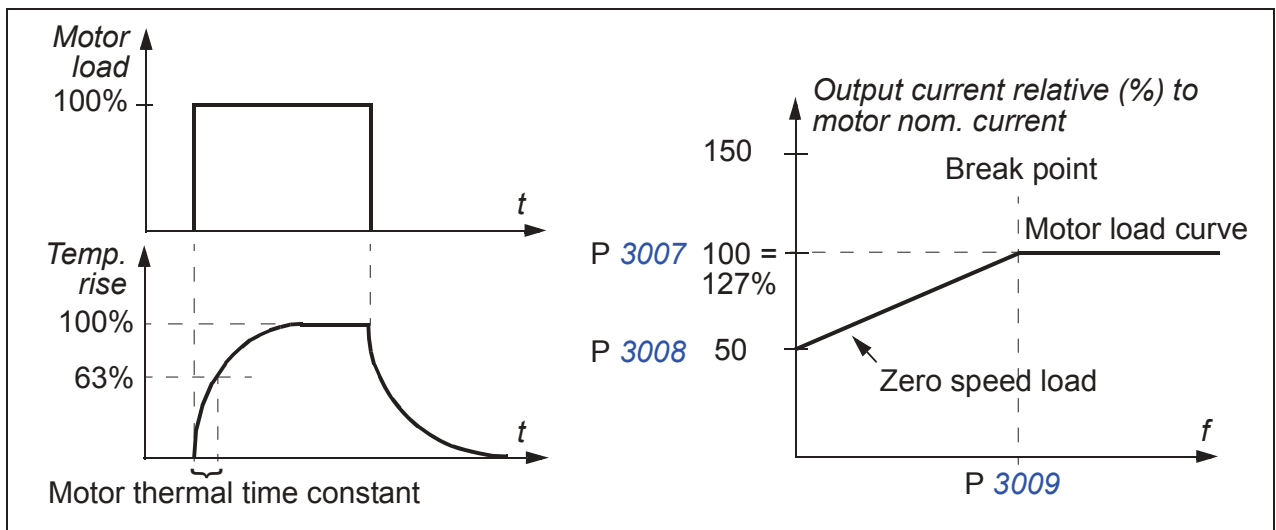
Parameters [3010 STALL FUNCTION...](#)[3012 STALL TIME](#)

## ■ Motor thermal protection

The motor can be protected against overheating by activating the Motor thermal protection function.

The drive calculates the temperature of the motor on the basis of the following assumptions:

1. The motor is in the ambient temperature of 30 °C when power is applied to the drive.
2. Motor temperature is calculated using either the user-adjustable or automatically calculated motor thermal time constant and motor load curve (see the figures below). The load curve should be adjusted in case the ambient temperature exceeds 30 °C.



## Settings

Parameters [3005 MOT THERM PROT...](#)[3009 BREAK POINT FREQ](#)

**Note:** It is also possible to use the motor temperature measurement function. See section [Motor temperature measurement through the standard I/O](#) on page 145.

## ■ Earth fault protection

The Earth fault protection detects earth faults in the motor or motor cable. The protection is active only during start.

An earth fault in the input power line does not activate the protection.

## Settings

Parameter [3017 EARTH FAULT](#)

## ■ Incorrect wiring

Defines the operation when incorrect input power cable connection is detected.

## Settings

Parameter [3023 WIRING FAULT](#)

### ■ Input phase loss

Input phase loss protection circuits supervise the input power cable connection status by detecting intermediate circuit ripple. If a phase is lost, the ripple increases.

## Settings

Parameter [3016 SUPPLY PHASE](#)

## Pre-programmed faults

### ■ Overcurrent

The overcurrent trip limit for the drive is 325% of the drive nominal current.

### ■ DC overvoltage

The DC overvoltage trip limit is 420 V (for 200 V drives) and 840 V (for 400 V drives).

### ■ DC undervoltage

The DC undervoltage trip limit is adaptive. See parameter [2006 UNDERVOLT CTRL.](#)

### ■ Drive temperature

The drive supervises the IGBT temperature. There are two supervision limits: Alarm limit and fault trip limit.

### ■ Short circuit

If a short circuit occurs, the drive does not start and a fault indication is given.

### ■ Internal fault

If the drive detects an internal fault, the drive is stopped and a fault indication is given.

## Operation limits

The drive has adjustable limits for output frequency, current (maximum) and DC voltage.

### ■ Settings

Parameter group [20 LIMITS](#)

---

## Power limit

Power limitation is used to protect the input bridge and the DC intermediate circuit. If the maximum allowed power is exceeded, the drive torque is automatically limited. Maximum overload and continuous power limits depend on the drive hardware. For specific values, see chapter *Technical data* on page 335.

## Automatic resets

The drive can automatically reset itself after overcurrent, overvoltage, undervoltage, external and “analog input below a minimum” faults. The Automatic resets must be activated by the user.

### ■ Settings

| Parameter                       | Additional information   |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Group <i>31 AUTOMATIC RESET</i> | Automatic reset settings |

### ■ Diagnostics

| Alarm            | Additional information |
|------------------|------------------------|
| <i>AUTORESET</i> | Automatic reset alarm  |

## Supervisions

The drive monitors whether certain user selectable variables are within the user-defined limits. The user may set limits for speed, current etc. The supervision status can be indicated through relay or digital output.

The supervision function outputs can be used for triggering some drive functionality (start/stop, sleep, pump cleaning).

The supervision functions operate on a 2 ms time level.

### ■ Settings

Parameter group *32 SUPERVISION*

### ■ Diagnostics

| Actual signal         | Additional information   |
|-----------------------|--|
| <i>1001/1002</i>      | <i>EXT1/EXT2</i> start/stop according to supervision functions |
| <i>1401</i>           | Supervision status through RO 1                                |
| <i>1402/1403/1410</i> | Supervision status through RO 2...4. With option MREL-01 only. |
| <i>1805</i>           | Supervision status through DO                                  |
| <i>4022/4122</i>      | Sleep start according to supervision functions                 |
| <i>4601</i>           | Pump clean trigger according to supervision functions          |



## Parameter lock

The user can prevent parameter adjustment by activating the parameter lock.

### ■ Settings

Parameters [1602 PARAMETER LOCK](#) and [1603 PASS CODE](#)

## PID control

There are two built-in PID controllers in the drive:

- Process PID (PID1) and
- External/Trim PID (PID2).

The PID controller can be used when the motor speed needs to be controlled based on process variables such as pressure, flow or temperature.

When the PID control is activated, a process reference (setpoint) is connected to the drive instead of a speed reference. An actual value (process feedback) is also brought back to the drive. The drive compares the reference and the actual values, and automatically adjusts the drive speed in order to keep the measured process quantity (actual value) at the desired level (reference).

The control operates on a 2 ms time level.

### ■ Process controller PID1

PID1 has two separate sets of parameters ([40 PROCESS PID SET 1](#), [41 PROCESS PID SET 2](#)). Selection between parameter sets 1 and 2 is defined by a parameter.

In most cases when there is only one transducer signal wired to the drive, only parameter set 1 is needed. Two different parameter sets (1 and 2) are used eg when the load of the motor changes considerably in time.

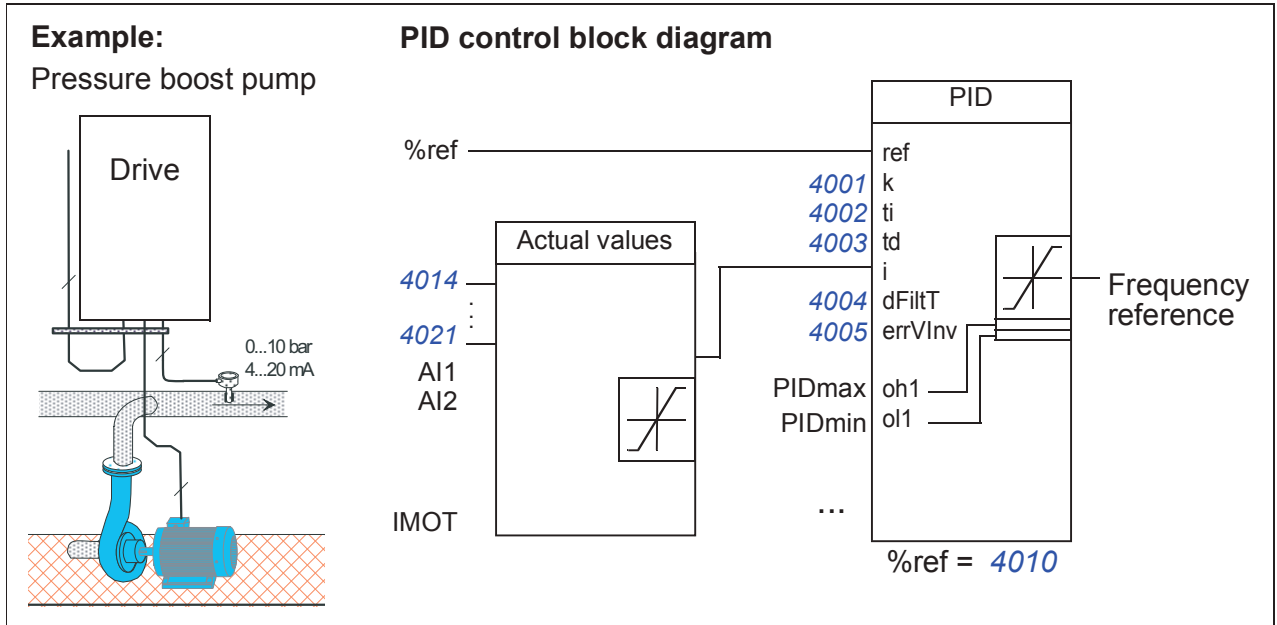
### ■ External/Trim controller PID2

PID2 ([42 EXT / TRIM PID](#)) can be used in two different ways:

- External controller: Instead of using additional PID controller hardware, the user can connect PID2 output through drive analog output or fieldbus controller to control a field instrument like a damper or a valve.
- Trim controller: PID2 can be used to trim or fine tune the reference of the drive. See section [Reference trimming](#) on page [123](#).

## ■ Block diagrams

The figure below shows an application example: The controller adjusts the speed of a pressure boost pump according to the measured pressure and the set pressure reference.





## ■ Settings

| Parameter   | Additional information                             |
|---|--|
| 1101  | Local control mode reference type selection        |
| 1102  | EXT1/EXT2 selection                                |
| 1106  | PID1 activation                                    |
| 1107  | REF2 minimum limit                                 |
| 1501  | PID2 output (external controller) connection to AO |
| 9902  | PID control macro selection                        |
| Groups 40 PROCESS PID SET<br>1...41 PROCESS PID SET 2 | PID1 settings                                      |
| Group 42 EXT / TRIM PID                               | PID2 settings                                      |

## ■ Diagnostics

| Actual signal | Additional information |
|---------------|------------------------|
| 0126/0127     | PID 1/2 output value   |
| 0128/0129     | PID 1/2 setpoint value |
| 0130/0131     | PID 1/2 feedback value |
| 0132/0133     | PID 1/2 deviation      |

## ■ Example

In the following example, four drives are set up for a duty/assist cycle with internal setpoints (parameters 4011, 4036, 4037 and 4038). As shown in the table below, at each setpoint, a different drive has the highest setpoint value, the second highest value, and so on, enabling a duty cycle between the four drives.

| Drive number | Setpoint 1<br>(4011) | Setpoint 2<br>(4036) | Setpoint 3<br>(4037) | Setpoint 4<br>(4038) |
|--------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1            | 50%                  | 40%                  | 35%                  | 30%                  |
| 2            | 40%                  | 35%                  | 30%                  | 50%                  |
| 3            | 35%                  | 30%                  | 50%                  | 40%                  |
| 4            | 30%                  | 50%                  | 40%                  | 35%                  |

When the drive system is powered up and the pressure is below all setpoint values, each drive keeps running until it reaches its setpoint. The drive with the highest setpoint value keeps running even after this point and becomes the duty drive which maintains the pressure at the desired value. The drive remains the duty drive until a setpoint change occurs. Using a timer and a digital inputs as the source for setpoint selection, setpoints can automatically be rotated, for example, once per day.

If the pressure in the system falls below the second highest setpoint value, that drive assists to increase the pressure.

To enable the internal setpoints, set 4010 SET POINT SEL to INTERNAL.

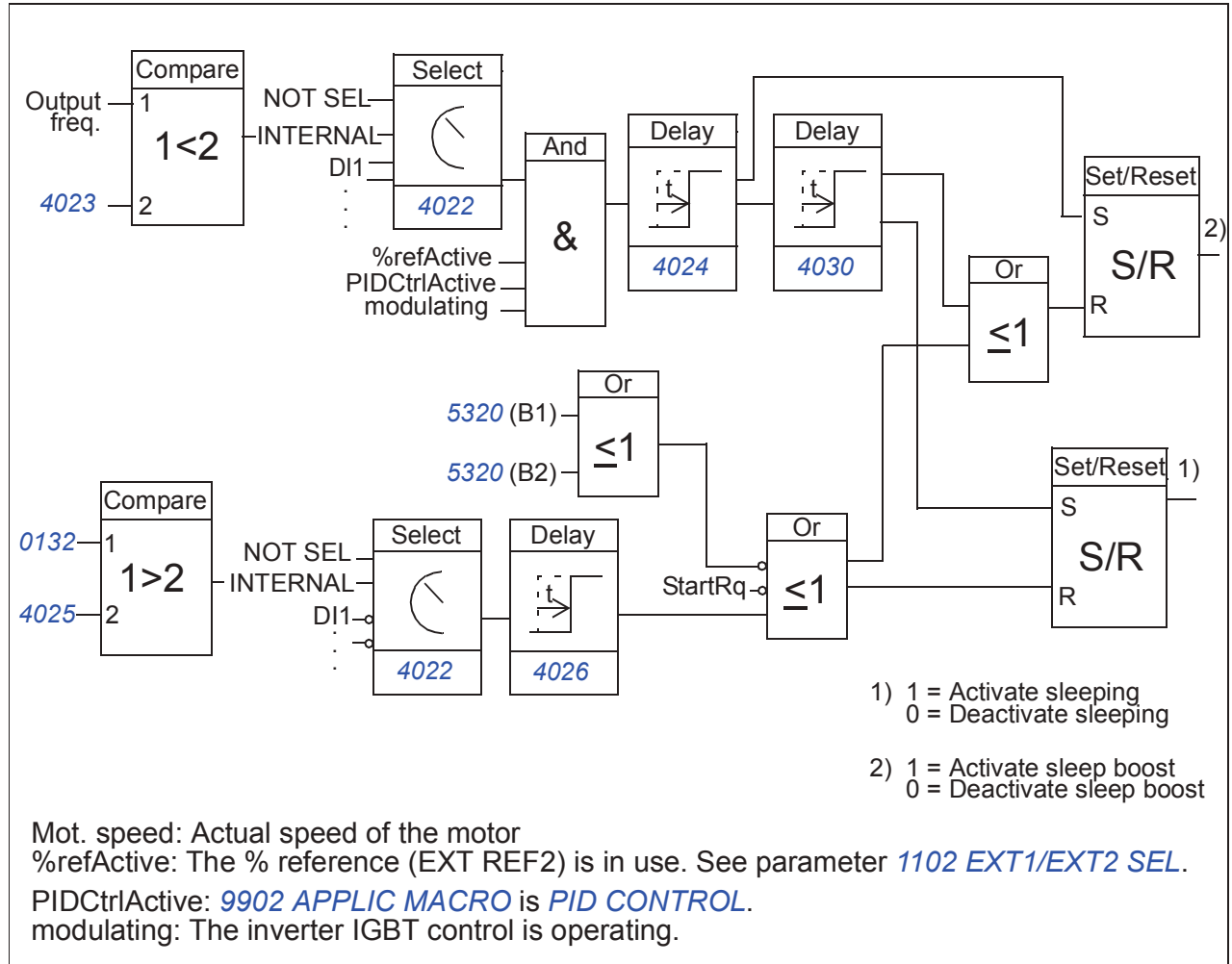
Use timers to control the bits sent to the digital inputs as shown in the table below. Enable setpoint selection through the digital inputs, set *4039 INT SETPNT SEL* to, for example, DI1,2 (7).

|                   | Day 1    | Day 2    | Day 3    | Day 4    |
|-------------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| DI1               | 0        | 1        | 1        | 0        |
| DI2               | 0        | 0        | 1        | 1        |
| Setpoint selected | 1 (4011) | 2 (4036) | 3 (4037) | 4 (4038) |

## Sleep function for the process PID (PID1) control

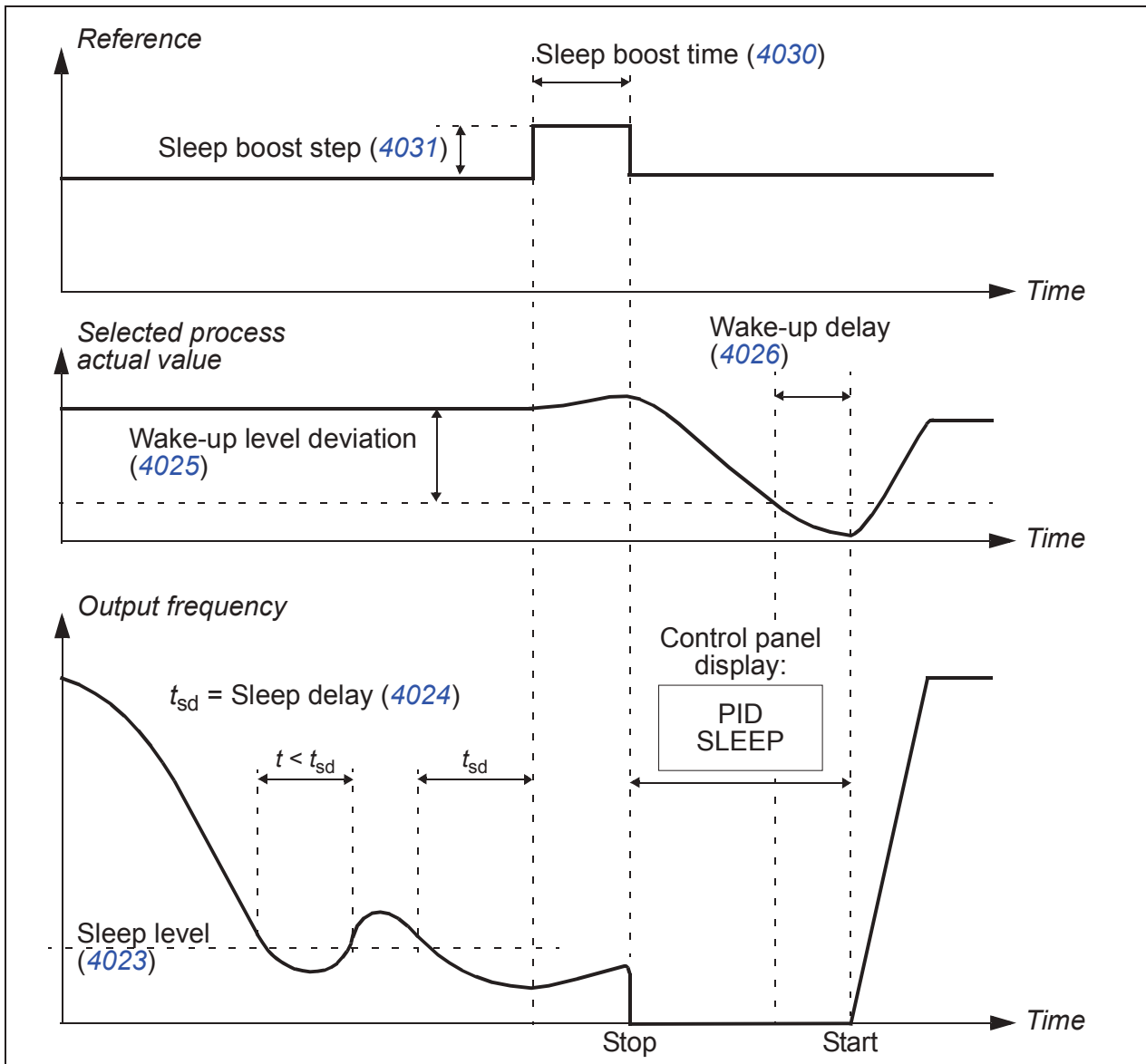
The sleep function operates on a 2 ms time level.

The block diagram below illustrates the sleep function enable/disable logic. The sleep function can be put into use only when the PID control is active.



## ■ Example

The time scheme below visualizes the operation of the sleep function.



Sleep function for a PID controlled pressure boost pump (when parameter 4022 is set to *INTERNAL*): The water consumption falls at night. As a consequence, the PID process controller decreases the motor speed. However, due to natural losses in the pipes and the low efficiency of the centrifugal pump at low speeds, the motor does not stop but keeps rotating. The sleep function detects the slow rotation, and stops the unnecessary pumping after the sleep delay has passed. The drive shifts into sleep mode, still monitoring the pressure. The pumping restarts when the pressure falls under the allowed minimum level and the wake-up delay has passed.

## Settings

| Parameter   | Additional information  |
|---|-------------------------|
| 9902  | PID control activation  |
| 4022...4026, 4030, 4031,<br>4122...4126, 4130, 4131 | Sleep function settings |

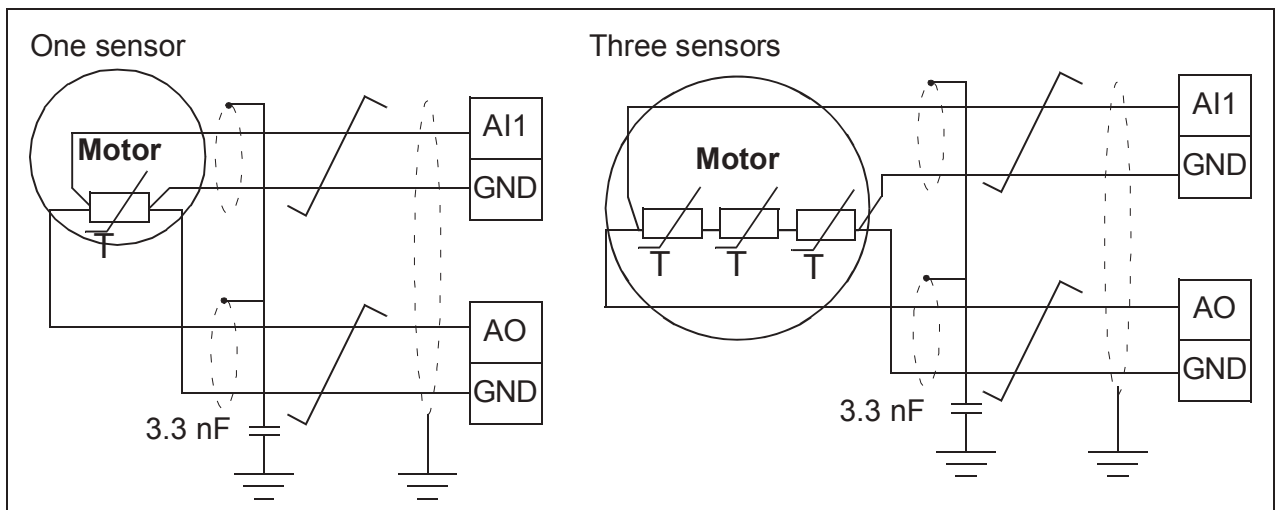
## Diagnostics

| Parameter      | Additional information  |
|----------------|---|
| 1401           | PID sleep function status through RO 1                                |
| 1402/1403/1410 | PID sleep function status through RO 2...4. With option MREL-01 only. |
| <b>Alarm</b>   | <b>Additional information</b>   |
| PID SLEEP      | Sleep mode  |

## Motor temperature measurement through the standard I/O

This section describes the temperature measurement of one motor when the drive I/O terminals are used as the connection interface.

Motor temperature can be measured using Pt100 or PTC sensors connected to analog input and output.

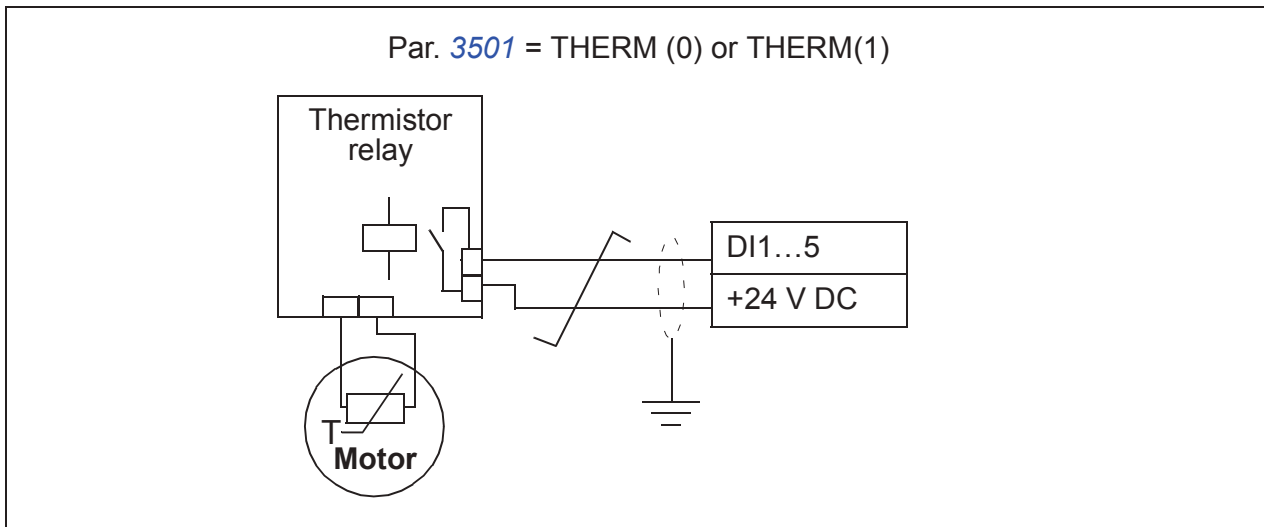


**⚡ WARNING!** According to IEC 664, the connection of the motor temperature sensor requires double or reinforced insulation between motor live parts and the sensor. Reinforced insulation entails a clearance and creepage distance of 8 mm (400/500 V AC equipment).

If the assembly does not fulfill the requirement, the I/O board terminals must be protected against contact and they may not be connected to other equipment, or the temperature sensor must be isolated from the I/O terminals.



It is also possible to monitor motor temperature by connecting a PTC sensor and a thermistor relay between the +24 V DC voltage supply offered by the drive and a digital input. The figure below displays the connection.



**⚠ WARNING!** According to IEC 664, the connection of the motor thermistor to the digital input requires double or reinforced insulation between motor live parts and the thermistor. Reinforced insulation entails a clearance and creeping distance of 8 mm (400/500 V AC equipment).

If the thermistor assembly does not fulfill the requirement, the other I/O terminals of the drive must be protected against contact, or a thermistor relay must be used to isolate the thermistor from the digital input.

## ■ Settings

| Parameter   | Additional information                 |
|---|--|
| Group 13 ANALOG INPUTS  | Analog input settings                  |
| Group 15 ANALOG OUTPUTS   | Analog output settings                 |
| Group 35 MOTOR TEMP MEAS  | Motor temperature measurement settings |
| <b>Other</b>  |  |
| At the motor end the cable shield should be grounded through, eg a 3.3 nF capacitor. If this is not possible, the shield is to be left unconnected. |  |

## ■ Diagnostics

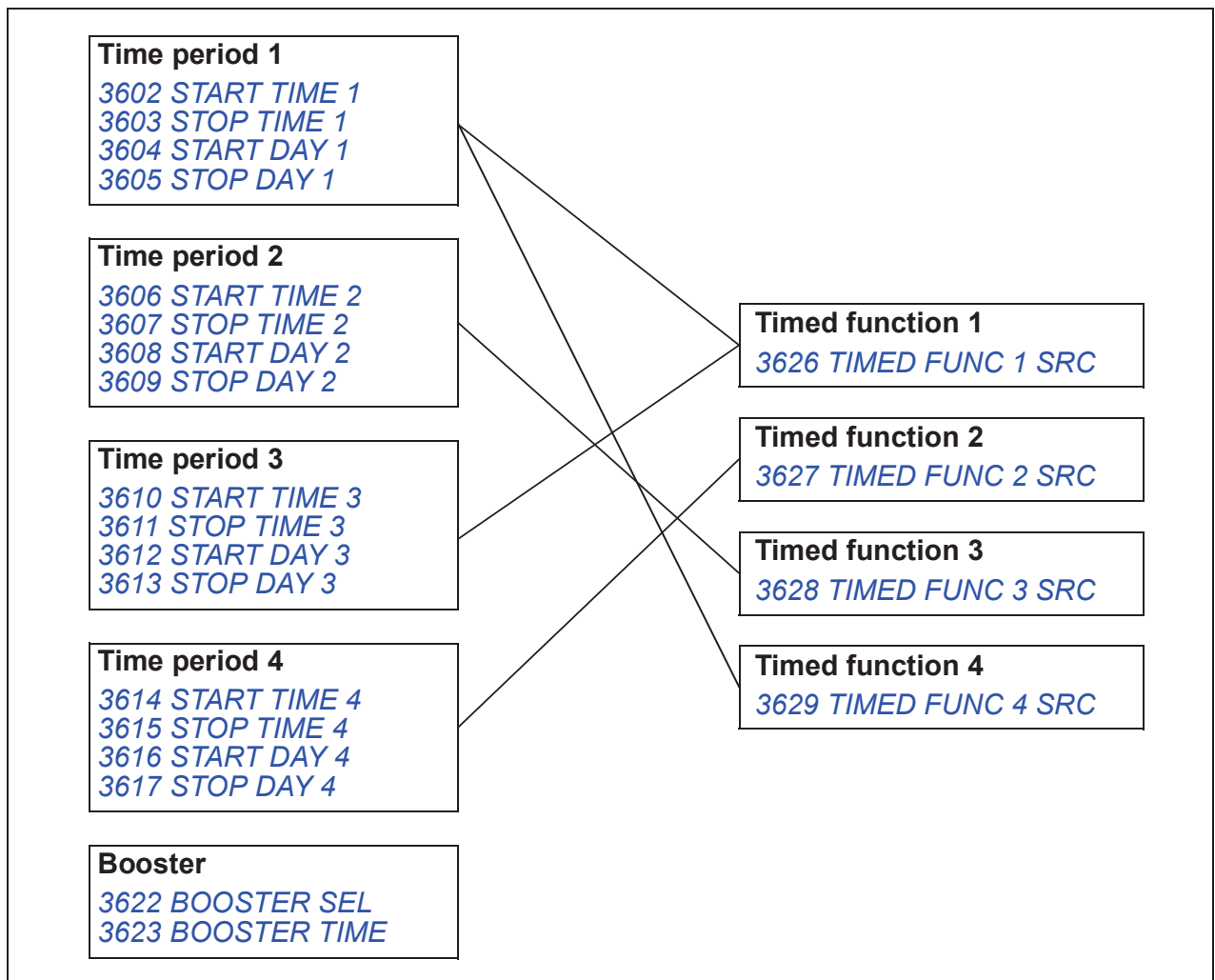
| Actual signal           | Additional information |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 0145                    | Motor temperature      |
| <b>Alarm/Fault</b>      |                        |
| MOTOR TEMP/MOT OVERTEMP | Excessive motor temp   |

## Timed functions

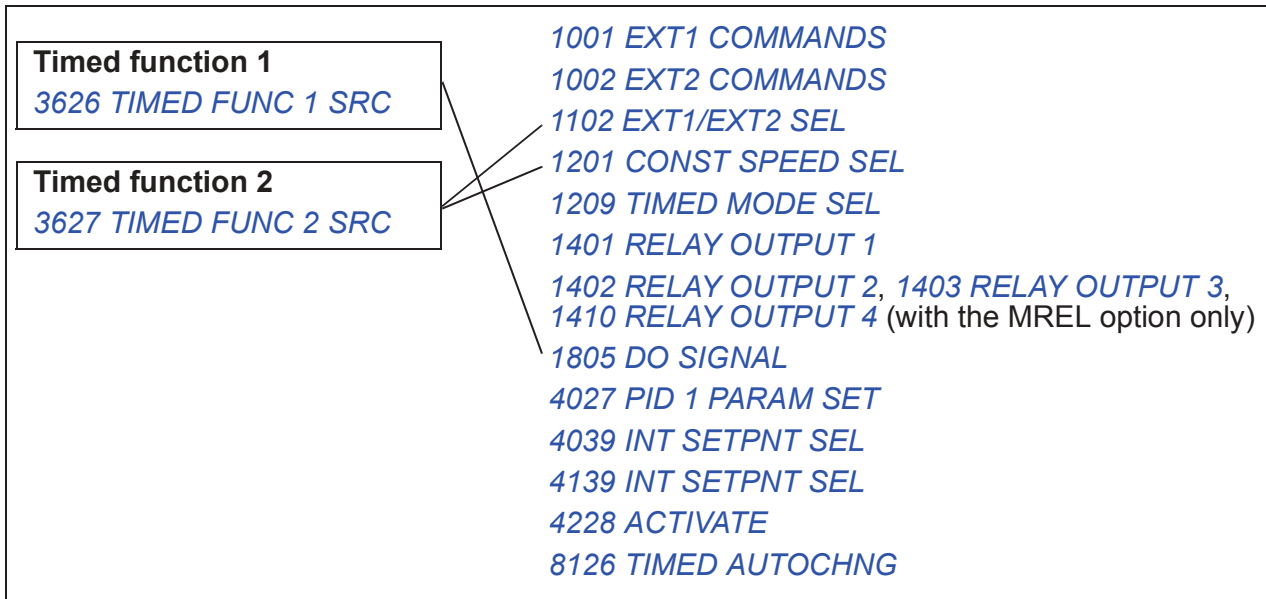
A variety of drive functions can be time controlled, eg start/stop and EXT1/EXT2 control. The drive offers

- four start and stop times (*START TIME 1...START TIME 4, STOP TIME 1...STOP TIME 4*)
- four start and stop days (*START DAY 1...START DAY 4, STOP DAY 1...STOP DAY 4*)
- four timed functions for collecting the selected time periods 1...4 together (*TIMED FUNC 1 SRC...TIMED FUNC 4 SRC*)
- booster time (an additional booster time connected to timed functions).

A timed function can be connected to multiple time periods:



A parameter which is triggered by a timed function can be connected to only one timed function at a time.



You can use the Timed functions assistant for easy configuring. For more information on the assistants, see section *Assistants mode* on page 91.

## ■ Examples

Air conditioning is active on weekdays from 8:00 to 15:30 (8 a.m to 3:30 p.m) and on Sundays from 12:00 to 15:00 (12 to 3 p.m). By pressing the extension time switch, the air-conditioning is on for an extra hour.

| Parameter             | Setting  |
|-----------------------|--|
| 3601 TIMERS ENABLE    | DI1  |
| 3602 START TIME 1     | 08:00:00   |
| 3603 STOP TIME 1      | 15:30:00   |
| 3604 START DAY 1      | MONDAY   |
| 3605 STOP DAY 1       | FRIDAY   |
| 3606 START TIME 2     | 12:00:00   |
| 3607 STOP TIME 2      | 15:00:00   |
| 3608 START DAY 2      | SUNDAY   |
| 3609 STOP DAY 2       | SUNDAY   |
| 3622 BOOSTER SEL      | DI5 (cannot be the same as parameter 3601 value) |
| 3623 BOOSTER TIME     | 01:00:00   |
| 3626 TIMED FUNC 1 SRC | T1+T2+B  |

If timed function is enabled in continuous mode, the start date can be different from the stop date, ie operation can continue over midnight. In the example below, the

drive runs continuously from 18:00 (6 p.m.) on Friday evening to 06:30 (6:30 a.m.) on Monday morning. Timed function is enabled on the rising edge of digital input *DI1*.

| Parameter                 | Setting          |
|---------------------------|------------------|
| <i>3601 TIMERS ENABLE</i> | <i>DI1 CMODE</i> |
| <i>3602 START TIME 1</i>  | 18:00:00         |
| <i>3603 STOP TIME 1</i>   | 06:30:00         |
| <i>3604 START DAY 1</i>   | <i>FRIDAY</i>    |
| <i>3605 STOP DAY 1</i>    | <i>MONDAY</i>    |

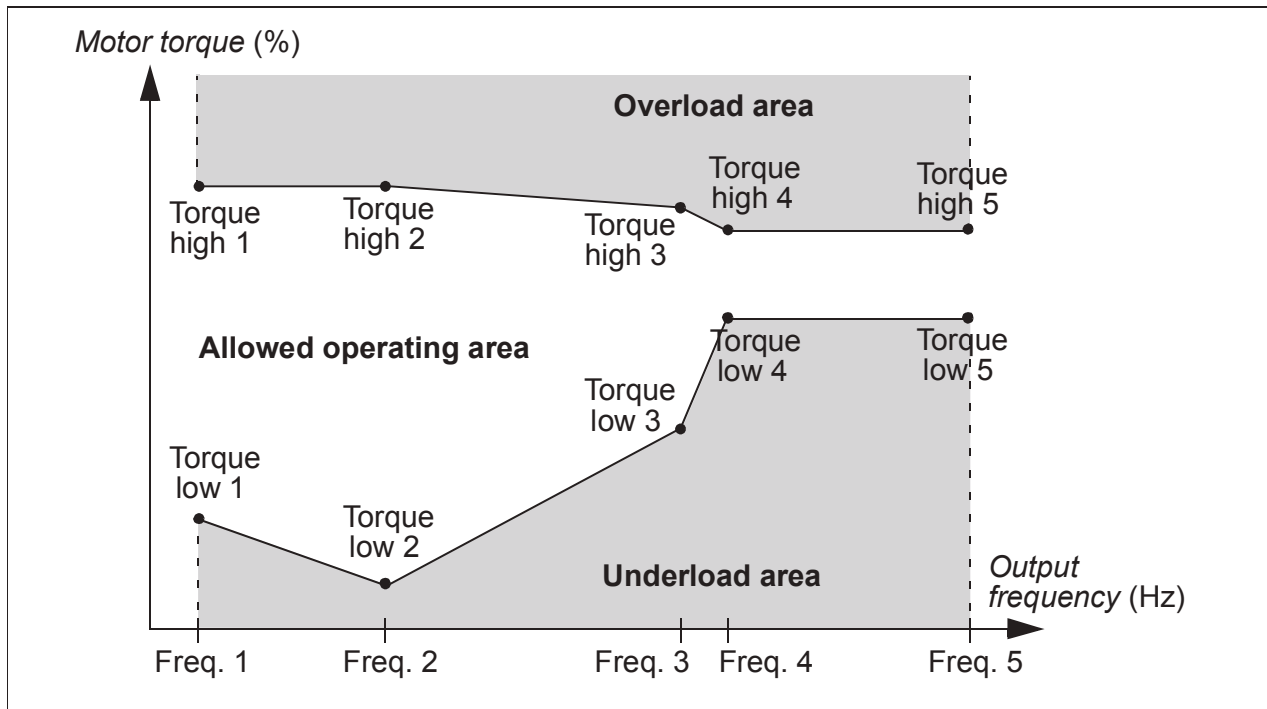
## ■ Settings

| Parameter                 | Additional information  |
|---------------------------|---|
| <i>36 TIMED FUNCTIONS</i> | Timed functions settings  |
| <i>1001, 1002</i>         | Timed start/stop control  |
| <i>1102</i>               | Timed EXT1/EXT2 selection   |
| <i>1201</i>               | Timed constant speed 1 activation   |
| <i>1209</i>               | Timed speed selection   |
| <i>1401</i>               | Timed function status indicated through relay output RO 1   |
| <i>1402/1403/1410</i>     | Timed function status indicated through relay output RO 2...4. With option MREL-01 only.                      |
| <i>1805</i>               | Timed function status indicated through digital output DO   |
| <i>4027</i>               | Timed PID1 parameter set 1/2 selection  |
| <i>4039</i>               | Selection between different internal (constant) set points for the process PID control (PID1 parameter set 1) |
| <i>4139</i>               | Selection between different internal (constant) set points for the process PID control (PID1 parameter set 2) |
| <i>4228</i>               | Timed external PID2 activation  |
| <i>8126</i>               | Timed Autochange activation   |

## User load curve

The user can specify a load curve (motor torque as a function of frequency) for supervision. The curve is defined by five points. Supervision can be set for the torque dropping below the underload curve, exceeding the overload curve, or both.

A fault is generated if the torque has been out of the allowed area for longer than the user-defined time limit. An alarm is generated if the torque has been out of the allowed area for longer than the half of the user-defined time limit.



### Settings

| Parameter                       | Additional information   |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Group <i>37 USER LOAD CURVE</i> | User load curve settings |

### Diagnostics

| Actual signal          | Additional information  |
|------------------------|---|
| <i>0105</i>            | Motor torque  |
| <b>Alarm</b>           |   |
| <i>USER LOAD CURVE</i> | Out of allowed area for longer than half of the defined time limit  |
| <b>Fault</b>           |   |
| <i>USER LOAD CURVE</i> | Out of allowed area for longer than the defined time limit  |
| <i>PAR USER LOAD C</i> | Incorrect user load curve parameter setting<br>( <i>3704 &gt; 3707</i> or <i>3707 &gt; 3710</i> or <i>3710 &gt; 3713</i> or <i>3713 &gt; 3716</i> or<br><i>3705 &gt; 3706</i> or <i>3708 &gt; 3709</i> or <i>3711 &gt; 3712</i> or <i>3714 &gt; 3715</i> or <i>3717 &gt; 3718</i> ) |

## Energy optimizer

Energy optimizer optimizes the flux so that the total energy consumption and motor noise level are reduced when the drive operates below the nominal load. The total efficiency (motor and drive) can be improved by 1...10% depending on the load torque and speed.

### ■ Settings

| Parameter | Additional information    |
|-----------|---------------------------|
| 4501      | Energy optimizer enabling |

## Energy saving

Energy saving tools calculate energy saved in kWh and MWh, energy saved in local currency as well as reduction in CO<sub>2</sub> emission, all compared to the situation when the pump is connected directly to the supply.

Two actual signals, *0176 SAVED AMOUNT 1* and *0177 SAVED AMOUNT 2* are used to store the energy saved in local currency. To find out the total saved energy in currency units, add the value of signal *0177* multiplied by 1000 to the value of signal *0176*.

### Example:

*0176 SAVED AMOUNT 1* = 123.4

*0177 SAVED AMOUNT 2* = 5

Total saved energy = 5 · 1000 + 123.4 = 5123.4 currency units.

**Note:** The values of saved energy parameters *0174 SAVED KWH*, *0175 SAVED MWH*, *0176 SAVED AMOUNT 1*, *0177 SAVED AMOUNT 2* and *0178 SAVED CO2* are derived from subtracting the drive's energy consumed from the direct-on-line (DOL) consumption calculated on the basis of parameter *4508 PUMP POWER*. As such, the accuracy of the values is dependent on the accuracy of the power estimate entered in that parameter.

### ■ Settings

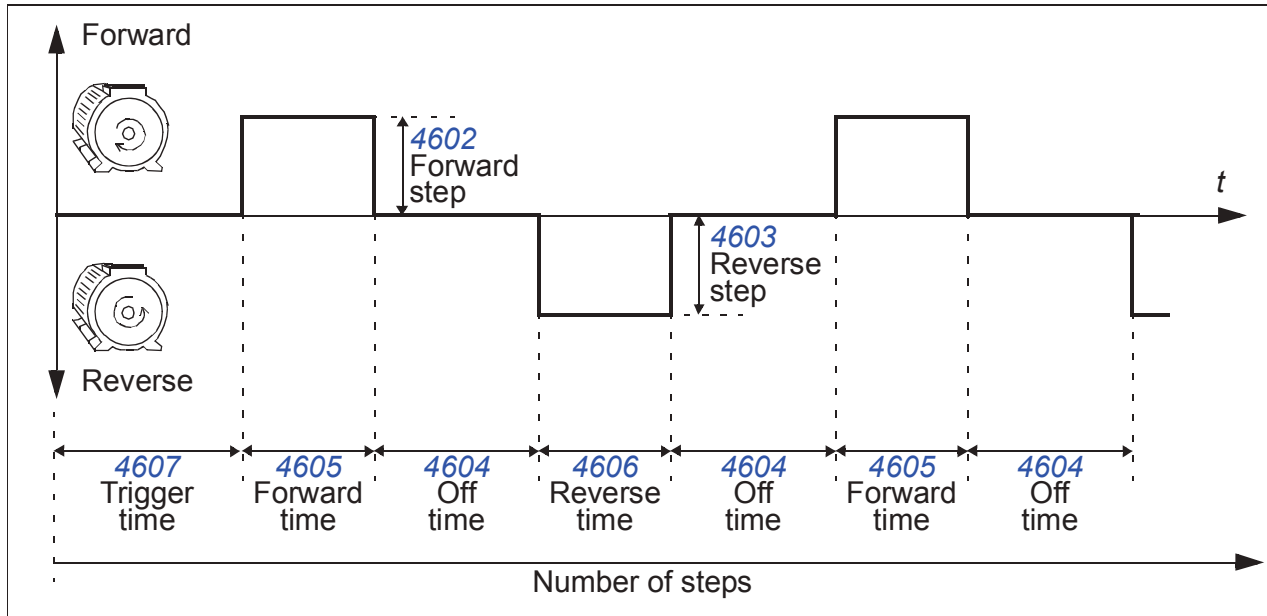
| Parameter                     | Additional information |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| Group <i>45 ENERGY SAVING</i> | Energy saving settings |

### ■ Diagnostics

| Actual signal    | Additional information                |
|------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>0174/0175</i> | Energy saved in kWh/Mwh               |
| <i>0176/0177</i> | Energy saved in local currency        |
| <i>0178</i>      | Reduction in CO <sub>2</sub> emission |

## Pump cleaning

The Pump cleaning function can be used for preventing solids from building up on pump impellers. The function consists of a programmable sequence of forward and reverse runs of the pump (see the figure below), effectively shaking off any residue on the impeller. This is especially useful with booster and wastewater pumps.



The pump cleaning cycle can be activated at start-up, with a user-defined period, with a selectable digital input or by the Supervision function (for example triggered by the motor input current).

### ■ Settings

| Parameter                     | Additional information                    |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Group <i>46 PUMP CLEANING</i> | Pump cleaning settings                    |
| <i>2205/2206</i>              | Acceleration time 2 / Deceleration time 2 |

## Load analyzer

The load analyzer can be used for analyzing the customer's process and sizing the drive and the motor.

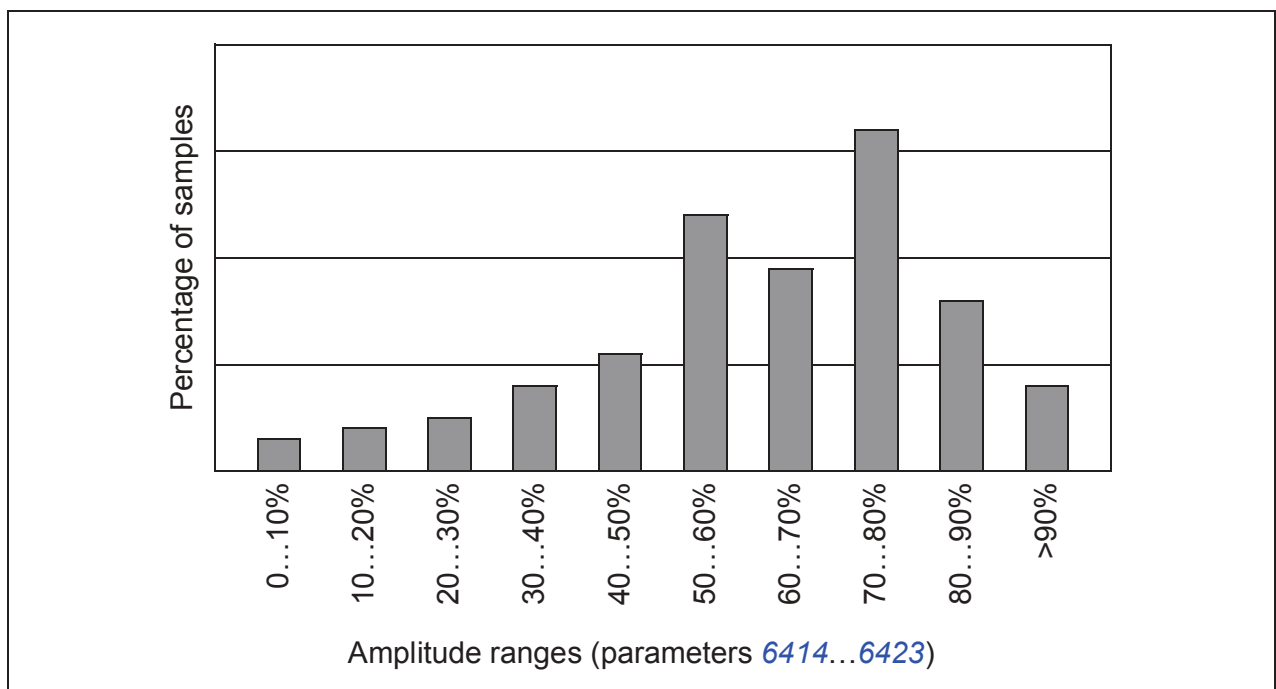
### ■ Peak value logger

The user can select a signal (group *01 OPERATING DATA*) to be monitored by the peak value logger (PVL). The signal is sampled at 2 ms intervals when the drive is running. The logger records the peak (maximum) value of the signal along with the time the peak occurred, as well as output current, DC voltage and output frequency at the time of the peak.

### ■ Amplitude loggers

The drive has two amplitude loggers.

For amplitude logger 2 (AL2), the user can select a signal (group *01 OPERATING DATA*) to be sampled at 200 ms intervals when the drive is running, and specify a value that corresponds to 100%. The collected samples are sorted into 10 read-only parameters according to their amplitude. Each parameter represents an amplitude range 10 percentage points wide, and displays the percentage of the collected samples that fall within that range.



Amplitude logger 1 (AL1) is fixed to monitor output current, and it cannot be reset. With amplitude logger 1, 100% corresponds to the nominal output current of the drive ( $I_{2N}$ ).

The peak value logger and amplitude logger 2 can be reset by a user-defined method. They are also reset if either of the signals or the peak value filter time is changed.



## ■ Settings

| Parameter   | Additional information |
|---|------------------------|
| Group <a href="#">64 LOAD ANALYZER</a> , parameters <a href="#">6401...6405</a> | Load analyzer settings |

## ■ Diagnostics

| Actual signal   | Additional information |
|---|------------------------|
| Group <a href="#">64 LOAD ANALYZER</a> , parameters <a href="#">6406...6433</a> | Load analyzer results  |

---

## PFC and SPFC control

### ■ PFC control

Pump and fan control (PFC) switches auxiliary pumps on and off as required by capacity changes. Autochange function alternates between pumps to keep the duty times of the pumps equal. Interlocks function enables the drive to detect if any of the pumps are unavailable (eg switched off for maintenance), in which case the next available pump is started instead.

The drive controls the motor of pump 1, varying the motor speed to control the pump capacity. This motor is the speed regulated motor.

Direct line connections power the motors of pump 2 and pump 3, etc. The drive switches pump 2 (and then pump 3, etc.) on and off as needed. These motors are auxiliary motors.

The drive PID control uses two signals: a process reference and an actual value feedback. The PID controller adjusts the speed (frequency) of the first pump such that the actual value follows the process reference.

When demand (defined by the process reference) exceeds the first motor's capacity (user defined as a frequency limit), the PFC control automatically starts an auxiliary pump. The PFC also reduces the speed of the first pump to account for the auxiliary pump's addition to total output. Then, as before, the PID controller adjusts the speed (frequency) of the first pump such that the actual value follows the process reference. If demand continues to increase, PFC adds additional auxiliary pumps, using the same process.

When demand drops, such that the first pump speed falls below a minimum limit (user defined as a frequency limit), the PFC control automatically stops an auxiliary pump. The PFC also increases the speed of the first pump to account for the auxiliary pump's missing output.

An Interlock function (when enabled) identifies off-line (out of service) motors, and the PFC control skips to the next available motor in the sequence.

An Autochange function (when enabled and with the appropriate switchgear) equalizes duty time between the pump motors. Autochange periodically increments the position of each motor in the rotation – the speed regulated motor becomes the last auxiliary motor, the first auxiliary motor becomes the speed regulated motor, etc.

See also section [PFC control macro](#) on page 110.

### ■ SPFC control

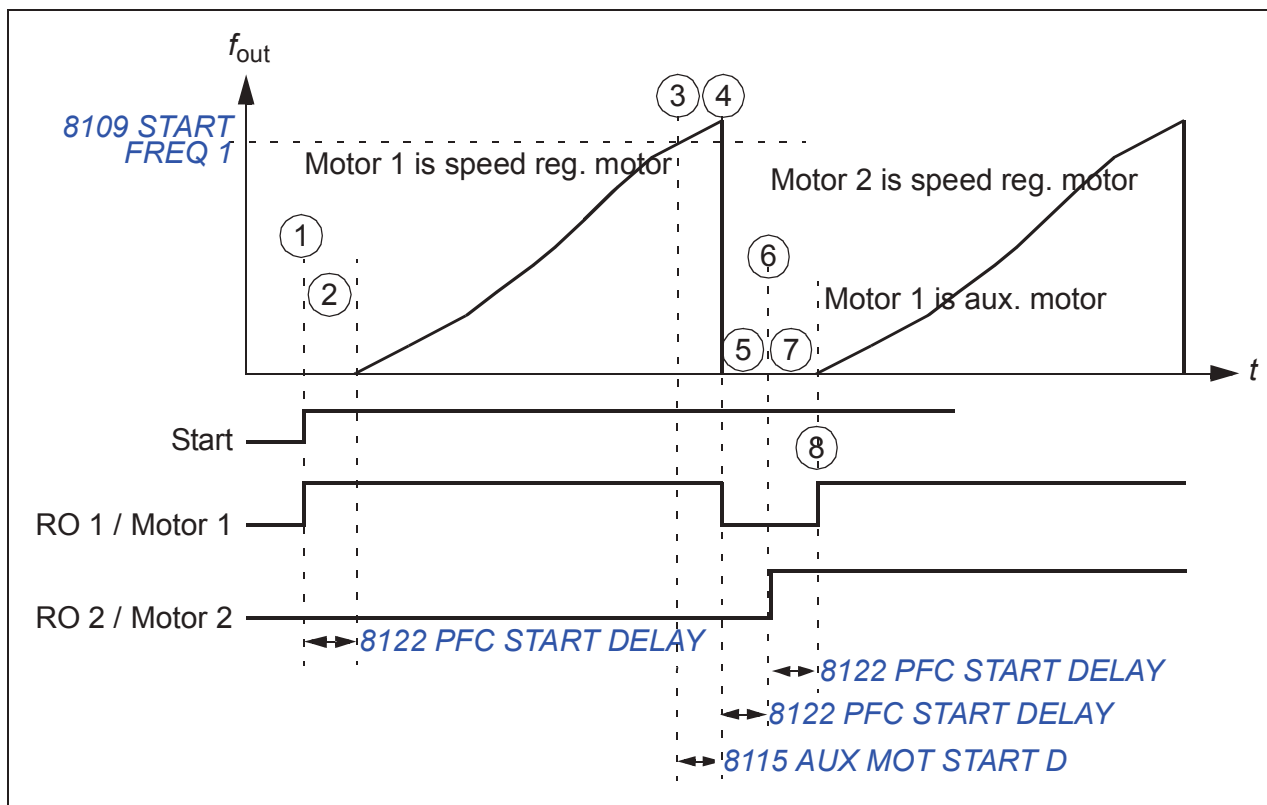
Soft pump and fan control (SPFC) is used for pump and fan alternation applications where lower pressure peaks are desirable when a new auxiliary motor is connected on-line. SPFC is an easy way to implement soft starting of direct on line (auxiliary)

motors. The main difference between traditional PFC and SPFC is the way SPFC connects auxiliary motors on-line.

SPFC connects auxiliary motors online with a flying start, while the motor is still coasting. Thus, in some cases SPFC makes it possible to soften the start-up current while connecting auxiliary motors on-line. This is why lower pressure peaks on the pipelines and pumps may also be achieved. Connection sequence and powering routine of auxiliary motors in SPFC is explained more detailed in the diagram. The motor stopping routine follows always the normal PFC routine.

### SPFC powering routine

The diagram below illustrates the SPFC powering routine.



1. At start, relay RO 1 is closed and motor 1 is connected to the drive output.
2. The drive waits for the time specified by parameter *8122 PFC START DELAY* to ensure that the contactor (RO 1) has stabilized and then starts modulating from zero speed. Motor 1 is the speed regulated motor.
3. When the drive output frequency  $f_{out}$  rises over the start frequency (*8109 START FREQ 1*), the start delay for the auxiliary motor (*8115 AUX MOT START D*) is set.
4. When delay *8115* has elapsed, the drive coasts to stop and relay RO 1 is opened (motor 1 is disconnected from the drive output).
5. The drive waits for *8122 PFC START DELAY* to ensure that the contactor (RO 1) has stabilized.
6. After delay, *8122* RO 2 is closed and motor 2 is connected to the drive output as the new speed regulated motor.

7. The drive waits for **8122 PFC START DELAY** to ensure that the contactor (RO 2) has stabilized.
8. After delay **8122**, the drive starts modulating from zero speed regulating the speed of motor 2. RO 1 is closed and motor 1 is connected directly on-line as an auxiliary motor.

### How to parameterize SPFC control

1. Select the SPFC control macro by setting parameter **9902 APPLIC MACRO** to value 15 (**SPFC CONTROL**).
2. Set PFC reference steps (parameters **8103...8105**) if needed.
3. Set PFC start and stop frequencies (parameters **8109...8114**).
4. Set PFC auxiliary motor start and stop delays (parameters **8115...8116**).
5. Set the number of auxiliary motors (parameter **8117**).
6. Enable Autochange (parameter **8118**). In SPFC control, the parameter only allows SPFC to use PFC's alternation switchgear box. It is not used as the operating time interval between the automatic motor changes as in normal PFC application.
7. Autochange level is ignored (parameter **8119**).
8. Parameterize Interlocks (parameter **8120**).
9. Set Bypass function if needed (parameter **8121**).
10. Set PFC start delay (parameter **8122**).
11. Enable SPFC. Depending on the application, set parameter **8123 PFC ENABLE** to value 2 (**SPFC ACTIVE**) or value 3 (**SPFC + AUTOCHANGE**).  
Value 1 (**ACTIVE**): enables normal PFC functionality.  
Value 2 (**SPFC ACTIVE**): enables SPFC function with auxiliary motors running.  
Value 3 (**SPFC + AUTOCHANGE**): enables SPFC function only when auxiliary motors are not running
12. Set PFC acceleration and deceleration times if needed (parameters **8124...8125**).
13. Autochange enable with a timed function is ignored (parameter **8126**).
14. Set relays in group **14 RELAY OUTPUTS**. (Transistor output TO [parameter **1805 DO SIGNAL**] can be used as an additional relay output, if needed.) Both PFC and SPFC use these relays. You must set at least as many relays as there are motors set for SPFC (= the number of auxiliary motors [parameter **8117**] + 1 [speed regulated motor] when SPFC is used).
15. Set number of PFC controlled motors in parameter **8127** (= number of PFC relays in group **14 RELAY OUTPUTS**).
16. Also set other needed motor dependent parameters, eg **2007 MINIMUM FREQ**, **2008 MAXIMUM FREQ** and **2605 U/F RATIO**.

PFC control and SPFC control default settings have differences in acceleration time (**2202**), deceleration time (**2203**) and auxiliary motor stop delay (**8116**) parameters.

See also section **SPFC control macro** on page 111.

---

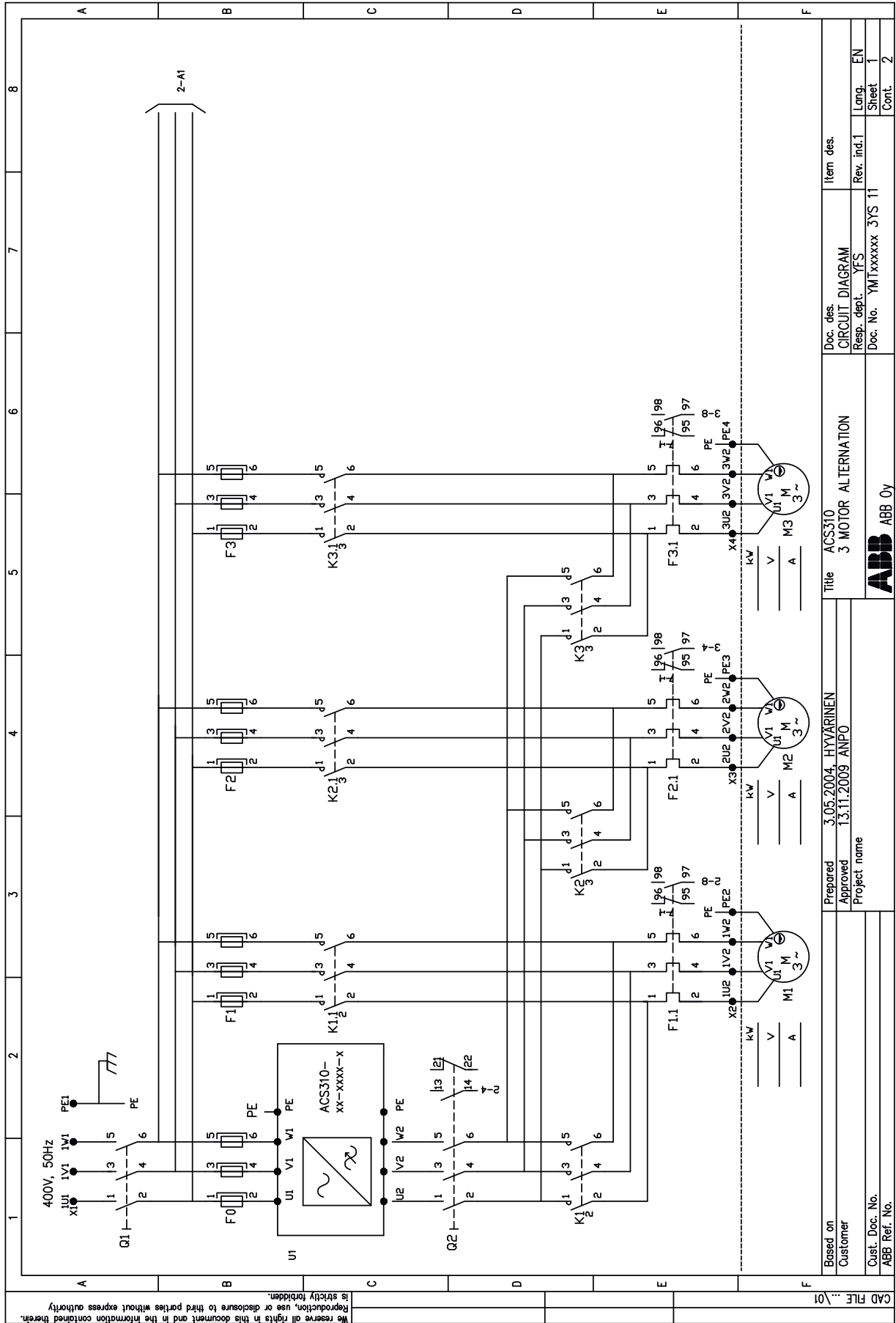
## ■ Settings

| Parameter                                   | Additional information   |
|---|--|
| Group <i>14 RELAY OUTPUTS</i>               | Selections of relay outputs for starting and stopping of motors  |
| Group <i>18 FREQ IN &amp; TRAN OUT</i>      | Selections of relay outputs for starting and stopping of motors (transistor output can be used as an additional relay) |
| Group <i>44 PUMP PROTECTION</i>             | Pump protection (pressure monitoring) settings   |
| Group <i>81 PFC CONTROL;</i><br><i>8123</i> | PFC control settings;<br>PFC/SPFC enable/disable   |

## ■ Diagnostics

| Actual signal                        | Additional information   |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <i>0116</i>                          | Application block output signal  |
| <i>0162</i>                          | RO 1 status  |
| <i>0163</i>                          | TO status  |
| <i>0173</i>                          | RO 2...4 status. With option MREL-01 only.   |
| <b>Alarm</b>                         |  |
| <i>AUTOCHANGE</i>                    | PFC Autochange function active   |
| <i>PFC I LOCK</i>                    | PFC interlocks active  |
| <i>INLET LOW, INLET VERY LOW</i>     | Pressure at pump/fan inlet too low   |
| <i>OUTLET HIGH, OUTLET VERY HIGH</i> | Pressure at pump/fan outlet too high   |
| <b>Fault</b>                         | <b>Additional information</b>  |
| <i>PAR PFC REF NEG</i>               | <i>2007</i> < 0  |
| <i>PAR PFC IO 1</i>                  | Not enough relays parameterized for PFC.<br>Conflict between group <i>14 RELAY OUTPUTS</i> , parameter <i>8117</i> and parameter <i>8118</i> . |
| <i>PAR PFC IO 2</i>                  | Parameter <i>8127</i> does not match the PFC motors in group <i>14 RELAY OUTPUTS</i> and parameter <i>8118</i>                                 |
| <i>PAR PFC IO 3</i>                  | Allocation of a digital input (interlock) for each PFC motor not possible  |
| <i>INLET LOW, INLET VERY LOW</i>     | Pressure at pump/fan inlet too low   |
| <i>OUTLET HIGH, OUTLET VERY HIGH</i> | Pressure at pump/fan outlet too high   |

## Connection diagram example



We reserve all rights in this document and in the information contained therein. Reproduction, use or disclosure to third parties without express authority is strictly forbidden.

CAD FILE ...\01

Based on  
Customer

Prepared 3.05.2004. HYVÄRINEN  
Approved 13.11.2009 ANPO  
Project name

Customer

Cust. Doc. No.  
ABB Ref. No.

Title ACS310  
3 MOTOR ALTERNATION

Doc. des.  
CIRCUIT DIAGRAM

Resp. dept. YFS  
Doc. No. YMTxxxxxx 3YS 11

Item des.  
Rev. ind.1  
Lang. EN  
Sheet 1  
Cont. 2

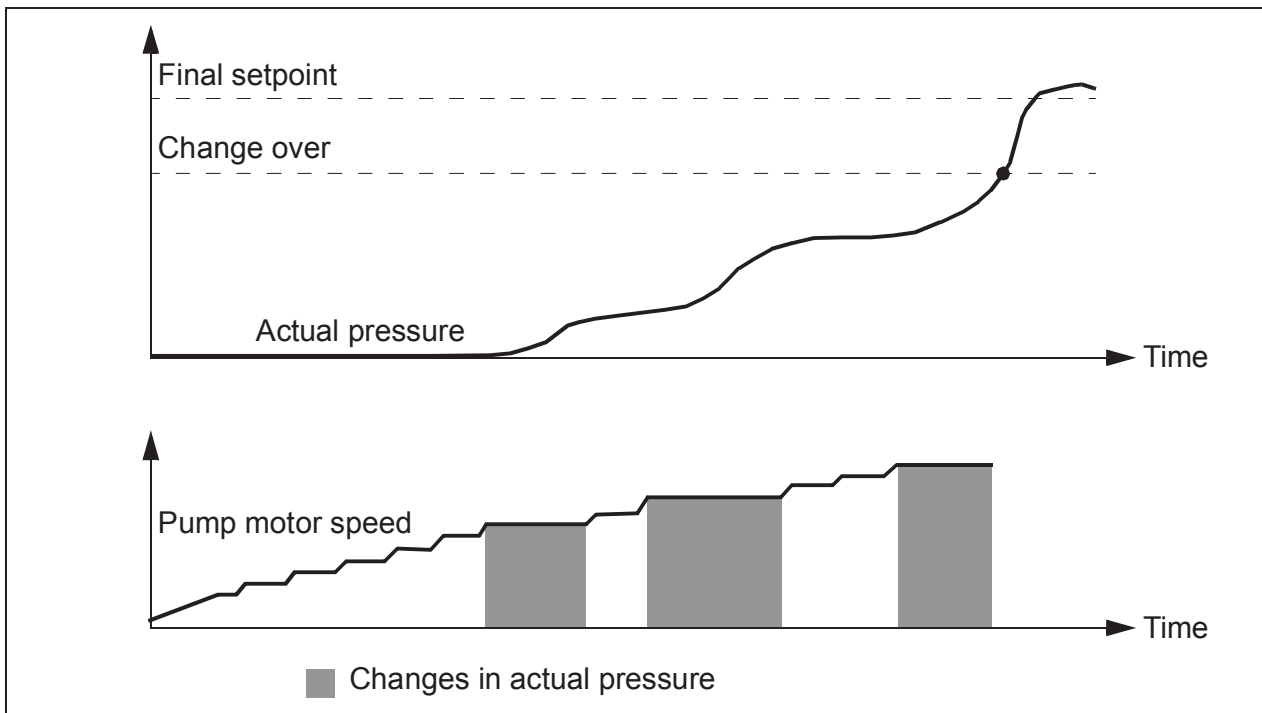


## Pipe fill

The Pipe fill function is used for soft-starting a pump system. The pipe system is filled smoothly with water, and when the pressure in the pipe system is near the final set point, the drive changes to closed loop control.

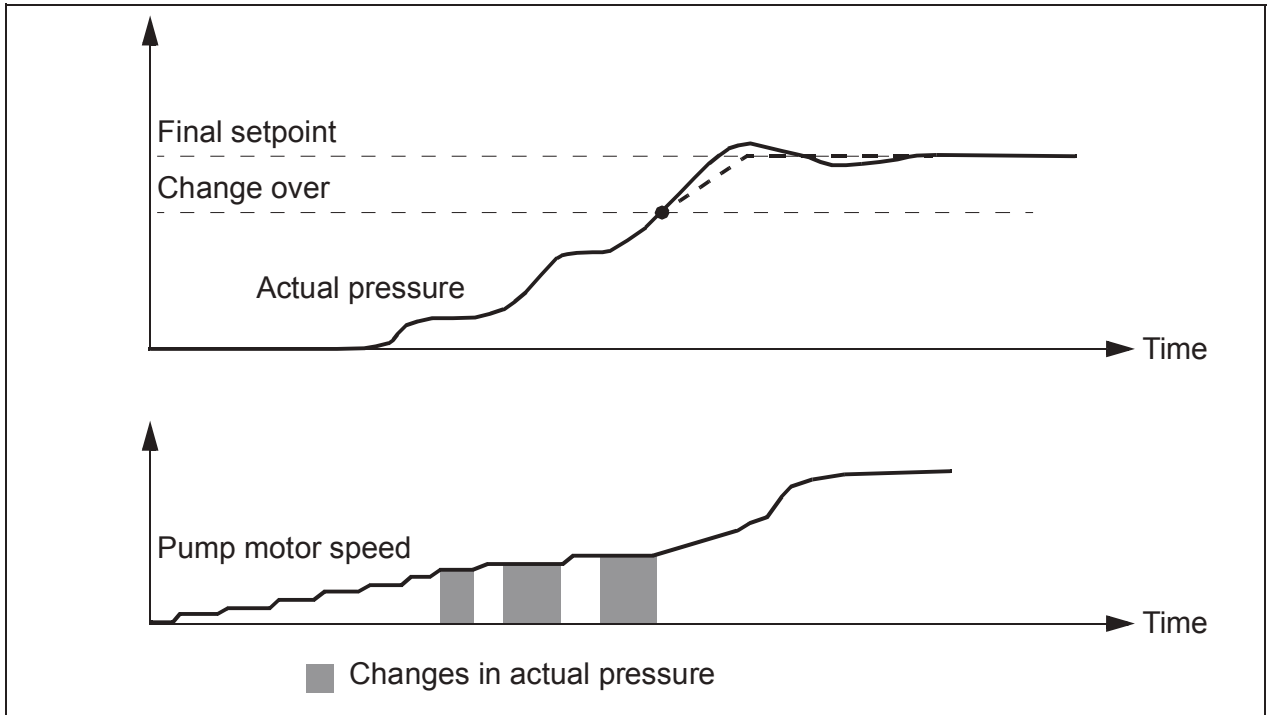
### ■ Reference ramping

If there is no change detected in the actual pressure, the Pipe fill function increases the pump motor speed. When a change in the actual pressure is detected, the speed stepping is stopped and the motor speed remains unchanged until the pressure stops changing.



## PID reference ramping

After PID deviation is below PID ENABLE DEV, PID reference ramping is enabled. The PID reference ramping parameters are in group 40.



## Settings

| Parameter  | Additional information                         |
|--|--|
| Group <b>40 PROCESS PID SET 1</b> parameters <b>4032</b> and <b>4033</b> . | Process PID settings                           |
| Group <b>44 PUMP PROTECTION</b> parameters <b>4422...4426</b>              | Pump protection (pressure monitoring) settings |



www.nicsanat.com

021-87700210

NIC SANAT

نیک صنعت



,



# Actual signals and parameters

## What this chapter contains

The chapter describes the actual signals and parameters and gives the fieldbus equivalent values for each signal/parameter. It also contains a table of the default values for the different macros.

**Note:** When the control panel is in the short parameter view, ie when parameter [1611 PARAMETER VIEW](#) is set to 2 (*SHORT VIEW*), the control panel only shows a subset of all signals and parameters. The lists of these signals and parameters starts on page [167](#).

To be able to view all actual signals and parameters, set parameter [1611 PARAMETER VIEW](#) to 3 (*LONG VIEW*). The descriptions of all actual signals and parameters start on pages [170](#) and [177](#), respectively.

## Terms and abbreviations

| Term          | Definition   |
|---------------|--|
| Actual signal | Signal measured or calculated by the drive. Can be monitored by the user. No user setting possible. Groups 01...04 contain actual signals.   |
| Def           | Parameter default value  |
| Parameter     | A user-adjustable operation instruction of the drive. Groups 10...99 contain parameters.<br><b>Note:</b> Parameter selections are shown on the Basic control panel as integer values. Eg parameter <a href="#">1001 EXT1 COMMANDS</a> selection <i>COMM</i> is shown as value 10 (which is equal to the fieldbus equivalent FbEq). |
| FbEq          | Fieldbus equivalent: The scaling between the value and the integer used in serial communication.   |
| E             | Refers to types 03E- with European parametrization   |
| U             | Refers to types 03U- with US parametrization   |



## Fieldbus equivalent

**Example:** If *2008 MAXIMUM FREQ* (see page 200) is set from an external control system, an integer value of 1 corresponds to 0.1 Hz. All the read and sent values are limited to 16 bits (-32768...32767).

---

## Default values with different macros

When application macro is changed (*9902 APPLIC MACRO*), the software updates the parameter values to their default values. The table below shows the parameter default values for different macros. For other parameters, the default values are the same for all macros. See the parameter list starting on page 177.

| Index | Name/<br>Selection | ABB<br>STAND<br>ARD        | 3-WIRE               | ALTERNA<br>TE        | MOTOR<br>POT            | HAND/<br>AUTO        | PID<br>CONTROL        | PFC<br>CONTROL        | SPFC<br>CONTROL         | AC500<br>MODBUS         |
|-------|--------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 9902  | APPLIC<br>MACRO    | 1 =<br>ABB<br>STAND<br>ARD | 2 =<br>3-WIRE        | 3 =<br>ALTERNA<br>TE | 4 =<br>MOTOR<br>POT     | 5 =<br>HAND/<br>AUTO | 6 =<br>PID<br>CONTROL | 7 =<br>PFC<br>CONTROL | 15 =<br>SPFC<br>CONTROL | 21 =<br>AC500<br>MODBUS |
| 1001  | EXT1<br>COMMANDS   | 2 =<br>DI1,2               | 4 =<br>DI1P,2P,<br>3 | 9 =<br>DI1F,2R       | 2 =<br>DI1,2            | 2 =<br>DI1,2         | 1 = DI1               | 1 = DI1               | 1 = DI1                 | 10 =<br>COMM            |
| 1002  | EXT2<br>COMMANDS   | 0 =<br>NOT<br>SEL          | 0 = NOT<br>SEL       | 0 = NOT<br>SEL       | 0 =<br>NOT<br>SEL       | 21 =<br>DI5,4        | 20 = DI5              | 20 = DI5              | 20 = DI5                | 0 = NOT<br>SEL          |
| 1003  | DIRECTION          | 3 =<br>REQU<br>EST         | 3 =<br>REQUES<br>T   | 3 =<br>REQUEST       | 3 =<br>REQUE<br>ST      | 3 =<br>REQUE<br>ST   | 1 =<br>FORWARD        | 1 =<br>FORWARD        | 1 =<br>FORWARD          | 3 =<br>REQUES<br>T      |
| 1102  | EXT1/EXT2<br>SEL   | 0 =<br>EXT1                | 0 =<br>EXT1          | 0 = EXT1             | 0 =<br>EXT1             | 3 = DI3              | 2 = DI2               | 2 = DI2               | 2 = DI2                 | 8 =<br>COMM             |
| 1103  | REF1<br>SELECT     | 1 =<br>AI1                 | 1 = AI1              | 1 = AI1              | 12 =<br>DI3U,4<br>D(NC) | 1 = AI1              | 1 = AI1               | 1 = AI1               | 1 = AI1                 | 8 =<br>COMM             |
| 1106  | REF2<br>SELECT     | 2 =<br>AI2                 | 2 = AI2              | 2 = AI2              | 2 = AI2                 | 2 = AI2              | 19 =<br>PID1OUT       | 19 =<br>PID1OUT       | 19 =<br>PID1OUT         | 2 = AI2                 |
| 1201  | CONST<br>SPEED SEL | 9 =<br>DI3,4               | 10 =<br>DI4,5        | 9 = DI3,4            | 5 = DI5                 | 0 =<br>NOT<br>SEL    | 3 = DI3               | 0 = NOT<br>SEL        | 0 = NOT<br>SEL          | 9 = DI3,4               |
| 1304  | MINIMUM AI2        | 1.0%                       | 1.0%                 | 1.0%                 | 1.0%                    | 20.0%                | 20.0%                 | 20.0%                 | 20.0%                   | 1.0%                    |
| 1401  | RELAY<br>OUTPUT 1  | 3 =<br>FAULT<br>(-1)       | 3 =<br>FAULT(-<br>1) | 3 =<br>FAULT(-1)     | 3 =<br>FAULT(-<br>1)    | 3 =<br>FAULT(-<br>1) | 3 =<br>FAULT(-1)      | 31 = PFC              | 31 = PFC                | 3 =<br>FAULT(-<br>1)    |
| 1601  | RUN ENABLE         | 0 =<br>NOT<br>SEL          | 0 = NOT<br>SEL       | 0 = NOT<br>SEL       | 0 =<br>NOT<br>SEL       | 0 =<br>NOT<br>SEL    | 4 = DI4               | 0 = NOT<br>SEL        | 0 = NOT<br>SEL          | 0 = NOT<br>SEL          |
| 1604  | FAULT<br>RESET SEL | 0 =<br>KEYPA<br>AD         | 0 =<br>KEYPA<br>D    | 0 =<br>KEYPAD        | 0 =<br>KEYPA<br>D       | 0 =<br>KEYPA<br>D    | 0 =<br>KEYPAD         | 0 =<br>KEYPAD         | 0 =<br>KEYPAD           | 8 =<br>COMM             |
| 1805  | DO SIGNAL          | 3 =<br>FAULT<br>(-1)       | 3 =<br>FAULT(-<br>1) | 3 =<br>FAULT(-1)     | 3 =<br>FAULT(-<br>1)    | 3 =<br>FAULT(-<br>1) | 3 =<br>FAULT(-1)      | 3 =<br>FAULT(-1)      | 31 = PFC                | 3 =<br>FAULT(-<br>1)    |
| 2008  | MAXIMUM<br>FREQ    | 50.0 Hz                    | 50.0 Hz              | 50.0 Hz              | 50.0 Hz                 | 50.0 Hz              | 50.0 Hz               | 52.0 Hz               | 52.0 Hz                 | 50.0 Hz                 |
| 2201  | ACC/DEC 1/2<br>SEL | 5 =<br>DI5                 | 0 = NOT<br>SEL       | 5 = DI5              | 0 =<br>NOT<br>SEL       | 0 =<br>NOT<br>SEL    | 0 = NOT<br>SEL        | 0 = NOT<br>SEL        | 0 = NOT<br>SEL          | 0 = NOT<br>SEL          |
| 2202  | ACCELER<br>TIME 1  | 5.0 s                      | 5.0 s                | 5.0 s                | 5.0 s                   | 5.0 s                | 5.0 s                 | 5.0 s                 | 30.0 s                  | 5.0 s                   |
| 2203  | DECELER<br>TIME 1  | 5.0 s                      | 5.0 s                | 5.0 s                | 5.0 s                   | 5.0 s                | 5.0 s                 | 5.0 s                 | 30.0 s                  | 5.0 s                   |
| 3018  | COMMFAULT<br>FUNC  | 0 =<br>NOT<br>SEL          | 0 = NOT<br>SEL       | 0 = NOT<br>SEL       | 0 =<br>NOT<br>SEL       | 0 =<br>NOT<br>SEL    | 0 = NOT<br>SEL        | 0 = NOT<br>SEL        | 0 = NOT<br>SEL          | 1 =<br>FAULT            |
| 3019  | COMMFAULT<br>TIME  | 3.0 s                      | 3.0 s                | 3.0 s                | 3.0 s                   | 3.0 s                | 3.0 s                 | 3.0 s                 | 10.0 s                  | 3.0 s                   |

| Index | Name/<br>Selection   | ABB<br>STAND<br>ARD      | 3-WIRE                | ALTERNA<br>TE      | MOTOR<br>POT          | HAND/<br>AUTO            | PID<br>CONTROL     | PFC<br>CONTROL     | SPFC<br>CONTROL    | AC500<br>MODBUS        |
|-------|----------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| 4001  | GAIN                 | 1.0                      | 1.0                   | 1.0                | 1.0                   | 1.0                      | 1.0                | 2.5                | 2.5                | 1.0                    |
| 4002  | INTEGRATIO<br>N TIME | 60.0 s                   | 60.0 s                | 60.0 s             | 60.0 s                | 60.0 s                   | 60.0 s             | 3.0 s              | 3.0 s              | 60.0 s                 |
| 4101  | GAIN                 | 1.0                      | 1.0                   | 1.0                | 1.0                   | 1.0                      | 1.0                | 2.5                | 2.5                | 1.0                    |
| 4102  | INTEGRATIO<br>N TIME | 60.0 s                   | 60.0 s                | 60.0 s             | 60.0 s                | 60.0 s                   | 60.0 s             | 3.0 s              | 3.0 s              | 60.0 s                 |
| 5302  | EFB STATION<br>ID    | 1                        | 1                     | 1                  | 1                     | 1                        | 1                  | 1                  | 1                  | 2                      |
| 5303  | EFB BAUD<br>RATE     | 9.6<br>kbit/s            | 9.6 kbit/s            | 9.6 kbit/s         | 9.6 kbit/s            | 19.6<br>kbit/s           | 9.6 kbit/s         | 9.6 kbit/s         | 9.6 kbit/s         | 19.2 kbit/s            |
| 5304  | EFB PARITY           | 0 = 8<br>NONE<br>1       | 0 = 8<br>NONE 1       | 0 = 8<br>NONE 1    | 0 = 8<br>NONE 1       | 0 = 8<br>NONE<br>1       | 0 = 8<br>NONE 1    | 0 = 8<br>NONE 1    | 0 = 8<br>NONE 1    | 0 = 8<br>NONE 1        |
| 5305  | EFB CTRL<br>PROFILE  | 0 =<br>ABB<br>DRV<br>LIM | 0 = ABB<br>DRV<br>LIM | 0 = ABB<br>DRV LIM | 0 = ABB<br>DRV<br>LIM | 0 =<br>ABB<br>DRV<br>LIM | 0 = ABB<br>DRV LIM | 0 = ABB<br>DRV LIM | 0 = ABB<br>DRV LIM | 2 = ABB<br>DRV<br>FULL |
| 5310  | EFB PAR 10           | 0                        | 0                     | 0                  | 0                     | 0                        | 0                  | 0                  | 0                  | 101                    |
| 5311  | EFB PAR 11           | 0                        | 0                     | 0                  | 0                     | 0                        | 0                  | 0                  | 0                  | 303                    |
| 5312  | EFB PAR 12           | 0                        | 0                     | 0                  | 0                     | 0                        | 0                  | 0                  | 0                  | 305                    |
| 8116  | AUX MOT<br>STOP D    | 3.0 s                    | 3.0 s                 | 3.0 s              | 3.0 s                 | 3.0 s                    | 3.0 s              | 3.0 s              | 20.0 s             | 3.0 s                  |
| 8118  | AUTOCHNG<br>INTERV   | 0.0 =<br>NOT<br>SEL      | 0.0 =<br>NOT<br>SEL   | 0.0 =<br>NOT SEL   | 0.0 =<br>NOT<br>SEL   | 0.0 =<br>NOT<br>SEL      | 0.0 =<br>NOT SEL   | 0.0 =<br>NOT SEL   | 0.1 h              | 0.0 =<br>NOT SEL       |
| 8123  | PFC ENABLE           | 0 =<br>NOT<br>SEL        | 0 = NOT<br>SEL        | 0 = NOT<br>SEL     | 0 =<br>NOT<br>SEL     | 0 =<br>NOT<br>SEL        | 0 = NOT<br>SEL     | 1 =<br>ACTIVE      | 2 = SPFC<br>ACTIVE | 0 = NOT<br>SEL         |

## Actual signals in the short parameter view

| Actual signals in the short parameter view |            |  |       |
|--|------------|--|-------|
| No.  | Name/Value | Description  | FbEq  |
| <b>04 FAULT HISTORY</b>                    |            | Fault history (read-only). See group <a href="#">04 FAULT HISTORY</a> in the list of all parameters. |       |
| 0401                                       | LAST FAULT | Code of the latest fault.  | 1 = 1 |

## Parameters in the short parameter view

| Parameters in the short parameter view |                |   |                          |
|--|----------------|---|--------------------------|
| No.                                    | Name/Value     | Description   | Def/FbEq                 |
| <b>11 REFERENCE SELECT</b>             |                | Panel reference type, external control location selection and external reference sources and limits. See group <a href="#">11 REFERENCE SELECT</a> in the list of all parameters. |                          |
| 1105                                   | REF1 MAX       | Defines the maximum value for external reference REF1.  | E: 50.0 Hz<br>U: 60.0 Hz |
| <b>12 CONSTANT SPEEDS</b>              |                | Constant speed (drive output frequency) selection and values. See group <a href="#">12 CONSTANT SPEEDS</a> in the list of all parameters.   |                          |
| 1202                                   | CONST SPEED 1  | Defines constant drive output frequency 1.  | E: 5.0 Hz<br>U: 6.0 Hz   |
| 1203                                   | CONST SPEED 2  | Defines constant drive output frequency 2.  | E: 10.0 Hz<br>U: 12.0 Hz |
| 1204                                   | CONST SPEED 3  | Defines constant drive output frequency 3.  | E: 15.0 Hz<br>U: 18.0 Hz |
| <b>13 ANALOG INPUTS</b>                |                | Analog input signal processing. See group <a href="#">13 ANALOG INPUTS</a> in the list of all parameters.   |                          |
| 1301                                   | MINIMUM AI1    | Defines the minimum %-value that corresponds to minimum mA(V) signal for analog input AI1.  | 1.0%                     |
| <b>14 RELAY OUTPUTS</b>                |                | Status information indicated through relay output, and relay operating delays. See group <a href="#">14 RELAY OUTPUTS</a> in the list of all parameters.                          |                          |
| 1401                                   | RELAY OUTPUT 1 | Selects a drive status indicated through relay output RO 1.   | <i>FAULT(-1)</i>         |
| <b>16 SYSTEM CONTROLS</b>              |                | Parameter view, Run enable, parameter lock etc. See group <a href="#">16 SYSTEM CONTROLS</a> in the list of all parameters.   |                          |
| 1611                                   | PARAMETER VIEW | Selects the parameter view, ie which parameters are shown on the control panel.   | <i>SHORT VIEW</i>        |
| <b>20 LIMITS</b>                       |                | Drive operation limits. See group <a href="#">20 LIMITS</a> in the list of all parameters.  |                          |
| 2008                                   | MAXIMUM FREQ   | Defines the maximum limit for the drive output frequency.   | E: 50.0 Hz<br>U: 60.0 Hz |
| <b>21 START/STOP</b>                   |                | Start and stop modes of the motor. See group <a href="#">21 START/STOP</a> in the list of all parameters.   |                          |
| 2102                                   | STOP FUNCTION  | Selects the motor stop function.  | <i>COAST</i>             |

| Parameters in the short parameter view |                  |  |                             |
|--|------------------|--|-----------------------------|
| No.                                    | Name/Value       | Description  | Def/FbEq                    |
| <b>22 ACCEL/DECEL</b>                  |                  | Acceleration and deceleration times. See group <a href="#">22 ACCEL/DECEL</a> in the list of all parameters.   |                             |
| 2202                                   | ACCELER TIME 1   | Defines the acceleration time 1.   | 5.0 s                       |
| 2203                                   | DECELER TIME 1   | Defines the deceleration time 1.   | 5.0 s                       |
| <b>53 EFB PROTOCOL</b>                 |                  | Embedded fieldbus link settings. See chapter <a href="#">Fieldbus control with the embedded fieldbus</a> on page 287.  |                             |
| 5301                                   | EFB PROTOCOL ID  | Contains the identification and program version of the protocol.<br><b>Note:</b> You can reset this parameter only with parameter <a href="#">9802 COMM PROT SEL</a> .   | -                           |
| 5302                                   | EFB STATION ID   | Defines the address of the device. Two units with the same address are not allowed on-line.  | 1                           |
| 5303                                   | EFB BAUD RATE    | Defines the transfer rate of the link  | 9.6 kbit/s                  |
| 5304                                   | EFB PARITY       | Defines the use of parity and stop bit(s) and the data length. The same setting must be used in all on-line stations.  | <a href="#">8 NONE 1</a>    |
| 5305                                   | EFB CTRL PROFILE | Selects the communication profile. See section <a href="#">Communication profiles</a> on page 302.   | <a href="#">ABB DRV LIM</a> |
| 5306                                   | EFB OK MESSAGES  | Number of valid messages received by the drive. During normal operation, this number increases constantly.   | 0                           |
| 5307                                   | EFB CRC MESSAGES | Number of messages with an CRC (cyclic redundancy check) error received by the drive. If the number is high, check CRC calculation for possible errors.<br><b>Note:</b> High electromagnetic noise levels generate errors. | 0                           |
| 5308                                   | EFB UART ERRORS  | Number of messages with a character error received by the drive.   | 0                           |
| 5309                                   | EFB STATUS       | Status of the EFB protocol.  | <a href="#">IDLE</a>        |
| 5310                                   | EFB PAR 10       | Selects an actual value to be mapped to Modbus register 40005.   | 0                           |
| 5311                                   | EFB PAR 11       | Selects an actual value to be mapped to Modbus register 40006.   | 0                           |
| 5312                                   | EFB PAR 12       | Selects an actual value to be mapped to Modbus register 40007.   | 0                           |
| 5313                                   | EFB PAR 13       | Selects an actual value to be mapped to Modbus register 40008.   | 0                           |
| 5314                                   | EFB PAR 14       | Selects an actual value to be mapped to Modbus register 40009.   | 0                           |
| 5315                                   | EFB PAR 15       | Selects an actual value to be mapped to Modbus register 40010.   | 0                           |
| 5316                                   | EFB PAR 16       | Selects an actual value to be mapped to Modbus register 40011.   | 0                           |
| 5317                                   | EFB PAR 17       | Selects an actual value to be mapped to Modbus register 40012.   | 0                           |
| 5318                                   | EFB PAR 18       | For Modbus: Sets an additional delay before the drive begins transmitting response to the master request.  | 0                           |

| Parameters in the short parameter view |                 |   |  |
|--|-----------------|---|--|
| No.                                    | Name/Value      | Description   | Def/FbEq   |
| 5319                                   | EFB PAR 19      | ABB drives profile ( <i>ABB DRV LIM</i> or <i>ABB DRV FULL</i> ) Control word. Read only copy of the Fieldbus Control word. | 0000 hex   |
| 5320                                   | EFB PAR 20      | ABB drives profile ( <i>ABB DRV LIM</i> or <i>ABB DRV FULL</i> ) Status word. Read only copy of the Fieldbus Status word.   | 0000 hex   |
| <b>98 OPTIONS</b>                      |                 | External serial communication activation.   |  |
| 9802                                   | COMM PROT SEL   | Activates the external serial communication and selects the interface.  | <i>NOT SEL</i>   |
| <b>99 START-UP DATA</b>                |                 | Language selection. Definition of motor set-up data. See group <i>99 START-UP DATA</i> in the list of all parameters.       |  |
| 9901                                   | LANGUAGE        | Selects the display language.   | <i>ENGLISH</i>   |
| 9902                                   | APPLIC MACRO    | Selects the application macro.  | <i>ABB STANDAR D</i>   |
| 9905                                   | MOTOR NOM VOLT  | Defines the nominal motor voltage.  | 200 V<br>units:<br>230 V<br>400 V<br>E units:<br>400 V<br>400 V<br>U units:<br>460 V |
| 9906                                   | MOTOR NOM CURR  | Defines the nominal motor current.  | $I_{2N}$   |
| 9907                                   | MOTOR NOM FREQ  | Defines the nominal motor frequency.  | E: 50.0 Hz<br>U: 60.0 Hz   |
| 9908                                   | MOTOR NOM SPEED | Defines the nominal motor speed.  | Type dependent   |
| 9909                                   | MOTOR NOM POWER | Defines the nominal motor power.  | $P_N$  |



## All actual signals

| All actual signals       |                 |  |            |
|--------------------------|-----------------|--|------------|
| No.                      | Name/Value      | Description  | FbEq       |
| <b>01 OPERATING DATA</b> |                 | Basic signals for monitoring the drive (read-only)   |            |
| 0101                     | SPEED & DIR     | Calculated motor speed in rpm. A negative value indicates reverse direction.   | 1 = 1 rpm  |
| 0102                     | SPEED           | Calculated motor speed in rpm  | 1 = 1 rpm  |
| 0103                     | OUTPUT FREQ     | Calculated drive output frequency in Hz. (Shown by default on the panel Output mode display.)  | 1 = 0.1 Hz |
| 0104                     | CURRENT         | Measured motor current in A. (Shown by default on the panel Output mode display.)  | 1 = 0.1 A  |
| 0105                     | TORQUE          | Calculated motor torque in percent of the nominal motor torque   | 1 = 0.1%   |
| 0106                     | POWER           | Measured motor power in kW   | 1 = 0.1 kW |
| 0107                     | DC BUS VOLTAGE  | Measured intermediate circuit voltage in V DC  | 1 = 1 V    |
| 0109                     | OUTPUT VOLTAGE  | Calculated motor voltage in V AC   | 1 = 1 V    |
| 0110                     | DRIVE TEMP      | Measured IGBT temperature in °C  | 1 = 0.1 °C |
| 0111                     | EXTERNAL REF 1  | External reference REF1 in Hz  | 1 = 0.1 Hz |
| 0112                     | EXTERNAL REF 2  | External reference REF2 in percent. Depending on the use, 100% equals the maximum motor speed, nominal motor torque, or maximum process reference.   | 1 = 0.1%   |
| 0113                     | CTRL LOCATION   | Active control location. (0) LOCAL; (1) EXT1; (2) EXT2. See section <i>Local control vs. external control</i> on page 119.   | 1 = 1      |
| 0114                     | RUN TIME (R)    | Elapsed drive running time counter (hours). Runs when the drive is modulating. The counter can be reset by pressing the UP and DOWN keys simultaneously when the control panel is in the Parameter mode.   | 1 = 1 h    |
| 0115                     | KWH COUNTER (R) | kWh counter. The counter value is accumulated until it reaches 65535 after which the counter rolls over and starts again from 0. The counter can be reset by pressing UP and DOWN keys simultaneously when the control panel is in the Parameter mode. | 1 = 1 kWh  |
| 0116                     | APPL BLK OUTPUT | Application block output signal. Value is either from PFC control, if PFC control is active, or from signal <a href="#">0112 EXTERNAL REF 2</a> .  | 1 = 0.1%   |
| 0120                     | AI 1            | Relative value of analog input AI1 in percent  | 1 = 0.1%   |
| 0121                     | AI 2            | Relative value of analog input AI2 in percent  | 1 = 0.1%   |
| 0124                     | AO 1            | Value of analog output AO in mA  | 1 = 0.1 mA |
| 0126                     | PID 1 OUTPUT    | Output value of the process PID1 controller in percent   | 1 = 0.1%   |
| 0127                     | PID 2 OUTPUT    | Output value of the PID2 controller in percent   | 1 = 0.1%   |
| 0128                     | PID 1 SETPNT    | Setpoint signal (reference) for the process PID1 controller. Unit depends on parameter <a href="#">4006 UNITS</a> , <a href="#">4007 UNIT SCALE</a> and <a href="#">4027 PID 1 PARAM SET</a> settings.   | -          |

| All actual signals |                  |  |             |
|--------------------|------------------|--|-------------|
| No.                | Name/Value       | Description  | FbEq        |
| 0129               | PID 2 SETPNT     | Setpoint signal (reference) for the PID2 controller. Unit depends on parameter <i>4106 UNITS</i> and <i>4107 UNIT SCALE</i> settings.  | -           |
| 0130               | PID 1 FBK        | Feedback signal for the process PID1 controller. Unit depends on parameter <i>4006 UNITS</i> , <i>4007 UNIT SCALE</i> and <i>4027 PID 1 PARAM SET</i> settings.  | -           |
| 0131               | PID 2 FBK        | Feedback signal for the PID2 controller. Unit depends on parameter <i>4106 UNITS</i> and <i>4107 UNIT SCALE</i> settings.  | -           |
| 0132               | PID 1 DEVIATION  | Deviation of the process PID1 controller, ie the difference between the reference value and the actual value. Unit depends on parameter <i>4006 UNITS</i> , <i>4007 UNIT SCALE</i> and <i>4027 PID 1 PARAM SET</i> settings. | -           |
| 0133               | PID 2 DEVIATION  | Deviation of the PID2 controller, ie the difference between the reference value and the actual value. Unit depends on parameter <i>4106 UNITS</i> and <i>4107 UNIT SCALE</i> settings.                                       | -           |
| 0134               | COMM RO WORD     | Relay output Control word through fieldbus (decimal). See parameter <i>1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1</i> .   | 1 = 1       |
| 0135               | COMM VALUE 1     | Data received from fieldbus  | 1 = 1       |
| 0136               | COMM VALUE 2     | Data received from fieldbus  | 1 = 1       |
| 0137               | PROCESS VAR 1    | Process variable 1 defined by parameter group <i>34 PANEL DISPLAY</i>  | -           |
| 0138               | PROCESS VAR 2    | Process variable 2 defined by parameter group <i>34 PANEL DISPLAY</i>  | -           |
| 0139               | PROCESS VAR 3    | Process variable 3 defined by parameter group <i>34 PANEL DISPLAY</i>  | -           |
| 0140               | RUN TIME         | Elapsed drive running time counter (thousands of hours). Runs when the drive is modulating. Counter cannot be reset.   | 1 = 0.01 kh |
| 0141               | MWH COUNTER      | MWH counter. The counter value is accumulated till it reaches 65535 after which the counter rolls over and starts again from 0. Cannot be reset.   | 1 = 1 MWh   |
| 0142               | REVOLUTION CNTR  | Motor revolution counter (millions of revolutions). The counter can be reset by pressing UP and DOWN keys simultaneously when the control panel is in the Parameter mode.  | 1 = 1 Mrev  |
| 0143               | DRIVE ON TIME HI | Drive control board power-on time in days. Counter cannot be reset.  | 1 = 1 days  |
| 0144               | DRIVE ON TIME LO | Drive control board power-on time in 2 second ticks (30 ticks = 60 seconds). Counter cannot be reset.  | 1 = 2 s     |
| 0145               | MOTOR TEMP       | Measured motor temperature. Unit depends on the sensor type selected by group <i>35 MOTOR TEMP MEAS</i> parameters.  | 1 = 1       |
| 0158               | PID COMM VALUE 1 | Data received from fieldbus for PID control (PID1 and PID2)  | 1 = 1       |
| 0159               | PID COMM VALUE 2 | Data received from fieldbus for PID control (PID1 and PID2)  | 1 = 1       |
| 0160               | DI 1-5 STATUS    | Status of digital inputs.<br><b>Example:</b> 10000 = DI1 is on, DI2...DI5 are off.   |             |

| All actual signals |                  |  |                     |
|--------------------|------------------|--|---------------------|
| No.                | Name/Value       | Description  | FbEq                |
| 0161               | PULSE INPUT FREQ | Value of frequency input in Hz   | 1 = 1 Hz            |
| 0162               | RO STATUS        | Status of relay output 1. 1 = RO is energized, 0 = RO is de-energized.   | 1 = 1               |
| 0163               | TO STATUS        | Status of transistor output, when transistor output is used as a digital output.   | 1 = 1               |
| 0164               | TO FREQUENCY     | Transistor output frequency, when transistor output is used as a frequency output.   | 1 = 1 Hz            |
| 0173               | RO 2-4 STATUS    | Status of the relays in the MREL relay output extension module. See <i>MREL-01 relay output extension module user's manual</i> (3AUA0000035974 [English]).<br><b>Example:</b> 100 = RO 2 is on, RO 3 and RO 4 are off.   |                     |
| 0174               | SAVED KWH        | Energy saved in kWh compared to the energy used when the pump is connected directly to the supply. See the note on page 256.<br>The counter value is accumulated till it reaches 999.9, after which the counter rolls over and starts again from 0.0, and the counter value of signal 0175 is incremented by one. Can be reset with parameter 4509 ENERGY RESET (resets all energy calculators at the same time). See group 45 ENERGY SAVING.  | 1 = 0.1 kWh         |
| 0175               | SAVED MWH        | Energy saved in MWh compared to the energy used when the pump is connected directly to the supply. See the note on page 256.<br>The counter value is accumulated till it reaches 65535, after which the counter rolls over and starts again from 0. Can be reset with parameter 4509 ENERGY RESET (resets all energy calculators at the same time). See group 45 ENERGY SAVING.  | 1 = 1 MWh           |
| 0176               | SAVED AMOUNT 1   | Energy saved in local currency (remainder when the total saved energy is divided by 1000). See the note on page 256.<br>To find out the total saved energy in currency units, add the value of signal 0177 multiplied by 1000 to the value of signal 0176.<br><b>Example:</b><br>0176 SAVED AMOUNT 1 = 123.4<br>0177 SAVED AMOUNT 2 = 5<br>Total saved energy = 5 · 1000 + 123.4 = 5123.4 currency units.<br>The counter value is accumulated till it reaches 999.9, after which the counter rolls over and starts again from 0.0, and the counter value of signal 0177 is incremented by one. Can be reset with parameter 4509 ENERGY RESET (resets all energy calculators at the same time). Local energy price is set with parameter 4502 ENERGY PRICE. See group 45 ENERGY SAVING. | 1 = 0.1 (Currency)  |
| 0177               | SAVED AMOUNT 2   | Energy saved in local currency in thousand currency units. Eg value 5 means 5000 currency units. See the note on page 256.<br>The counter value is accumulated till it reaches 65535 (the counter does not roll over). See signal 0176 SAVED AMOUNT 1.   | 1 = 1000 (Currency) |

| All actual signals          |               |  |            |
|-----------------------------|---------------|--|------------|
| No.                         | Name/Value    | Description  | FbEq       |
| 0178                        | SAVED CO2     | Reduction in carbon dioxide emissions in tn. See the note on page 256.<br>The counter value is accumulated till it reaches 6553.5 (the counter does not roll over). Can be reset with parameter <b>4509 ENERGY RESET</b> (resets all energy calculators at the same time). CO <sub>2</sub> conversion factor is set with parameter <b>4507 CO2 CONV FACTOR</b> . See group <b>45 ENERGY SAVING</b> . | 1 = 0.1 tn |
| <b>03 FB ACTUAL SIGNALS</b> |               | Data words for monitoring the fieldbus communication (read-only). Each signal is a 16-bit data word.<br>Data words are displayed on the panel in hexadecimal format.   |            |
| 0301                        | FB CMD WORD 1 | A 16-bit data word. See section <i>DCU communication profile</i> on page 307.  |            |
| 0302                        | FB CMD WORD 2 | A 16-bit data word. See section <i>DCU communication profile</i> on page 307   |            |
| 0303                        | FB STS WORD 1 | A 16-bit data word. See section <i>DCU communication profile</i> on page 307.  |            |
| 0304                        | FB STS WORD 2 | A 16-bit data word. See section <i>DCU communication profile</i> on page 307   |            |
| 0305                        | FAULT WORD 1  | A 16-bit data word. For the possible causes and remedies and fieldbus equivalents, see chapter <i>Fault tracing</i> on page 311.   |            |
|                             |               | Bit 0 = <b>OVERCURRENT</b>   |            |
|                             |               | Bit 1 = <b>DC OVERVOLT</b>   |            |
|                             |               | Bit 2 = <b>DEV OVERTEMP</b>  |            |
|                             |               | Bit 3 = <b>SHORT CIRC</b>  |            |
|                             |               | Bit 4 = Reserved   |            |
|                             |               | Bit 5 = <b>DC UNDERVOLT</b>  |            |
|                             |               | Bit 6 = <b>AI1 LOSS</b>  |            |
|                             |               | Bit 7 = <b>AI2 LOSS</b>  |            |
|                             |               | Bit 8 = <b>MOT OVERTEMP</b>  |            |
|                             |               | Bit 9 = <b>PANEL LOSS</b>  |            |
|                             |               | Bit 10 = Reserved  |            |
|                             |               | Bit 11 = <b>MOTOR STALL</b>  |            |
|                             |               | Bit 12 = Reserved  |            |
|                             |               | Bit 13 = <b>EXT FAULT 1</b>  |            |
|                             |               | Bit 14 = <b>EXT FAULT 2</b>  |            |
|                             |               | Bit 15 = <b>EARTH FAULT</b>  |            |
| 0306                        | FAULT WORD 2  | A 16-bit data word. For the possible causes and remedies and fieldbus equivalents, see chapter <i>Fault tracing</i> on page 311.   |            |
|                             |               | Bit 0 = Reserved   |            |
|                             |               | Bit 1 = <b>THERM FAIL</b>  |            |
|                             |               | Bit 2...3 = Reserved   |            |
|                             |               | Bit 4 = <b>CURR MEAS</b>   |            |

| All actual signals |                 |  |      |
|--------------------|-----------------|--|------|
| No.                | Name/Value      | Description  | FbEq |
|                    |                 | Bit 5 = <i>SUPPLY PHASE</i><br>Bit 6 = Reserved<br>Bit 7 = <i>OVERSPEED</i><br>Bit 8 = Reserved<br>Bit 9 = <i>DRIVE ID</i><br>Bit 10 = <i>CONFIG FILE</i><br>Bit 11 = <i>SERIAL 1 ERR</i><br>Bit 12 = <i>EFB CON FILE</i><br>Bit 13 = <i>FORCE TRIP</i><br>Bit 14 = <i>MOTOR PHASE</i><br>Bit 15 = <i>OUTP WIRING</i>  |      |
| 0307               | FAULT WORD<br>3 | A 16-bit data word. For the possible causes and remedies and fieldbus equivalents, see chapter <i>Fault tracing</i> on page 311.   |      |
|                    |                 | Bit 0 = <i>EFB 1</i><br>Bit 1 = <i>EFB 2</i><br>Bit 2 = <i>EFB 3</i><br>Bit 3 = <i>INCOMPATIBLE SW</i><br>Bit 4 = <i>USER LOAD CURVE</i><br>Bit 5 = <i>UNKNOWN EXTENSION</i><br>Bit 6 = <i>INLET VERY LOW</i><br>Bit 7 = <i>OUTLET VERY HIGH</i><br>Bit 8 = <i>INLET LOW</i><br>Bit 9 = <i>OUTLET HIGH</i><br>Bit 10...14 = System error<br>Bit 15 = Parameter setting fault |      |
| 0308               | ALARM WORD<br>1 | A 16-bit data word. For the possible causes and remedies and fieldbus equivalents, see chapter <i>Fault tracing</i> on page 311.<br>An alarm can be reset by resetting the whole alarm word: Write zero to the word.   |      |
|                    |                 | Bit 0 = <i>OVERCURRENT</i><br>Bit 1 = <i>OVERVOLTAGE</i><br>Bit 2 = <i>UNDERVOLTAGE</i><br>Bit 3 = <i>DIR LOCK</i><br>Bit 4 = <i>IO COMM</i><br>Bit 5 = <i>AI1 LOSS</i><br>Bit 6 = <i>AI2 LOSS</i><br>Bit 7 = <i>PANEL LOSS</i><br>Bit 8 = <i>DEVICE OVERTEMP</i><br>Bit 9 = <i>MOTOR TEMP</i><br>Bit 10 = Reserved  |      |

| All actual signals      |                 |  |            |
|-------------------------|-----------------|--|------------|
| No.                     | Name/Value      | Description  | FbEq       |
|                         |                 | Bit 11 = <i>MOTOR STALL</i>  |            |
|                         |                 | Bit 12 = <i>AUTORESET</i>  |            |
|                         |                 | Bit 13 = <i>AUTOCHANGE</i>   |            |
|                         |                 | Bit 14 = <i>PFC / LOCK</i>   |            |
|                         |                 | Bit 15 = Reserved  |            |
| 0309                    | ALARM WORD<br>2 | A 16-bit data word. For the possible causes and remedies and fieldbus equivalents, see chapter <i>Fault tracing</i> on page 311.<br>An alarm can be reset by resetting the whole alarm word: Write zero to the word. |            |
|                         |                 | Bit 0 = Reserved   |            |
|                         |                 | Bit 1 = <i>PID SLEEP</i>   |            |
|                         |                 | Bit 2 = Reserved   |            |
|                         |                 | Bit 3 = Reserved   |            |
|                         |                 | Bit 4 = <i>START ENABLE 1 MISSING</i>  |            |
|                         |                 | Bit 5 = <i>START ENABLE 2 MISSING</i>  |            |
|                         |                 | Bit 6 = <i>EMERGENCY STOP</i>  |            |
|                         |                 | Bit 7 = Reserved   |            |
|                         |                 | Bit 8 = <i>FIRST START</i>   |            |
|                         |                 | Bit 9 = Reserved   |            |
|                         |                 | Bit 10 = <i>USER LOAD CURVE</i>  |            |
|                         |                 | Bit 11 = <i>START DELAY</i>  |            |
|                         |                 | Bit 12 = Reserved  |            |
|                         |                 | Bit 13 = <i>INLET LOW</i>  |            |
|                         |                 | Bit 14 = <i>OUTLET HIGH</i>  |            |
|                         |                 | Bit 15 = <i>PIPE FILL</i>  |            |
| 0310                    | ALARM WORD<br>3 | A 16-bit data word. For the possible causes and remedies and fieldbus equivalents, see chapter <i>Fault tracing</i> on page 311.<br>An alarm can be reset by resetting the whole alarm word: Write zero to the word. |            |
|                         |                 | Bit 0 = <i>INLET VERY LOW</i>  |            |
|                         |                 | Bit 1 = <i>OUTLET VERY HIGH</i>  |            |
|                         |                 | Bit 2...15 = Reserved  |            |
| <b>04 FAULT HISTORY</b> |                 | Fault history (read-only)  |            |
| 0401                    | LAST FAULT      | Code of the latest fault. See chapter <i>Fault tracing</i> on page 311 for the codes. 0 = Fault history is clear (on panel display = NO RECORD).   | 1 = 1      |
| 0402                    | FAULT TIME 1    | Day on which the latest fault occurred.<br>Format: Date if the real time clock is operating. / The number of days elapsed after the power-on if the real time clock is not used, or was not set.                     | 1 = 1 days |

| All actual signals |                  |  |            |
|--------------------|------------------|--|------------|
| No.                | Name/Value       | Description  | FbEq       |
| 0403               | FAULT TIME 2     | Time at which the latest fault occurred.<br>Format on the assistant control panel: Real time (hh:mm:ss) if the real time clock is operating. / Time elapsed after the power-on (hh:mm:ss minus the whole days stated by signal <a href="#">0402 FAULT TIME 1</a> ) if real time clock is not used, or was not set.<br>Format on the basic control panel: Time elapsed after power-on in 2-second ticks (minus the whole days stated by signal <a href="#">0402 FAULT TIME 1</a> ). 30 ticks = 60 seconds. Eg value 514 equals 17 minutes and 8 seconds (= 514/30). |            |
| 0404               | SPEED AT FLT     | Motor speed in rpm at the time the latest fault occurred   | 1 = 1 rpm  |
| 0405               | FREQ AT FLT      | Frequency in Hz at the time the latest fault occurred  | 1 = 0.1 Hz |
| 0406               | VOLTAGE AT FLT   | Intermediate circuit voltage in V DC at the time the latest fault occurred   | 1 = 0.1 V  |
| 0407               | CURRENT AT FLT   | Motor current in A at the time the latest fault occurred   | 1 = 0.1 A  |
| 0408               | TORQUE AT FLT    | Motor torque in percent of the nominal motor torque at the time the latest fault occurred  | 1 = 0.1%   |
| 0409               | STATUS AT FLT    | Drive status in hexadecimal format at the time the latest fault occurred   |            |
| 0412               | PREVIOUS FAULT 1 | Fault code of the 2nd latest fault. See chapter <a href="#">Fault tracing</a> on page <a href="#">311</a> for the codes.   | 1 = 1      |
| 0413               | PREVIOUS FAULT 2 | Fault code of the 3rd latest fault. See chapter <a href="#">Fault tracing</a> on page <a href="#">311</a> for the codes.   | 1 = 1      |
| 0414               | DI 1-5 AT FLT    | Status of digital inputs DI1...5 at the time the latest fault occurred (binary).<br><b>Example:</b> 10000 = DI1 is on, DI2...DI5 are off.  |            |

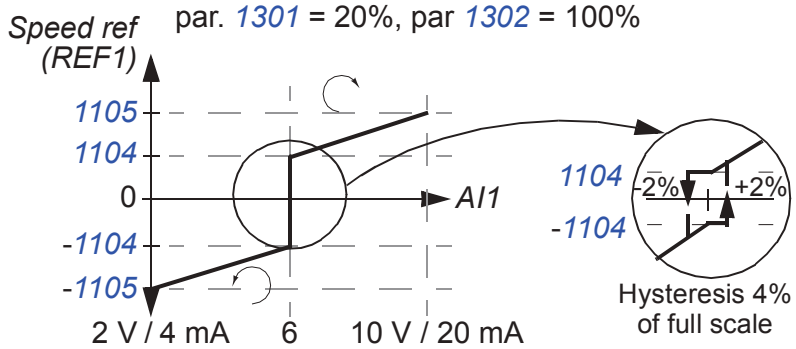
## All parameters

| All parameters           |                  |   |          |     |           |   |   |      |   |   |               |   |   |               |   |   |      |   |
|--------------------------|------------------|---|----------|-----|-----------|---|---|------|---|---|---------------|---|---|---------------|---|---|------|---|
| No.                      | Name/Value       | Description   | Def/FbEq |     |           |   |   |      |   |   |               |   |   |               |   |   |      |   |
| <b>10 START/STOP/DIR</b> |                  |   |          |     |           |   |   |      |   |   |               |   |   |               |   |   |      |   |
| 1001                     | EXT1<br>COMMANDS | Defines the connections and the source for the start, stop and direction commands for external control location 1 (EXT1).   | DI1,2    |     |           |   |   |      |   |   |               |   |   |               |   |   |      |   |
|                          | NOT SEL          | No start, stop and direction command source   | 0        |     |           |   |   |      |   |   |               |   |   |               |   |   |      |   |
|                          | DI1              | Start and stop through digital input DI1. 0 = stop, 1 = start. Direction is fixed according to parameter <b>1003 DIRECTION</b> (setting <b>REQUEST = FORWARD</b> ).   | 1        |     |           |   |   |      |   |   |               |   |   |               |   |   |      |   |
|                          | DI1,2            | Start and stop through digital input DI1. 0 = stop, 1 = start. Direction through digital input DI2. 0 = forward, 1 = reverse. To control direction, parameter <b>1003 DIRECTION</b> setting must be <b>REQUEST</b> .  | 2        |     |           |   |   |      |   |   |               |   |   |               |   |   |      |   |
|                          | DI1P,2P          | Pulse start through digital input DI1. 0 -> 1: Start. (In order to start the drive, digital input DI2 must be activated prior to the pulse fed to DI1.)<br>Pulse stop through digital input DI2. 1 -> 0: Stop. Direction of rotation is fixed according to parameter <b>1003 DIRECTION</b> (setting <b>REQUEST = FORWARD</b> ).<br><b>Note:</b> When the stop input (DI2) is deactivated (no input), the control panel start and stop keys are disabled.  | 3        |     |           |   |   |      |   |   |               |   |   |               |   |   |      |   |
|                          | DI1P,2P,3        | Pulse start through digital input DI1. 0 -> 1: Start. (In order to start the drive, digital input DI2 must be activated prior to the pulse fed to DI1.)<br>Pulse stop through digital input DI2. 1 -> 0: Stop. Direction through digital input DI3. 0 = forward, 1 = reverse. To control direction, parameter <b>1003 DIRECTION</b> setting must be <b>REQUEST</b> .<br><b>Note:</b> When the stop input (DI2) is deactivated (no input), the control panel start and stop keys are disabled.                             | 4        |     |           |   |   |      |   |   |               |   |   |               |   |   |      |   |
|                          | DI1P,2P,3P       | Pulse start forward through digital input DI1. 0 -> 1: Start forward. Pulse start reverse through digital input DI2. 0 -> 1: Start reverse. (In order to start the drive, digital input DI3 must be activated prior to the pulse fed to DI1/DI2). Pulse stop through digital input DI3. 1 -> 0: Stop. To control the direction, parameter <b>1003 DIRECTION</b> setting must be <b>REQUEST</b> .<br><b>Note:</b> When the stop input (DI3) is deactivated (no input), the control panel start and stop keys are disabled. | 5        |     |           |   |   |      |   |   |               |   |   |               |   |   |      |   |
|                          | KEYPAD           | Start, stop and direction commands through control panel when EXT1 is active. To control the direction, parameter <b>1003 DIRECTION</b> setting must be <b>REQUEST</b> .  | 8        |     |           |   |   |      |   |   |               |   |   |               |   |   |      |   |
|                          | DI1F,2R          | Start, stop and direction commands through digital inputs DI1 and DI2.<br><table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>DI1</th> <th>DI2</th> <th>Operation</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>Stop</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>Start forward</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>Start reverse</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>Stop</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Parameter <b>1003 DIRECTION</b> setting must be 3 (<b>REQUEST</b>).</p>   | DI1      | DI2 | Operation | 0 | 0 | Stop | 1 | 0 | Start forward | 0 | 1 | Start reverse | 1 | 1 | Stop | 9 |
| DI1                      | DI2              | Operation   |          |     |           |   |   |      |   |   |               |   |   |               |   |   |      |   |
| 0                        | 0                | Stop  |          |     |           |   |   |      |   |   |               |   |   |               |   |   |      |   |
| 1                        | 0                | Start forward   |          |     |           |   |   |      |   |   |               |   |   |               |   |   |      |   |
| 0                        | 1                | Start reverse   |          |     |           |   |   |      |   |   |               |   |   |               |   |   |      |   |
| 1                        | 1                | Stop  |          |     |           |   |   |      |   |   |               |   |   |               |   |   |      |   |

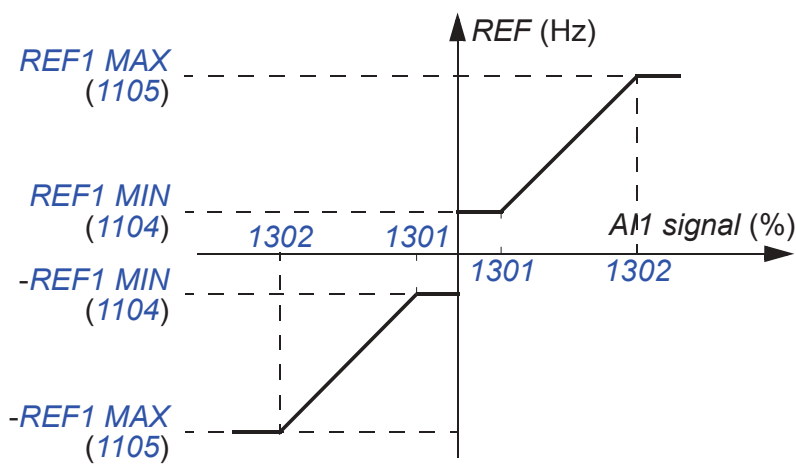


| All parameters |               |   |                 |
|----------------|---------------|---|-----------------|
| No.            | Name/Value    | Description   | Def/FbEq        |
|                | COMM          | Fieldbus interface as the source for the start and stop commands, ie Control word <i>0301 FB CMD WORD 1</i> bits 0...1. The Control word is sent by the fieldbus controller through the embedded fieldbus (Modbus) to the drive. For the Control word bits, see section <i>DCU communication profile</i> on page 307. | 10              |
|                | TIMED FUNC 1  | Timed start/stop control. Timed function 1 active = start, timed function 1 inactive = stop. See parameter group 36 <i>TIMED FUNCTIONS</i> .  | 11              |
|                | TIMED FUNC 2  | See selection <i>TIMED FUNC 1</i> .   | 12              |
|                | TIMED FUNC 3  | See selection <i>TIMED FUNC 1</i> .   | 13              |
|                | TIMED FUNC 4  | See selection <i>TIMED FUNC 1</i> .   | 14              |
|                | DI5           | Start and stop through digital input DI5. 0 = stop, 1 = start. Direction is fixed according to parameter <i>1003 DIRECTION</i> (setting <i>REQUEST = FORWARD</i> ).   | 20              |
|                | DI5,4         | Start and stop through digital input DI5. 0 = stop, 1 = start. Direction through digital input DI4. 0 = forward, 1 = reverse. To control direction, parameter <i>1003 DIRECTION</i> must be <i>REQUEST</i> .  | 21              |
|                | SUPRV1 OVER   | Start when the value of supervision parameter 1 goes over the supervision high limit. Stop when the value goes below the low limit. See parameter group 32 <i>SUPERVISION</i> .   | 27              |
|                | SUPRV1 UNDER  | Start when the value of the supervision parameter 1 goes below the supervision low limit. Stop when the value goes over the high limit. See parameter group 32 <i>SUPERVISION</i> .   | 28              |
|                | SUPRV2 OVER   | See selection <i>SUPRV1 OVER</i> .  | 29              |
|                | SUPRV2 UNDER  | See selection <i>SUPRV1 UNDER</i> .   | 30              |
|                | SUPRV3 OVER   | See selection <i>SUPRV1 OVER</i> .  | 31              |
|                | SUPRV3 UNDER  | See selection <i>SUPRV1 UNDER</i> .   | 32              |
|                | SUP1OVER+ DI2 | Start and stop as for <i>SUPRV1 OVER</i> . Direction through digital input DI2. 0 = forward, 1 = reverse. To control direction, parameter <i>1003 DIRECTION</i> setting must be <i>REQUEST</i> .  | 33              |
|                | SUP1 UDR+DI2  | Start and stop as for <i>SUPRV1 UNDER</i> . Direction through digital input DI2. 0 = forward, 1 = reverse. To control direction, parameter <i>1003 DIRECTION</i> setting must be <i>REQUEST</i> .   | 34              |
| 1002           | EXT2 COMMANDS | Defines the connections and the source for the start, stop and direction commands for external control location 2 (EXT2).<br>See parameter <i>1001 EXT1 COMMANDS</i> .  | <i>NOT SEL</i>  |
| 1003           | DIRECTION     | Enables the control of rotation direction of the motor, or fixes the direction.<br><b>Note:</b> The Pump cleaning function can override this parameter. See parameter <i>4601 PUMP CLEAN TRIG</i> .   | <i>REQUES T</i> |
|                | FORWARD       | Fixed to forward  | 1               |

| All parameters             |                  |   |                     |
|----------------------------|------------------|---|---------------------|
| No.                        | Name/Value       | Description   | Def/FbEq            |
|                            | REVERSE          | Fixed to reverse  | 2                   |
|                            | REQUEST          | Control of rotation direction allowed   | 3                   |
| 1011                       | PANEL FORCE STOP | Enables stopping the drive from the control panel even when not in local control.   | <i>DISABLE</i>      |
|                            | DISABLE          | Control panel stop button is active only in local control   | 0                   |
|                            | ENABLE           | Drive can be stopped from the control panel in remote control   | 1                   |
| <b>11 REFERENCE SELECT</b> |                  | Panel reference type, external control location selection and external reference sources and limits   |                     |
| 1101                       | KEYPAD REF SEL   | Selects the type of the reference in the local control mode.  | <i>REF1(Hz/rpm)</i> |
|                            | REF1(Hz/rpm)     | Frequency reference in Hz   | 1                   |
|                            | REF2(%)          | %-reference   | 2                   |
| 1102                       | EXT1/EXT2 SEL    | Defines the source from which the drive reads the signal that selects between the two external control locations, EXT1 or EXT2.   | <i>EXT1</i>         |
|                            | EXT1             | EXT1 active. The control signal sources are defined by parameters <i>1001 EXT1 COMMANDS</i> and <i>1103 REF1 SELECT</i> .   | 0                   |
|                            | DI1              | Digital input DI1. 0 = EXT1, 1 = EXT2.  | 1                   |
|                            | DI2              | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 2                   |
|                            | DI3              | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 3                   |
|                            | DI4              | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 4                   |
|                            | DI5              | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 5                   |
|                            | EXT2             | EXT2 active. The control signal sources are defined by parameters <i>1002 EXT2 COMMANDS</i> and <i>1106 REF2 SELECT</i> .   | 7                   |
|                            | COMM             | Fieldbus interface as the source for EXT1/EXT2 selection, ie Control word <i>0301 FB CMD WORD 1</i> bit 5 (with ABB drives profile <i>5319 EFB PAR 19</i> bit 11). The Control word is sent by the fieldbus controller through the embedded fieldbus (Modbus) to the drive. For the Control word bits, see sections <i>DCU communication profile</i> on page 307 and <i>ABB drives communication profile</i> on page 302. | 8                   |
|                            | TIMED FUNC 1     | Timed EXT1/EXT2 control selection. Timed function 1 active = EXT2, timed function 1 inactive = EXT1. See parameter group <i>36 TIMED FUNCTIONS</i> .  | 9                   |
|                            | TIMED FUNC 2     | See selection <i>TIMED FUNC 1</i> .   | 10                  |
|                            | TIMED FUNC 3     | See selection <i>TIMED FUNC 1</i> .   | 11                  |
|                            | TIMED FUNC 4     | See selection <i>TIMED FUNC 1</i> .   | 12                  |
|                            | DI1(INV)         | Inverted digital input DI1. 1 = EXT1, 0 = EXT2.   | -1                  |
|                            | DI2(INV)         | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -2                  |
|                            | DI3(INV)         | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -3                  |
|                            | DI4(INV)         | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -4                  |
|                            | DI5(INV)         | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -5                  |

| All parameters |             |  |          |
|----------------|-------------|--|----------|
| No.            | Name/Value  | Description  | Def/FbEq |
| 1103           | REF1 SELECT | Selects the signal source for external reference REF1. See section <i>Block diagram: Reference source for EXT1</i> on page 121.  | A/1      |
|                | KEYPAD      | Control panel  | 0        |
|                | AI1         | Analog input AI1   | 1        |
|                | AI2         | Analog input AI2   | 2        |
|                | AI1/JOYST   | <p>Analog input AI1 as joystick. The minimum input signal runs the motor at the maximum reference in the reverse direction, the maximum input at the maximum reference in the forward direction. Minimum and maximum references are defined by parameters <i>1104 REF1 MIN</i> and <i>1105 REF1 MAX</i>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Parameter <i>1003 DIRECTION</i> must be set to <i>REQUEST</i>.</p> <p>Speed ref (REF1) par. <i>1301</i> = 20%, par <i>1302</i> = 100%</p>  <p><b>⚠ WARNING!</b> If parameter <i>1301 MINIMUM AI1</i> is set to 0 V and analog input signal is lost (ie 0 V), the rotation of the motor is reversed to the maximum reference. Set the following parameters to activate a fault when analog input signal is lost:<br/>Set parameter <i>1301 MINIMUM AI1</i> to 20% (2 V or 4 mA).<br/>Set parameter <i>3021 AI1 FAULT LIMIT</i> to 5% or higher.<br/>Set parameter <i>3001 AI&lt;MIN FUNCTION</i> to <i>FAULT</i>.</p> | 3        |
|                | AI2/JOYST   | See selection <i>AI1/JOYST</i> .   | 4        |
|                | DI3U,4D(R)  | Digital input DI3: Reference increase. Digital input DI4: Reference decrease. Stop command resets the reference to zero. Parameter <i>2205 ACCELER TIME 2</i> defines the rate of the reference change.  | 5        |
|                | DI3U,4D     | Digital input DI3: Reference increase. Digital input DI4: Reference decrease. The program stores the active speed reference (not reset by a stop command). When the drive is restarted, the motor ramps up at the selected acceleration rate to the stored reference. Parameter <i>2205 ACCELER TIME 2</i> defines the rate of the reference change.   | 6        |
|                | COMM        | Fieldbus reference REF1  | 8        |
|                | COMM+AI1    | Summation of fieldbus reference REF1 and analog input AI. See section <i>Reference selection and correction</i> on page 294.   | 9        |
|                | COMM*AI1    | Multiplication of fieldbus reference REF1 and analog input AI1. See section <i>Reference selection and correction</i> on page 294.   | 10       |

| All parameters |              |   |          |
|----------------|--------------|---|----------|
| No.            | Name/Value   | Description   | Def/FbEq |
|                | DI3U,4D(RNC) | Digital input DI3: Reference increase. Digital input DI4: Reference decrease. Stop command resets the reference to zero. The reference is not saved if the control source is changed (from EXT1 to EXT2, from EXT2 to EXT1 or from LOC to REM). Parameter <b>2205 ACCELER TIME 2</b> defines the rate of the reference change.  | 11       |
|                | DI3U,4D(NC)  | Digital input DI3: Reference increase. Digital input DI4: Reference decrease. The program stores the active speed reference (not reset by a stop command). The reference is not saved if the control source is changed (from EXT1 to EXT2, from EXT2 to EXT1 or from LOC to REM). When the drive is restarted, the motor ramps up at the selected acceleration rate to the stored reference. Parameter <b>2205 ACCELER TIME 2</b> defines the rate of the reference change. | 12       |
|                | AI1+AI2      | Reference is calculated with the following equation:<br>$REF = AI1(\%) + AI2(\%) - 50\%$  | 14       |
|                | AI1*AI2      | Reference is calculated with the following equation:<br>$REF = AI1(\%) \cdot (AI2(\%) / 50\%)$  | 15       |
|                | AI1-AI2      | Reference is calculated with the following equation:<br>$REF = AI1(\%) + 50\% - AI2(\%)$  | 16       |
|                | AI1/AI2      | Reference is calculated with the following equation:<br>$REF = AI1(\%) \cdot (50\% / AI2(\%))$  | 17       |
|                | KEYPAD(RNC)  | Defines the control panel as the reference source. Stop command resets the reference to zero (the R stands for reset.). The reference is not saved if the control source is changed (from EXT1 to EXT2, from EXT2 to EXT1).   | 20       |
|                | KEYPAD(NC)   | Defines the control panel as the reference source. Stop command does not reset the reference to zero. The reference is stored. The reference is not saved if the control source is changed (from EXT1 to EXT2, from EXT2 to EXT1).  | 21       |
|                | DI4U,5D      | See selection <b>DI3U,4D</b> .  | 30       |
|                | DI4U,5D(NC)  | See selection <b>DI3U,4D(NC)</b> .  | 31       |
|                | FREQ INPUT   | Frequency input   | 32       |
| 1104           | REF1 MIN     | Defines the minimum value for external reference REF1. Corresponds to the minimum setting of the used source signal.  | 0.0 Hz   |

| All parameters |                |   |                          |
|----------------|----------------|---|--------------------------|
| No.            | Name/Value     | Description   | Def/FbEq                 |
|                | 0.0...500.0 Hz | <p>Minimum value in Hz.</p> <p><b>Example:</b> Analog input AI1 is selected as the reference source (value of parameter <i>1103</i> is <i>AI1</i>). The reference minimum and maximum correspond to the <i>1301 MINIMUM AI1</i> and <i>1302 MAXIMUM AI1</i> settings as follows:</p>  | 1 = 0.1 Hz               |
| 1105           | REF1 MAX       | Defines the maximum value for external reference REF1. Corresponds to the maximum setting of the used source signal.  | E: 50.0 Hz<br>U: 60.0 Hz |
|                | 0.0...500.0 Hz | Maximum value in Hz. See the example for parameter <i>1104 REF1 MIN</i> .   | 1 = 0.1 Hz               |
| 1106           | REF2 SELECT    | Selects the signal source for external reference REF2.  | <i>AI2</i>               |
|                | KEYPAD         | See parameter <i>1103 REF1 SELECT</i> .   | 0                        |
|                | AI1            | See parameter <i>1103 REF1 SELECT</i> .   | 1                        |
|                | AI2            | See parameter <i>1103 REF1 SELECT</i> .   | 2                        |
|                | AI1/JOYST      | See parameter <i>1103 REF1 SELECT</i> .   | 3                        |
|                | AI2/JOYST      | See parameter <i>1103 REF1 SELECT</i> .   | 4                        |
|                | DI3U,4D(R)     | See parameter <i>1103 REF1 SELECT</i> .   | 5                        |
|                | DI3U,4D        | See parameter <i>1103 REF1 SELECT</i> .   | 6                        |
|                | COMM           | See parameter <i>1103 REF1 SELECT</i> .   | 8                        |
|                | COMM+AI1       | See parameter <i>1103 REF1 SELECT</i> .   | 9                        |
|                | COMM*AI1       | See parameter <i>1103 REF1 SELECT</i> .   | 10                       |
|                | DI3U,4D(RNC)   | See parameter <i>1103 REF1 SELECT</i> .   | 11                       |
|                | DI3U,4D(NC)    | See parameter <i>1103 REF1 SELECT</i> .   | 12                       |
|                | AI1+AI2        | See parameter <i>1103 REF1 SELECT</i> .   | 14                       |
|                | AI1*AI2        | See parameter <i>1103 REF1 SELECT</i> .   | 15                       |
|                | AI1-AI2        | See parameter <i>1103 REF1 SELECT</i> .   | 16                       |
|                | AI1/AI2        | See parameter <i>1103 REF1 SELECT</i> .   | 17                       |
|                | PID1OUT        | PID controller 1 output. See parameter groups <i>40 PROCESS PID SET 1</i> and <i>41 PROCESS PID SET 2</i> .   | 19                       |
|                | KEYPAD(RNC)    | See parameter <i>1103 REF1 SELECT</i> .   | 20                       |
|                | KEYPAD(NC)     | See parameter <i>1103 REF1 SELECT</i> .   | 21                       |
|                | DI4U,5D        | See parameter <i>1103 REF1 SELECT</i> .   | 30                       |

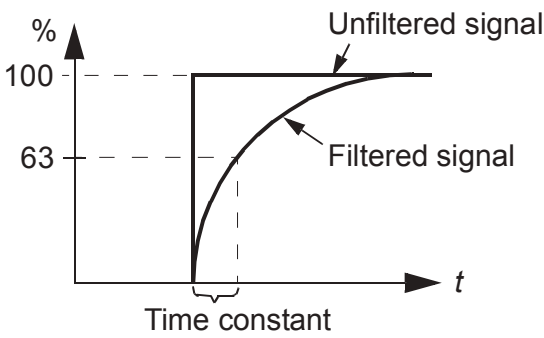
| All parameters            |                 |  |                       |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
|---------------------------|-----------------|--|-----------------------|-----|-----------|---|---|-------------------|---|---|--|---|---|--|---|---|--|--|
| No.                       | Name/Value      | Description  | Def/FbEq              |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
|                           | DI4U,5D(NC)     | See parameter <a href="#">1103 REF1 SELECT</a> .   | 31                    |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
|                           | FREQ INPUT      | See parameter <a href="#">1103 REF1 SELECT</a> .   | 32                    |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
| 1107                      | REF2 MIN        | Defines the minimum value for external reference REF2. Corresponds to the minimum setting of the used source signal.   | 0.0%                  |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
|                           | 0.0...100.0%    | Value in percent of the maximum frequency / maximum speed / nominal torque. See the example for parameter <a href="#">1104 REF1 MIN</a> for correspondence to the source signal limits.  | 1 = 0.1%              |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
| 1108                      | REF2 MAX        | Defines the maximum value for external reference REF2. Corresponds to the maximum setting of the used source signal.   | 100.0%                |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
|                           | 0.0...100.0%    | Value in percent of the maximum frequency / maximum speed / nominal torque. See the example for parameter <a href="#">1104 REF1 MIN</a> for correspondence to the source signal limits.  | 1 = 0.1%              |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
| <b>12 CONSTANT SPEEDS</b> |                 | Constant speed (drive output frequency) selection and values. See section <a href="#">Constant speeds</a> on page <a href="#">131</a> .  |                       |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
| 1201                      | CONST SPEED SEL | Activates the constant speeds (drive output frequencies) or selects the activation signal.   | <a href="#">DI3,4</a> |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
|                           | NOT SEL         | No constant speed in use   | 0                     |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
|                           | DI1             | Speed defined by parameter <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a> is activated through digital input DI1. 1 = active, 0 = inactive.  | 1                     |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
|                           | DI2             | Speed defined by parameter <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a> is activated through digital input DI2. 1 = active, 0 = inactive.  | 2                     |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
|                           | DI3             | Speed defined by parameter <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a> is activated through digital input DI3. 1 = active, 0 = inactive.  | 3                     |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
|                           | DI4             | Speed defined by parameter <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a> is activated through digital input DI4. 1 = active, 0 = inactive.  | 4                     |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
|                           | DI5             | Speed defined by parameter <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a> is activated through digital input DI5. 1 = active, 0 = inactive.  | 5                     |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
|                           | DI1,2           | Constant speed selection through digital inputs DI1 and DI2. 1 = DI active, 0 = DI inactive.   | 7                     |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
|                           |                 | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>DI1</th> <th>DI2</th> <th>Operation</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>No constant speed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a></td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1203 CONST SPEED 2</a></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1204 CONST SPEED 3</a></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | DI1                   | DI2 | Operation | 0 | 0 | No constant speed | 1 | 0 | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a> | 0 | 1 | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1203 CONST SPEED 2</a> | 1 | 1 | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1204 CONST SPEED 3</a> |  |
| DI1                       | DI2             | Operation  |                       |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
| 0                         | 0               | No constant speed  |                       |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
| 1                         | 0               | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a>   |                       |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
| 0                         | 1               | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1203 CONST SPEED 2</a>   |                       |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
| 1                         | 1               | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1204 CONST SPEED 3</a>   |                       |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
|                           | DI2,3           | See selection <a href="#">DI1,2</a> .  | 8                     |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
|                           | DI3,4           | See selection <a href="#">DI1,2</a> .  | 9                     |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |
|                           | DI4,5           | See selection <a href="#">DI1,2</a> .  | 10                    |     |           |   |   |                   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |

| All parameters |              |   |  |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
|----------------|--------------|---|--|-----|-----------|-----------|---|-------------------|---|-------------------|--|---|---|--|---|---|--|--|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|--|----|
| No.            | Name/Value   | Description   | Def/FbEq   |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
|                | DI1,2,3      | Constant speed selection through digital inputs DI1, DI2 and DI3. 1 = DI active, 0 = DI inactive.<br><table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>DI</th> <th>DI2</th> <th>DI3</th> <th>Operation</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>No constant speed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a></td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1203 CONST SPEED 2</a></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1204 CONST SPEED 3</a></td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1205 CONST SPEED 4</a></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1206 CONST SPEED 5</a></td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1207 CONST SPEED 6</a></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1208 CONST SPEED 7</a></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | DI   | DI2 | DI3       | Operation | 0 | 0                 | 0 | No constant speed | 1  | 0 | 0 | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a> | 0 | 1 | 0  | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1203 CONST SPEED 2</a> | 1 | 1 | 0 | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1204 CONST SPEED 3</a> | 0 | 0 | 1 | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1205 CONST SPEED 4</a> | 1 | 0 | 1 | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1206 CONST SPEED 5</a> | 0 | 1 | 1 | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1207 CONST SPEED 6</a> | 1 | 1 | 1 | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1208 CONST SPEED 7</a> | 12 |
| DI             | DI2          | DI3   | Operation  |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
| 0              | 0            | 0   | No constant speed  |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
| 1              | 0            | 0   | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a> |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
| 0              | 1            | 0   | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1203 CONST SPEED 2</a> |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
| 1              | 1            | 0   | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1204 CONST SPEED 3</a> |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
| 0              | 0            | 1   | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1205 CONST SPEED 4</a> |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
| 1              | 0            | 1   | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1206 CONST SPEED 5</a> |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
| 0              | 1            | 1   | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1207 CONST SPEED 6</a> |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
| 1              | 1            | 1   | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1208 CONST SPEED 7</a> |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
|                | DI3,4,5      | See selection <a href="#">DI1,2,3</a> .   | 13   |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
|                | TIMED FUNC 1 | External speed reference, speed defined by parameter <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a> or speed defined by parameter <a href="#">1203 CONST SPEED 2</a> is used, depending on the selection of parameter <a href="#">1209 TIMED MODE SEL</a> and the state of timed function 1. See parameter group <a href="#">36 TIMED FUNCTIONS</a> .   | 15   |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
|                | TIMED FUNC 2 | See selection <a href="#">TIMED FUNC 1</a> .  | 16   |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
|                | TIMED FUNC 3 | See selection <a href="#">TIMED FUNC 1</a> .  | 17   |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
|                | TIMED FUNC 4 | See selection <a href="#">TIMED FUNC 1</a> .  | 18   |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
|                | TIMED FUN1&2 | External speed reference or speed defined by parameter <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a> ... <a href="#">1205 CONST SPEED 4</a> is used, depending on the selection of parameter <a href="#">1209 TIMED MODE SEL</a> and the state of timed functions 1 and 2. See parameter group <a href="#">36 TIMED FUNCTIONS</a> .  | 19   |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
|                | DI1(INV)     | Speed defined by parameter <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a> is activated through inverted digital input DI1. 0 = active, 1 = inactive.  | -1   |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
|                | DI2(INV)     | Speed defined by parameter <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a> is activated through inverted digital input DI2. 0 = active, 1 = inactive.  | -2   |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
|                | DI3(INV)     | Speed defined by parameter <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a> is activated through inverted digital input DI3. 0 = active, 1 = inactive.  | -3   |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
|                | DI4(INV)     | Speed defined by parameter <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a> is activated through inverted digital input DI4. 0 = active, 1 = inactive.  | -4   |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
|                | DI5(INV)     | Speed defined by parameter <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a> is activated through inverted digital input DI5. 0 = active, 1 = inactive.  | -5   |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
|                | DI1,2(INV)   | Constant speed selection through inverted digital inputs DI1 and DI2. 1 = DI active, 0 = DI inactive.<br><table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>DI1</th> <th>DI2</th> <th>Operation</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>No constant speed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1203 CONST SPEED 2</a></td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1204 CONST SPEED 3</a></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>   | DI1  | DI2 | Operation | 1         | 1 | No constant speed | 0 | 1                 | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a> | 1 | 0 | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1203 CONST SPEED 2</a> | 0 | 0 | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1204 CONST SPEED 3</a> | -7   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
| DI1            | DI2          | Operation   |  |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
| 1              | 1            | No constant speed   |  |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
| 0              | 1            | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a>  |  |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
| 1              | 0            | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1203 CONST SPEED 2</a>  |  |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |
| 0              | 0            | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1204 CONST SPEED 3</a>  |  |     |           |           |   |                   |   |                   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |    |

| All parameters |                |   |  |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
|----------------|----------------|---|--|-----|-----|-----------|---|---|---|-------------------|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|--|---|---|---|--|-----|
| No.            | Name/Value     | Description   | Def/FbEq   |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
|                | DI2,3(INV)     | See selection <a href="#">DI1,2(INV)</a> .  | -8   |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
|                | DI3,4(INV)     | See selection <a href="#">DI1,2(INV)</a> .  | -9   |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
|                | DI4,5(INV)     | See selection <a href="#">DI1,2(INV)</a> .  | -10  |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
|                | DI1,2,3(INV)   | Constant speed selection through inverted digital inputs DI1, DI2 and DI3. 1 = DI active, 0 = DI inactive.<br><table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>DI</th> <th>DI2</th> <th>DI3</th> <th>Operation</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>No constant speed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1203 CONST SPEED 2</a></td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1204 CONST SPEED 3</a></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1205 CONST SPEED 4</a></td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1206 CONST SPEED 5</a></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1207 CONST SPEED 6</a></td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1208 CONST SPEED 7</a></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | DI   | DI2 | DI3 | Operation | 1 | 1 | 1 | No constant speed | 0 | 1 | 1 | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a> | 1 | 0 | 1 | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1203 CONST SPEED 2</a> | 0 | 0 | 1 | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1204 CONST SPEED 3</a> | 1 | 1 | 0 | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1205 CONST SPEED 4</a> | 0 | 1 | 0 | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1206 CONST SPEED 5</a> | 1 | 0 | 0 | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1207 CONST SPEED 6</a> | 0 | 0 | 0 | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1208 CONST SPEED 7</a> | -12 |
| DI             | DI2            | DI3   | Operation  |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
| 1              | 1              | 1   | No constant speed  |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
| 0              | 1              | 1   | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1202 CONST SPEED 1</a> |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
| 1              | 0              | 1   | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1203 CONST SPEED 2</a> |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
| 0              | 0              | 1   | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1204 CONST SPEED 3</a> |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
| 1              | 1              | 0   | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1205 CONST SPEED 4</a> |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
| 0              | 1              | 0   | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1206 CONST SPEED 5</a> |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
| 1              | 0              | 0   | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1207 CONST SPEED 6</a> |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
| 0              | 0              | 0   | Speed defined by par. <a href="#">1208 CONST SPEED 7</a> |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
|                | DI3,4,5(INV)   | See selection <a href="#">DI1,2,3(INV)</a> .  | -13  |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
| 1202           | CONST SPEED 1  | Defines constant speed (drive output frequency) 1.  | E: 5.0 Hz<br>U: 6.0 Hz                                   |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
|                | 0.0...500.0 Hz | Output frequency in Hz  | 1 = 0.1 Hz   |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
| 1203           | CONST SPEED 2  | Defines constant speed (drive output frequency) 2.  | E: 10.0 Hz<br>U: 12.0 Hz                                 |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
|                | 0.0...500.0 Hz | Output frequency in Hz  | 1 = 0.1 Hz   |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
| 1204           | CONST SPEED 3  | Defines constant speed (drive output frequency) 3.  | E: 15.0 Hz<br>U: 18.0 Hz                                 |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
|                | 0.0...500.0 Hz | Output frequency in Hz  | 1 = 0.1 Hz   |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
| 1205           | CONST SPEED 4  | Defines constant speed (drive output frequency) 4.  | E: 20.0 Hz<br>U: 24.0 Hz                                 |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
|                | 0.0...500.0 Hz | Output frequency in Hz  | 1 = 0.1 Hz   |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
| 1206           | CONST SPEED 5  | Defines constant speed (drive output frequency) 5.  | E: 25.0 Hz<br>U: 30.0 Hz                                 |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
|                | 0.0...500.0 Hz | Output frequency in Hz  | 1 = 0.1 Hz   |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
| 1207           | CONST SPEED 6  | Defines constant speed (drive output frequency) 6.  | E: 40.0 Hz<br>U: 48.0 Hz                                 |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
|                | 0.0...500.0 Hz | Output frequency in Hz  | 1 = 0.1 Hz   |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
| 1208           | CONST SPEED 7  | Defines constant speed (drive output frequency) 7. Constant speed 7 is also used with fault functions ( <a href="#">3001 AI&lt;MIN FUNCTION</a> , <a href="#">3002 PANEL COMM ERR</a> and <a href="#">3018 COMM FAULT FUNC</a> ).   | E: 50.0 Hz<br>U: 60.0 Hz                                 |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |
|                | 0.0...500.0 Hz | Output frequency in Hz  | 1 = 0.1 Hz   |     |     |           |   |   |   |                   |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |   |  |     |



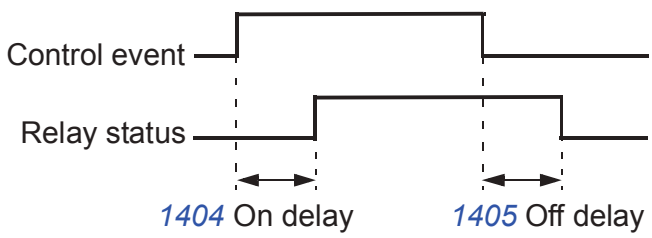
| All parameters       |  |   |                      |           |   |  |   |  |                  |                  |           |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |
|----------------------|--|---|----------------------|-----------|---|--|---|--|------------------|------------------|-----------|---|---|--|---|---|--|---|---|--|---|---|--|---|
| No.                  | Name/Value   | Description   | Def/FbEq             |           |   |  |   |  |                  |                  |           |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |
| 1209                 | TIMED MODE SEL                                       | Selects timed function activated speed. Timed function can be used to change between the external reference and constant speeds when parameter <i>1201 CONST SPEED SEL</i> selection is <i>TIMED FUNC 1 ... TIMED FUNC 4</i> or <i>TIMED FUN1&amp;2</i> .   | CS1/2/3/4            |           |   |  |   |  |                  |                  |           |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |
|                      | EXT/CS1/2/3  | <p>When parameter <i>1201 CONST SPEED SEL = TIMED FUNC 1 ... TIMED FUNC 4</i>, this timed function selects an external speed reference or constant speed. 1 = timed function active, 0 = timed function inactive.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Timed function 1...4</th> <th>Operation</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>External reference</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <i>1202 CONST SPEED 1</i></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>When parameter <i>1201 CONST SPEED SEL = TIMED FUN1&amp;2</i>, timed functions 1 and 2 select an external speed reference or constant speed. 1 = timed function active, 0 = timed function inactive.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Timed function 1</th> <th>Timed function 2</th> <th>Operation</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>External reference</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <i>1202 CONST SPEED 1</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <i>1203 CONST SPEED 2</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>Speed defined by par. <i>1204 CONST SPEED 3</i></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>                               | Timed function 1...4 | Operation | 0 | External reference                                   | 1 | Speed defined by par. <i>1202 CONST SPEED 1</i>      | Timed function 1 | Timed function 2 | Operation | 0 | 0 | External reference                                   | 1 | 0 | Speed defined by par. <i>1202 CONST SPEED 1</i>      | 0 | 1 | Speed defined by par. <i>1203 CONST SPEED 2</i>      | 1 | 1 | Speed defined by par. <i>1204 CONST SPEED 3</i>      | 1 |
| Timed function 1...4 | Operation  |   |                      |           |   |  |   |  |                  |                  |           |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |
| 0                    | External reference                                   |   |                      |           |   |  |   |  |                  |                  |           |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |
| 1                    | Speed defined by par. <i>1202 CONST SPEED 1</i>      |   |                      |           |   |  |   |  |                  |                  |           |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |
| Timed function 1     | Timed function 2                                     | Operation   |                      |           |   |  |   |  |                  |                  |           |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |
| 0                    | 0  | External reference  |                      |           |   |  |   |  |                  |                  |           |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |
| 1                    | 0  | Speed defined by par. <i>1202 CONST SPEED 1</i>   |                      |           |   |  |   |  |                  |                  |           |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |
| 0                    | 1  | Speed defined by par. <i>1203 CONST SPEED 2</i>   |                      |           |   |  |   |  |                  |                  |           |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |
| 1                    | 1  | Speed defined by par. <i>1204 CONST SPEED 3</i>   |                      |           |   |  |   |  |                  |                  |           |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |
|                      | CS1/2/3/4  | <p>When parameter <i>1201 CONST SPEED SEL = TIMED FUNC 1 ... TIMED FUNC 4</i>, this timed function selects a constant speed. 1 = timed function active, 0 = timed function inactive.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Timed function 1...4</th> <th>Operation</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Speed defined by parameter <i>1202 CONST SPEED 1</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Speed defined by parameter <i>1203 CONST SPEED 2</i></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>When parameter <i>1201 CONST SPEED SEL = TIMED FUN1&amp;2</i>, timed functions 1 and 2 select a constant speed. 1 = timed function active, 0 = timed function inactive.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Timed function 1</th> <th>Timed function 2</th> <th>Operation</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>Speed defined by parameter <i>1202 CONST SPEED 1</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>Speed defined by parameter <i>1203 CONST SPEED 2</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>Speed defined by parameter <i>1204 CONST SPEED 3</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>Speed defined by parameter <i>1205 CONST SPEED 4</i></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Timed function 1...4 | Operation | 0 | Speed defined by parameter <i>1202 CONST SPEED 1</i> | 1 | Speed defined by parameter <i>1203 CONST SPEED 2</i> | Timed function 1 | Timed function 2 | Operation | 0 | 0 | Speed defined by parameter <i>1202 CONST SPEED 1</i> | 1 | 0 | Speed defined by parameter <i>1203 CONST SPEED 2</i> | 0 | 1 | Speed defined by parameter <i>1204 CONST SPEED 3</i> | 1 | 1 | Speed defined by parameter <i>1205 CONST SPEED 4</i> | 2 |
| Timed function 1...4 | Operation  |   |                      |           |   |  |   |  |                  |                  |           |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |
| 0                    | Speed defined by parameter <i>1202 CONST SPEED 1</i> |   |                      |           |   |  |   |  |                  |                  |           |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |
| 1                    | Speed defined by parameter <i>1203 CONST SPEED 2</i> |   |                      |           |   |  |   |  |                  |                  |           |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |
| Timed function 1     | Timed function 2                                     | Operation   |                      |           |   |  |   |  |                  |                  |           |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |
| 0                    | 0  | Speed defined by parameter <i>1202 CONST SPEED 1</i>  |                      |           |   |  |   |  |                  |                  |           |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |
| 1                    | 0  | Speed defined by parameter <i>1203 CONST SPEED 2</i>  |                      |           |   |  |   |  |                  |                  |           |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |
| 0                    | 1  | Speed defined by parameter <i>1204 CONST SPEED 3</i>  |                      |           |   |  |   |  |                  |                  |           |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |
| 1                    | 1  | Speed defined by parameter <i>1205 CONST SPEED 4</i>  |                      |           |   |  |   |  |                  |                  |           |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |

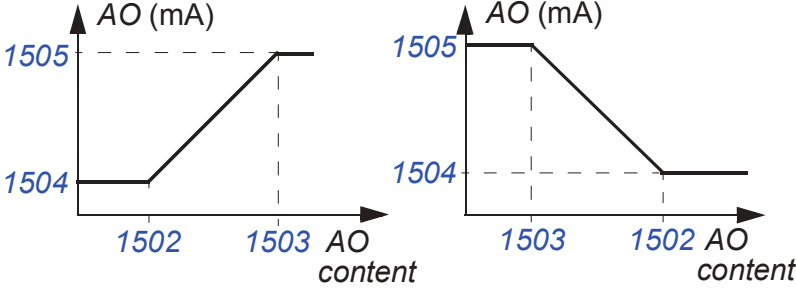
| All parameters   |                 |   |           |
|--|-----------------|---|-----------|
| No.  | Name/Value      | Description   | Def/FbEq  |
| <b>13 ANALOG INPUTS</b> Analog input signal processing |                 |   |           |
| 1301   | MINIMUM AI1     | <p>Defines the minimum %-value that corresponds to minimum mA/(V) signal for analog input AI1. When used as a reference, the value corresponds to the reference minimum setting.</p> <p>0...20 mA <math>\hat{=}</math> 0...100%<br/>4...20 mA <math>\hat{=}</math> 20...100%<br/>-10...10 mA <math>\hat{=}</math> -50...50%</p> <p><b>Example:</b> If AI1 is selected as the source for external reference REF1, this value corresponds to the value of parameter <a href="#">1104 REF1 MIN</a>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> <a href="#">MINIMUM AI1</a> value must not exceed <a href="#">MAXIMUM AI1</a> value.</p> | 1.0%      |
|  | -100.0...100.0% | <p>Value in percent of the full signal range.</p> <p><b>Example:</b> If the minimum value for analog input is 4 mA, the percent value for 0...20 mA range is:<br/>(4 mA / 20 mA) · 100% = 20%</p>   | 1 = 0.1%  |
| 1302   | MAXIMUM AI1     | <p>Defines the maximum %-value that corresponds to maximum mA/(V) signal for analog input AI1. When used as a reference, the value corresponds to the reference maximum setting.</p> <p>0...20 mA <math>\hat{=}</math> 0...100%<br/>4...20 mA <math>\hat{=}</math> 20...100%<br/>-10...10 mA <math>\hat{=}</math> -50...50%</p> <p><b>Example:</b> If AI1 is selected as the source for external reference REF1, this value corresponds to the value of parameter <a href="#">1105 REF1 MAX</a>.</p>  | 100.0%    |
|  | -100.0...100.0% | <p>Value in percent of the full signal range.</p> <p><b>Example:</b> If the maximum value for analog input is 10 mA, the percent value for 0...20 mA range is:<br/>(10 mA / 20 mA) · 100% = 50%</p>   | 1 = 0.1%  |
| 1303   | FILTER AI1      | <p>Defines the filter time constant for analog input AI1, that is, the time within which 63% of a step change is reached.</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div>   | 0.1 s     |
|  | 0.0...10.0 s    | Filter time constant  | 1 = 0.1 s |
| 1304   | MINIMUM AI2     | <p>Defines the minimum %-value that corresponds to minimum mA/(V) signal for analog input AI2. See parameter <a href="#">1301 MINIMUM AI1</a>.</p>  | 1.0%      |
|  | -100.0...100.0% | See parameter <a href="#">1301 MINIMUM AI1</a> .  | 1 = 0.1%  |
| 1305   | MAXIMUM AI2     | <p>Defines the maximum %-value that corresponds to maximum mA/(V) signal for analog input AI2. See parameter <a href="#">1302 MAXIMUM AI1</a>.</p>  | 100.0%    |

| All parameters |                      |   |                           |
|----------------|----------------------|---|---------------------------|
| No.            | Name/Value           | Description   | Def/FbEq                  |
|                | -100.0...100.0%      | See parameter <a href="#">1302 MAXIMUM AI1</a> .  | 1 = 0.1%                  |
| 1306           | FILTER AI2           | Defines the filter time constant for analog input AI2. See parameter <a href="#">1303 FILTER AI1</a> .  | 0.1 s                     |
|                | 0.0...10.0 s         | Filter time constant  | 1 = 0.1 s                 |
| <b>14</b>      | <b>RELAY OUTPUTS</b> | Status information indicated through relay output, and relay operating delays.<br><b>Note:</b> Relay outputs 2...4 are available only if the MREL relay output extension module is connected to the drive. See <i>MREL-01 relay output extension module user's manual</i> (3AUA0000035974 [English]). |                           |
| 1401           | RELAY OUTPUT 1       | Selects a drive status indicated through relay output RO 1. The relay energizes when the status meets the setting.  | <a href="#">FAULT(-1)</a> |
|                | NOT SEL              | Not used  | 0                         |
|                | READY                | Ready to function: Run enable signal on, no fault, supply voltage within acceptable range and emergency stop signal off.  | 1                         |
|                | RUN                  | Running: Start signal on, Run enable signal on, no active fault.  | 2                         |
|                | FAULT(-1)            | Inverted fault. Relay is de-energized on a fault trip. If fault is handled by autoreset, then the relay does not de-energize.   | 3                         |
|                | FAULT                | Fault. Relay is energized on a fault trip. If fault is handled by autoreset, then the relay does not energize.  | 4                         |
|                | ALARM                | Alarm   | 5                         |
|                | REVERSED             | Motor rotates in reverse direction.   | 6                         |
|                | STARTED              | The drive has received start command. Relay is energized even if Run enable signal is off. Relay is de-energized when drive receives a stop command or a fault occurs.  | 7                         |
|                | SUPRV1 OVER          | Status according to supervision parameters <a href="#">3201...3203</a> . See parameter group <a href="#">32 SUPERVISION</a> .   | 8                         |
|                | SUPRV1 UNDER         | See selection <a href="#">SUPRV1 OVER</a> .   | 9                         |
|                | SUPRV2 OVER          | Status according to supervision parameters <a href="#">3204...3206</a> . See parameter group <a href="#">32 SUPERVISION</a> .   | 10                        |
|                | SUPRV2 UNDER         | See selection <a href="#">SUPRV2 OVER</a> .   | 11                        |
|                | SUPRV3 OVER          | Status according to supervision parameters <a href="#">3207...3209</a> . See parameter group <a href="#">32 SUPERVISION</a> .   | 12                        |
|                | SUPRV3 UNDER         | See selection <a href="#">SUPRV3 OVER</a> .   | 13                        |
|                | AT SET POINT         | Output frequency is equal to the reference frequency.   | 14                        |
|                | FAULT(RST)           | Fault. Automatic reset after the autoreset delay. See parameter group <a href="#">31 AUTOMATIC RESET</a> .  | 15                        |
|                | FLT/ALARM            | Fault or alarm  | 16                        |
|                | EXT CTRL             | Drive is under external control.  | 17                        |
|                | REF 2 SEL            | External reference REF 2 is in use.   | 18                        |

| All parameters |              |   |            |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|----------------|--------------|---|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|----|-----|---|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|---|---|---|---|---|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|-------|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|--|
| No.            | Name/Value   | Description   | Def/FbEq   |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|                | CONST FREQ   | A constant speed is in use. See parameter group <a href="#">12 CONSTANT SPEEDS</a> .  | 19         |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|                | REF LOSS     | Reference or active control location is lost.   | 20         |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|                | OVERCURRENT  | Alarm/Fault by overcurrent protection function  | 21         |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|                | OVERVOLTAGE  | Alarm/Fault by overvoltage protection function  | 22         |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|                | DRIVE TEMP   | Alarm/Fault by drive overtemperature protection function  | 23         |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|                | UNDERVOLTAGE | Alarm/Fault by undervoltage protection function   | 24         |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|                | AI1 LOSS     | Analog input AI1 signal is lost.  | 25         |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|                | AI2 LOSS     | Analog input AI2 signal is lost.  | 26         |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|                | MOTOR TEMP   | Alarm/Fault by motor overtemperature protection function. See parameter <a href="#">3005 MOT THERM PROT</a> .   | 27         |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|                | STALL        | Alarm/Fault by stall protection function. See parameter <a href="#">3010 STALL FUNCTION</a> .   | 28         |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|                | PID SLEEP    | PID sleep function. See parameter group <a href="#">40 PROCESS PID SET 1 / 41 PROCESS PID SET 2</a> .   | 30         |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|                | PFC          | Start/stop motor in PFC control. See parameter group <a href="#">81 PFC CONTROL</a> . Use this option only when PFC control is used. Selection activated/deactivated when the drive is not running.   | 31         |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|                | AUTOCHANGE   | PFC Autochange operation is performed. Use this option only when PFC control is used.   | 32         |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|                | FLUX READY   | Motor is magnetized and able to supply nominal torque.  | 33         |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|                | USER MACRO 2 | User macro 2 is active.   | 34         |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|                | COMM         | Fieldbus control signal <a href="#">0134 COMM RO WORD</a> . 0 = de-energize output, 1 = energize output.  | 35         |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
|                |              | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>0134 value</th> <th>Binary</th> <th>RO4 (MREL)</th> <th>RO3 (MREL)</th> <th>RO2 (MREL)</th> <th>DO</th> <th>RO1</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>00000</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>00001</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>00010</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>00011</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>00100</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5...30</td> <td>...</td> <td>...</td> <td>...</td> <td>...</td> <td>...</td> <td>...</td> </tr> <tr> <td>31</td> <td>11111</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | 0134 value | Binary     | RO4 (MREL) | RO3 (MREL) | RO2 (MREL) | DO | RO1 | 0 | 00000 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 00001 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 2 | 00010 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 3 | 00011 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 4 | 00100 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 5...30 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 31 | 11111 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |  |  |  |  |
| 0134 value     | Binary       | RO4 (MREL)  | RO3 (MREL) | RO2 (MREL) | DO         | RO1        |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| 0              | 00000        | 0   | 0          | 0          | 0          | 0          |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| 1              | 00001        | 0   | 0          | 0          | 0          | 1          |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| 2              | 00010        | 0   | 0          | 0          | 1          | 0          |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| 3              | 00011        | 0   | 0          | 0          | 1          | 1          |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| 4              | 00100        | 0   | 0          | 1          | 0          | 0          |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| 5...30         | ...          | ...   | ...        | ...        | ...        | ...        |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |
| 31             | 11111        | 1   | 1          | 1          | 1          | 1          |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |  |  |  |  |

| All parameters |                |   |                |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|----------------|----------------|---|----------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|----|-----|---|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|---|---|---|---|---|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|-------|---|---|---|---|---|----|
| No.            | Name/Value     | Description   | Def/FbEq       |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|                | COMM(-1)       | <p>Fieldbus control signal <i>0134 COMM RO WORD</i>. 0 = de-energize output, 1 = energize output.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>0134 value</th> <th>Binary</th> <th>RO4 (MREL)</th> <th>RO3 (MREL)</th> <th>RO2 (MREL)</th> <th>DO</th> <th>RO1</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>00000</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>00001</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>00010</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>00011</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>00100</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5...30</td> <td>...</td> <td>...</td> <td>...</td> <td>...</td> <td>...</td> <td>...</td> </tr> <tr> <td>31</td> <td>11111</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | 0134 value     | Binary     | RO4 (MREL) | RO3 (MREL) | RO2 (MREL) | DO | RO1 | 0 | 00000 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 00001 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 2 | 00010 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 3 | 00011 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 4 | 00100 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 5...30 | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | 31 | 11111 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 36 |
| 0134 value     | Binary         | RO4 (MREL)  | RO3 (MREL)     | RO2 (MREL) | DO         | RO1        |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
| 0              | 00000          | 1   | 1              | 1          | 1          | 1          |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
| 1              | 00001          | 1   | 1              | 1          | 1          | 0          |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
| 2              | 00010          | 1   | 1              | 1          | 0          | 1          |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
| 3              | 00011          | 1   | 1              | 1          | 0          | 0          |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
| 4              | 00100          | 1   | 1              | 0          | 1          | 1          |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
| 5...30         | ...            | ...   | ...            | ...        | ...        | ...        |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
| 31             | 11111          | 0   | 0              | 0          | 0          | 0          |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|                | TIMED FUNC 1   | Timed function 1 is active. See parameter group <i>36 TIMED FUNCTIONS</i> .   | 37             |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|                | TIMED FUNC 2   | Timed function 2 is active. See parameter group <i>36 TIMED FUNCTIONS</i> .   | 38             |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|                | TIMED FUNC 3   | Timed function 3 is active. See parameter group <i>36 TIMED FUNCTIONS</i> .   | 39             |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|                | TIMED FUNC 4   | Timed function 4 is active. See parameter group <i>36 TIMED FUNCTIONS</i> .   | 40             |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|                | MNT TRIG FAN   | Cooling fan running time counter is triggered. See parameter group <i>29 MAINTENANCE TRIG</i> .   | 41             |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|                | MNT TRIG REV   | Revolutions counter is triggered. See parameter group <i>29 MAINTENANCE TRIG</i> .  | 42             |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|                | MNT TRIG RUN   | Run time counter is triggered. See parameter group <i>29 MAINTENANCE TRIG</i> .   | 43             |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|                | MNT TRIG MWH   | MWh counter is triggered. See parameter group <i>29 MAINTENANCE TRIG</i> .  | 44             |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|                | START DELAY    | Start delay is active.  | 46             |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|                | USER LOAD C    | Alarm/Fault from the user load curve. See parameter group <i>37 USER LOAD CURVE</i> .   | 47             |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|                | PIPE FILL      | Pipe fill (Precharge) function is active. See parameters <i>4421...4426</i> .   | 53             |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|                | PROFILE HIGH   | Actual signal <i>0116 APPL BLK OUTPUT</i> , <i>0132 PID 1 DEVIATION</i> or <i>0133 PID 2 DEVIATION</i> has stayed over limit <i>4419 PROFILE OUTP LIM</i> longer than the time defined by parameter <i>4420 PROF LIMIT ON DLY</i> . See parameters <i>4418...4420</i> .   | 54             |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|                | INLET PROT     | Pump inlet protection function is active or has caused the drive to trip. See parameters <i>4401...4408</i> .   | 55             |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|                | OUTLET PROT    | Pump outlet protection function is active or has caused the drive to trip. See parameters <i>4409...4416</i> .  | 56             |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
|                | MOT. HEATING   | Energizes relay when motor heating is active. See parameter <i>2115 MOT. HEATING SEL</i> .  | 69             |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |
| 1402           | RELAY OUTPUT 2 | See parameter <i>1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1</i> . Available only if the MREL relay output extension module is connected to the drive.  | <i>NOT SEL</i> |            |            |            |            |    |     |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |   |       |   |   |   |   |   |        |     |     |     |     |     |     |    |       |   |   |   |   |   |    |

| All parameters           |                 |   |           |
|--------------------------|-----------------|---|-----------|
| No.                      | Name/Value      | Description   | Def/FbEq  |
| 1403                     | RELAY OUTPUT 3  | See parameter <i>1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1</i> . Available only if the MREL relay output extension module is connected to the drive.  | NOT SEL   |
| 1404                     | RO 1 ON DELAY   | Defines the operation delay for relay output RO 1.  | 0.0 s     |
|                          | 0.0...3600.0 s  | <p>Delay time. The figure below illustrates the operation (on) and release (off) delays for relay output RO.</p>  | 1 = 0.1 s |
| 1405                     | RO 1 OFF DELAY  | Defines the release delay for relay output RO 1.  | 0.0 s     |
|                          | 0.0...3600.0 s  | Delay time. See the figure for parameter <i>1404 RO 1 ON DELAY</i> .  | 1 = 0.1 s |
| 1406                     | RO 2 ON DELAY   | See parameter <i>1404 RO 1 ON DELAY</i> .   | 0.0 s     |
| 1407                     | RO 2 OFF DELAY  | See parameter <i>1405 RO 1 OFF DELAY</i> .  | 0.0 s     |
| 1408                     | RO 3 ON DELAY   | See parameter <i>1404 RO 1 ON DELAY</i> .   | 0.0 s     |
| 1409                     | RO 3 OFF DELAY  | See parameter <i>1405 RO 1 OFF DELAY</i> .  | 0.0 s     |
| 1410                     | RELAY OUTPUT 4  | See parameter <i>1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1</i> . Available only if the MREL relay output extension module is connected to the drive.  | NOT SEL   |
| 1413                     | RO 4 ON DELAY   | See parameter <i>1404 RO 1 ON DELAY</i> .   | 0.0 s     |
| 1414                     | RO 4 OFF DELAY  | See parameter <i>1405 RO 1 OFF DELAY</i> .  | 0.0 s     |
| <b>15 ANALOG OUTPUTS</b> |                 | Selection of the actual signals to be indicated through analog output and output signal processing.   |           |
| 1501                     | AO1 CONTENT SEL | Connects a drive signal to analog output AO.  | 103       |
|                          | x...x           | Parameter index in group <i>01 OPERATING DATA</i> . Eg 102 = <i>0102 SPEED</i> .  |           |

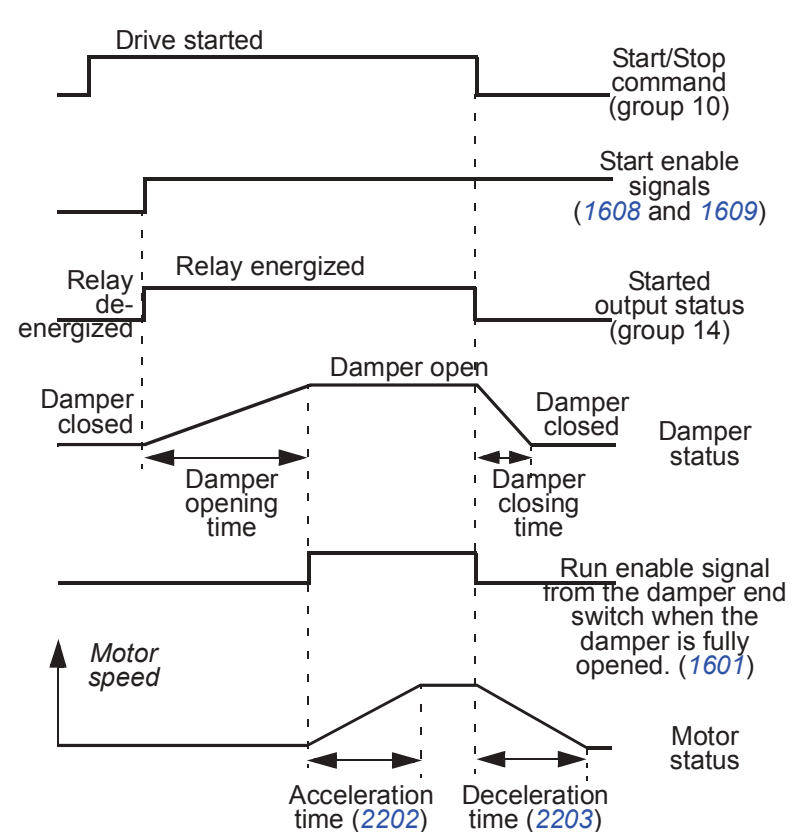
| All parameters            |                       |   |                         |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|---|-------------------------|
| No.                       | Name/Value            | Description   | Def/FbEq                |
| 1502                      | AO1<br>CONTENT MIN    | <p>Defines the minimum value for the signal selected with parameter <a href="#">1501 AO1 CONTENT SEL</a>.</p> <p>AO minimum and maximum correspond to the <a href="#">1504 MINIMUM AO1</a> and <a href="#">1505 MAXIMUM AO1</a> settings as follows:</p>  | -                       |
|                           | x...x                 | Setting range depends on the parameter <a href="#">1501 AO1 CONTENT SEL</a> setting.  | -                       |
| 1503                      | AO1<br>CONTENT<br>MAX | Defines the maximum value for the signal selected with parameter <a href="#">1501 AO1 CONTENT SEL</a> . See the figure for parameter <a href="#">1502 AO1 CONTENT MIN</a> .   | -                       |
|                           | x...x                 | Setting range depends on the parameter <a href="#">1501 AO1 CONTENT SEL</a> setting.  | -                       |
| 1504                      | MINIMUM AO1           | Defines the minimum value for the analog output signal AO. See the figure for parameter <a href="#">1502 AO1 CONTENT MIN</a> .  | 0.0 mA                  |
|                           | 0.0...20.0 mA         | Minimum value   | 1 =<br>0.1 mA           |
| 1505                      | MAXIMUM<br>AO1        | Defines the maximum value for the analog output signal AO. See the figure for parameter <a href="#">1502 AO1 CONTENT MIN</a> .  | 20.0 mA                 |
|                           | 0.0...20.0 mA         | Maximum value   | 1 =<br>0.1 mA           |
| 1506                      | FILTER AO1            | Defines the filter time constant for analog output AO, ie the time within which 63% of a step change is reached. See the figure for parameter <a href="#">1303 FILTER AI1</a> .   | 0.1 s                   |
|                           | 0.0...10.0 s          | Filter time constant  | 1 = 0.1 s               |
| <b>16 SYSTEM CONTROLS</b> |                       | Parameter view, Run enable, parameter lock etc.   |                         |
| 1601                      | RUN ENABLE            | Selects a source for the external Run enable signal.  | <a href="#">NOT SEL</a> |
|                           | NOT SEL               | Allows the drive to start without an external Run enable signal.  | 0                       |
|                           | DI1                   | External signal required through digital input DI1. 1 = Run enable. If Run enable signal is switched off, the drive does not start or coasts to stop if it is running.  | 1                       |
|                           | DI2                   | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .   | 2                       |
|                           | DI3                   | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .   | 3                       |
|                           | DI4                   | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .   | 4                       |
|                           | DI5                   | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .   | 5                       |

| All parameters |                 |  |               |
|----------------|-----------------|--|---------------|
| No.            | Name/Value      | Description  | Def/FbEq      |
|                | COMM            | Fieldbus interface as the source for inverted Run enable signal (Run disable), ie Control word <i>0301 FB CMD WORD 1</i> bit 6 (with ABB drives profile <i>5319 EFB PAR 19</i> bit 3). The Control word is sent by the fieldbus controller through the embedded fieldbus (Modbus) to the drive. For the Control word bits, see sections <i>DCU communication profile</i> on page <i>307</i> and <i>ABB drives communication profile</i> on page <i>302</i> . | 7             |
|                | DI1(INV)        | External signal required through inverted digital input DI1. 0 = Run enable. If Run enable signal is switched on, the drive does not start or coasts to stop if it is running.   | -1            |
|                | DI2(INV)        | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .  | -2            |
|                | DI3(INV)        | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .  | -3            |
|                | DI4(INV)        | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .  | -4            |
|                | DI5(INV)        | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .  | -5            |
| 1602           | PARAMETER LOCK  | Selects the state of the parameter lock. The lock prevents parameter changing from the control panel.  | <i>OPEN</i>   |
|                | LOCKED          | Parameter values cannot be changed from the control panel. The lock can be opened by entering the valid code to parameter <i>1603 PASS CODE</i> .<br>The lock does not prevent parameter changes made by macros or fieldbus.   | 0             |
|                | OPEN            | The lock is open. Parameter values can be changed.   | 1             |
|                | NOT SAVED       | Parameter changes from the control panel are not stored into the permanent memory. To store changed parameter values, set parameter <i>1607 PARAM SAVE</i> value to <i>SAVE...</i>   | 2             |
| 1603           | PASS CODE       | Selects the pass code for the parameter lock (see parameter <i>1602 PARAMETER LOCK</i> ).  | 0             |
|                | 0...65535       | Pass code. Setting 358 opens the lock. The value reverts back to 0 automatically.  | 1 = 1         |
| 1604           | FAULT RESET SEL | Selects the source for the fault reset signal. The signal resets the drive after a fault trip if the cause of the fault no longer exists.  | <i>KEYPAD</i> |
|                | KEYPAD          | Fault reset only from the control panel  | 0             |
|                | DI1             | Reset through digital input DI1 (reset on the rising edge of DI1) or from the control panel  | 1             |
|                | DI2             | See selection <i>DI1</i> .   | 2             |
|                | DI3             | See selection <i>DI1</i> .   | 3             |
|                | DI4             | See selection <i>DI1</i> .   | 4             |
|                | DI5             | See selection <i>DI1</i> .   | 5             |
|                | START/STOP      | Reset along with the stop signal received through a digital input, or from the control panel.<br><b>Note:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not use this option when start, stop and direction commands are received through fieldbus communication.</li> <li>This option does not work with control panel, when parameter <i>1001 EXT1 COMMANDS</i> = <i>KEYPAD</i>.</li> </ul>   | 7             |

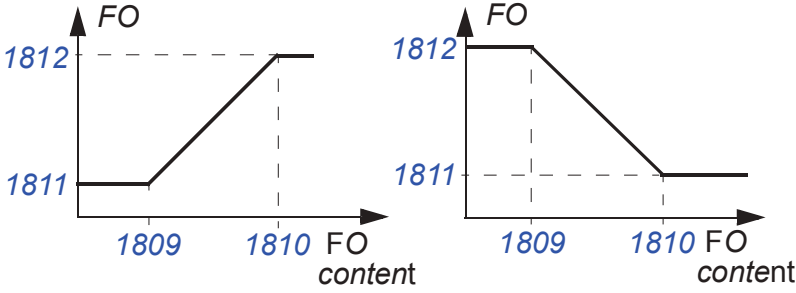


| All parameters |                  |  |          |
|----------------|------------------|--|----------|
| No.            | Name/Value       | Description  | Def/FbEq |
|                | COMM             | Fieldbus interface as the source for the fault reset signal, ie Control word <i>0301 FB CMD WORD 1</i> bit 4 (with ABB drives profile <i>5319 EFB PAR 19</i> bit 7). The Control word is sent by the fieldbus controller through the embedded fieldbus (Modbus) to the drive. For the Control word bits, see sections <i>DCU communication profile</i> on page 307 and <i>ABB drives communication profile</i> on page 302.  | 8        |
|                | DI1(INV)         | Reset through inverted digital input DI1 (reset on the falling edge of DI1) or from the control panel  | -1       |
|                | DI2(INV)         | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .  | -2       |
|                | DI3(INV)         | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .  | -3       |
|                | DI4(INV)         | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .  | -4       |
|                | DI5(INV)         | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .  | -5       |
| 1605           | USER PAR SET CHG | <p>Enables the change of the User parameter set through a digital input. See parameter <i>9902 APPLIC MACRO</i>. The change is only allowed when the drive is stopped. During the change, the drive does not start.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Always save the User parameter set with parameter <i>9902</i> after changing any parameter setting, or reperforming the motor identification. The last settings saved by the user are loaded into use whenever the power is switched off and on again or the parameter <i>9902</i> setting is changed. Any unsaved changes are lost.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The value of this parameter is not included in the User parameter sets. A setting once made remains despite User parameter set change.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Selection of User parameter set 2 can be supervised through relay outputs RO 1...4 and digital output DO. See parameters <i>1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1 ... 1403 RELAY OUTPUT 3</i>, <i>1410 RELAY OUTPUT 4</i> and <i>1805 DO SIGNAL</i>.</p> | NOT SEL  |
|                | NOT SEL          | User parameter set change is not possible through a digital input. Parameter sets can be changed only from the control panel.  | 0        |
|                | DI1              | User parameter set control through digital input DI1. Falling edge of digital input DI1: User parameter set 1 is loaded into use. Rising edge of digital input DI1: User parameter set 2 is loaded into use.   | 1        |
|                | DI2              | See selection <i>DI1</i> .   | 2        |
|                | DI3              | See selection <i>DI1</i> .   | 3        |
|                | DI4              | See selection <i>DI1</i> .   | 4        |
|                | DI5              | See selection <i>DI1</i> .   | 5        |
|                | DI1(INV)         | User parameter set control through inverted digital input DI1. Falling edge of inverted digital input DI1: User parameter set 2 is loaded into use. Rising edge of inverted digital input DI1: User parameter set 1 is loaded into use.  | -1       |
|                | DI2(INV)         | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .  | -2       |
|                | DI3(INV)         | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .  | -3       |
|                | DI4(INV)         | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .  | -4       |
|                | DI5(INV)         | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .  | -5       |

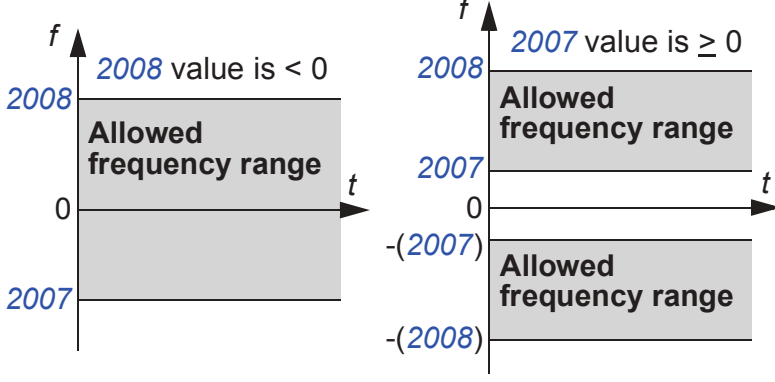
| All parameters |            |   |          |
|----------------|------------|---|----------|
| No.            | Name/Value | Description   | Def/FbEq |
| 1606           | LOCAL LOCK | Disables entering the local control mode or selects the source for the local control mode lock signal. When local lock is active, entering the local control mode is disabled (LOC/REM key of the panel).   | NOT SEL  |
|                | NOT SEL    | Local control is allowed.   | 0        |
|                | DI1        | Local control mode lock signal through digital input DI1. Rising edge of digital input DI1: Local control disabled. Falling edge of digital input DI1: Local control allowed.   | 1        |
|                | DI2        | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 2        |
|                | DI3        | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 3        |
|                | DI4        | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 4        |
|                | DI5        | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 5        |
|                | ON         | Local control is disabled.  | 7        |
|                | COMM       | Fieldbus interface as the source for the local lock, ie Control word <i>0301 FB CMD WORD 1</i> bit 14. The Control word is sent by the fieldbus controller through the embedded fieldbus (Modbus) to the drive. For the Control word bits, see section <i>DCU communication profile</i> on page 307.<br><b>Note:</b> This setting applies only for the DCU profile. | 8        |
|                | DI1(INV)   | Local lock through inverted digital input DI1. Rising edge of inverted digital input DI1: Local control allowed. Falling edge of inverted digital input DI1: Local control disabled.  | -1       |
|                | DI2(INV)   | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -2       |
|                | DI3(INV)   | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -3       |
|                | DI4(INV)   | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -4       |
|                | DI5(INV)   | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -5       |
| 1607           | PARAM SAVE | Saves the valid parameter values to the permanent memory.<br><b>Note:</b> A new parameter value of a standard macro is saved automatically when changed from the panel but not when altered through a fieldbus connection.  | DONE     |
|                | DONE       | Saving completed  | 0        |
|                | SAVE...    | Saving in progress  | 1        |

| All parameters |                |  |          |
|----------------|----------------|--|----------|
| No.            | Name/Value     | Description  | Def/FbEq |
| 1608           | START ENABLE 1 | <p>Selects the source for the Start enable 1 signal.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Functionality of the Start enable signal is different from the Run enable signal.</p> <p><b>Example:</b> External damper control application using Start enable and Run enable. Motor can start only after the damper is fully open.</p>   | NOT SEL  |
|                | NOT SEL        | Start enable signal is on.   | 0        |
|                | DI1            | External signal required through digital input DI1. 1 = Start enable. If Start enable signal is switched off, the drive does not start or it coasts to stop if it is running and alarm <b>START ENABLE 1 MISSING</b> is activated  | 1        |
|                | DI2            | See selection <b>DI1</b> .   | 2        |
|                | DI3            | See selection <b>DI1</b> .   | 3        |
|                | DI4            | See selection <b>DI1</b> .   | 4        |
|                | DI5            | See selection <b>DI1</b> .   | 5        |
|                | COMM           | <p>Fieldbus interface as the source for the inverted Start enable (Start disable) signal, ie Control word <b>0302 FB CMD WORD 2</b> bit 18 (bit 19 for Start enable 2). The Control word is sent by the fieldbus controller through the embedded fieldbus (Modbus) to the drive. For the Control word bits, see section <b>DCU communication profile</b> on page 307.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> This setting applies only for the DCU profile.</p> | 7        |
|                | DI1(INV)       | External signal required through inverted digital input DI1. 0 = Start enable. If Start enable signal is switched off, the drive does not start or it coasts to stop if it is running and alarm <b>START ENABLE 1 MISSING</b> is activated.  | -1       |

| All parameters                   |                |   |                   |
|----------------------------------|----------------|---|-------------------|
| No.                              | Name/Value     | Description   | Def/FbEq          |
|                                  | DI2(INV)       | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .  | -2                |
|                                  | DI3(INV)       | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .  | -3                |
|                                  | DI4(INV)       | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .  | -4                |
|                                  | DI5(INV)       | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .  | -5                |
| 1609                             | START ENABLE 2 | Selects the source for the Start enable 2 signal. See parameter <a href="#">1608 START ENABLE 1</a> .   | <i>NOT SEL</i>    |
|                                  |                | See parameter <a href="#">1608 START ENABLE 1</a> .   |                   |
| 1610                             | DISPLAY ALARMS | Activates/deactivates alarms <a href="#">OVERCURRENT (2001)</a> , <a href="#">OVERVOLTAGE (2002)</a> , <a href="#">UNDERVOLTAGE (2003)</a> and <a href="#">DEVICE OVERTEMP (2009)</a> . For more information, see chapter <a href="#">Fault tracing</a> on page <a href="#">311</a> .   | NO                |
|                                  | NO             | Alarms are inactive.  | 0                 |
|                                  | YES            | Alarms are active.  | 1                 |
| 1611                             | PARAMETER VIEW | Selects the parameter view, ie which parameters are shown on the control panel.<br><b>Note:</b> For embedded modbus, LONG VIEW (3) must be selected.  | <i>SHORT VIEW</i> |
|                                  | FLASHDROP      | Shows the FlashDrop parameter list. Does not include the short parameter list. Parameters which are hidden by the FlashDrop device are not visible.<br>FlashDrop is designed for fast copying of parameters to unpowered drives. It allows easy customization of the parameter list, eg selected parameters can be hidden. For more information, see <a href="#">MFDT-01 FlashDrop user's manual (3AFE68591074 [English])</a> .<br>FlashDrop parameter values are activated by setting parameter <a href="#">9902 APPLIC MACRO</a> to 31 ( <a href="#">LOAD FD SET</a> ). | 1                 |
|                                  | SHORT VIEW     | Shows only a subset of all signals and parameters. See section <a href="#">Actual signals in the short parameter view</a> on page <a href="#">167</a> and <a href="#">Parameters in the short parameter view</a> on page <a href="#">167</a> .  | 2                 |
|                                  | LONG VIEW      | Shows all signals (section <a href="#">All actual signals</a> on page <a href="#">170</a> ) and parameters (this table, starting on page <a href="#">177</a> ).   | 3                 |
| 1612                             | FAN CONTROL    | Selects the heat sink fan On/Off control for forcing the cooling fan of the drive constantly On.  | AUTO              |
|                                  | AUTO           | Automatic fan control   | 0                 |
|                                  | ON             | Fan is always On  | 1                 |
| <b>18 FREQ IN &amp; TRAN OUT</b> |                | Frequency input and transistor output signal processing.  |                   |
| 1801                             | FREQ INPUT MIN | Defines the minimum input value when DI5 is used as a frequency input. See section <a href="#">Frequency input</a> on page <a href="#">127</a> .  | 0 Hz              |
|                                  | 0...16000 Hz   | Minimum frequency   | 1 = 1 Hz          |
| 1802                             | FREQ INPUT MAX | Defines the maximum input value when DI5 is used as a frequency input. See section <a href="#">Frequency input</a> on page <a href="#">127</a> .  | 1000 Hz           |
|                                  | 0...16000 Hz   | Maximum frequency   | 1 = 1 Hz          |
| 1803                             | FILTER FREQ IN | Defines the filter time constant for frequency input, that is, the time within which 63% of a step change is reached. See section <a href="#">Frequency input</a> on page <a href="#">127</a> .   | 0.1 s             |

| All parameters |                |  |           |
|----------------|----------------|--|-----------|
| No.            | Name/Value     | Description  | Def/FbEq  |
|                | 0.0...10.0 s   | Filter time constant   | 1 = 0.1 s |
| 1804           | TO MODE        | Selects the operation mode for the transistor output TO. See section <i>Transistor output</i> on page 128.   | DIGITAL   |
|                | DIGITAL        | Transistor output is used as a digital output DO.  | 0         |
|                | FREQUENCY      | Transistor output is used as a frequency output FO.  | 1         |
| 1805           | DO SIGNAL      | Selects a drive status indicated through digital output DO.  | FAULT(-1) |
|                |                | See parameter <i>1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1</i> .   |           |
| 1806           | DO ON DELAY    | Defines the operation delay for digital output DO.   | 0.0 s     |
|                | 0.0...3600.0 s | Delay time   | 1 = 0.1 s |
| 1807           | DO OFF DELAY   | Defines the release delay for digital output DO.   | 0.0 s     |
|                | 0.0...3600.0 s | Delay time   | 1 = 0.1 s |
| 1808           | FO CONTENT SEL | Selects a drive signal to be connected to frequency output FO.   | 104       |
|                | x...x          | Parameter index in group <i>01 OPERATING DATA</i> . Eg 102 = <i>0102 SPEED</i> .   |           |
| 1809           | FO CONTENT MIN | Defines the minimum frequency output FO signal value. Signal is selected with parameter <i>1808 FO CONTENT SEL</i> . FO minimum and maximum correspond to <i>1811 MINIMUM FO</i> and <i>1812 MAXIMUM FO</i> settings as follows: | -         |
|                |                |    |           |
|                | x...x          | Setting range depends on parameter <i>1808 FO CONTENT SEL</i> setting.   | -         |
| 1810           | FO CONTENT MAX | Defines the maximum frequency output FO signal value. Signal is selected with parameter <i>1808 FO CONTENT SEL</i> . See parameter <i>1809 FO CONTENT MIN</i> .  | -         |
|                | x...x          | Setting range depends on parameter <i>1808 FO CONTENT SEL</i> setting.   | -         |
| 1811           | MINIMUM FO     | Defines the minimum value for frequency output FO.   | 10 Hz     |
|                | 10...16000 Hz  | Minimum frequency. See parameter <i>1809 FO CONTENT MIN</i> .  | 1 = 1 Hz  |
| 1812           | MAXIMUM FO     | Defines the maximum value for frequency output FO.   | 1000 Hz   |
|                | 10...16000 Hz  | Maximum frequency. See parameter <i>1809 FO CONTENT MIN</i> .  | 1 = 1 Hz  |
| 1813           | FILTER FO      | Defines the filter time constant for frequency output FO, ie the time within which 63% of a step change is reached.  | 0.1 s     |
|                | 0.0...10.0 s   | Filter time constant   | 1 = 0.1 s |

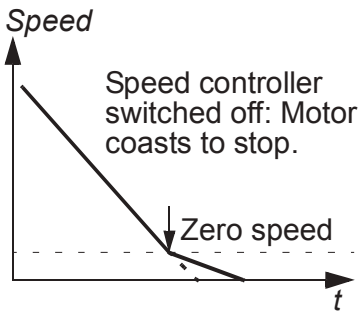
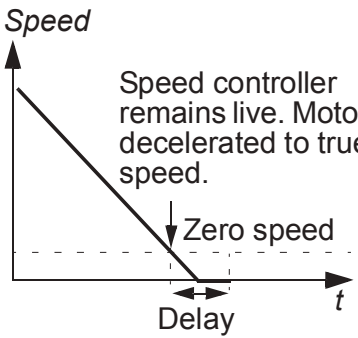
| All parameters   |                             |   |                     |
|------------------|-----------------------------|---|---------------------|
| No.              | Name/Value                  | Description   | Def/FbEq            |
| 1814             | DI1 ON DELAY                | Defines the delay from the signal change to the change of the digital input DI to the ON state.   | 0.0 s               |
|                  | 0.0...3600.0 s              | Delay time  | 1 = 0.1 s           |
| 1815             | DI1 OFF DELAY               | Defines the delay from the signal change to the change of the digital input DI to the OFF state.  | 0.0 s               |
|                  | 0.0...3600.0 s              | Delay time  | 1 = 0.1 s           |
| 1816             | DI2 ON DELAY                | See parameter <a href="#">1814 DI1 ON DELAY</a> .   | 0.0 s               |
| 1817             | DI2 OFF DELAY               | See parameter <a href="#">1815 DI1 OFF DELAY</a> .  | 0.0 s               |
| 1818             | DI3 ON DELAY                | See parameter <a href="#">1814 DI1 ON DELAY</a> .   | 0.0 s               |
| 1819             | DI3 OFF DELAY               | See parameter <a href="#">1815 DI1 OFF DELAY</a> .  | 0.0 s               |
| 1820             | DI4 ON DELAY                | See parameter <a href="#">1814 DI1 ON DELAY</a> .   | 0.0 s               |
| 1821             | DI4 OFF DELAY               | See parameter <a href="#">1815 DI1 OFF DELAY</a> .  | 0.0 s               |
| 1822             | DI5 ON DELAY                | See parameter <a href="#">1814 DI1 ON DELAY</a> .   | 0.0 s               |
| 1823             | DI5 OFF DELAY               | See parameter <a href="#">1815 DI1 OFF DELAY</a> .  | 0.0 s               |
| <b>20 LIMITS</b> |                             | Drive operation limits  |                     |
| 2003             | MAX CURRENT                 | Defines the allowed maximum motor current.  | $1.6 \cdot I_{2N}$  |
|                  | 0.0... $1.6 \cdot I_{2N}$ A | Current   | 1 = 0.1 A           |
| 2005             | OVERVOLT CTRL               | Activates or deactivates the overvoltage control of the intermediate DC link.<br>Fast braking of a high inertia load causes the voltage to rise to the overvoltage control limit. To prevent the DC voltage from exceeding the limit, the overvoltage controller automatically decreases the braking torque.  | <b>ENABLE</b>       |
|                  | DISABLE                     | Overvoltage control deactivated   | 0                   |
|                  | ENABLE                      | Overvoltage control activated   | 1                   |
| 2006             | UNDERVOLT CTRL              | Activates or deactivates the undervoltage control of the intermediate DC link.<br>If the DC voltage drops due to input power cut off, the undervoltage controller automatically decreases the motor speed in order to keep the voltage above the lower limit. By decreasing the motor speed, the inertia of the load causes regeneration back into the drive, keeping the DC link charged and preventing an undervoltage trip until the motor coasts to stop. This acts as a power-loss ride-through functionality in systems with a high inertia, such as a centrifuge or a fan. See section <a href="#">Power loss ride-through</a> on page <a href="#">129</a> . | <b>ENABLE(TIME)</b> |
|                  | DISABLE                     | Undervoltage control deactivated  | 0                   |
|                  | ENABLE(TIME)                | Undervoltage control activated. The undervoltage control is active for 500 ms.  | 1                   |
|                  | ENABLE                      | Undervoltage control activated. No operation time limit.  | 2                   |

| All parameters   |                   |   |                          |
|--|-------------------|---|--------------------------|
| No.  | Name/Value        | Description   | Def/FbEq                 |
| 2007   | MINIMUM FREQ      | <p>Defines the minimum limit for the drive output frequency. A positive (or zero) minimum frequency value defines two ranges, one positive and one negative. A negative minimum frequency value defines one speed range.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> <math>MINIMUM\ FREQ \leq MAXIMUM\ FREQ</math>.</p>   | 0.0 Hz                   |
|  | -500.0...500.0 Hz | Minimum frequency   | 1 = 0.1 Hz               |
| 2008   | MAXIMUM FREQ      | Defines the maximum limit for the drive output frequency.   | E: 50.0 Hz<br>U: 60.0 Hz |
|  | 0.0...500.0 Hz    | Maximum frequency   | 1 = 0.1 Hz               |
| <b>21 START/STOP</b> Start and stop modes of the motor |                   |   |                          |
| 2101   | START FUNCTION    | Selects the motor starting method.  | <i>AUTO</i>              |
|  | AUTO              | The drive starts the motor instantly from zero frequency. If flying start is required, use selection <i>SCAN START</i> .  | 1                        |
|  | DC MAGN           | <p>The drive pre-magnetizes the motor with DC current before the start. The pre-magnetizing time is defined by parameter <i>2103 DC MAGN TIME</i>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Starting the drive connected to a rotating motor is not possible when <i>DC MAGN</i> is selected.</p> <p><b>⚠ WARNING!</b> The drive starts after the set pre-magnetizing time has passed even if the motor magnetization is not completed. In applications where a full break-away torque is essential, always ensure that the constant magnetizing time is long enough to allow generation of full magnetization and torque.</p> | 2                        |

| All parameters |                |  |                         |
|----------------|----------------|--|-------------------------|
| No.            | Name/Value     | Description  | Def/FbEq                |
|                | TORQ BOOST     | <p>Torque boost should be selected if a high break-away torque is required.</p> <p>The drive pre-magnetizes the motor with DC current before the start. The pre-magnetizing time is defined by parameter <a href="#">2103 DC MAGN TIME</a>.</p> <p>Torque boost is applied at start. Torque boost is stopped when output frequency exceeds 20 Hz or when it is equal to the reference value. See parameter <a href="#">2110 TORQ BOOST CURR</a>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Starting the drive connected to a rotating motor is not possible when <a href="#">TORQ BOOST</a> is selected.</p> <p><b>⚠ WARNING!</b> The drive starts after the set pre-magnetizing time has passed although the motor magnetization is not completed. In applications where a full break-away torque is essential, always ensure that the constant magnetizing time is long enough to allow generation of full magnetization and torque.</p> | 4                       |
|                | SCAN START     | Frequency scanning flying start (starting the drive connected to a rotating motor). Based on frequency scanning (interval <a href="#">2008 MAXIMUM FREQ...</a> <a href="#">2007 MINIMUM FREQ</a> ) to identify the frequency. If frequency identification fails, DC magnetization is used (see selection <a href="#">DC MAGN</a> ).  | 6                       |
|                | SCAN + BOOST   | Combines scanning start (starting the drive connected to a rotating motor) and torque boost. See selections <a href="#">SCAN START</a> and <a href="#">TORQ BOOST</a> . If frequency identification fails, torque boost is used.   | 7                       |
| 2102           | STOP FUNCTION  | Selects the motor stop function.   | <a href="#">COAST</a>   |
|                | COAST          | Stop by cutting off the motor power supply. The motor coasts to stop.  | 1                       |
|                | RAMP           | Stop along a ramp. See parameter group <a href="#">22 ACCEL/DECEL</a> .  | 2                       |
| 2103           | DC MAGN TIME   | Defines the pre-magnetizing time. See parameter <a href="#">2101 START FUNCTION</a> . After the start command, the drive automatically pre-magnetizes the motor for the defined time.  | 0.30 s                  |
|                | 0.00...10.00 s | Magnetizing time. Set this value long enough to allow full motor magnetization. Too long a time heats the motor excessively.   | 1 = 0.01 s              |
| 2104           | DC HOLD CTL    | Enables motor heating function in which direct current (DC) is injected into the motor to keep it warm in low temperatures.<br>The amount of current to use for motor heating is defined in parameter <a href="#">2114 HEATING CURR REF [%]</a> .  | <a href="#">NOT SEL</a> |
|                | NOT SEL        | Motor heating is disabled  | 0                       |
|                | MOT HEATING    | Motor heating is enabled and can be activated by parameter <a href="#">2115</a> . When motor heating is active, drive shows the alarm <a href="#">20381) MOTOR HEATING</a> .   | 3                       |

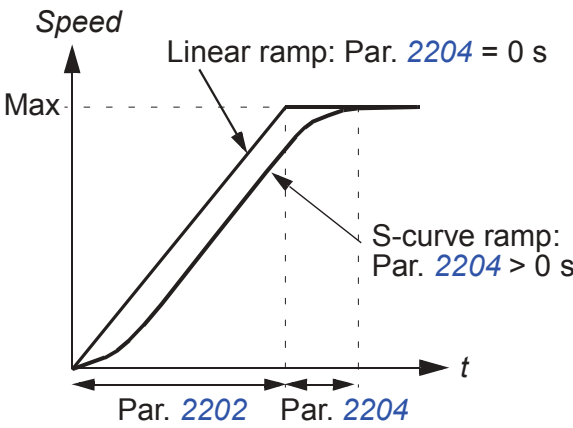


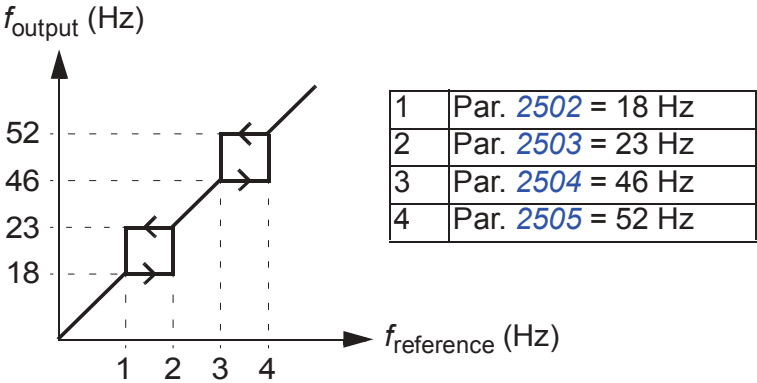
| All parameters |                |   |                |
|----------------|----------------|---|----------------|
| No.            | Name/Value     | Description   | Def/FbEq       |
| 2106           | DC CURR REF    | Defines the DC brake current. If parameter <i>2107 DC BRAKE TIME</i> is not zero, the DC brake current is injected to the motor during the stop.<br>If parameter <i>2102 STOP FUNCTION</i> is set to <i>COAST</i> , DC braking is applied after the start command is removed. If parameter <i>2102 STOP FUNCTION</i> is set to <i>RAMP</i> , DC braking is applied after the ramp.  | 30%            |
|                | 0...100%       | Value in percent of the nominal motor current (parameter <i>9906 MOTOR NOM CURR</i> )   | 1 = 1%         |
| 2107           | DC BRAKE TIME  | Defines the DC brake time.  | 0.0 s          |
|                | 0.0...250.0 s  | Time  | 1 = 0.1 s      |
| 2108           | START INHIBIT  | Sets the Start inhibit function on or off. If the drive is not actively started and running, the Start inhibit function ignores a pending start command in any of the following situations and a new start command is required: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a fault is reset.</li> <li>Run enable signal activates while the start command is active. See parameter <i>1601 RUN ENABLE</i>.</li> <li>the control mode changes from local to remote.</li> <li>the external control mode switches from EXT1 to EXT2 or from EXT2 to EXT1.</li> </ul> | <i>OFF</i>     |
|                | OFF            | Disabled  | 0              |
|                | ON             | Enabled   | 1              |
| 2109           | EMERG STOP SEL | Selects the source for the external emergency stop command.<br>The drive cannot be restarted before the emergency stop command is reset.<br><b>Note:</b> The installation must include emergency stop devices and any other safety equipment that may be needed. Pressing the stop key on the drive's control panel does NOT: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>generate an emergency stop of the motor</li> <li>separate the drive from dangerous potential.</li> </ul>   | <i>NOT SEL</i> |
|                | NOT SEL        | Emergency stop function is not selected   | 0              |
|                | DI1            | Digital input DI1. 1 = stop along the emergency stop ramp. See parameter <i>2208 EMERG DEC TIME</i> . 0 = emergency stop command reset.   | 1              |
|                | DI2            | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 2              |
|                | DI3            | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 3              |
|                | DI4            | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 4              |
|                | DI5            | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 5              |
|                | DI1(INV)       | Inverted digital input DI. 0 = stop along the emergency stop ramp. See parameter <i>2208 EMERG DEC TIME</i> . 1 = emergency stop command reset  | -1             |
|                | DI2(INV)       | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -2             |
|                | DI3(INV)       | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -3             |
|                | DI4(INV)       | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -4             |
|                | DI5(INV)       | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -5             |

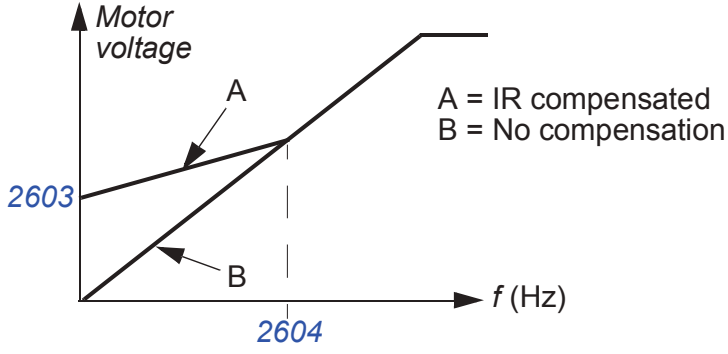
| All parameters |                               |  |            |
|----------------|-------------------------------|--|------------|
| No.            | Name/Value                    | Description  | Def/FbEq   |
| 2110           | TORQ BOOST CURR               | Defines the maximum supplied current during torque boost. See parameter <a href="#">2101 START FUNCTION</a> .  | 100%       |
|                | 15...300%                     | Value in percent   | 1 = 1%     |
| 2112           | ZERO SPEED DELAY              | <p>Defines the delay for the Zero speed delay function. The function is useful in applications where a smooth and quick restarting is essential. During the delay the drive knows accurately the rotor position.</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p><b>No Zero speed delay</b></p>  <p>Speed controller switched off: Motor coasts to stop.</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p><b>With Zero speed delay</b></p>  <p>Speed controller remains live. Motor is decelerated to true 0 speed.</p> </div> </div> <p><b>No Zero speed delay</b><br/>The drive receives a stop command and decelerates along a ramp. When the motor actual speed falls below an internal limit (called Zero speed), the speed controller is switched off. The inverter modulation is stopped and the motor coasts to standstill.</p> <p><b>With Zero speed delay</b><br/>The drive receives a stop command and decelerates along a ramp. When the actual motor speed falls below an internal limit (called Zero speed), the zero speed delay function activates. During the delay the functions keeps the speed controller live: The inverter modulates, motor is magnetized and the drive is ready for a quick restart.</p> | 0.0 s      |
|                | 0.0 = NOT SEL<br>0.0...60.0 s | Delay time. If parameter value is set to zero, Zero speed delay function is disabled.  | 1 = 0.1 s  |
| 2113           | START DELAY                   | <p>Defines the start delay.</p> <p>After the conditions for start have been fulfilled, the drive waits until the delay has elapsed and then starts the motor. Start delay can be used with all start methods. Enabling start delay does not prevent modulation.</p> <p>If start delay is zero, the delay is disabled. During the start delay, alarm <a href="#">START DELAY</a> is shown.</p>  | 0.00 s     |
|                | 0.0...60.0 s                  | Delay time   | 1 = 0.01 s |
| 2114           | HEATING CURR REF [%]          | Defines the amount of current to use for motor heating relative to the nominal current of the motor.   | 0.0%       |
|                | 0.0...30.0 %                  | Percent of heating current   | 1 = 0.1 %  |
| 2115           | MOT. HEATING SEL              | Selects the source for controlling motor heating.  | OFF        |
|                | OFF                           | Motor heating inactive. Can also be used to switch off the injection during heating.   | 0          |

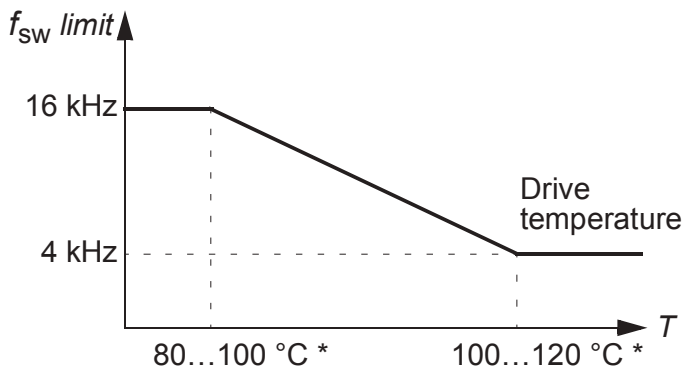
| All parameters |                    |   |                     |
|----------------|--------------------|---|---------------------|
| No.            | Name/Value         | Description   | Def/FbEq            |
|                | DI1                | Digital input DI1.<br>1 = Motor heating is On.<br>0 = Motor heating is Off.   | 1                   |
|                | DI2                | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .   | 2                   |
|                | DI3                | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .   | 3                   |
|                | DI4                | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .   | 4                   |
|                | DI5                | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .   | 5                   |
|                | COMM               | Serial communication as the control for motor heating.  | 7                   |
|                | ON                 | Motor heating active (during stop)  | 8                   |
|                | DI1(INV)           | Inverted digital input DI. 0 = Motor heating On 1 = Motor heating Off.  | -1                  |
|                | DI2(INV)           | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .  | -2                  |
|                | DI3(INV)           | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .  | -3                  |
|                | DI4(INV)           | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .  | -4                  |
|                | DI5(INV)           | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .  | -5                  |
| <b>22</b>      | <b>ACCEL/DECEL</b> | Acceleration and deceleration times   |                     |
| 2201           | ACC/DEC 1/2 SEL    | Defines the source from which the drive reads the signal that selects between the two ramp pairs, acceleration/deceleration pair 1 and 2.<br>Ramp pair 1 is defined by parameters <a href="#">2202...2204</a> .<br>Ramp pair 2 is defined by parameters <a href="#">2205...2207</a> .   | <a href="#">DI5</a> |
|                | NOT SEL            | Ramp pair 1 is used.  | 0                   |
|                | DI1                | Digital input DI1. 1 = ramp pair 2, 0 = ramp pair 1.  | 1                   |
|                | DI2                | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .   | 2                   |
|                | DI3                | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .   | 3                   |
|                | DI4                | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .   | 4                   |
|                | DI5                | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .   | 5                   |
|                | COMM               | Fieldbus interface as the source for ramp pair 1/2 selection, ie Control word <a href="#">0301 FB CMD WORD 1</a> bit 10. The Control word is sent by the fieldbus controller through the embedded fieldbus (Modbus) to the drive. For the Control word bits, see section <a href="#">DCU communication profile</a> on page <a href="#">307</a> .<br><b>Note:</b> This setting applies only for the DCU profile. | 7                   |
|                | DI1(INV)           | Inverted digital input DI1. 0 = ramp pair 2, 1 = ramp pair 1.   | -1                  |
|                | DI2(INV)           | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .  | -2                  |
|                | DI3(INV)           | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .  | -3                  |
|                | DI4(INV)           | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .  | -4                  |
|                | DI5(INV)           | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .  | -5                  |

| All parameters |                   |  |           |
|----------------|-------------------|--|-----------|
| No.            | Name/Value        | Description  | Def/FbEq  |
| 2202           | ACCELER<br>TIME 1 | <p>Defines the acceleration time 1, that is, the time required for the speed to change from zero to the speed defined by parameter <i>2008 MAXIMUM FREQ.</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the speed reference increases faster than the set acceleration rate, the motor speed follows the acceleration rate.</li> <li>• If the speed reference increases slower than the set acceleration rate, the motor speed follows the reference signal.</li> <li>• If the acceleration time is set too short, the drive automatically prolongs the acceleration in order not to exceed the drive operating limits.</li> </ul> <p>Actual acceleration time depends on parameter <i>2204 RAMP SHAPE 1</i> setting.</p>   | 5.0 s     |
|                | 0.0...1800.0 s    | Time   | 1 = 0.1 s |
| 2203           | DECELER<br>TIME 1 | <p>Defines the deceleration time 1, that is, the time required for the speed to change from the value defined by parameter <i>2008 MAXIMUM FREQ.</i> to zero.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the speed reference decreases slower than the set deceleration rate, the motor speed follows the reference signal.</li> <li>• If the reference changes faster than the set deceleration rate, the motor speed follows the deceleration rate.</li> <li>• If the deceleration time is set too short, the drive automatically prolongs the deceleration in order not to exceed drive operating limits.</li> </ul> <p>If a short deceleration time is needed for a high inertia application, note that the ACS310 cannot be equipped with a brake resistor.</p> <p>Actual deceleration time depends on parameter <i>2204 RAMP SHAPE 1</i> setting.</p> | 5.0 s     |
|                | 0.0...1800.0 s    | Time   | 1 = 0.1 s |

| All parameters |                                |  |              |
|----------------|--------------------------------|--|--------------|
| No.            | Name/Value                     | Description  | Def/FbEq     |
| 2204           | RAMP SHAPE 1                   | Selects the shape of the acceleration/deceleration ramp 1. The function is deactivated during emergency stop.  | 0.0 = LINEAR |
|                | 0.0 = LINEAR<br>0.1...1000.0 s | <p>0.0: Linear ramp. Suitable for steady acceleration or deceleration and for slow ramps.</p> <p>0.1 ... 1000.0 s: S-curve ramp. S-curve ramps are ideal for conveyors carrying fragile loads, or other applications where a smooth transition is required when changing from one speed to another. The S-curve consists of symmetrical curves at both ends of the ramp and a linear part in between.</p> <p>A rule of thumb:<br/>A suitable relation between the ramp shape time and the acceleration ramp time is 1/5.</p>  | 1 = 0.1 s    |
| 2205           | ACCELER TIME 2                 | Defines the acceleration time 2, that is, the time required for the speed to change from zero to the speed defined by parameter 2008 MAXIMUM FREQ.   | 60.0 s       |
|                | 0.0...1800.0 s                 | Time<br>See parameter 2202 ACCELER TIME 1.   | 1 = 0.1 s    |
| 2206           | DECELER TIME 2                 | Defines the deceleration time 2, that is, the time required for the speed to change from the value defined by parameter 2008 MAXIMUM FREQ to zero.   | 60.0 s       |
|                | 0.0...1800.0 s                 | Time<br>See parameter 2203 DECELER TIME 1.   | 1 = 0.1 s    |
| 2207           | RAMP SHAPE 2                   | Selects the shape of the acceleration/deceleration ramp 2. The function is deactivated during emergency stop.  | 0.0 = LINEAR |
|                | 0.0 = LINEAR<br>0.1...1000.0 s | See parameter 2204 RAMP SHAPE 1.   | 1 = 0.1 s    |
| 2208           | EMERG DEC TIME                 | Defines the time within which the drive is stopped if an emergency stop is activated. See parameter 2109 EMERG STOP SEL.   | 1.0 s        |
|                | 0.0...1800.0 s                 | Time   | 1 = 0.1 s    |
| 2209           | RAMP INPUT 0                   | Defines the control for forcing the speed to zero with the currently used deceleration ramp (see parameters 2203 DECELER TIME 1 and 2206 DECELER TIME 2).  | NOT SEL      |
|                | NOT SEL                        | Not selected   | 0            |

| All parameters            |                 |  |            |
|---------------------------|-----------------|--|------------|
| No.                       | Name/Value      | Description  | Def/FbEq   |
|                           | DI1             | Digital input DI1. 1 = ramp input is forced to zero. Ramp output ramps to zero according to the used ramp time.  | 1          |
|                           | DI2             | See selection DI1.   | 2          |
|                           | DI3             | See selection DI1.   | 3          |
|                           | DI4             | See selection DI1.   | 4          |
|                           | DI5             | See selection DI1.   | 5          |
|                           | COMM            | Fieldbus interface as the source for forcing ramp input to zero, ie Control word <i>0301 FB CMD WORD 1</i> bit 13 (with ABB drives profile <i>5319 EFB PAR 19</i> bit 6). The Control word is sent by the fieldbus controller through the embedded fieldbus (Modbus) to the drive. For the Control word bits, see sections <i>DCU communication profile</i> on page 307 and <i>ABB drives communication profile</i> on page 302.   | 7          |
|                           | DI1(INV)        | Inverted digital input DI1. 0 = ramp input is forced to zero. Ramp output ramps to zero according to the used ramp time.   | -1         |
|                           | DI2(INV)        | See selection DI1(INV).  | -2         |
|                           | DI3(INV)        | See selection DI1(INV).  | -3         |
|                           | DI4(INV)        | See selection DI1(INV).  | -4         |
|                           | DI5(INV)        | See selection DI1(INV).  | -5         |
| <b>25 CRITICAL SPEEDS</b> |                 | Speed (output frequency) bands within which the drive is not allowed to operate.   |            |
| 2501                      | CRIT SPEED SEL  | <p>Activates/deactivates the critical speeds function. The critical speed function avoids specific output frequency ranges.</p> <p><b>Example:</b> A fan has vibrations in the range of 18 to 23 Hz and 46 to 52 Hz. To make the drive to jump over the vibration frequency ranges:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Activate the critical speeds function.</li> <li>• Set the critical frequency ranges as in the figure below.</li> </ul>  | OFF        |
|                           | OFF             | Inactive   | 0          |
|                           | ON              | Active   | 1          |
| 2502                      | CRIT SPEED 1 LO | Defines the minimum limit for critical output frequency range 1  | 0.0 Hz     |
|                           | 0.0...500.0 Hz  | Limit in Hz. The value cannot be above the maximum (parameter <i>2503 CRIT SPEED 1 HI</i> ).   | 1 = 0.1 Hz |



| All parameters           |                 |   |            |      |      |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |     |     |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |    |    |     |     |   |                |
|--------------------------|-----------------|---|------------|------|------|-----|-----|-----|--------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|-------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|--------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|-------------|----|----|-----|-----|---|----------------|
| No.                      | Name/Value      | Description   | Def/FbEq   |      |      |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |     |     |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |    |    |     |     |   |                |
| 2503                     | CRIT SPEED 1 HI | Defines the maximum limit for critical output frequency range 1   | 0.0 Hz     |      |      |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |     |     |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |    |    |     |     |   |                |
|                          | 0.0...500.0 Hz  | Limit in Hz. The value cannot be below the minimum (parameter <a href="#">2502 CRIT SPEED 1 LO</a> ).   | 1 = 0.1 Hz |      |      |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |     |     |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |    |    |     |     |   |                |
| 2504                     | CRIT SPEED 2 LO | See parameter <a href="#">2502 CRIT SPEED 1 LO</a> .  | 0.0 Hz     |      |      |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |     |     |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |    |    |     |     |   |                |
|                          | 0.0...500.0 Hz  | See parameter <a href="#">2502</a> .  | 1 = 0.1 Hz |      |      |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |     |     |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |    |    |     |     |   |                |
| 2505                     | CRIT SPEED 2 HI | See parameter <a href="#">2503 CRIT SPEED 1 HI</a> .  | 0.0 Hz     |      |      |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |     |     |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |    |    |     |     |   |                |
|                          | 0.0...500.0 Hz  | See parameter <a href="#">2503</a> .  | 1 = 0.1 Hz |      |      |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |     |     |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |    |    |     |     |   |                |
| 2506                     | CRIT SPEED 3 LO | See parameter <a href="#">2502 CRIT SPEED 1 LO</a> .  | 0.0 Hz     |      |      |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |     |     |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |    |    |     |     |   |                |
|                          | 0.0...500.0 Hz  | See parameter <a href="#">2502</a> .  | 1 = 0.1 Hz |      |      |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |     |     |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |    |    |     |     |   |                |
| 2507                     | CRIT SPEED 3 HI | See parameter <a href="#">2503 CRIT SPEED 1 HI</a> .  | 0.0 Hz     |      |      |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |     |     |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |    |    |     |     |   |                |
|                          | 0.0...500.0 Hz  | See parameter <a href="#">2503</a> .  | 1 = 0.1 Hz |      |      |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |     |     |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |    |    |     |     |   |                |
| <b>26 MOTOR CONTROL</b>  |                 | Motor control variables   |            |      |      |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |     |     |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |    |    |     |     |   |                |
| 2603                     | IR COMP VOLT    | <p>Defines the output voltage boost at zero speed (IR compensation). The function is useful in applications with a high break-away torque when vector control cannot be applied.</p> <p>To prevent overheating, set IR compensation voltage as low as possible.</p> <p>The figure below illustrates the IR compensation.</p> <p>Typical IR compensation values:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th><math>P_N</math> (kW)</th> <th>0.37</th> <th>0.75</th> <th>2.2</th> <th>4.0</th> <th>7.5</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="6"><b>200...240 V units</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td>IR comp (V)</td> <td>8.4</td> <td>7.7</td> <td>5.6</td> <td>8.4</td> <td>N/A</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="6"><b>380...480 V units</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td>IR comp (V)</td> <td>14</td> <td>14</td> <td>5.6</td> <td>8.4</td> <td>7</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>  <p>A = IR compensated<br/>B = No compensation</p> | $P_N$ (kW) | 0.37 | 0.75 | 2.2 | 4.0 | 7.5 | <b>200...240 V units</b> |  |  |  |  |  | IR comp (V) | 8.4 | 7.7 | 5.6 | 8.4 | N/A | <b>380...480 V units</b> |  |  |  |  |  | IR comp (V) | 14 | 14 | 5.6 | 8.4 | 7 | Type dependent |
| $P_N$ (kW)               | 0.37            | 0.75  | 2.2        | 4.0  | 7.5  |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |     |     |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |    |    |     |     |   |                |
| <b>200...240 V units</b> |                 |   |            |      |      |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |     |     |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |    |    |     |     |   |                |
| IR comp (V)              | 8.4             | 7.7   | 5.6        | 8.4  | N/A  |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |     |     |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |    |    |     |     |   |                |
| <b>380...480 V units</b> |                 |   |            |      |      |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |     |     |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |    |    |     |     |   |                |
| IR comp (V)              | 14              | 14  | 5.6        | 8.4  | 7    |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |     |     |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |    |    |     |     |   |                |
|                          | 0.0...100.0 V   | Voltage boost   | 1 = 0.1 V  |      |      |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |     |     |     |     |     |                          |  |  |  |  |  |             |    |    |     |     |   |                |



| All parameters |                 |   |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|---|-----------------|
| No.            | Name/Value      | Description   | Def/FbEq        |
| 2604           | IR COMP FREQ    | Defines the frequency at which the IR compensation is 0 V. See the figure for parameter <i>2603 IR COMP VOLT</i><br><b>Note:</b> If parameter <i>2605 U/F RATIO</i> is set to <i>USER DEFINED</i> , this parameter is not active. The IR compensation frequency is set by parameter <i>2610 USER DEFINED U1</i> .   | 80%             |
|                | 0...100%        | Value in percent of the motor frequency   | 1 = 1%          |
| 2605           | U/F RATIO       | Selects the voltage to frequency (U/f) ratio below the field weakening point.   | <i>SQUARE D</i> |
|                | LINEAR          | Linear ratio for constant torque applications.  | 1               |
|                | SQUARED         | Squared ratio for centrifugal pump and fan applications. With squared U/f ratio the noise level is lower for most operating frequencies.  | 2               |
|                | USER DEFINED    | Custom ratio defined by parameters <i>2610...2618</i> . See section <i>Custom U/f ratio</i> on page 133.  | 3               |
| 2606           | SWITCHING FREQ  | Defines the switching frequency of the drive. Higher switching frequency results in lower acoustic noise. See also parameter <i>2607 SWITCH FREQ CTRL</i> and section <i>Switching frequency derating, I2N and ILD (= all currents)</i> on page 339.<br>In multimotor systems, do not change the switching frequency from the default value.  | 4 kHz           |
|                | 4 kHz           |   | 1 = 1 kHz       |
|                | 8 kHz           |   |                 |
|                | 12 kHz          |   |                 |
|                | 16 kHz          |   |                 |
| 2607           | SWITCHFREQ CTRL | Activates the switching frequency control. When active, the selection of parameter <i>2606 SWITCHING FREQ</i> is limited when the drive internal temperature increases. See the figure below. This function allows the highest possible switching frequency at a specific operation point.<br>Higher switching frequency results in lower acoustic noise, but higher internal losses.<br><br>* Temperature depends on the drive output frequency. | ON              |
|                | ON              | Active  | 1               |

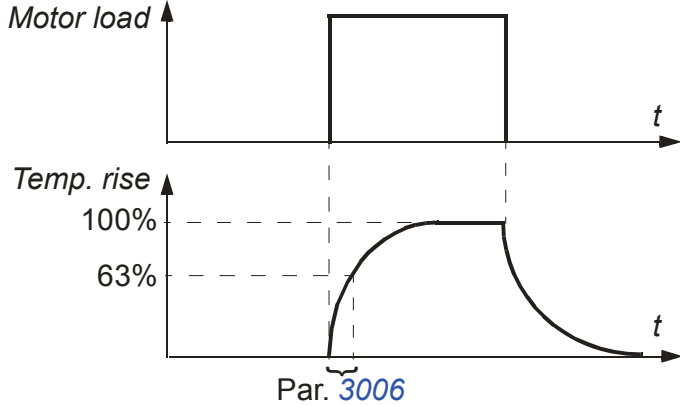


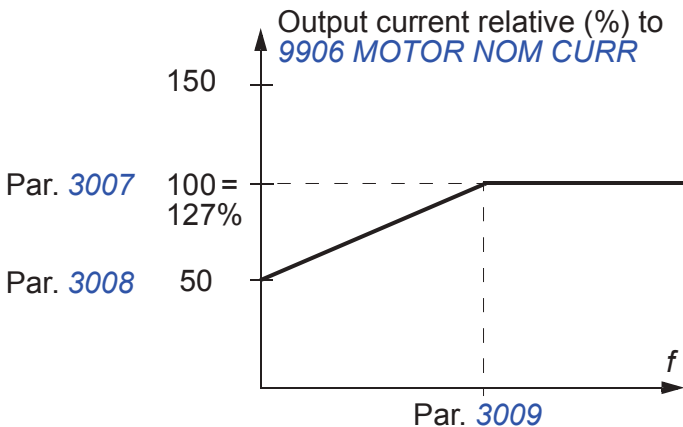
| All parameters |                     |   |                |
|----------------|---------------------|---|----------------|
| No.            | Name/Value          | Description   | Def/FbEq       |
|                | ON (LOAD)           | Switching frequency can adapt to loading instead of limiting the output current. This allows maximum loading with all switching frequency selections. The drive automatically decreases the actual switching frequency if loading is too high for the selected switching frequency.   | 2              |
| 2608           | SLIP COMP RATIO     | Defines the slip gain for the motor slip compensation control. 100% means full slip compensation, 0% means no slip compensation. Other values can be used if a static speed error is detected despite the full slip compensation.<br><b>Example:</b> 35 Hz constant speed reference is given to the drive. Despite the full slip compensation ( <i>SLIP COMP RATIO</i> = 100%), a manual tachometer measurement from the motor axis gives a speed value of 34 Hz. The static speed error is 35 Hz - 34 Hz = 1 Hz. To compensate the error, the slip gain should be increased. | 0%             |
|                | 0...200%            | Slip gain   | 1 = 1%         |
| 2609           | NOISE SMOOTHING     | Enables the noise smoothing function. Noise smoothing distributes the acoustic motor noise over a range of frequencies instead of a single tonal frequency resulting in lower peak noise intensity. A random component with an average of 0 Hz is added to the switching frequency set by parameter <i>2606 SWITCHING FREQ</i> .<br><b>Note:</b> Parameter has no effect if parameter <i>2606 SWITCHING FREQ</i> is set to 16 kHz.  | <i>DISABLE</i> |
|                | DISABLE             | Disabled  | 0              |
|                | ENABLE              | Enabled   | 1              |
| 2610           | USER DEFINED U1     | Defines the first voltage point of the custom U/f curve at the frequency defined by parameter <i>2611 USER DEFINED F1</i> . See section <i>Custom U/f ratio</i> on page 133.  | 19% of $U_N$   |
|                | 0...120% of $U_N$ V | Voltage   | 1 = 1 V        |
| 2611           | USER DEFINED F1     | Defines the first frequency point of the custom U/f curve.  | 10.0 Hz        |
|                | 0.0...500.0 Hz      | Frequency   | 1 = 0.1 Hz     |
| 2612           | USER DEFINED U2     | Defines the second voltage point of the custom U/f curve at the frequency defined by parameter <i>2613 USER DEFINED F2</i> . See section <i>Custom U/f ratio</i> on page 133.   | 38% of $U_N$   |
|                | 0...120% of $U_N$ V | Voltage   | 1 = 1 V        |
| 2613           | USER DEFINED F2     | Defines the second frequency point of the custom U/f curve.   | 20.0 Hz        |
|                | 0.0...500.0 Hz      | Frequency   | 1 = 0.1 Hz     |
| 2614           | USER DEFINED U3     | Defines the third voltage point of the custom U/f curve at the frequency defined by parameter <i>2615 USER DEFINED F3</i> . See section <i>Custom U/f ratio</i> on page 133.  | 47.5% of $U_N$ |
|                | 0...120% of $U_N$ V | Voltage   | 1 = 1 V        |
| 2615           | USER DEFINED F3     | Defines the third frequency point of the custom U/f curve.  | 25.0 Hz        |
|                | 0.0...500.0 Hz      | Frequency   | 1 = 0.1 Hz     |
| 2616           | USER DEFINED U4     | Defines the fourth voltage point of the custom U/f curve at the frequency defined by parameter <i>2617 USER DEFINED F4</i> . See section <i>Custom U/f ratio</i> on page 133.   | 76% of $U_N$   |

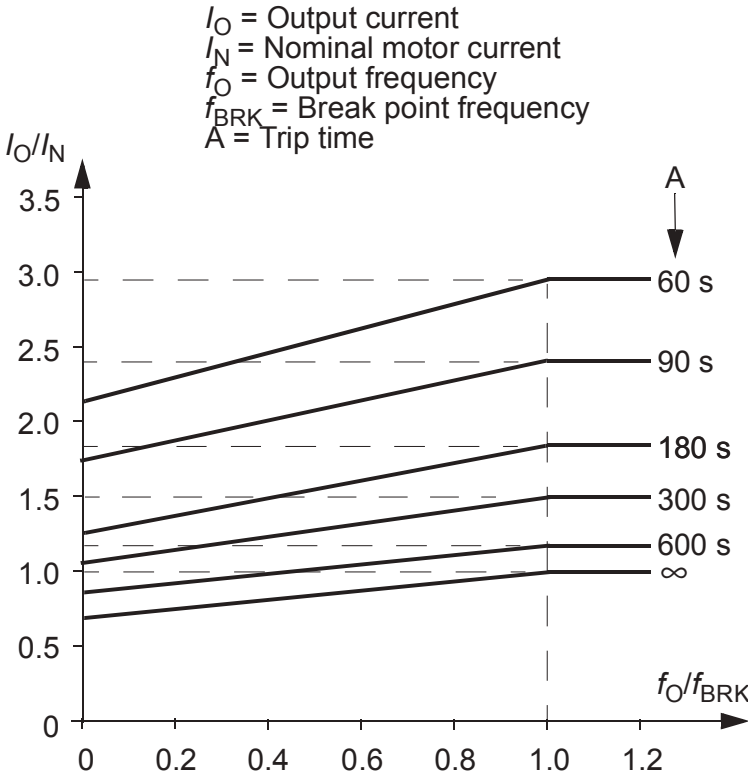
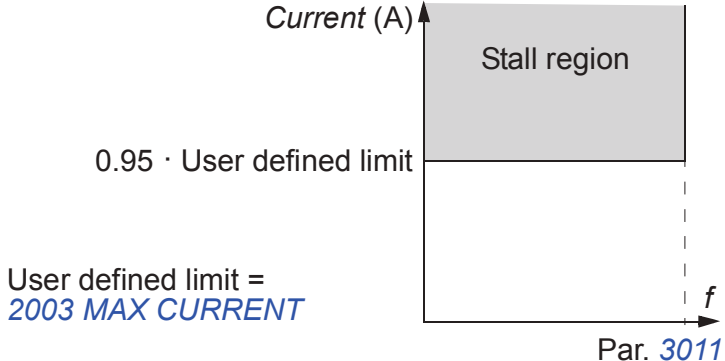
| All parameters             |                     |   |                |
|----------------------------|---------------------|---|----------------|
| No.                        | Name/Value          | Description   | Def/FbEq       |
|                            | 0...120% of $U_N$ V | Voltage   | 1 = 1 V        |
| 2617                       | USER DEFINED F4     | Defines the fourth frequency point of the custom U/f curve.   | 40.0 Hz        |
|                            | 0.0...500.0 Hz      | Frequency   | 1 = 0.1 Hz     |
| 2618                       | FW VOLTAGE          | Defines the voltage of the U/f curve when frequency is equal to or exceeds the nominal motor frequency ( <i>9907 MOTOR NOM FREQ</i> ). See section <i>Custom U/f ratio</i> on page 133.   | 95% of $U_N$   |
|                            | 0...120% of $U_N$ V | Voltage   | 1 = 1 V        |
| 2619                       | DC STABILIZER       | Enables or disables the DC voltage stabilizer. The DC stabilizer is used to prevent possible voltage oscillations in the drive DC bus caused by motor load or weak supply network. In case of voltage variation, the drive tunes the frequency reference to stabilize the DC bus voltage and therefore the load torque oscillation. | <i>DISABLE</i> |
|                            | DISABLE             | Disabled  | 0              |
|                            | ENABLE              | Enabled   | 1              |
| <b>29 MAINTENANCE TRIG</b> |                     |   |                |
| 2901                       | COOLING FAN TRIG    | Defines the trigger point for the drive cooling fan run time counter. Value is compared to parameter <i>2902 COOLING FAN ACT</i> value.   | 0.0 kh         |
|                            | 0.0...6553.5 kh     | Time. If parameter value is set to zero, the trigger is disabled.   | 1 = 0.1 kh     |
| 2902                       | COOLING FAN ACT     | Defines the actual value for the cooling fan run time counter. When parameter <i>2901 COOLING FAN TRIG</i> has been set to a non zero value, the counter starts. When the actual value of the counter exceeds the value defined by parameter <i>2901</i> , a maintenance notice is displayed on the panel.                          | 0.0 kh         |
|                            | 0.0...6553.5 kh     | Time. Parameter is reset by setting it to zero.   | 1 = 0.1 kh     |
| 2903                       | REVOLUTION TRIG     | Defines the trigger point for the motor revolution counter. Value is compared to parameter <i>2904 REVOLUTION ACT</i> value.  | 0 Mrev         |
|                            | 0...65535 Mrev      | Millions of revolutions. If parameter value is set to zero, the trigger is disabled.  | 1 = 1 Mrev     |
| 2904                       | REVOLUTION ACT      | Defines the actual value for the motor revolution counter. When parameter <i>2903 REVOLUTION TRIG</i> has been set to a non zero value, the counter starts. When the actual value of the counter exceeds the value defined by parameter <i>2903</i> , a maintenance notice is displayed on the panel.                               | 0 Mrev         |
|                            | 0...65535 Mrev      | Millions of revolutions. Parameter is reset by setting it to zero.  | 1 = 1 Mrev     |
| 2905                       | RUN TIME TRIG       | Defines the trigger point for the drive run time counter. Value is compared to parameter <i>2906 RUN TIME ACT</i> value.  | 0.0 kh         |
|                            | 0.0...6553.5 kh     | Time. If parameter value is set to zero, the trigger is disabled.   | 1 = 0.1 kh     |



| All parameters            |                  |  |                |
|---------------------------|------------------|--|----------------|
| No.                       | Name/Value       | Description  | Def/FbEq       |
| 2906                      | RUN TIME ACT     | Defines the actual value for the drive run time counter. When parameter <i>2905 RUN TIME TRIG</i> has been set to a non zero value, the counter starts. When the actual value of the counter exceeds the value defined by parameter <i>2905</i> , a maintenance notice is displayed on the panel.  | 0.0 kh         |
|                           | 0.0...6553.5 kh  | Time. Parameter is reset by setting it to zero.  | 1 = 0.1 kh     |
| 2907                      | USER MWh TRIG    | Defines the trigger point for the drive power consumption counter. Value is compared to parameter <i>2908 USER MWh ACT</i> value.  | 0.0 MWh        |
|                           | 0.0...6553.5 MWh | Megawatt hours. If parameter value is set to zero, the trigger is disabled.  | 1 = 0.1 MWh    |
| 2908                      | USER MWh ACT     | Defines the actual value of the drive power consumption counter. When parameter <i>2907 USER MWh TRIG</i> has been set to a non zero value, the counter starts. When the actual value of the counter exceeds the value defined by parameter <i>2907</i> , a maintenance notice is displayed on the panel.  | 0.0 MWh        |
|                           | 0.0...6553.5 MWh | Megawatt hours. Parameter is reset by setting it to zero.  | 1 = 0.1 MWh    |
| <b>30 FAULT FUNCTIONS</b> |                  | Programmable protection functions  |                |
| 3001                      | AI<MIN FUNCTION  | Defines the drive response if the analog input (AI) signal drops below the fault limits and AI is used <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>as the active reference source (group <i>11 REFERENCE SELECT</i>)</li> <li>as the process or external PID controllers' feedback or setpoint source (group <i>40 PROCESS PID SET 1</i>, <i>41 PROCESS PID SET 2</i> or <i>42 EXT / TRIM PID</i>) and the corresponding PID controller is active.</li> </ul> <i>3021 AI1 FAULT LIMIT</i> and <i>3022 AI2 FAULT LIMIT</i> set the fault limits. | <i>NOT SEL</i> |
|                           | NOT SEL          | Protection is inactive.  | 0              |
|                           | FAULT            | The drive trips on fault <i>AI1 LOSS / AI2 LOSS</i> and the motor coasts to stop. Fault limit is defined by parameter <i>3021 AI1 FAULT LIMIT / 3022 AI2 FAULT LIMIT</i> .   | 1              |
|                           | CONST SP 7       | The drive generates alarm <i>AI1 LOSS / AI2 LOSS</i> and sets the speed to the value defined by parameter <i>1208 CONST SPEED 7</i> . Alarm limit is defined by parameter <i>3021 AI1 FAULT LIMIT / 3022 AI2 FAULT LIMIT</i> .<br> <b>WARNING!</b> Make sure that it is safe to continue operation in case the analog input signal is lost.   | 2              |
|                           | LAST SPEED       | The drive generates alarm <i>AI1 LOSS / AI2 LOSS</i> and freezes the speed to the level the drive was operating at. The speed is determined considering the average speed and time. Alarm limit is defined by parameter <i>3021 AI1 FAULT LIMIT / 3022 AI2 FAULT LIMIT</i> .<br> <b>WARNING!</b> Make sure that it is safe to continue operation in case the analog input signal is lost.   | 3              |

| All parameters |                  |   |                |
|----------------|------------------|---|----------------|
| No.            | Name/Value       | Description   | Def/FbEq       |
| 3002           | PANEL COMM ERR   | Selects how the drive reacts to a control panel communication break.<br><b>Note:</b> When either of the two external control locations are active, and start, stop and/or direction are through the control panel – <i>1001 EXT1 COMMANDS / 1002 EXT2 COMMANDS = 8 (KEYPAD)</i> – the drive follows the speed reference according to the configuration of the external control locations, instead of the value of the last speed or parameter <i>1208 CONST SPEED 7</i> . | <i>FAULT</i>   |
|                | FAULT            | Drive trips on fault <i>PANEL LOSS</i> and the motor coasts to stop.  | 1              |
|                | CONST SP 7       | The drive generates alarm <i>PANEL LOSS</i> and sets the speed to the speed defined by parameter <i>1208 CONST SPEED 7</i> .<br> <b>WARNING!</b> Make sure that it is safe to continue operation in case of a panel communication break.   | 2              |
|                | LAST SPEED       | The drive generates alarm <i>PANEL LOSS</i> and freezes the speed to the level the drive was operating at. The speed is determined considering the average speed and time.<br> <b>WARNING!</b> Make sure that it is safe to continue operation in case of a panel communication break.   | 3              |
| 3003           | EXTERNAL FAULT 1 | Selects an interface for an external fault 1 signal.  | <i>NOT SEL</i> |
|                | NOT SEL          | Not selected  | 0              |
|                | DI1              | External fault indication through digital input DI1. 1: Fault trip ( <i>EXT FAULT 1</i> ). Motor coasts to stop. 0: No external fault.  | 1              |
|                | DI2              | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 2              |
|                | DI3              | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 3              |
|                | DI4              | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 4              |
|                | DI5              | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 5              |
|                | DI1(INV)         | External fault indication through inverted digital input DI1. 0: Fault trip ( <i>EXT FAULT 1</i> ). Motor coasts to stop. 1: No external fault.   | -1             |
|                | DI2(INV)         | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -2             |
|                | DI3(INV)         | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -3             |
|                | DI4(INV)         | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -4             |
|                | DI5(INV)         | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -5             |
| 3004           | EXTERNAL FAULT 2 | Selects an interface for an external fault 2 signal.  | <i>NOT SEL</i> |
|                |                  | See parameter <i>3003 EXTERNAL FAULT 1</i> .  |                |
| 3005           | MOT THERM PROT   | Selects how the drive reacts when the motor overtemperature is detected.  | <i>FAULT</i>   |
|                | NOT SEL          | Protection is inactive.   | 0              |

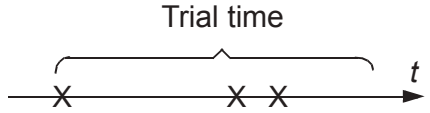
| All parameters |                |   |          |
|----------------|----------------|---|----------|
| No.            | Name/Value     | Description   | Def/FbEq |
|                | FAULT          | The drive trips on fault <i>MOT OVERTEMP</i> when the temperature exceeds 110 °C, and the motor coasts to stop.<br><b>Note:</b> Because motor thermal protection has memory retention, do not shut down the drive when a <i>MOT OVERTEMP</i> fault occurs. Shutting down the drive does not reset the fault. The drive resets the fault as soon as the motor temperature has lowered enough.  | 1        |
|                | ALARM          | The drive generates alarm <i>MOTOR TEMP</i> when the motor temperature exceeds 90 °C.   | 2        |
| 3006           | MOT THERM TIME | <p>Defines the thermal time constant for the motor thermal model, that is, the time within which the motor temperature has reached 63% of the nominal temperature with steady load.</p> <p>For thermal protection according to UL requirements for NEMA class motors, use the rule of thumb: Motor thermal time = 35 · t6. t6 (in seconds) is specified by the motor manufacturer as the time the motor can safely operate at six times its rated current.</p> <p>Thermal time for a Class 10 trip curve is 350 s, for a Class 20 trip curve 700 s, and for a Class 30 trip curve 1050 s.</p>  | 500 s    |
|                | 256...9999 s   | Time constant   | 1 = 1 s  |


| All parameters |                 |   |          |
|----------------|-----------------|---|----------|
| No.            | Name/Value      | Description   | Def/FbEq |
| 3007           | MOT LOAD CURVE  | <p>Defines the load curve together with parameters <b>3008 ZERO SPEED LOAD</b> and <b>3009 BREAK POINT FREQ.</b></p> <p>With the default value 100%, motor overload protection is functioning when the constant current exceeds 127% of the parameter <b>9906 MOTOR NOM CURR</b> value.</p> <p>The default overloadability is at the same level as what motor manufacturers typically allow below 30 °C (86 °F) ambient temperature and below 1000 m (3300 ft) altitude. When the ambient temperature exceeds 30 °C (86 °F) or the installation altitude is over 1000 m (3300 ft), decrease the parameter <b>3007</b> value according to the motor manufacturer's recommendation.</p> <p><b>Example:</b> If the constant protection level needs to be 115% of the nominal motor current, set parameter <b>3007</b> value to 91% (= 115/127·100%).</p>  | 100%     |
|                | 50....150%      | Allowed continuous motor load relative to the nominal motor current   | 1 = 1%   |
| 3008           | ZERO SPEED LOAD | Defines the load curve together with parameters <b>3007 MOT LOAD CURVE</b> and <b>3009 BREAK POINT FREQ.</b>  | 70%      |
|                | 25....150%      | Allowed continuous motor load at zero speed in percent of the nominal motor current   | 1 = 1%   |

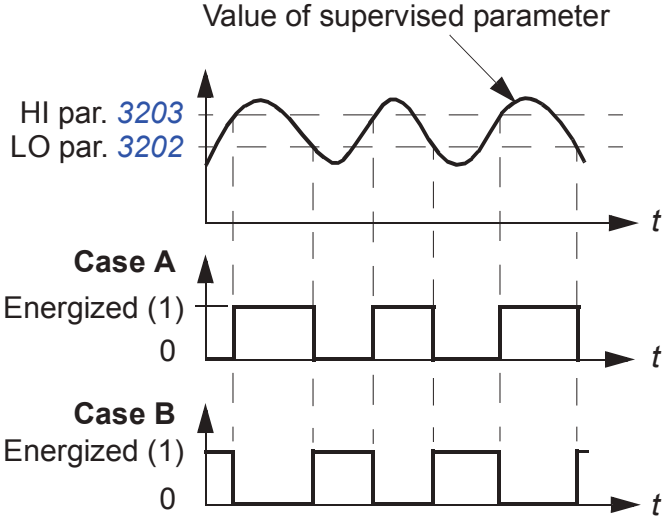
| All parameters |                  |   |                         |
|----------------|------------------|---|-------------------------|
| No.            | Name/Value       | Description   | Def/FbEq                |
| 3009           | BREAK POINT FREQ | <p>Defines the load curve together with parameters <a href="#">3007 MOT LOAD CURVE</a> and <a href="#">3008 ZERO SPEED LOAD</a>.</p> <p><b>Example:</b> Thermal protection trip times when parameters <a href="#">3006...3008</a> have default values.</p> <p> <math>I_O</math> = Output current<br/> <math>I_N</math> = Nominal motor current<br/> <math>f_O</math> = Output frequency<br/> <math>f_{BRK}</math> = Break point frequency<br/> A = Trip time </p>  | 35 Hz                   |
|                | 1...250 Hz       | Drive output frequency at 100% load   | 1 = 1 Hz                |
| 3010           | STALL FUNCTION   | <p>Selects how the drive reacts to a motor stall condition. The protection wakes up if the drive has operated in a stall region (see the figure below) longer than the time set by parameter <a href="#">3012 STALL TIME</a>.</p>   | <a href="#">NOT SEL</a> |
|                | NOT SEL          | Protection is inactive.   | 0                       |
|                | FAULT            | The drive trips on fault <a href="#">MOTOR STALL</a> and the motor coasts to stop.  | 1                       |
|                | ALARM            | The drive generates alarm <a href="#">MOTOR STALL</a> .   | 2                       |
| 3011           | STALL FREQUENCY  | Defines the frequency limit for the stall function. See parameter <a href="#">3010 STALL FUNCTION</a> .   | 20.0 Hz                 |

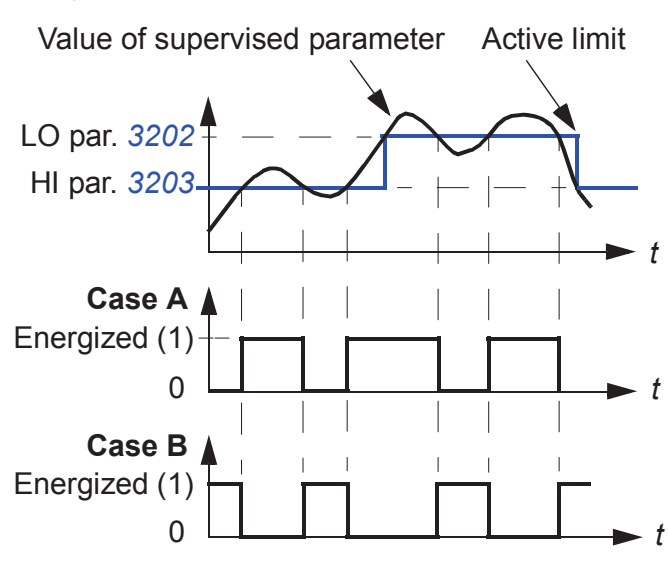
| All parameters |                 |  |                |
|----------------|-----------------|--|----------------|
| No.            | Name/Value      | Description  | Def/FbEq       |
|                | 0.5...50.0 Hz   | Frequency  | 1 = 0.1 Hz     |
| 3012           | STALL TIME      | Defines the time for the stall function. See parameter <i>3010 STALL FUNCTION</i> .  | 20 s           |
|                | 10...400 s      | Time   | 1 = 1 s        |
| 3016           | SUPPLY PHASE    | Selects how the drive reacts to supply phase loss, ie when DC voltage ripple is excessive.   | <i>FAULT</i>   |
|                | FAULT           | The drive trips on fault <i>SUPPLY PHASE</i> and the motor coasts to stop when the DC voltage ripple exceeds 14% of the nominal DC voltage.  | 0              |
|                | LIMIT/ALARM     | Drive output current is limited and alarm <i>INPUT PHASE LOSS</i> is generated when the DC voltage ripple exceeds 14% of the nominal DC voltage.<br>There is a 10 s delay between the activation of the alarm and the output current limitation. The current is limited until the DC voltage ripple drops under the ripple limit.  | 1              |
|                | ALARM           | The drive generates alarm <i>INPUT PHASE LOSS</i> when the DC ripple exceeds 14% of the nominal DC voltage.  | 2              |
| 3017           | EARTH FAULT     | Selects how the drive reacts when an earth (ground) fault is detected in the motor or the motor cable.<br><b>Note:</b> Disabling earth (ground) fault may void the warranty.   | <i>ENABLE</i>  |
|                | DISABLE         | No action  | 0              |
|                | ENABLE          | The drive trips on fault <i>EARTH FAULT</i> .  | 1              |
| 3018           | COMM FAULT FUNC | Selects how the drive reacts in a fieldbus communication break. The time delay is defined by parameter <i>3019 COMM FAULT TIME</i> .   | <i>NOT SEL</i> |
|                | NOT SEL         | Protection is inactive.  | 0              |
|                | FAULT           | Protection is active. The drive trips on fault <i>SERIAL 1 ERR</i> and coasts to stop.   | 1              |
|                | CONST SP 7      | Protection is active. The drive generates alarm <i>IO COMM</i> and sets the speed to the value defined by parameter <i>1208 CONST SPEED 7</i> .<br> <b>WARNING!</b> Make sure that it is safe to continue operation in case of a communication break.   | 2              |
|                | LAST SPEED      | Protection is active. The drive generates alarm <i>IO COMM</i> and freezes the speed to the level the drive was operating at. The speed is determined considering the average speed and time.<br> <b>WARNING!</b> Make sure that it is safe to continue operation in case of a communication break. | 3              |
| 3019           | COMM FAULT TIME | Defines the time delay for the fieldbus communication break supervision. See parameter <i>3018 COMM FAULT FUNC</i> .   | 3.0 s          |
|                | 0.0...600.0 s   | Delay time   | 1 = 0.1 s      |
| 3021           | AI1 FAULT LIMIT | Defines a fault level for analog input AI1. If parameter <i>3001 AI&lt;MIN FUNCTION</i> is set to <i>FAULT</i> , the drive trips on fault <i>AI1 LOSS</i> when the analog input signal falls below the set level.<br>Do not set this limit below the level defined by parameter <i>1301 MINIMUM AI1</i> .  | 0.0%           |
|                | 0.0...100.0%    | Value in percent of the full signal range  | 1 = 0.1%       |



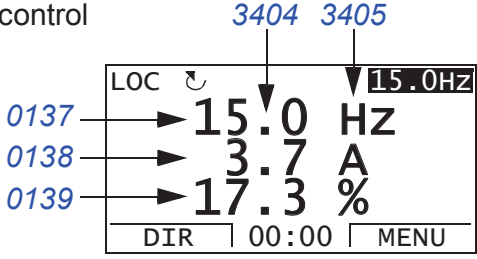
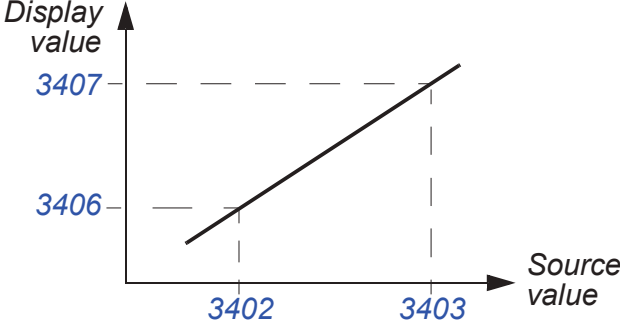
| All parameters            |                 |   |               |
|---------------------------|-----------------|---|---------------|
| No.                       | Name/Value      | Description   | Def/FbEq      |
| 3022                      | AI2 FAULT LIMIT | Defines a fault level for analog input AI2. If parameter <b>3001 AI&lt;MIN FUNCTION</b> is set to <b>FAULT</b> , the drive trips on fault <b>AI2 LOSS</b> when the analog input signal falls below the set level.<br>Do not set this limit below the level defined by parameter <b>1304 MINIMUM AI2</b> .   | 0.0%          |
|                           | 0.0...100.0%    | Value in percent of the full signal range   | 1 = 0.1%      |
| 3023                      | WIRING FAULT    | Selects how the drive reacts when incorrect input power and motor cable connection is detected (ie the input power cable is connected to the motor connection of the drive).<br><b>Note:</b> Disabling wiring fault (ground fault) may void the warranty.   | <b>ENABLE</b> |
|                           | DISABLE         | No action   | 0             |
|                           | ENABLE          | The drive trips on fault <b>OUTP WIRING</b> .   | 1             |
| 3027                      | OPTION COM LOSS | Enables the fault <b>1006 PAR EXT RO</b> on detecting the disconnection of MREL-01 relay output extension module from the drive.  | <b>ENABLE</b> |
|                           | DISABLE         | Prevents the fault <b>1006 PAR EXT RO</b> even when MREL-01 is disconnected from the drive.   | 0             |
|                           | ENABLE          | MREL-01 is constantly monitored for disconnection and indicated by the fault <b>1006 PAR EXT RO</b> if external relay outputs are configured.   | 1             |
| <b>31 AUTOMATIC RESET</b> |                 |   |               |
| 3101                      | NR OF TRIALS    | Defines the number of automatic fault resets the drive performs within the time defined by parameter <b>3102 TRIAL TIME</b> .<br>If the number of automatic resets exceeds the set number (within the trial time), the drive prevents additional automatic resets and remains stopped. The drive must be reset from the control panel or from a source selected by parameter <b>1604 FAULT RESET SEL</b> .<br><b>Example:</b> Three faults have occurred during the trial time defined by parameter <b>3102</b> . Last fault is reset only if the number defined by parameter <b>3101</b> is 3 or more. | 0             |
|                           |                 | <p style="text-align: center;">Trial time</p>  <p style="text-align: right;">X = Automatic reset</p>   |               |
|                           | 0...5           | Number of the automatic resets  | 1 = 1         |
| 3102                      | TRIAL TIME      | Defines the time for the automatic fault reset function. See parameter <b>3101 NR OF TRIALS</b> .   | 30.0 s        |
|                           | 1.0...600.0 s   | Time  | 1 = 0.1 s     |
| 3103                      | DELAY TIME      | Defines the time that the drive waits after a fault before attempting an automatic reset. See parameter <b>3101 NR OF TRIALS</b> . If delay time is set to zero, the drive resets immediately.  | 0.0 s         |
|                           | 0.0...120.0 s   | Time  | 1 = 0.1 s     |

| All parameters |                    |  |                |
|----------------|--------------------|--|----------------|
| No.            | Name/Value         | Description  | Def/FbEq       |
| 3104           | AR<br>OVERCURRENT  | Activates/deactivates the automatic reset for the overcurrent fault. Automatically resets the fault ( <i>OVERCURRENT</i> ) after the delay set by parameter <i>3103 DELAY TIME</i> .   | <i>DISABLE</i> |
|                | DISABLE            | Inactive   | 0              |
|                | ENABLE             | Active   | 1              |
| 3105           | AR<br>OVERVOLTAGE  | Activates/deactivates the automatic reset for the intermediate link overvoltage fault. Automatically resets the fault ( <i>DC OVERVOLT</i> ) after the delay set by parameter <i>3103 DELAY TIME</i> .   | <i>DISABLE</i> |
|                | DISABLE            | Inactive   | 0              |
|                | ENABLE             | Active   | 1              |
| 3106           | AR<br>UNDERVOLTAGE | Activates/deactivates the automatic reset for the intermediate link undervoltage fault. Automatically resets the fault ( <i>DC UNDERVOLT</i> ) after the delay set by parameter <i>3103 DELAY TIME</i> .   | <i>DISABLE</i> |
|                | DISABLE            | Inactive   | 0              |
|                | ENABLE             | Active   | 1              |
| 3107           | AR AI<MIN          | Activates/deactivates the automatic reset for fault AI<MIN (analog input signal under the allowed minimum level) faults <i>A11 LOSS (0007)</i> and <i>A12 LOSS (0008)</i> . Automatically resets the fault after the delay set by parameter <i>3103 DELAY TIME</i> . | <i>DISABLE</i> |
|                | DISABLE            | Inactive   | 0              |
|                | ENABLE             | Active<br> <b>WARNING!</b> The drive may restart even after a long stop if the analog input signal is restored. Ensure that the use of this feature does not cause danger.        | 1              |
| 3108           | AR EXTERNAL<br>FLT | Activates/deactivates the automatic reset for faults <i>EXT FAULT 1 (0014)</i> and <i>EXT FAULT 2 (0015)</i> . Automatically resets the fault after the delay set by parameter <i>3103 DELAY TIME</i> .  | <i>DISABLE</i> |
|                | DISABLE            | Inactive   | 0              |
|                | ENABLE             | Active   | 1              |

| All parameters   |                |   |          |
|--|----------------|---|----------|
| No.  | Name/Value     | Description   | Def/FbEq |
| <b>32 SUPERVISION</b>  |                | Signal supervision. Supervision status can be monitored with relay or transistor output. See parameter groups <i>14 RELAY OUTPUTS</i> and <i>18 FREQ IN &amp; TRAN OUT</i> .  |          |
| 3201   | SUPERV 1 PARAM | <p>Selects the first supervised signal. Supervision limits are defined by parameters <i>3202 SUPERV 1 LIM LO</i> and <i>3203 SUPERV 1 LIM HI</i>.</p> <p><b>Example 1:</b> If <math>3202 \text{ SUPERV 1 LIM LO} \leq 3203 \text{ SUPERV 1 LIM HI}</math></p> <p><b>Case A</b> = <i>1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1</i> value is set to <i>SUPRV1 OVER</i>. Relay energizes when value of the signal selected with <i>3201 SUPERV 1 PARAM</i> exceeds the supervision limit defined by <i>3203 SUPERV 1 LIM HI</i>. The relay remains active until the supervised value drops below the low limit defined by <i>3202 SUPERV 1 LIM LO</i>.</p> <p><b>Case B</b> = <i>1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1</i> value is set to <i>SUPRV1 UNDER</i>. Relay energizes when value of the signal selected with <i>3201 SUPERV 1 PARAM</i> drops below the supervision limit defined by <i>3202 SUPERV 1 LIM LO</i>. The relay remains active until the supervised value rises above the high limit defined by <i>3203 SUPERV 1 LIM HI</i>.</p> | 103      |
| <p style="text-align: center;">Value of supervised parameter</p>  <p>The diagram illustrates the supervision logic. The top graph shows a sinusoidal wave representing the 'Value of supervised parameter' over time 't'. Two horizontal dashed lines indicate the high limit (HI par. 3203) and the low limit (LO par. 3202). Below this, two relay energization waveforms are shown. 'Case A' shows the relay energizing (output 1) when the parameter value exceeds the high limit and de-energizing when it falls below the low limit. 'Case B' shows the relay energizing when the parameter value falls below the low limit and de-energizing when it rises above the high limit.</p> |                |   |          |

| All parameters |                 |  |          |
|----------------|-----------------|--|----------|
| No.            | Name/Value      | Description  | Def/FbEq |
|                |                 | <p><b>Example 2:</b> If <i>3202 SUPERV 1 LIM LO</i> &gt; <i>3203 SUPERV 1 LIM HI</i></p> <p>The lower limit <i>3203 SUPERV 1 LIM HI</i> remains active until the supervised signal exceeds the higher limit <i>3202 SUPERV 1 LIM LO</i>, making it the active limit. The new limit remains active until the supervised signal drops below the lower limit <i>3203 SUPERV 1 LIM HI</i>, making it the active limit.</p> <p><b>Case A</b> = <i>1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1</i> value is set to <i>SUPRV1 OVER</i>. Relay is energized whenever the supervised signal exceeds the active limit.</p> <p><b>Case B</b> = <i>1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1</i> value is set to <i>SUPRV1 UNDER</i>. Relay is de-energized whenever the supervised signal drops below the active limit.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">Value of supervised parameter      Active limit</p> <p>LO par. <i>3202</i></p> <p>HI par. <i>3203</i></p> <p style="text-align: center;">t</p> <p><b>Case A</b></p> <p>Energized (1)</p> <p>0</p> <p style="text-align: center;">t</p> <p><b>Case B</b></p> <p>Energized (1)</p> <p>0</p> <p style="text-align: center;">t</p> |          |
|                | 0, x...x        | Parameter index in group <i>01 OPERATING DATA</i> . For example, 102 = <i>0102 SPEED</i> . 0 = not selected.   | 1 = 1    |
| 3202           | SUPERV 1 LIM LO | Defines the low limit for the first supervised signal selected by parameter <i>3201 SUPERV 1 PARAM</i> . Supervision wakes up if the value is below the limit.   | -        |
|                | x...x           | Setting range depends on parameter <i>3201 SUPERV 1 PARAM</i> setting.   | -        |
| 3203           | SUPERV 1 LIM HI | Defines the high limit for the first supervised signal selected by parameter <i>3201 SUPERV 1 PARAM</i> . Supervision wakes up if the value is above the limit.  | -        |
|                | x...x           | Setting range depends on parameter <i>3201 SUPERV 1 PARAM</i> setting.   | -        |
| 3204           | SUPERV 2 PARAM  | Selects the second supervised signal. Supervision limits are defined by parameters <i>3205 SUPERV 2 LIM LO</i> and <i>3206 SUPERV 2 LIM HI</i> . See parameter <i>3201 SUPERV 1 PARAM</i> .  | 104      |
|                | x...x           | Parameter index in group <i>01 OPERATING DATA</i> . Eg 102 = <i>0102 SPEED</i> .   | 1 = 1    |
| 3205           | SUPERV 2 LIM LO | Defines the low limit for the second supervised signal selected by parameter <i>3204 SUPERV 2 PARAM</i> . Supervision wakes up if the value is below the limit.  | -        |

| All parameters        |                 |  |                |
|-----------------------|-----------------|--|----------------|
| No.                   | Name/Value      | Description  | Def/FbEq       |
|                       | x...x           | Setting range depends on parameter <i>3204 SUPERV 2 PARAM</i> setting.   | -              |
| 3206                  | SUPERV 2 LIM HI | Defines the high limit for the second supervised signal selected by parameter <i>3204 SUPERV 2 PARAM</i> . Supervision wakes up if the value is above the limit.   | -              |
|                       | x...x           | Setting range depends on parameter <i>3204 SUPERV 2 PARAM</i> setting.   | -              |
| 3207                  | SUPERV 3 PARAM  | Selects the third supervised signal. Supervision limits are defined by parameters <i>3208 SUPERV 3 LIM LO</i> and <i>3209 SUPERV 3 LIM HI</i> . See parameter <i>3201 SUPERV 1 PARAM</i> .   | 105            |
|                       | x...x           | Parameter index in group <i>01 OPERATING DATA</i> . For example, 102 = <i>0102 SPEED</i> .   | 1 = 1          |
| 3208                  | SUPERV 3 LIM LO | Defines the low limit for the third supervised signal selected by parameter <i>3207 SUPERV 3 PARAM</i> . Supervision wakes up if the value is below the limit.   | -              |
|                       | x...x           | Setting range depends on parameter <i>3207 SUPERV 3 PARAM</i> setting.   | -              |
| 3209                  | SUPERV 3 LIM HI | Defines the high limit for the third supervised signal selected by parameter <i>3207 SUPERV 3 PARAM</i> . Supervision wakes up if the value is above the limit.  | -              |
|                       | x...x           | Setting range depends on parameter <i>3207 SUPERV 3 PARAM</i> setting.   | -              |
| <b>33 INFORMATION</b> |                 | Firmware package version, test date etc.   |                |
| 3301                  | FIRMWARE        | Displays the version of the firmware package.  |                |
|                       | 0000...FFFF hex | For example, 241A hex  |                |
| 3302                  | LOADING PACKAGE | Displays the version of the loading package.   | type dependent |
|                       | 2101...21FF hex | 2101 hex = ACS310-03E-<br>2102 hex = ACS310-03U-   |                |
| 3303                  | TEST DATE       | Displays the test date.  | 00.00          |
|                       |                 | Date value in format YY.WW (year, week)  |                |
| 3304                  | DRIVE RATING    | Displays the drive current and voltage ratings.  | 0000 hex       |
|                       | 0000...FFFF hex | Value in format XXXY hex:<br>XXX = Nominal current of the drive in amperes. An "A" indicates decimal point. For example if XXX is 9A7, nominal current is 9.7 A.<br>Y = Nominal voltage of the drive:<br>1 = 1-phase 200...240 V<br>2 = 3-phase 200...240 V<br>4 = 3-phase 380...480 V |                |
| 3305                  | PARAMETER TABLE | Displays the version of the parameter table used in the drive.   |                |
|                       | 0000...FFFF hex | Eg 400E hex  |                |

| All parameters          |                  |   |          |
|-------------------------|------------------|---|----------|
| No.                     | Name/Value       | Description   | Def/FbEq |
| <b>34 PANEL DISPLAY</b> |                  | Selection of actual signals to be displayed on the panel  |          |
| 3401                    | SIGNAL1<br>PARAM | <p>Selects the first signal to be displayed on the control panel in the Output mode.</p> <p>Assistant control panel</p>   | 103      |
|                         | 0, 101...178     | Parameter index in group <i>01 OPERATING DATA</i> . For example, 102 = <i>0102 SPEED</i> . If value is set to 0, no signal is selected.   | 1 = 1    |
|                         | 100              | NOT SELECTED  |          |
| 3402                    | SIGNAL1 MIN      | <p>Defines the minimum value for the signal selected by parameter <i>3401 SIGNAL1 PARAM</i>.</p>  <p><b>Note:</b> Parameter is not effective if parameter <i>3404 OUTPUT1 DSP FORM</i> setting is <i>DIRECT</i>.</p> | -        |
|                         | x...x            | Setting range depends on parameter <i>3401 SIGNAL1 PARAM</i> setting.   | -        |
| 3403                    | SIGNAL1 MAX      | <p>Defines the maximum value for the signal selected by parameter <i>3401 SIGNAL1 PARAM</i>. See the figure for parameter <i>3402 SIGNAL1 MIN</i>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Parameter is not effective if parameter <i>3404 OUTPUT1 DSP FORM</i> setting is 9 (<i>DIRECT</i>).</p>                           | -        |
|                         | x...x            | Setting range depends on parameter <i>3401 SIGNAL1 PARAM</i> setting.   | -        |

| All parameters    |                  |   |   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|-------------------|------------------|---|---|-------------------|---------|-------|------|---------|-----------------|--------|-----------|---------|------------|----------|-------------|----|---|-----------|------|-----|-------|------|--------|-------|
| No.               | Name/Value       | Description   | Def/FbEq  |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
| 3404              | OUTPUT1 DSP FORM | Defines the format for the displayed signal (selected by parameter <i>3401 SIGNAL1 PARAM</i> ).   | <i>DIRECT</i>   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | +/-0             | Signed/Unsigned value. Unit is selected by parameter <i>3405 OUTPUT1 UNIT</i> .<br><b>Example:</b> PI (3.14159)   | 0   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | +/-0.0           |   | 1   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | +/-0.00          |   | 2   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | +/-0.000         |   | 3   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | +0               |   | 4   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | +0.0             |   | 5   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | +0.00            |   | 6   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | +0.000           |   | 7   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   |                  |   | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th><i>3404</i> value</th> <th>Display</th> <th>Range</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>+/-0</td> <td><math>\pm 3</math></td> <td rowspan="4">-32768...+32767</td> </tr> <tr> <td>+/-0.0</td> <td><math>\pm 3.1</math></td> </tr> <tr> <td>+/-0.00</td> <td><math>\pm 3.14</math></td> </tr> <tr> <td>+/-0.000</td> <td><math>\pm 3.142</math></td> </tr> <tr> <td>+0</td> <td>3</td> <td rowspan="4">0...65535</td> </tr> <tr> <td>+0.0</td> <td>3.1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>+0.00</td> <td>3.14</td> </tr> <tr> <td>+0.000</td> <td>3.142</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | <i>3404</i> value | Display | Range | +/-0 | $\pm 3$ | -32768...+32767 | +/-0.0 | $\pm 3.1$ | +/-0.00 | $\pm 3.14$ | +/-0.000 | $\pm 3.142$ | +0 | 3 | 0...65535 | +0.0 | 3.1 | +0.00 | 3.14 | +0.000 | 3.142 |
| <i>3404</i> value | Display          |   | Range   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
| +/-0              | $\pm 3$          | -32768...+32767   |   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
| +/-0.0            | $\pm 3.1$        |   |   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
| +/-0.00           | $\pm 3.14$       |   |   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
| +/-0.000          | $\pm 3.142$      |   |   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
| +0                | 3                | 0...65535   |   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
| +0.0              | 3.1              |   |   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
| +0.00             | 3.14             |   |   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
| +0.000            | 3.142            |   |   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | BAR METER        | Bar graph   | 8   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | DIRECT           | Direct value. Decimal point location and units of measure are the same as for the source signal.<br><b>Note:</b> Parameters <i>3402</i> , <i>3403</i> and <i>3405...3407</i> are not effective.   | 9   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
| 3405              | OUTPUT1 UNIT     | Selects the unit for the displayed signal selected by parameter <i>3401 SIGNAL1 PARAM</i> .<br><b>Note:</b> Parameter is not effective if parameter <i>3404 OUTPUT1 DSP FORM</i> setting is <i>DIRECT</i> .<br><b>Note:</b> Unit selection does not convert values. | Depends on the signal selected with par. <i>3401</i>  |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | NO UNIT          | No unit selected  | 0   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | A                | ampere  | 1   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | V                | volt  | 2   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | Hz               | hertz   | 3   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | %                | percent   | 4   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | s                | second  | 5   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | h                | hour  | 6   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | rpm              | revolutions per minute  | 7   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | kh               | kilohour  | 8   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | °C               | celsius   | 9   |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | lb ft            | pounds per foot   | 10  |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | mA               | milliampere   | 11  |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | mV               | millivolt   | 12  |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | kW               | kilowatt  | 13  |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | W                | watt  | 14  |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | kWh              | kilowatt hour   | 15  |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | °F               | fahrenheit  | 16  |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | hp               | horsepower  | 17  |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |
|                   | MWh              | megawatt hour   | 18  |                   |         |       |      |         |                 |        |           |         |            |          |             |    |   |           |      |     |       |      |        |       |

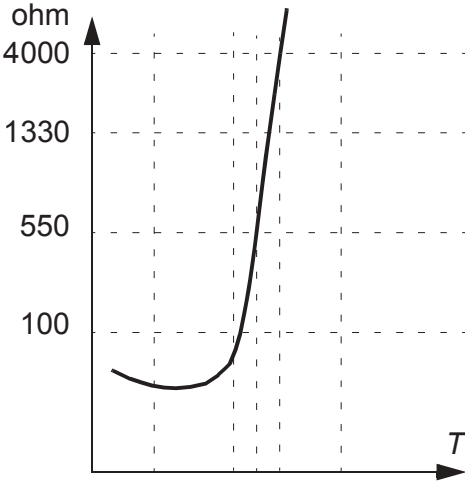
| All parameters |                    |                             |          |
|----------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|----------|
| No.            | Name/Value         | Description                 | Def/FbEq |
|                | m/s                | meters per second           | 19       |
|                | m <sup>3</sup> /h  | cubic meters per hour       | 20       |
|                | dm <sup>3</sup> /s | cubic decimeters per second | 21       |
|                | bar                | bar                         | 22       |
|                | kPa                | kilopascal                  | 23       |
|                | GPM                | gallons per minute          | 24       |
|                | PSI                | pounds per square inch      | 25       |
|                | CFM                | cubic feet per minute       | 26       |
|                | ft                 | foot                        | 27       |
|                | MGD                | millions of gallons per day | 28       |
|                | inHg               | inches of mercury           | 29       |
|                | FPM                | feet per minute             | 30       |
|                | kb/s               | kilobytes per second        | 31       |
|                | kHz                | kilohertz                   | 32       |
|                | ohm                | ohm                         | 33       |
|                | ppm                | pulses per minute           | 34       |
|                | pps                | pulses per second           | 35       |
|                | l/s                | liters per second           | 36       |
|                | l/min              | liters per minute           | 37       |
|                | l/h                | liters per hour             | 38       |
|                | m <sup>3</sup> /s  | cubic meters per second     | 39       |
|                | m <sup>3</sup> /m  | cubic meters per minute     | 40       |
|                | kg/s               | kilograms per second        | 41       |
|                | kg/m               | kilograms per minute        | 42       |
|                | kg/h               | kilograms per hour          | 43       |
|                | mbar               | millibar                    | 44       |
|                | Pa                 | pascal                      | 45       |
|                | GPS                | gallons per second          | 46       |
|                | gal/s              | gallons per second          | 47       |
|                | gal/m              | gallons per minute          | 48       |
|                | gal/h              | gallons per hour            | 49       |
|                | ft <sup>3</sup> /s | cubic feet per second       | 50       |
|                | ft <sup>3</sup> /m | cubic feet per minute       | 51       |
|                | ft <sup>3</sup> /h | cubic feet per hour         | 52       |
|                | lb/s               | pounds per second           | 53       |
|                | lb/m               | pounds per minute           | 54       |
|                | lb/h               | pounds per hour             | 55       |
|                | FPS                | feet per second             | 56       |
|                | ft/s               | feet per second             | 57       |
|                | inH <sub>2</sub> O | inches of water             | 58       |



| All parameters |             |   |          |
|----------------|-------------|---|----------|
| No.            | Name/Value  | Description   | Def/FbEq |
|                | in wg       | inches of water gauge   | 59       |
|                | ft wg       | feet on water gauge   | 60       |
|                | lbsi        | pounds per squared inch   | 61       |
|                | ms          | millisecond   | 62       |
|                | Mrev        | millions of revolutions   | 63       |
|                | d           | days  | 64       |
|                | inWC        | inches of water column  | 65       |
|                | m/min       | meters per minute   | 66       |
|                | Nm          | Newton meter  | 67       |
|                | Km3/h       | thousand cubic meters per hour  | 68       |
|                | min         | Reserved for solar pumps  | 69       |
|                | m3          |   | 70       |
|                | m6          |   | 71       |
|                | Reserved    |   | 72...116 |
|                | %ref        | reference in percentage   | 117      |
|                | %act        | actual value in percentage  | 118      |
|                | %dev        | deviation in percentage   | 119      |
|                | % LD        | load in percentage  | 120      |
|                | % SP        | set point in percentage   | 121      |
|                | %FBK        | feedback in percentage  | 122      |
|                | Iout        | output current (in percentage)  | 123      |
|                | Vout        | output voltage  | 124      |
|                | Fout        | output frequency  | 125      |
|                | Tout        | output torque   | 126      |
|                | Vdc         | DC voltage  | 127      |
| 3406           | OUTPUT1 MIN | Sets the minimum display value for the signal selected by parameter <i>3401 SIGNAL1 PARAM</i> . See parameter <i>3402 SIGNAL1 MIN</i> .<br><b>Note:</b> Parameter is not effective if parameter <i>3404 OUTPUT1 DSP FORM</i> setting is <i>DIRECT</i> . | -        |
|                | x...x       | Setting range depends on parameter <i>3401 SIGNAL1 PARAM</i> setting.   | -        |
| 3407           | OUTPUT1 MAX | Sets the maximum display value for the signal selected by parameter <i>3401 SIGNAL1 PARAM</i> . See parameter <i>3402 SIGNAL1 MIN</i> .<br><b>Note:</b> Parameter is not effective if parameter <i>3404 OUTPUT1 DSP FORM</i> setting is <i>DIRECT</i> . | -        |
|                | x...x       | Setting range depends on parameter <i>3401 SIGNAL1 PARAM</i> setting.   | -        |

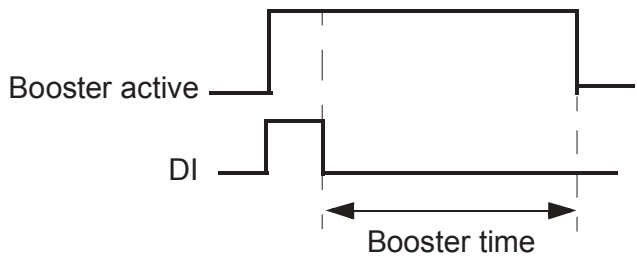
| All parameters |                     |   |               |
|----------------|---------------------|---|---------------|
| No.            | Name/Value          | Description   | Def/FbEq      |
| 3408           | SIGNAL2<br>PARAM    | Selects the second signal to be displayed on the control panel in the Output mode. See parameter <a href="#">3401 SIGNAL1 PARAM</a> .                     | 104           |
|                | 0, 101...178        | Parameter index in group <a href="#">01 OPERATING DATA</a> . For example, 102 = <a href="#">0102 SPEED</a> . If value is set to 0, no signal is selected. | 1 = 1         |
| 3409           | SIGNAL2 MIN         | Defines the minimum value for the signal selected by parameter <a href="#">3408 SIGNAL2 PARAM</a> . See parameter <a href="#">3402 SIGNAL1 MIN</a> .      | -             |
|                | x...x               | Setting range depends on parameter <a href="#">3408 SIGNAL2 PARAM</a> setting.  | -             |
| 3410           | SIGNAL2 MAX         | Defines the maximum value for the signal selected by parameter <a href="#">3408 SIGNAL2 PARAM</a> . See parameter <a href="#">3402 SIGNAL1 MIN</a> .      | -             |
|                | x...x               | Setting range depends on parameter <a href="#">3408 SIGNAL2 PARAM</a> setting.  | -             |
| 3411           | OUTPUT2 DSP<br>FORM | Defines the format for the displayed signal selected by parameter <a href="#">3408 SIGNAL2 PARAM</a> .  | <i>DIRECT</i> |
|                |                     | See parameter <a href="#">3404 OUTPUT1 DSP FORM</a> .   | -             |
| 3412           | OUTPUT2<br>UNIT     | Selects the unit for the displayed signal selected by parameter <a href="#">3408 SIGNAL2 PARAM</a> .  | -             |
|                |                     | See parameter <a href="#">3405 OUTPUT1 UNIT</a> .   | -             |
| 3413           | OUTPUT2 MIN         | Sets the minimum display value for the signal selected by parameter <a href="#">3408 SIGNAL2 PARAM</a> . See parameter <a href="#">3402 SIGNAL1 MIN</a> . | -             |
|                | x...x               | Setting range depends on parameter <a href="#">3408 SIGNAL2 PARAM</a> setting.  | -             |
| 3414           | OUTPUT2<br>MAX      | Sets the maximum display value for the signal selected by parameter <a href="#">3408 SIGNAL2 PARAM</a> . See parameter <a href="#">3402 SIGNAL1 MIN</a> . | -             |
|                | x...x               | Setting range depends on parameter <a href="#">3408 SIGNAL2 PARAM</a> setting.  | -             |
| 3415           | SIGNAL3<br>PARAM    | Selects the third signal to be displayed on the control panel in the Output mode. See parameter <a href="#">3401 SIGNAL1 PARAM</a> .                      | 105           |
|                | 0, 101...178        | Parameter index in group <a href="#">01 OPERATING DATA</a> . For example, 102 = <a href="#">0102 SPEED</a> . If value is set to 0, no signal is selected. | 1 = 1         |
| 3416           | SIGNAL3 MIN         | Defines the minimum value for the signal selected by parameter <a href="#">3415 SIGNAL3 PARAM</a> . See parameter <a href="#">3402 SIGNAL1 MIN</a> .      | -             |
|                | x...x               | Setting range depends on parameter <a href="#">3415 SIGNAL3 PARAM</a> setting.  | -             |
| 3417           | SIGNAL3 MAX         | Defines the maximum value for the signal selected by parameter <a href="#">3415 SIGNAL3 PARAM</a> . See parameter <a href="#">3402 SIGNAL1 MIN</a> .      | -             |
|                | x...x               | Setting range depends on parameter <a href="#">3415 SIGNAL3 PARAM</a> setting.  | -             |
| 3418           | OUTPUT3 DSP<br>FORM | Defines the format for the displayed signal selected by parameter <a href="#">3415 SIGNAL3 PARAM</a> .  | <i>DIRECT</i> |

| All parameters            |              |  |             |
|---------------------------|--------------|--|-------------|
| No.                       | Name/Value   | Description  | Def/FbEq    |
|                           |              | See parameter <a href="#">3404 OUTPUT1 DSP FORM</a> .  | -           |
| 3419                      | OUTPUT3 UNIT | Selects the unit for the displayed signal selected by parameter <a href="#">3415 SIGNAL3 PARAM</a> .   | -           |
|                           |              | See parameter <a href="#">3405 OUTPUT1 UNIT</a> .  | -           |
| 3420                      | OUTPUT3 MIN  | Sets the minimum display value for the signal selected by parameter <a href="#">3415 SIGNAL3 PARAM</a> . See parameter <a href="#">3402 SIGNAL1 MIN</a> .  | -           |
|                           | x...x        | Setting range depends on parameter <a href="#">3415 SIGNAL3 PARAM</a> setting.   | -           |
| 3421                      | OUTPUT3 MAX  | Sets the maximum display value for the signal selected by parameter <a href="#">3415 SIGNAL3 PARAM</a> . See parameter <a href="#">3402 SIGNAL1 MIN</a> .  | -           |
|                           | x...x        | Setting range depends on parameter <a href="#">3415 SIGNAL3 PARAM</a> setting.   | -           |
| <b>35 MOTOR TEMP MEAS</b> |              | Motor temperature measurement. See section <a href="#">Motor temperature measurement through the standard I/O</a> on page <a href="#">145</a> .  |             |
| 3501                      | SENSOR TYPE  | Activates the motor temperature measurement function and selects the sensor type. See also parameter group <a href="#">15 ANALOG OUTPUTS</a> .   | <i>NONE</i> |
|                           | NONE         | The function is inactive.  | 0           |
|                           | 1 x PT100    | The function is active. The temperature is measured with one Pt100 sensor. Analog output AO feeds constant current through the sensor. The sensor resistance increases as the motor temperature rises, as does the voltage over the sensor. The temperature measurement function reads the voltage through analog input AI1/2 and converts it to degrees centigrade. | 1           |
|                           | 2 x PT100    | The function is active. Temperature is measured using two Pt100 sensors. See selection <a href="#">1 x PT100</a> .   | 2           |
|                           | 3 x PT100    | The function is active. Temperature is measured using three Pt100 sensors. See selection <a href="#">1 x PT100</a> .   | 3           |

| All parameters |                 |   |             |            |        |              |           |               |   |
|----------------|-----------------|---|-------------|------------|--------|--------------|-----------|---------------|---|
| No.            | Name/Value      | Description   | Def/FbEq    |            |        |              |           |               |   |
|                | PTC             | <p>The function is active. The temperature is supervised using one PTC sensor. Analog output AO feeds constant current through the sensor. The resistance of the sensor increases sharply as the motor temperature rises over the PTC reference temperature (<math>T_{ref}</math>), as does the voltage over the resistor. The temperature measurement function reads the voltage through analog input AI1/2 and converts it into ohms. The figure below shows typical PTC sensor resistance values as a function of the motor operating temperature.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Temperature</th> <th>Resistance</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Normal</td> <td>0...1.5 kohm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Excessive</td> <td><math>\geq 4</math> kohm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>  | Temperature | Resistance | Normal | 0...1.5 kohm | Excessive | $\geq 4$ kohm | 4 |
| Temperature    | Resistance      |   |             |            |        |              |           |               |   |
| Normal         | 0...1.5 kohm    |   |             |            |        |              |           |               |   |
| Excessive      | $\geq 4$ kohm   |   |             |            |        |              |           |               |   |
|                | THERM(0)        | The function is active. Motor temperature is monitored using a PTC sensor (see selection <i>PTC</i> ) connected to drive through a normally closed thermistor relay connected to a digital input. 0 = motor overtemperature.  | 5           |            |        |              |           |               |   |
|                | THERM(1)        | The function is active. Motor temperature is monitored using a PTC sensor (see selection <i>PTC</i> ) connected to drive through a normally open thermistor relay connected to a digital input. 1 = motor overtemperature.  | 6           |            |        |              |           |               |   |
| 3502           | INPUT SELECTION | Selects the source for the motor temperature measurement signal.  | <i>AI1</i>  |            |        |              |           |               |   |
|                | AI1             | Analog input AI1. Used when Pt100 or PTC sensor is selected for the temperature measurement.  | 1           |            |        |              |           |               |   |
|                | AI2             | Analog input AI2. Used when Pt100 or PTC sensor is selected for the temperature measurement   | 2           |            |        |              |           |               |   |
|                | DI1             | Digital input DI1. Used when parameter <i>3501 SENSOR TYPE</i> value is set to <i>THERM(0)/THERM(1)</i> .   | 3           |            |        |              |           |               |   |
|                | DI2             | Digital input DI2. Used when parameter <i>3501 SENSOR TYPE</i> value is set to <i>THERM(0)/THERM(1)</i> .   | 4           |            |        |              |           |               |   |
|                | DI3             | Digital input DI3. Used when parameter <i>3501 SENSOR TYPE</i> value is set to <i>THERM(0)/THERM(1)</i> .   | 5           |            |        |              |           |               |   |
|                | DI4             | Digital input DI4. Used when parameter <i>3501 SENSOR TYPE</i> value is set to <i>THERM(0)/THERM(1)</i> .   | 6           |            |        |              |           |               |   |

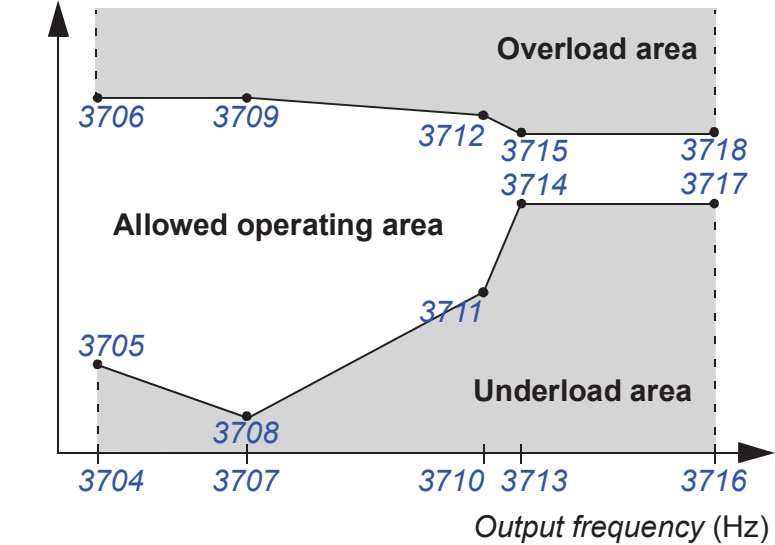
| All parameters            |               |   |                |
|---------------------------|---------------|---|----------------|
| No.                       | Name/Value    | Description   | Def/FbEq       |
|                           | DI5           | Digital input DI5. Used when parameter <i>3501 SENSOR TYPE</i> value is set to <i>THERM(0)/THERM(1)</i> .   | 7              |
| 3503                      | ALARM LIMIT   | Defines the alarm limit for motor temperature measurement. Alarm <i>MOTOR TEMP</i> indication is given when the limit is exceeded. When parameter <i>3501 SENSOR TYPE</i> value is set to <i>THERM(0)/THERM(1)</i> : 1 = alarm.       | 0              |
|                           | x...x         | Alarm limit   | -              |
| 3504                      | FAULT LIMIT   | Defines the fault trip limit for motor temperature measurement. The drive trips on fault <i>MOT OVERTEMP</i> when the limit is exceeded. When parameter <i>3501 SENSOR TYPE</i> value is set to <i>THERM(0)/THERM(1)</i> : 1 = fault. | 0              |
|                           | x...x         | Fault limit   | -              |
| 3505                      | AO EXCITATION | Enables current feed from analog output AO. Parameter setting overrides parameter group <i>15 ANALOG OUTPUTS</i> settings.<br>With PTC the output current is 1.6 mA.<br>With Pt100 the output current is 9.1 mA.                      | <i>DISABLE</i> |
|                           | DISABLE       | Disabled  | 0              |
|                           | ENABLE        | Enabled   | 1              |
| <b>36 TIMED FUNCTIONS</b> |               | Time periods 1 to 4 and booster signal. See section <i>Timed functions</i> on page 147.   |                |
| 3601                      | TIMERS ENABLE | Selects the source for the timed function enable signal.  | <i>NOT SEL</i> |
|                           | NOT SEL       | Timed function is not selected.   | 0              |
|                           | DI1           | Digital input DI. Timed function enable on the rising edge of DI1.  | 1              |
|                           | DI2           | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 2              |
|                           | DI3           | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 3              |
|                           | DI4           | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 4              |
|                           | DI5           | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 5              |
|                           | ACTIVE        | Timed function is always enabled.   | 7              |
|                           | DI1 CMODE     | Timed function enable on the rising edge of DI1. Timed function is in continuous mode, in which the start date can be different from the stop date.   | 11             |
|                           | DI2 CMODE     | See selection <i>DI1 CMODE</i> .  | 12             |
|                           | DI3 CMODE     | See selection <i>DI1 CMODE</i> .  | 13             |
|                           | DI4 CMODE     | See selection <i>DI1 CMODE</i> .  | 14             |
|                           | DI5 CMODE     | See selection <i>DI1 CMODE</i> .  | 15             |
|                           | CONT MODE     | Timed function enabled in continuous mode, in which the start date can be different from the stop date.   | 17             |
|                           | DI1(INV)      | Inverted digital input DI1. Timed function enable on the falling edge of DI1.   | -1             |
|                           | DI2(INV)      | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -2             |
|                           | DI3(INV)      | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -3             |
|                           | DI4(INV)      | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -4             |

| All parameters |                         |  |                        |
|----------------|-------------------------|--|------------------------|
| No.            | Name/Value              | Description  | Def/FbEq               |
|                | DI5(INV)                | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .   | -5                     |
|                | DI1(INV) CM             | Timed function enable on the falling edge of DI1. Timed function is in continuous mode, in which the start date can be different from the stop date.                               | -11                    |
|                | DI2(INV) CM             | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV) CM</a> .  | -12                    |
|                | DI3(INV) CM             | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV) CM</a> .  | -13                    |
|                | DI4(INV) CM             | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV) CM</a> .  | -14                    |
|                | DI5(INV) CM             | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV) CM</a> .  | -15                    |
| 3602           | START TIME 1            | Defines the daily start time 1. The time can be changed in 2-second steps.   | 00:00:00               |
|                | 00:00:00...<br>23:59:58 | hours:minutes:seconds.<br><b>Example:</b> If parameter value is set to 07:00:00, timed function 1 is activated at 7:00 (7 a.m).  |                        |
| 3603           | STOP TIME 1             | Defines the daily stop time 1. The time can be changed in 2-second steps.  | 00:00:00               |
|                | 00:00:00...<br>23:59:58 | hours:minutes:seconds.<br><b>Example:</b> If parameter value is set to 18:00:00, timed function 1 is deactivated at 18:00 (6 p.m).   |                        |
| 3604           | START DAY 1             | Defines the start day 1.   | <a href="#">MONDAY</a> |
|                | MONDAY                  | <b>Example:</b> If parameter value is set to <a href="#">MONDAY</a> , timed function 1 is active from Monday midnight (00:00:00).  | 1                      |
|                | TUESDAY                 |  | 2                      |
|                | WEDNESDAY               |  | 3                      |
|                | THURSDAY                |  | 4                      |
|                | FRIDAY                  |  | 5                      |
|                | SATURDAY                |  | 6                      |
|                | SUNDAY                  |  | 7                      |
| 3605           | STOP DAY 1              | Defines the stop day 1.  | <a href="#">MONDAY</a> |
|                |                         | See parameter <a href="#">3604 START DAY 1</a> .<br><b>Example:</b> If parameter is set to <a href="#">FRIDAY</a> , timed function 1 is deactivated on Friday midnight (23:59:58). |                        |
| 3606           | START TIME 2            | See parameter <a href="#">3602 START TIME 1</a> .  |                        |
|                |                         | See parameter <a href="#">3602 START TIME 1</a> .  |                        |
| 3607           | STOP TIME 2             | See parameter <a href="#">3603 STOP TIME 1</a> .   |                        |
|                |                         | See parameter <a href="#">3603 STOP TIME 1</a> .   |                        |
| 3608           | START DAY 2             | See parameter <a href="#">3604 START DAY 1</a> .   |                        |
|                |                         | See parameter <a href="#">3604 START DAY 1</a> .   |                        |
| 3609           | STOP DAY 2              | See parameter <a href="#">3605 STOP DAY 1</a> .  |                        |
|                |                         | See parameter <a href="#">3605 STOP DAY 1</a> .  |                        |
| 3610           | START TIME 3            | See parameter <a href="#">3602 START TIME 1</a> .  |                        |
|                |                         | See parameter <a href="#">3602 START TIME 1</a> .  |                        |
| 3611           | STOP TIME 3             | See parameter <a href="#">3603 STOP TIME 1</a> .   |                        |
|                |                         | See parameter <a href="#">3603 STOP TIME 1</a> .   |                        |
| 3612           | START DAY 3             | See parameter <a href="#">3604 START DAY 1</a> .   |                        |

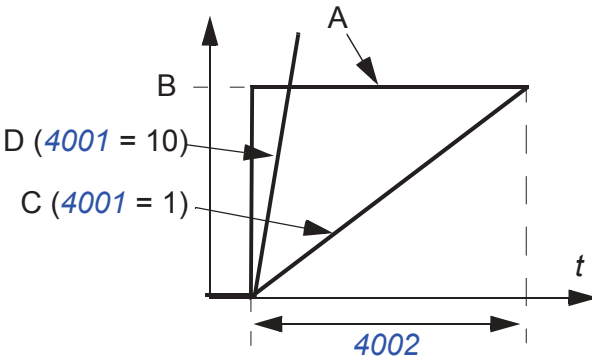
| All parameters |                         |   |                |
|----------------|-------------------------|---|----------------|
| No.            | Name/Value              | Description   | Def/FbEq       |
|                |                         | See parameter <a href="#">3604 START DAY 1</a> .  |                |
| 3613           | STOP DAY 3              | See parameter <a href="#">3605 STOP DAY 1</a> .   |                |
|                |                         | See parameter <a href="#">3605 STOP DAY 1</a> .   |                |
| 3614           | START TIME 4            | See parameter <a href="#">3602 START TIME 1</a> .   |                |
|                |                         | See parameter <a href="#">3602 START TIME 1</a> .   |                |
| 3615           | STOP TIME 4             | See parameter <a href="#">3603 STOP TIME 1</a> .  |                |
|                |                         | See parameter <a href="#">3603 STOP TIME 1</a> .  |                |
| 3616           | START DAY 4             | See parameter <a href="#">3604 START DAY 1</a> .  |                |
|                |                         | See parameter <a href="#">3604 START DAY 1</a> .  |                |
| 3617           | STOP DAY 4              | See parameter <a href="#">3605 STOP DAY 1</a> .   |                |
|                |                         | See parameter <a href="#">3605 STOP DAY 1</a> .   |                |
| 3622           | BOOSTER SEL             | Selects the source for the booster activation signal.   | <i>NOT SEL</i> |
|                | NOT SEL                 | No booster activation signal  | 0              |
|                | DI1                     | Digital input DI1. 1 = active, 0 = inactive.  | 1              |
|                | DI2                     | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .   | 2              |
|                | DI3                     | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .   | 3              |
|                | DI4                     | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .   | 4              |
|                | DI5                     | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .   | 5              |
|                | DI1(INV)                | Inverted digital input DI1. 0 = active, 1 = inactive.   | -1             |
|                | DI2(INV)                | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .  | -2             |
|                | DI3(INV)                | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .  | -3             |
|                | DI4(INV)                | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .  | -4             |
|                | DI5(INV)                | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .  | -5             |
| 3623           | BOOSTER TIME            | Defines the time inside which the booster is deactivated after the booster activation signal is switched off.   | 00:00:00       |
|                | 00:00:00...<br>23:59:58 | hours:minutes:seconds<br><b>Example:</b> If parameter <a href="#">3622 BOOSTER SEL</a> is set to <a href="#">DI1</a> and <a href="#">3623 BOOSTER TIME</a> is set to 01:30:00, the booster is active for 1 hour and 30 minutes after digital input DI is deactivated. |                |
|                |                         |   |                |
| 3626           | TIMED FUNC 1 SRC        | Selects the time periods for <a href="#">TIMED FUNC 1 SRC</a> . Timed function can consist of 0...4 time periods and a booster.   | <i>NOT SEL</i> |
|                | NOT SEL                 | No time periods selected  | 0              |
|                | T1                      | Time period 1   | 1              |
|                | T2                      | Time period 2   | 2              |

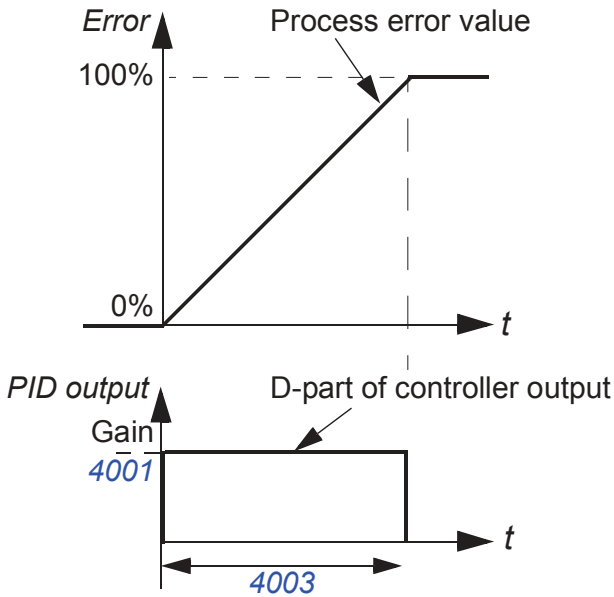
| All parameters |                  |  |          |
|----------------|------------------|--|----------|
| No.            | Name/Value       | Description  | Def/FbEq |
|                | T1+T2            | Time periods 1 and 2   | 3        |
|                | T3               | Time period 3  | 4        |
|                | T1+T3            | Time periods 1 and 3   | 5        |
|                | T2+T3            | Time periods 2 and 3   | 6        |
|                | T1+T2+T3         | Time periods 1, 2 and 3  | 7        |
|                | T4               | Time period 4  | 8        |
|                | T1+T4            | Time periods 1 and 4   | 9        |
|                | T2+T4            | Time periods 2 and 4   | 10       |
|                | T1+T2+T4         | Time periods 1, 2 and 4  | 11       |
|                | T3+T4            | Time periods 4 and 3   | 12       |
|                | T1+T3+T4         | Time periods 1, 3 and 4  | 13       |
|                | T2+T3+T4         | Time periods 2, 3 and 4  | 14       |
|                | T1+T2+T3+T4      | Time periods 1, 2, 3 and 4   | 15       |
|                | BOOSTER          | Booster  | 16       |
|                | T1+B             | Booster and time period 1  | 17       |
|                | T2+B             | Booster and time period 2  | 18       |
|                | T1+T2+B          | Booster and time periods 1 and 2   | 19       |
|                | T3+B             | Booster and time period 3  | 20       |
|                | T1+T3+B          | Booster and time periods 1 and 3   | 21       |
|                | T2+T3+B          | Booster and time periods 2 and 3   | 22       |
|                | T1+T2+T3+B       | Booster and time periods 1, 2 and 3  | 23       |
|                | T4+B             | Booster and time period 4  | 24       |
|                | T1+T4+B          | Booster and time periods 1 and 4   | 25       |
|                | T2+T4+B          | Booster and time periods 2 and 4   | 26       |
|                | T1+T2+T4+B       | Booster and time periods 1, 2 and 4  | 27       |
|                | T3+T4+B          | Booster and time periods 3 and 4   | 28       |
|                | T1+T3+T4+B       | Booster and time periods 1, 3 and 4  | 29       |
|                | T2+T3+T4+B       | Booster and time periods 2, 3 and 4  | 30       |
|                | T1+2+3+4+B       | Booster and time periods 1, 2, 3 and 4   | 31       |
|                | ALTERNATING      | Alternating time period is enabled. All other time periods T1, T2, T1+T2 and T3 are ignored (for the specific timed function). | 32       |
|                | ALT+BOOSTER      | Alternating time period and booster timer are enabled simultaneously.  | 48       |
| 3627           | TIMED FUNC 2 SRC | See parameter <a href="#">3626 TIMED FUNC 1 SRC</a> .  |          |
|                |                  | See parameter <a href="#">3626 TIMED FUNC 1 SRC</a> .  |          |
| 3628           | TIMED FUNC 3 SRC | See parameter <a href="#">3626 TIMED FUNC 1 SRC</a> .  |          |
|                |                  | See parameter <a href="#">3626 TIMED FUNC 1 SRC</a> .  |          |

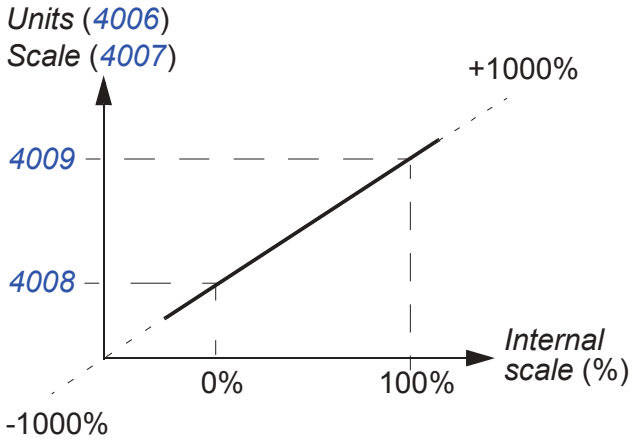


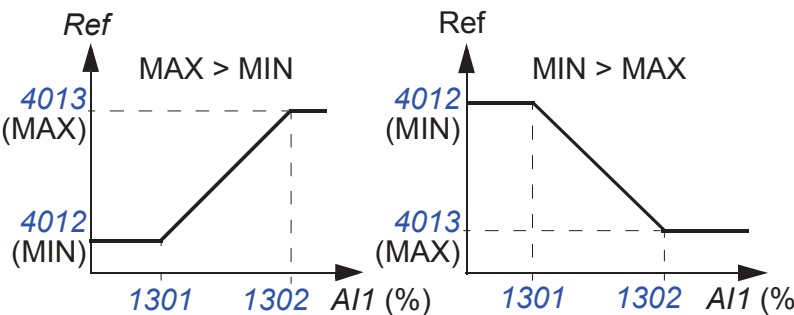
| All parameters            |                   |  |                |
|---------------------------|-------------------|--|----------------|
| No.                       | Name/Value        | Description  | Def/FbEq       |
| 3629                      | TIMED FUNC 4 SRC  | See parameter <a href="#">3626 TIMED FUNC 1 SRC</a> .  |                |
|                           |                   | See parameter <a href="#">3626 TIMED FUNC 1 SRC</a> .  |                |
| 3630                      | ALTERNATING TIMER | Defines the time interval for the timer to switch between On (1) and Off (0) states (starting from the On state), based on the selections <a href="#">ALTERNATING</a> or <a href="#">ALT+BOOSTER</a> in the timer source parameters <a href="#">3626...3629</a> . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><a href="#">ALTERNATING</a>: Alternating time period is enabled. The time periods <math>T1</math>, <math>T2</math>, <math>T1+T2</math> and <math>T3</math> are ignored, for the specific timed function.</li> <li><a href="#">ALT+BOOSTER</a>: Alternating time period and booster times are enabled simultaneously.</li> </ul> | 0.0 h          |
|                           | 0.0...1000.0 h    | Time interval  |                |
| <b>37 USER LOAD CURVE</b> |                   |  |                |
|                           |                   | Defines supervision of a user adjustable load curve (motor torque as a function of frequency). The curve is defined by five points. See section <a href="#">User load curve</a> on page <a href="#">150</a> .  |                |
| 3701                      | USER LOAD C MODE  | Defines supervision mode for the user adjustable load curve. <p>Motor torque (%)</p>  <p>Output frequency (Hz)</p>  | <i>NOT SEL</i> |
|                           | NOT SEL           | Supervision not active   | 0              |
|                           | UNDERLOAD         | Supervision for the torque dropping below the underload curve  | 1              |
|                           | OVERLOAD          | Supervision for the torque exceeding the overload curve  | 2              |
|                           | BOTH              | Supervision for the torque dropping below the underload curve or exceeding the overload curve  | 3              |
| 3702                      | USER LOAD C FUNC  | Defines the action wanted during load supervision  | <i>FAULT</i>   |
|                           | FAULT             | A fault is generated when the condition defined by <a href="#">3701 USER LOAD C MODE</a> has been valid longer than the time set by <a href="#">3703 USER LOAD C TIME</a> .  | 1              |
|                           | ALARM             | An alarm is generated when the condition defined by <a href="#">3701 USER LOAD C MODE</a> has been valid longer than half of the time set by <a href="#">3703 USER LOAD C TIME</a> .   | 2              |

| All parameters |                  |   |          |
|----------------|------------------|---|----------|
| No.            | Name/Value       | Description   | Def/FbEq |
| 3703           | USER LOAD C TIME | Defines the time limit for generating a fault. Half of this time is used as the limit for generating an alarm.                        | 20 s     |
|                | 10...400 s       | Time  | 1 = 1 s  |
| 3704           | LOAD FREQ 1      | Defines the frequency value of the first load curve definition point. Must be smaller than <a href="#">3707 LOAD FREQ 2</a> .         | 5 Hz     |
|                | 0...500 Hz       | Frequency   | 1 = 1 Hz |
| 3705           | LOAD TORQ LOW 1  | Defines the torque value of the first underload curve definition point. Must be smaller than <a href="#">3706 LOAD TORQ HIGH 1</a> .  | 10%      |
|                | 0...600%         | Torque  | 1 = 1%   |
| 3706           | LOAD TORQ HIGH 1 | Defines the torque value of the first overload curve definition point   | 300%     |
|                | 0...600%         | Torque  | 1 = 1%   |
| 3707           | LOAD FREQ 2      | Defines the frequency value of the second load curve definition point. Must be smaller than <a href="#">3710 LOAD FREQ 3</a> .        | 25 Hz    |
|                | 0...500 Hz       | Frequency   | 1 = 1 Hz |
| 3708           | LOAD TORQ LOW 2  | Defines the torque value of the second underload curve definition point. Must be smaller than <a href="#">3709 LOAD TORQ HIGH 2</a> . | 15%      |
|                | 0...600%         | Torque  | 1 = 1%   |
| 3709           | LOAD TORQ HIGH 2 | Defines the torque value of the second overload curve definition point  | 300%     |
|                | 0...600%         | Torque  | 1 = 1%   |
| 3710           | LOAD FREQ 3      | Defines the frequency value of the third load curve definition point. Must be smaller than <a href="#">3713 LOAD FREQ 4</a> .         | 43 Hz    |
|                | 0...500 Hz       | Frequency   | 1 = 1 Hz |
| 3711           | LOAD TORQ LOW 3  | Defines the torque value of the third underload curve definition point. Must be smaller than <a href="#">3712 LOAD TORQ HIGH 3</a> .  | 25%      |
|                | 0...600%         | Torque  | 1 = 1%   |
| 3712           | LOAD TORQ HIGH 3 | Defines the torque value of the third overload curve definition point   | 300%     |
|                | 0...600%         | Torque  | 1 = 1%   |
| 3713           | LOAD FREQ 4      | Defines the frequency value of the fourth load curve definition point. Must be smaller than <a href="#">3716 LOAD FREQ 5</a> .        | 50 Hz    |
|                | 0...500 Hz       | Frequency   | 1 = 1 Hz |
| 3714           | LOAD TORQ LOW 4  | Defines the torque value of the fourth underload curve definition point. Must be smaller than <a href="#">3715 LOAD TORQ HIGH 4</a> . | 30%      |
|                | 0...600%         | Torque  | 1 = 1%   |
| 3715           | LOAD TORQ HIGH 4 | Defines the torque value of the fourth overload curve definition point  | 300%     |
|                | 0...600%         | Torque  | 1 = 1%   |
| 3716           | LOAD FREQ 5      | Defines the frequency value of the fifth load curve definition point  | 500 Hz   |
|                | 0...500 Hz       | Frequency   | 1 = 1 Hz |

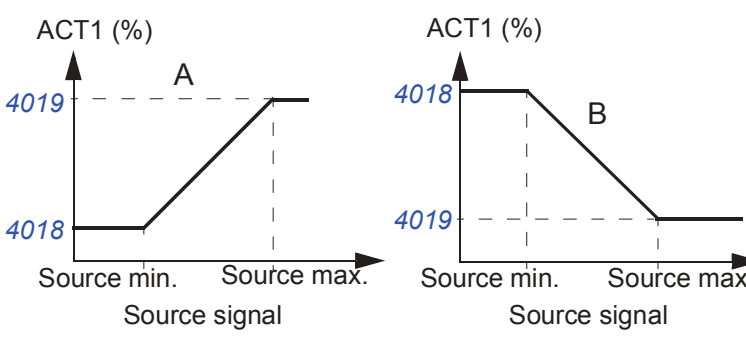
| All parameters              |                                 |   |           |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|---|-----------|
| No.                         | Name/Value                      | Description   | Def/FbEq  |
| 3717                        | LOAD TORQ LOW 5                 | Defines the torque value of the fifth underload curve definition point. Must be smaller than <a href="#">3718 LOAD TORQ HIGH 5</a> .  | 30%       |
|                             | 0...600%                        | Torque  | 1 = 1%    |
| 3718                        | LOAD TORQ HIGH 5                | Defines the torque value of the fifth overload curve definition point   | 300%      |
|                             | 0...600%                        | Torque  | 1 = 1%    |
| <b>40 PROCESS PID SET 1</b> |                                 |   |           |
| 4001                        | GAIN                            | Defines the gain for the process PID controller. High gain may cause speed oscillation.   | 1.0       |
|                             | 0.1...100.0                     | Gain. When value is set to 0.1, the PID controller output changes one-tenth as much as the error value. When value is set to 100, the PID controller output changes one hundred times as much as the error value.   | 1 = 0.1   |
| 4002                        | INTEGRATION TIME                | <p>Defines the integration time for the process PID1 controller. The integration time defines the rate at which the controller output changes when the error value is constant. The shorter the integration time, the faster the continuous error value is corrected. Too short an integration time makes the control unstable.</p> <p>A = Error<br/>B = Error value step<br/>C = Controller output with gain = 1<br/>D = Controller output with gain = 10</p>  | 60.0 s    |
|                             | 0.0 = NOT SEL<br>0.1...3600.0 s | Integration time. If parameter value is set to zero, integration (I-part of the PID controller) is disabled.  | 1 = 0.1 s |

| All parameters |                  |   |           |
|----------------|------------------|---|-----------|
| No.            | Name/Value       | Description   | Def/FbEq  |
| 4003           | DERIVATION TIME  | <p>Defines the derivation time for the process PID controller. Derivative action boosts the controller output if the error value changes. The longer the derivation time, the more the speed controller output is boosted during the change. If the derivation time is set to zero, the controller works as a PI controller, otherwise as a PID controller.</p> <p>The derivation makes the control more responsive for disturbances.</p> <p>The derivative is filtered with a 1-pole filter. Filter time constant is defined by parameter <a href="#">4004 PID DERIV FILTER</a>.</p>  | 0.0 s     |
|                | 0.0...10.0 s     | Derivation time. If parameter value is set to zero, the derivative part of the PID controller is disabled.  | 1 = 0.1 s |
| 4004           | PID DERIV FILTER | Defines the filter time constant for the derivative part of the process PID controller. Increasing the filter time smooths the derivative and reduces noise.  | 1.0 s     |
|                | 0.0...10.0 s     | Filter time constant. If parameter value is set to zero, the derivative filter is disabled.   | 1 = 0.1 s |
| 4005           | ERROR VALUE INV  | Selects the relationship between the feedback signal and drive speed.   | NO        |
|                | NO               | Normal: A decrease in feedback signal increases drive speed. Error = Reference - Feedback   | 0         |
|                | YES              | Inverted: A decrease in feedback signal decreases drive speed. Error = Feedback - Reference   | 1         |
| 4006           | UNITS            | Selects the unit for PID controller actual values.  | %         |
|                | 0...128          | See parameter <a href="#">3405 OUTPUT1 UNIT</a> selections.   |           |
| 4007           | UNIT SCALE       | Defines the decimal point location for PID controller actual values.  | 1         |

| All parameters |               |   |            |       |         |   |       |   |   |       |     |   |       |      |   |       |       |   |       |        |       |
|----------------|---------------|---|------------|-------|---------|---|-------|---|---|-------|-----|---|-------|------|---|-------|-------|---|-------|--------|-------|
| No.            | Name/Value    | Description   | Def/FbEq   |       |         |   |       |   |   |       |     |   |       |      |   |       |       |   |       |        |       |
| 0...4          |               | <b>Example: PI (3.141593)</b> <table border="1" style="margin: 10px auto;"> <thead> <tr> <th>4007 value</th> <th>Entry</th> <th>Display</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>00003</td> <td>3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>00031</td> <td>3.1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>00314</td> <td>3.14</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>03142</td> <td>3.142</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>31416</td> <td>3.1416</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | 4007 value | Entry | Display | 0 | 00003 | 3 | 1 | 00031 | 3.1 | 2 | 00314 | 3.14 | 3 | 03142 | 3.142 | 4 | 31416 | 3.1416 | 1 = 1 |
| 4007 value     | Entry         | Display   |            |       |         |   |       |   |   |       |     |   |       |      |   |       |       |   |       |        |       |
| 0              | 00003         | 3   |            |       |         |   |       |   |   |       |     |   |       |      |   |       |       |   |       |        |       |
| 1              | 00031         | 3.1   |            |       |         |   |       |   |   |       |     |   |       |      |   |       |       |   |       |        |       |
| 2              | 00314         | 3.14  |            |       |         |   |       |   |   |       |     |   |       |      |   |       |       |   |       |        |       |
| 3              | 03142         | 3.142   |            |       |         |   |       |   |   |       |     |   |       |      |   |       |       |   |       |        |       |
| 4              | 31416         | 3.1416  |            |       |         |   |       |   |   |       |     |   |       |      |   |       |       |   |       |        |       |
| 4008           | 0% VALUE      | Defines together with parameter <b>4009 100% VALUE</b> the scaling applied to the PID controller's actual values.<br>  | 0.0        |       |         |   |       |   |   |       |     |   |       |      |   |       |       |   |       |        |       |
| x...x          |               | Unit and range depend on the unit and scale defined by parameters <b>4006 UNITS</b> and <b>4007 UNIT SCALE</b> .  |            |       |         |   |       |   |   |       |     |   |       |      |   |       |       |   |       |        |       |
| 4009           | 100% VALUE    | Defines together with parameter <b>4008 0% VALUE</b> the scaling applied to the PID controller's actual values.   | 100.0      |       |         |   |       |   |   |       |     |   |       |      |   |       |       |   |       |        |       |
| x...x          |               | Unit and range depend on the unit and scale defined by parameters <b>4006 UNITS</b> and <b>4007 UNIT SCALE</b> .  |            |       |         |   |       |   |   |       |     |   |       |      |   |       |       |   |       |        |       |
| 4010           | SET POINT SEL | Selects the source for the process PID controller reference signal.   | <b>A11</b> |       |         |   |       |   |   |       |     |   |       |      |   |       |       |   |       |        |       |
|                | KEYPAD        | Control panel   | 0          |       |         |   |       |   |   |       |     |   |       |      |   |       |       |   |       |        |       |
|                | AI1           | Analog input AI1  | 1          |       |         |   |       |   |   |       |     |   |       |      |   |       |       |   |       |        |       |
|                | AI2           | Analog input AI2  | 2          |       |         |   |       |   |   |       |     |   |       |      |   |       |       |   |       |        |       |
|                | COMM          | Fieldbus reference REF2   | 8          |       |         |   |       |   |   |       |     |   |       |      |   |       |       |   |       |        |       |
|                | COMM+AI1      | Summation of fieldbus reference REF2 and analog input AI1. See section <a href="#">Reference selection and correction</a> on page 294.  | 9          |       |         |   |       |   |   |       |     |   |       |      |   |       |       |   |       |        |       |
|                | COMM*AI1      | Multiplication of fieldbus reference REF2 and analog input AI1. See section <a href="#">Reference selection and correction</a> on page 294.   | 10         |       |         |   |       |   |   |       |     |   |       |      |   |       |       |   |       |        |       |
|                | DI3U,4D(RNC)  | Digital input DI3: Reference increase. Digital input DI4: Reference decrease. Stop command resets the reference to zero. The reference is not saved if the control source is changed from EXT1 to EXT2, from EXT2 to EXT1 or from LOC to REM.   | 11         |       |         |   |       |   |   |       |     |   |       |      |   |       |       |   |       |        |       |

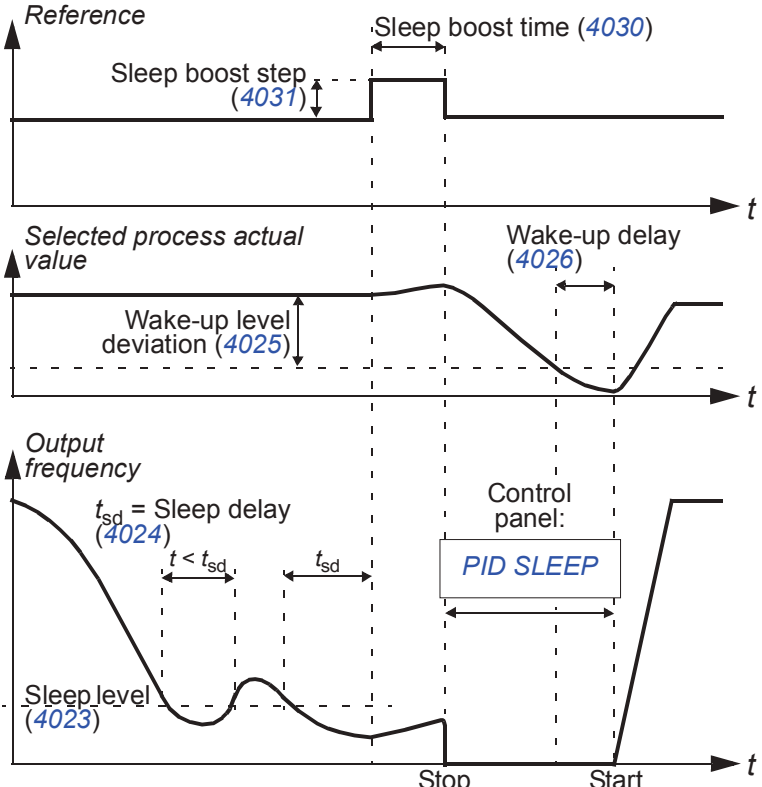
| All parameters |                 |   |             |
|----------------|-----------------|---|-------------|
| No.            | Name/Value      | Description   | Def/FbEq    |
|                | DI3U,4D(NC)     | Digital input DI3: Reference increase. Digital input DI4: Reference decrease. The program stores the active reference (not reset by a stop command). The reference is not saved if the control source is changed from EXT1 to EXT2, from EXT2 to EXT1 or from LOC to REM.   | 12          |
|                | AI1+AI2         | Reference is calculated with the following equation:<br>$REF = AI1(\%) + AI2(\%) - 50\%$  | 14          |
|                | AI1*AI2         | Reference is calculated with the following equation:<br>$REF = AI(\%) \cdot (AI1(\%) / 50\%)$   | 15          |
|                | AI1-AI2         | Reference is calculated with the following equation:<br>$REF = AI1(\%) + 50\% - AI2(\%)$  | 16          |
|                | AI1/AI2         | Reference is calculated with the following equation:<br>$REF = AI1(\%) \cdot (50\% / AI2(\%))$  | 17          |
|                | INTERNAL        | A constant value defined by parameter <i>4011 INTERNAL SETPNT</i> , <i>4036 INTERNAL SETPNT2</i> , <i>4037 INTERNAL SETPNT3</i> or <i>4038 INTERNAL SETPNT4</i> . See also parameter <i>4039 INT SETPNT SEL</i> .   | 19          |
|                | DI4U,5D(NC)     | See selection <i>DI3U,4D(NC)</i> .  | 31          |
|                | FREQ INPUT      | Frequency input   | 32          |
| 4011           | INTERNAL SETPNT | Selects a constant value as process PID controller reference, when parameter <i>4010 SET POINT SEL</i> value is set to <i>INTERNAL</i> .  | 40          |
|                | x...x           | Unit and range depend on the unit and scale defined by parameters <i>4006 UNITS</i> and <i>4007 UNIT SCALE</i> .  |             |
| 4012           | SETPOINT MIN    | Defines the minimum value for the selected PID reference signal source. See parameter <i>4010 SET POINT SEL</i> .   | 0.0%        |
|                | -500.0...500.0% | Value in percent.<br><b>Example:</b> Analog input AI1 is selected as the PID reference source (value of parameter <i>4010</i> is <i>AI1</i> ). The reference minimum and maximum correspond to the <i>1301 MINIMUM AI1</i> and <i>1302 MAXIMUM AI1</i> settings as follows:<br> | 1 = 0.1%    |
| 4013           | SETPOINT MAX    | Defines the maximum value for the selected PID reference signal source. See parameters <i>4010 SET POINT SEL</i> and <i>4012 SETPOINT MIN</i> .   | 100.0%      |
|                | -500.0...500.0% | Value in percent  | 1 = 0.1%    |
| 4014           | FBK SEL         | Selects the process actual value (feedback signal) for the process PID controller: The sources for the variables ACT1 and ACT2 are further defined by parameters <i>4016 ACT1 INPUT</i> and <i>4017 ACT2 INPUT</i> .  | <i>ACT1</i> |
|                | ACT1            | ACT1  | 1           |

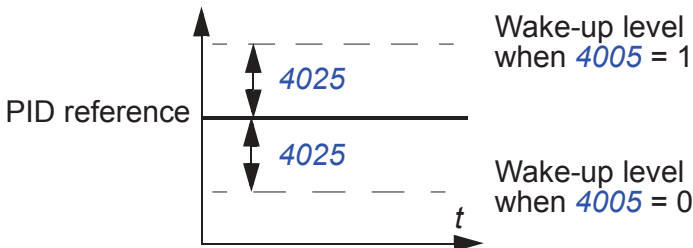
| All parameters |                      |  |            |
|----------------|----------------------|--|------------|
| No.            | Name/Value           | Description  | Def/FbEq   |
|                | ACT1-ACT2            | Subtraction of ACT1 and ACT2   | 2          |
|                | ACT1+ACT2            | Addition of ACT1 and ACT2  | 3          |
|                | ACT1*ACT2            | Multiplication of ACT1 and ACT2  | 4          |
|                | ACT1/ACT2            | Division of ACT1 and ACT2  | 5          |
|                | MIN(ACT1,2)          | Selects the smaller of ACT1 and ACT2   | 6          |
|                | MAX(ACT1,2)          | Selects the higher of ACT1 and ACT2  | 7          |
|                | sqrt(ACT1-2)         | Square root of the subtraction of ACT1 and ACT2  | 8          |
|                | sqA1+sqA2            | Addition of the square root of ACT1 and the square root of ACT2  | 9          |
|                | sqrt(ACT1)           | Square root of ACT1  | 10         |
|                | COMM FBK 1           | Signal <i>0158 PID COMM VALUE 1</i> value  | 11         |
|                | COMM FBK 2           | Signal <i>0159 PID COMM VALUE 2</i> value  | 12         |
|                | AVE(ACT1,2)          | Average of ACT1 and ACT2   | 13         |
| 4015           | FBK MULTIPLIER       | Defines an extra multiplier for the value defined by parameter <i>4014 FBK SEL</i> . Parameter is used mainly in applications where feedback value is calculated from another variable (eg flow from pressure difference). | 0.000      |
|                | -32.768...<br>32.767 | Multiplier. If parameter value is set to zero, no multiplier is used.  | 1 = 0.001  |
| 4016           | ACT1 INPUT           | Defines the source for actual value 1 (ACT1). See also parameter <i>4018 ACT1 MINIMUM</i> .  | <i>A/2</i> |
|                | AI1                  | Uses analog input 1 for ACT1   | 1          |
|                | AI2                  | Uses analog input 2 for ACT1   | 2          |
|                | CURRENT              | Uses current for ACT1  | 3          |
|                | TORQUE               | Uses torque for ACT1   | 4          |
|                | POWER                | Uses power for ACT1  | 5          |
|                | COMM ACT 1           | Uses value of signal <i>0158 PID COMM VALUE 1</i> for ACT1   | 6          |
|                | COMM ACT 2           | Uses value of signal <i>0159 PID COMM VALUE 2</i> for ACT1   | 7          |
|                | FREQ INPUT           | Frequency input  | 8          |
| 4017           | ACT2 INPUT           | Defines the source for actual value ACT2. See also parameter <i>4020 ACT2 MINIMUM</i> .  | <i>A/2</i> |
|                |                      | See parameter <i>4016 ACT1 INPUT</i> .   |            |

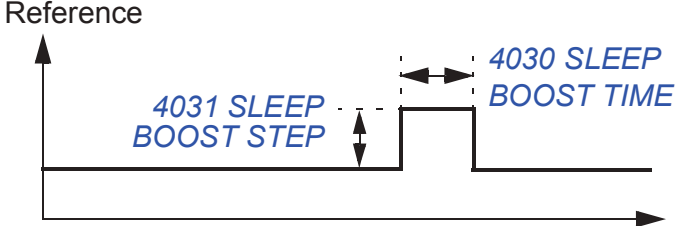
| All parameters              |                    |  |                             |        |             |             |   |                |                  |                  |   |                |                  |                  |   |         |   |                     |   |        |                     |                    |   |       |                    |                   |    |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|--|-----------------------------|--------|-------------|-------------|---|----------------|------------------|------------------|---|----------------|------------------|------------------|---|---------|---|---------------------|---|--------|---------------------|--------------------|---|-------|--------------------|-------------------|----|
| No.                         | Name/Value         | Description  | Def/FbEq                    |        |             |             |   |                |                  |                  |   |                |                  |                  |   |         |   |                     |   |        |                     |                    |   |       |                    |                   |    |
| 4018                        | ACT1<br>MINIMUM    | <p>Sets the minimum value for ACT1.<br/>Scales the source signal used as the actual value ACT1 (defined by parameter <a href="#">4016 ACT1 INPUT</a>). For parameter <a href="#">4016</a> values 6 (<a href="#">COMM ACT 1</a>) and 7 (<a href="#">COMM ACT 2</a>) scaling is not done.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Par<br/><a href="#">4016</a></th> <th>Source</th> <th>Source min.</th> <th>Source max.</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Analog input 1</td> <td>1301 MINIMUM AI1</td> <td>1302 MAXIMUM AI1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Analog input 2</td> <td>1304 MINIMUM AI2</td> <td>1305 MAXIMUM AI2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Current</td> <td>0</td> <td>2 · nominal current</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>Torque</td> <td>-2 · nominal torque</td> <td>2 · nominal torque</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>Power</td> <td>-2 · nominal power</td> <td>2 · nominal power</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>A = Normal; B = Inversion (ACT1 minimum &gt; ACT1 maximum)</p>  | Par<br><a href="#">4016</a> | Source | Source min. | Source max. | 1 | Analog input 1 | 1301 MINIMUM AI1 | 1302 MAXIMUM AI1 | 2 | Analog input 2 | 1304 MINIMUM AI2 | 1305 MAXIMUM AI2 | 3 | Current | 0 | 2 · nominal current | 4 | Torque | -2 · nominal torque | 2 · nominal torque | 5 | Power | -2 · nominal power | 2 · nominal power | 0% |
| Par<br><a href="#">4016</a> | Source             | Source min.  | Source max.                 |        |             |             |   |                |                  |                  |   |                |                  |                  |   |         |   |                     |   |        |                     |                    |   |       |                    |                   |    |
| 1                           | Analog input 1     | 1301 MINIMUM AI1   | 1302 MAXIMUM AI1            |        |             |             |   |                |                  |                  |   |                |                  |                  |   |         |   |                     |   |        |                     |                    |   |       |                    |                   |    |
| 2                           | Analog input 2     | 1304 MINIMUM AI2   | 1305 MAXIMUM AI2            |        |             |             |   |                |                  |                  |   |                |                  |                  |   |         |   |                     |   |        |                     |                    |   |       |                    |                   |    |
| 3                           | Current            | 0  | 2 · nominal current         |        |             |             |   |                |                  |                  |   |                |                  |                  |   |         |   |                     |   |        |                     |                    |   |       |                    |                   |    |
| 4                           | Torque             | -2 · nominal torque  | 2 · nominal torque          |        |             |             |   |                |                  |                  |   |                |                  |                  |   |         |   |                     |   |        |                     |                    |   |       |                    |                   |    |
| 5                           | Power              | -2 · nominal power   | 2 · nominal power           |        |             |             |   |                |                  |                  |   |                |                  |                  |   |         |   |                     |   |        |                     |                    |   |       |                    |                   |    |
|                             | -1000...1000%      | Value in percent   | 1 = 1%                      |        |             |             |   |                |                  |                  |   |                |                  |                  |   |         |   |                     |   |        |                     |                    |   |       |                    |                   |    |
| 4019                        | ACT1<br>MAXIMUM    | <p>Defines the maximum value for variable ACT1 if an analog input is selected as a source for ACT1. See parameter <a href="#">4016 ACT1 INPUT</a>. The minimum (<a href="#">4018 ACT1 MINIMUM</a>) and maximum settings of ACT1 define how the voltage/current signal received from the measuring device is converted to a percentage value used by the process PID controller. See parameter <a href="#">4018 ACT1 MINIMUM</a>.</p>   | 100%                        |        |             |             |   |                |                  |                  |   |                |                  |                  |   |         |   |                     |   |        |                     |                    |   |       |                    |                   |    |
|                             | -1000...1000%      | Value in percent   | 1 = 1%                      |        |             |             |   |                |                  |                  |   |                |                  |                  |   |         |   |                     |   |        |                     |                    |   |       |                    |                   |    |
| 4020                        | ACT2<br>MINIMUM    | See parameter <a href="#">4018 ACT1 MINIMUM</a> .  | 0%                          |        |             |             |   |                |                  |                  |   |                |                  |                  |   |         |   |                     |   |        |                     |                    |   |       |                    |                   |    |
|                             | -1000...1000%      | See parameter <a href="#">4018</a> .   | 1 = 1%                      |        |             |             |   |                |                  |                  |   |                |                  |                  |   |         |   |                     |   |        |                     |                    |   |       |                    |                   |    |
| 4021                        | ACT2<br>MAXIMUM    | See parameter <a href="#">4019 ACT1 MAXIMUM</a> .  | 100%                        |        |             |             |   |                |                  |                  |   |                |                  |                  |   |         |   |                     |   |        |                     |                    |   |       |                    |                   |    |
|                             | -1000...1000%      | See parameter <a href="#">4019</a> .   | 1 = 1%                      |        |             |             |   |                |                  |                  |   |                |                  |                  |   |         |   |                     |   |        |                     |                    |   |       |                    |                   |    |
| 4022                        | SLEEP<br>SELECTION | Activates the sleep function and selects the source for the activation input. See section <a href="#">Sleep function for the process PID (PID1) control</a> on page 143.   | <b>NOT SEL</b>              |        |             |             |   |                |                  |                  |   |                |                  |                  |   |         |   |                     |   |        |                     |                    |   |       |                    |                   |    |
|                             | NOT SEL            | No sleep function selected   | 0                           |        |             |             |   |                |                  |                  |   |                |                  |                  |   |         |   |                     |   |        |                     |                    |   |       |                    |                   |    |
|                             | DI1                | <p>The function is activated/deactivated through digital input DI1. 1 = activation, 0 = deactivation.</p> <p>The internal sleep criteria set by parameters <a href="#">4023 PID SLEEP LEVEL</a> and <a href="#">4025 WAKE-UP DEV</a> are not effective. The sleep start and stop delay parameters <a href="#">4024 PID SLEEP DELAY</a> and <a href="#">4026 WAKE-UP DELAY</a> are effective.</p>   | 1                           |        |             |             |   |                |                  |                  |   |                |                  |                  |   |         |   |                     |   |        |                     |                    |   |       |                    |                   |    |
|                             | DI2                | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .  | 2                           |        |             |             |   |                |                  |                  |   |                |                  |                  |   |         |   |                     |   |        |                     |                    |   |       |                    |                   |    |



| All parameters |              |   |          |
|----------------|--------------|---|----------|
| No.            | Name/Value   | Description   | Def/FbEq |
|                | DI3          | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 3        |
|                | DI4          | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 4        |
|                | DI5          | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 5        |
|                | INTERNAL     | Activated and deactivated automatically as defined by parameters <i>4023 PID SLEEP LEVEL</i> and <i>4025 WAKE-UP DEV</i> .  | 7        |
|                | SUPRV1 OVER  | The function is activated when parameter <i>3201 SUPERV 1 PARAM</i> stays over the high limit defined by parameter <i>3203 SUPERV 1 LIM HI</i> .<br>The internal sleep criteria set by parameters <i>4023 PID SLEEP LEVEL</i> and <i>4025 WAKE-UP DEV</i> are not effective. The sleep start and stop delay parameters <i>4024 PID SLEEP DELAY</i> and <i>4026 WAKE-UP DELAY</i> are effective. | 9        |
|                | SUPRV2 OVER  | See selection <i>SUPRV1 OVER</i> .  | 10       |
|                | SUPRV3 OVER  | See selection <i>SUPRV1 OVER</i> .  | 11       |
|                | DI1(INV)     | The function is activated/deactivated through inverted digital input DI1. 1 = deactivation, 0 = activation.<br>The internal sleep criteria set by parameters <i>4023 PID SLEEP LEVEL</i> and <i>4025 WAKE-UP DEV</i> are not effective. The sleep start and stop delay parameters <i>4024 PID SLEEP DELAY</i> and <i>4026 WAKE-UP DELAY</i> are effective.                                      | -1       |
|                | DI2(INV)     | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -2       |
|                | DI3(INV)     | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -3       |
|                | DI4(INV)     | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -4       |
|                | DI5(INV)     | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -5       |
|                | SUPRV1 UNDER | The function is activated when parameter <i>3201 SUPERV 1 PARAM</i> stays below the low limit defined by parameter <i>3202 SUPERV 1 LIM LO</i> .<br>The internal sleep criteria set by parameters <i>4023 PID SLEEP LEVEL</i> and <i>4025 WAKE-UP DEV</i> are not effective. The sleep start and stop delay parameters <i>4024 PID SLEEP DELAY</i> and <i>4026 WAKE-UP DELAY</i> are effective. | -9       |
|                | SUPRV2 UNDER | See selection <i>SUPRV1 UNDER</i> .   | -10      |
|                | SUPRV3 UNDER | See selection <i>SUPRV1 UNDER</i> .   | -11      |

| All parameters |                 |   |            |
|----------------|-----------------|---|------------|
| No.            | Name/Value      | Description   | Def/FbEq   |
| 4023           | PID SLEEP LEVEL | <p>Defines the start limit for the sleep function. If the motor speed is below a set level (4023) longer than the sleep delay (4024), the drive shifts to the sleeping mode: The motor is stopped and the control panel shows alarm message <i>PID SLEEP</i>.</p> <p>Parameter 4022 SLEEP SELECTION must be set to <i>INTERNAL</i>.</p>  | 0.0 Hz     |
|                | 0.0...500.0 Hz  | Sleep start level   | 1 = 0.1 Hz |
| 4024           | PID SLEEP DELAY | <p>Defines the delay for the sleep start function. See parameter 4023 <i>PID SLEEP LEVEL</i>. When the motor speed falls below the sleep level, the counter starts. When the motor speed exceeds the sleep level, the counter is reset.</p>   | 60.0 s     |
|                | 0.0...3600.0 s  | Sleep start delay   | 1 = 0.1 s  |

| All parameters |                 |   |            |
|----------------|-----------------|---|------------|
| No.            | Name/Value      | Description   | Def/FbEq   |
| 4025           | WAKE-UP DEV     | <p>Defines the wake-up deviation for the sleep function. The drive wakes up if the process actual value deviation from the PID reference value exceeds the set wake-up deviation (4025) longer than the wake-up delay (4026). Wake-up level depends on parameter 4005 ERROR VALUE INV settings.</p> <p>If parameter 4005 is set to 0:<br/>Wake-up level = PID reference (4010) - Wake-up deviation (4025).</p> <p>If parameter 4005 is set to 1:<br/>Wake-up level = PID reference (4010) + Wake-up deviation (4025)</p>  <p>See also figures for parameter 4023 PID SLEEP LEVEL.</p> | 0          |
|                | x...x           | Unit and range depend on the unit and scale defined by parameters 4026 WAKE-UP DELAY and 4007 UNIT SCALE.   |            |
| 4026           | WAKE-UP DELAY   | Defines the wake-up delay for the sleep function. See parameter 4023 PID SLEEP LEVEL.   | 0.50 s     |
|                | 0.00...60.00 s  | Wake-up delay   | 1 = 0.01 s |
| 4027           | PID 1 PARAM SET | Defines the source from which the drive reads the signal that selects between PID parameter set 1 and 2. PID parameter set 1 is defined by parameters 4001...4026. PID parameter set 2 is defined by parameters 4101...4126.  | SET 1      |
|                | SET 1           | PID SET 1 is active.  | 0          |
|                | DI1             | Digital input DI1. 1 = PID SET 2, 0 = PID SET 1.  | 1          |
|                | DI2             | See selection DI1.  | 2          |
|                | DI3             | See selection DI1.  | 3          |
|                | DI4             | See selection DI1.  | 4          |
|                | DI5             | See selection DI1.  | 5          |
|                | SET 2           | PID SET 2 is active.  | 7          |
|                | TIMED FUNC 1    | Timed PID SET 1/2 control. Timed function 1 inactive = PID SET 1, timed function 1 active = PID SET 2. See parameter group 36 TIMED FUNCTIONS.  | 8          |
|                | TIMED FUNC 2    | See selection TIMED FUNC 1.   | 9          |
|                | TIMED FUNC 3    | See selection TIMED FUNC 1.   | 10         |
|                | TIMED FUNC 4    | See selection TIMED FUNC 1.   | 11         |
|                | DI1(INV)        | Inverted digital input DI1. 0 = PID SET 2, 1 = PID SET 1.   | -1         |
|                | DI2(INV)        | See selection DI1(INV).   | -2         |
|                | DI3(INV)        | See selection DI1(INV).   | -3         |
|                | DI4(INV)        | See selection DI1(INV).   | -4         |
|                | DI5(INV)        | See selection DI1(INV).   | -5         |

| All parameters |                       |   |                |
|----------------|-----------------------|---|----------------|
| No.            | Name/Value            | Description   | Def/FbEq       |
| 4028           | PID OUT MIN           | Defines the minimum value of PID output.  | -100.0%        |
|                | -1000.0...<br>1000.0% | Value in percent  | 1 = 0.1%       |
| 4029           | PID OUT MAX           | Defines the maximum value of PID output.  | 100.0%         |
|                | -1000.0...<br>1000.0% | Value in percent  | 1 = 0.1%       |
| 4030           | SLEEP BOOST TIME      | Defines the boost time for the sleep boost step. See parameter <i>4031 SLEEP BOOST STEP</i> .<br><br>   | 0.0 s          |
|                | 0.0...3600.0 s        | Sleep boost time  | 1 = 0.1 s      |
| 4031           | SLEEP BOOST STEP      | When the drive is entering sleep mode, the reference (PID setpoint) is increased by this percentage for the time defined by parameter <i>4030 SLEEP BOOST TIME</i> .  | 0.0%           |
|                | 0.0...100.0%          | Sleep boost step  | 1 = 0.1%       |
| 4032           | PID REF ACC TIME      | Defines the time for the reference (PID setpoint) increase from 0 to 100%.<br><b>Note:</b> Parameters <i>4032...4036</i> are active even if the process PID set 2 (group <i>41 PROCESS PID SET 2</i> ) is used.   | 0.0 s          |
|                | 0.0...1800.0 s        | Acceleration time   | 1 = 0.1 s      |
| 4033           | PID REF DEC TIME      | Defines the time for the reference (PID setpoint) decrease from 100 to 0%   | 0.0 s          |
|                | 0.0...1800.0 s        | Deceleration time   | 1 = 0.1 s      |
| 4034           | PID REF FREEZE        | Freezes the input (reference, PID setpoint) of the process PID controller. This feature is useful when the reference is based on a process actual value connected to an analog input, and the sensor must be serviced without stopping the process.<br><br>The input of the PID controller is frozen as long as the selected digital input is ON for parameter values <i>DI1...DI5</i> or OFF for parameter values <i>DI1(INV)...DI5(INV)</i> .<br>See also parameter <i>4035</i> . | <i>NOT SEL</i> |
|                | NOT SEL               | Not selected  | 0              |
|                | DI1                   | Reference is frozen on the rising edge of digital input DI1.  | 1              |
|                | DI2                   | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 2              |
|                | DI3                   | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 3              |
|                | DI4                   | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 4              |
|                | DI5                   | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 5              |
|                | DI1(INV)              | Reference is frozen on the falling edge of digital input DI1.   | -1             |
|                | DI2(INV)              | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -2             |
|                | DI3(INV)              | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -3             |

| All parameters |                  |  |                         |
|----------------|------------------|--|-------------------------|
| No.            | Name/Value       | Description  | Def/FbEq                |
|                | DI4(INV)         | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .   | -4                      |
|                | DI5(INV)         | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .   | -5                      |
| 4035           | PID OUT FREEZE   | Freezes the output of the process PID controller. This feature is useful when the reference is based on a process actual value connected to an analog input, and the sensor must be serviced without stopping the process.<br>The output of the PID controller is frozen as long as the selected digital input is ON for parameter values <a href="#">DI1...DI5</a> or OFF for parameter values <a href="#">DI1(INV)...DI5(INV)</a> .<br>See also parameter <a href="#">4034</a> . | <a href="#">NOT SEL</a> |
|                | NOT SEL          | Not selected   | 0                       |
|                | DI1              | Output is frozen on the rising edge of digital input DI1.  | 1                       |
|                | DI2              | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .  | 2                       |
|                | DI3              | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .  | 3                       |
|                | DI4              | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .  | 4                       |
|                | DI5              | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .  | 5                       |
|                | DI1(INV)         | Output is frozen on the falling edge of digital input DI1.   | -1                      |
|                | DI2(INV)         | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .   | -2                      |
|                | DI3(INV)         | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .   | -3                      |
|                | DI4(INV)         | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .   | -4                      |
|                | DI5(INV)         | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .   | -5                      |
| 4036           | INTERNAL SETPNT2 | Selects a constant value as the process PID controller reference, which becomes active when parameter <a href="#">4010 SET POINT SEL</a> value is set to <a href="#">INTERNAL</a> and setpoint 2 is selected with the input defined by parameter <a href="#">4039 INT SETPNT SEL</a> .   | 40.0                    |
|                | x...x            | Unit and range depend on the unit and scale defined by parameters <a href="#">4006 UNITS</a> and <a href="#">4007 UNIT SCALE</a> .   | -                       |
| 4037           | INTERNAL SETPNT3 | Selects a constant value as the process PID controller reference, which becomes active when parameter <a href="#">4010 SET POINT SEL</a> value is set to <a href="#">INTERNAL</a> and setpoint 3 is selected with the input defined by parameter <a href="#">4039 INT SETPNT SEL</a> .   | 40.0                    |
|                | x...x            | Unit and range depend on the unit and scale defined by parameters <a href="#">4006 UNITS</a> and <a href="#">4007 UNIT SCALE</a> .   | -                       |
| 4038           | INTERNAL SETPNT4 | Selects a constant value as the process PID controller reference, which becomes active when parameter <a href="#">4010 SET POINT SEL</a> value is set to <a href="#">INTERNAL</a> and setpoint 4 is selected with the input defined by parameter <a href="#">4039 INT SETPNT SEL</a> .   | 40.0                    |
|                | x...x            | Unit and range depend on the unit and scale defined by parameters <a href="#">4006 UNITS</a> and <a href="#">4007 UNIT SCALE</a> .   | -                       |

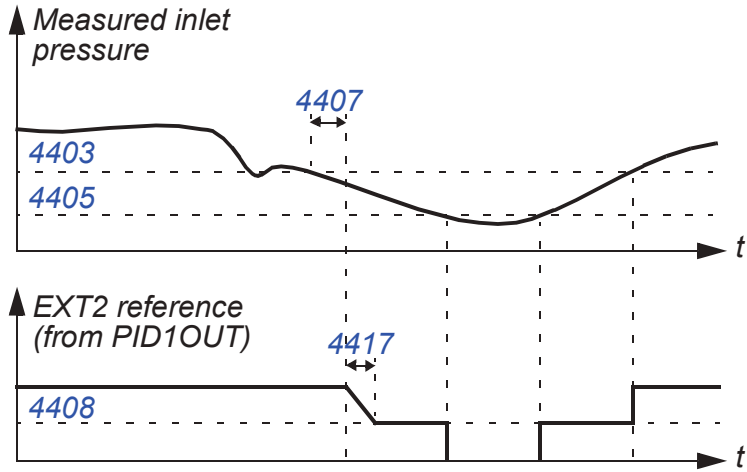
| All parameters              |                  |  |                  |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
|-----------------------------|------------------|--|------------------|------------------|----------------------------|---|---|-----------------------------|---|---|------------------------------|---|---|------------------------------|---|---|------------------------------|----|
| No.                         | Name/Value       | Description  | Def/FbEq         |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
| 4039                        | INT SETPNT SEL   | Selects the source for the selection of the internal setpoint used as the process PID controller reference when parameter <i>4010 SET POINT SEL</i> value is set to <i>INTERNAL</i> .<br><b>Example:</b><br><i>4010 SET POINT SEL = INTERNAL</i><br><i>4039 INT SETPNT SEL = DI2</i><br>Digital input DI2 = 1<br>-> <i>4036 INTERNAL SETPNT2</i> is used as the reference.   | <i>NOT SEL</i>   |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
|                             | NOT SEL          | <i>4011 INTERNAL SETPNT</i> is used as the reference.  | 0                |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
|                             | DI1              | 0 = <i>4011 INTERNAL SETPNT</i> is used. 1 = <i>4036 INTERNAL SETPNT2</i> is used.   | 1                |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
|                             | DI2              | See selection <i>DI1</i> .   | 2                |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
|                             | DI3              | See selection <i>DI1</i> .   | 3                |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
|                             | DI4              | See selection <i>DI1</i> .   | 4                |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
|                             | DI5              | See selection <i>DI1</i> .   | 5                |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
|                             | DI1,2            | Selects with digital inputs DI1 and DI2 which internal setpoint is used as the reference. 1 = DI active, 0 = DI inactive.<br><table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>DI1</th> <th>DI2</th> <th>Internal setpoint selected</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td><i>4011 INTERNAL SETPNT</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td><i>4036 INTERNAL SETPNT2</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td><i>4037 INTERNAL SETPNT3</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td><i>4038 INTERNAL SETPNT4</i></td> </tr> </tbody> </table>   | DI1              | DI2              | Internal setpoint selected | 0 | 0 | <i>4011 INTERNAL SETPNT</i> | 1 | 0 | <i>4036 INTERNAL SETPNT2</i> | 0 | 1 | <i>4037 INTERNAL SETPNT3</i> | 1 | 1 | <i>4038 INTERNAL SETPNT4</i> | 7  |
| DI1                         | DI2              | Internal setpoint selected   |                  |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
| 0                           | 0                | <i>4011 INTERNAL SETPNT</i>  |                  |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
| 1                           | 0                | <i>4036 INTERNAL SETPNT2</i>   |                  |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
| 0                           | 1                | <i>4037 INTERNAL SETPNT3</i>   |                  |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
| 1                           | 1                | <i>4038 INTERNAL SETPNT4</i>   |                  |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
|                             | DI2,3            | See selection <i>DI1,2</i> .   | 8                |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
|                             | DI3,4            | See selection <i>DI1,2</i> .   | 9                |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
|                             | DI4,5            | See selection <i>DI1,2</i> .   | 10               |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
|                             | TIMED FUNC 1     | 0 = <i>4011 INTERNAL SETPNT</i> is used. 1 = <i>4036 INTERNAL SETPNT2</i> is used.   | 15               |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
|                             | TIMED FUNC 2     | See selection <i>TIMED FUNC 1</i> .  | 16               |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
|                             | TIMED FUNC 3     | See selection <i>TIMED FUNC 1</i> .  | 17               |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
|                             | TIMED FUNC 4     | See selection <i>TIMED FUNC 1</i> .  | 18               |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
|                             | TIMED FUN1&2     | Selects with timed functions 1 and 2 which internal setpoint is used as the reference. 1 = timed function active, 0 = timed function inactive.<br><table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Timed function 1</th> <th>Timed function 2</th> <th>Internal setpoint selected</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td><i>4011 INTERNAL SETPNT</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td><i>4036 INTERNAL SETPNT2</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td><i>4037 INTERNAL SETPNT3</i></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td><i>4038 INTERNAL SETPNT4</i></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | Timed function 1 | Timed function 2 | Internal setpoint selected | 0 | 0 | <i>4011 INTERNAL SETPNT</i> | 1 | 0 | <i>4036 INTERNAL SETPNT2</i> | 0 | 1 | <i>4037 INTERNAL SETPNT3</i> | 1 | 1 | <i>4038 INTERNAL SETPNT4</i> | 19 |
| Timed function 1            | Timed function 2 | Internal setpoint selected   |                  |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
| 0                           | 0                | <i>4011 INTERNAL SETPNT</i>  |                  |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
| 1                           | 0                | <i>4036 INTERNAL SETPNT2</i>   |                  |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
| 0                           | 1                | <i>4037 INTERNAL SETPNT3</i>   |                  |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
| 1                           | 1                | <i>4038 INTERNAL SETPNT4</i>   |                  |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
| <b>41 PROCESS PID SET 2</b> |                  | Process PID (PID1) control parameter set 2. See section <i>PID control</i> on page 138.  |                  |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
| 4101                        | GAIN             | See parameter <i>4001 GAIN</i> .   |                  |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |
| 4102                        | INTEGRATION TIME | See parameter <i>4002 INTEGRATION TIME</i> .   |                  |                  |                            |   |   |                             |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |   |   |                              |    |


| All parameters |                  |   |          |
|----------------|------------------|---|----------|
| No.            | Name/Value       | Description   | Def/FbEq |
| 4103           | DERIVATION TIME  | See parameter <a href="#">4003 DERIVATION TIME</a> .  |          |
| 4104           | PID DERIV FILTER | See parameter <a href="#">4004 PID DERIV FILTER</a> . |          |
| 4105           | ERROR VALUE INV  | See parameter <a href="#">4005 ERROR VALUE INV</a> .  |          |
| 4106           | UNITS            | See parameter <a href="#">4006 UNITS</a> .            |          |
| 4107           | UNIT SCALE       | See parameter <a href="#">4007 UNIT SCALE</a> .       |          |
| 4108           | 0% VALUE         | See parameter <a href="#">4008 0% VALUE</a> .         |          |
| 4109           | 100% VALUE       | See parameter <a href="#">4009 100% VALUE</a> .       |          |
| 4110           | SET POINT SEL    | See parameter <a href="#">4010 SET POINT SEL</a> .    |          |
| 4111           | INTERNAL SETPNT  | See parameter <a href="#">4011 INTERNAL SETPNT</a> .  |          |
| 4112           | SETPOINT MIN     | See parameter <a href="#">4012 SETPOINT MIN</a> .     |          |
| 4113           | SETPOINT MAX     | See parameter <a href="#">4013 SETPOINT MAX</a> .     |          |
| 4114           | FBK SEL          | See parameter <a href="#">4014 FBK SEL</a> .          |          |
| 4115           | FBK MULTIPLIER   | See parameter <a href="#">4015 FBK MULTIPLIER</a> .   |          |
| 4116           | ACT1 INPUT       | See parameter <a href="#">4016 ACT1 INPUT</a> .       |          |
| 4117           | ACT2 INPUT       | See parameter <a href="#">4017 ACT2 INPUT</a> .       |          |
| 4118           | ACT1 MINIMUM     | See parameter <a href="#">4018 ACT1 MINIMUM</a> .     |          |
| 4119           | ACT1 MAXIMUM     | See parameter <a href="#">4019 ACT1 MAXIMUM</a> .     |          |
| 4120           | ACT2 MINIMUM     | See parameter <a href="#">4020 ACT2 MINIMUM</a> .     |          |
| 4121           | ACT2 MAXIMUM     | See parameter <a href="#">4021 ACT2 MAXIMUM</a> .     |          |
| 4122           | SLEEP SELECTION  | See parameter <a href="#">4022 SLEEP SELECTION</a> .  |          |
| 4123           | PID SLEEP LEVEL  | See parameter <a href="#">4023 PID SLEEP LEVEL</a> .  |          |
| 4124           | PID SLEEP DELAY  | See parameter <a href="#">4024 PID SLEEP DELAY</a> .  |          |
| 4125           | WAKE-UP DEV      | See parameter <a href="#">4025 WAKE-UP DEV</a> .      |          |
| 4126           | WAKE-UP DELAY    | See parameter <a href="#">4026 WAKE-UP DELAY</a> .    |          |
| 4128           | PID OUT MIN      | See parameter <a href="#">4028 PID OUT MIN</a> .      |          |
| 4129           | PID OUT MAX      | See parameter <a href="#">4029 PID OUT MAX</a> .      |          |
| 4130           | SLEEP BOOST TIME | See parameter <a href="#">4030 SLEEP BOOST TIME</a> . |          |
| 4131           | SLEEP BOOST STEP | See parameter <a href="#">4031 SLEEP BOOST STEP</a> . |          |

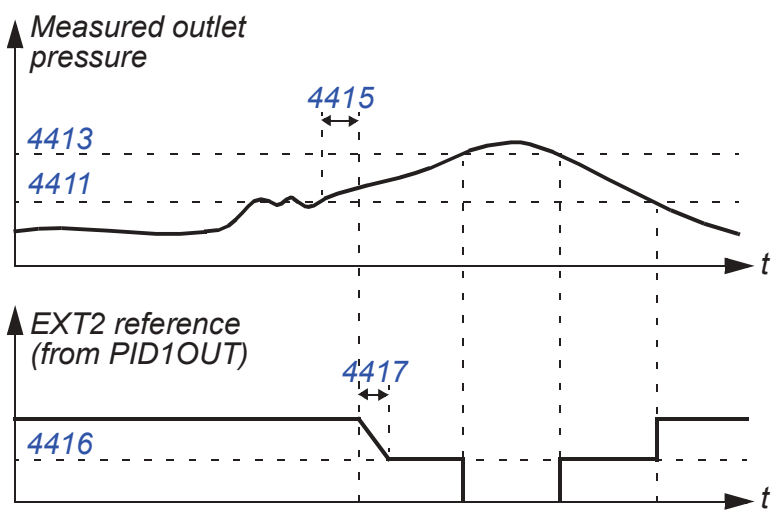
| All parameters |                       |   |                         |
|----------------|-----------------------|---|-------------------------|
| No.            | Name/Value            | Description   | Def/FbEq                |
| 4136           | INTERNAL SETPNT2      | See parameter <a href="#">4036 INTERNAL SETPNT2</a> .   |                         |
| 4137           | INTERNAL SETPNT3      | See parameter <a href="#">4037 INTERNAL SETPNT3</a> .   |                         |
| 4138           | INTERNAL SETPNT4      | See parameter <a href="#">4038 INTERNAL SETPNT4</a> .   |                         |
| 4139           | INT SETPNT SEL        | See parameter <a href="#">4039 INT SETPNT SEL</a> .   |                         |
| <b>42</b>      | <b>EXT / TRIM PID</b> | External/Trim PID (PID2) control. See section <a href="#">PID control</a> on page <a href="#">138</a> .   |                         |
| 4201           | GAIN                  | See parameter <a href="#">4001 GAIN</a> .   |                         |
| 4202           | INTEGRATION TIME      | See parameter <a href="#">4002 INTEGRATION TIME</a> .   |                         |
| 4203           | DERIVATION TIME       | See parameter <a href="#">4003 DERIVATION TIME</a> .  |                         |
| 4204           | PID DERIV FILTER      | See parameter <a href="#">4004 PID DERIV FILTER</a> .   |                         |
| 4205           | ERROR VALUE INV       | See parameter <a href="#">4005 ERROR VALUE INV</a> .  |                         |
| 4206           | UNITS                 | See parameter <a href="#">4006 UNITS</a> .  |                         |
| 4207           | UNIT SCALE            | See parameter <a href="#">4007 UNIT SCALE</a> .   |                         |
| 4208           | 0% VALUE              | See parameter <a href="#">4008 0% VALUE</a> .   |                         |
| 4209           | 100% VALUE            | See parameter <a href="#">4009 100% VALUE</a> .   |                         |
| 4210           | SET POINT SEL         | See parameter <a href="#">4010 SET POINT SEL</a> .  |                         |
| 4211           | INTERNAL SETPNT       | See parameter <a href="#">4011 INTERNAL SETPNT</a> .  |                         |
| 4212           | SETPOINT MIN          | See parameter <a href="#">4012 SETPOINT MIN</a> .   |                         |
| 4213           | SETPOINT MAX          | See parameter <a href="#">4013 SETPOINT MAX</a> .   |                         |
| 4214           | FBK SEL               | See parameter <a href="#">4014 FBK SEL</a> .  |                         |
| 4215           | FBK MULTIPLIER        | See parameter <a href="#">4015 FBK MULTIPLIER</a> .   |                         |
| 4216           | ACT1 INPUT            | See parameter <a href="#">4016 ACT1 INPUT</a> .   |                         |
| 4217           | ACT2 INPUT            | See parameter <a href="#">4017 ACT2 INPUT</a> .   |                         |
| 4218           | ACT1 MINIMUM          | See parameter <a href="#">4018 ACT1 MINIMUM</a> .   |                         |
| 4219           | ACT1 MAXIMUM          | See parameter <a href="#">4019 ACT1 MAXIMUM</a> .   |                         |
| 4220           | ACT2 MINIMUM          | See parameter <a href="#">4020 ACT2 MINIMUM</a> .   |                         |
| 4221           | ACT2 MAXIMUM          | See parameter <a href="#">4021 ACT2 MAXIMUM</a> .   |                         |
| 4228           | ACTIVATE              | Selects the source for the external PID function activation signal. Parameter <a href="#">4230 TRIM MODE</a> must be set to <a href="#">NOT SEL</a> . | <a href="#">NOT SEL</a> |




| All parameters |                 |  |                         |
|----------------|-----------------|--|-------------------------|
| No.            | Name/Value      | Description  | Def/FbEq                |
|                | NOT SEL         | No external PID control activation selected  | 0                       |
|                | DI1             | Digital input DI1. 1 = active, 0 = inactive.   | 1                       |
|                | DI2             | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .  | 2                       |
|                | DI3             | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .  | 3                       |
|                | DI4             | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .  | 4                       |
|                | DI5             | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .  | 5                       |
|                | DRIVE RUN       | Activation at drive start. Start (drive running) = active.   | 7                       |
|                | ON              | Activation at drive power-up. Power-up (drive powered) = active.   | 8                       |
|                | TIMED FUNC 1    | Activation by a timed function. Timed function 1 active = PID control active. See parameter group <a href="#">36 TIMED FUNCTIONS</a> .   | 9                       |
|                | TIMED FUNC 2    | See selection <a href="#">TIMED FUNC 1</a> .   | 10                      |
|                | TIMED FUNC 3    | See selection <a href="#">TIMED FUNC 1</a> .   | 11                      |
|                | TIMED FUNC 4    | See selection <a href="#">TIMED FUNC 1</a> .   | 12                      |
|                | DI1(INV)        | Inverted digital input DI1. 0 = active, 1 = inactive.  | -1                      |
|                | DI2(INV)        | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .   | -2                      |
|                | DI3(INV)        | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .   | -3                      |
|                | DI4(INV)        | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .   | -4                      |
|                | DI5(INV)        | See selection <a href="#">DI1(INV)</a> .   | -5                      |
| 4229           | OFFSET          | Defines the offset for the external PID controller output. When PID controller is activated, controller output starts from the offset value. When PID controller is deactivated, controller output is reset to the offset value. Parameter <a href="#">4230 TRIM MODE</a> must be set to <a href="#">NOT SEL</a> . | 0.0%                    |
|                | 0.0...100.0%    | Value in percent   | 1 = 0.1%                |
| 4230           | TRIM MODE       | Activates the trim function and selects between the direct and proportional trimming. With trimming it is possible to combine a corrective factor to the drive reference. See section <a href="#">Reference trimming</a> on page <a href="#">123</a> .   | <a href="#">NOT SEL</a> |
|                | NOT SEL         | No trim function selected  | 0                       |
|                | PROPORTION AL   | Active. The trimming factor is proportional to the rpm/Hz reference before trimming (REF1).  | 1                       |
|                | DIRECT          | Active. The trimming factor is relative to a fixed maximum limit used in the reference control loop (maximum speed, frequency or torque).  | 2                       |
| 4231           | TRIM SCALE      | Defines the multiplier for the trimming function. See section <a href="#">Reference trimming</a> on page <a href="#">123</a> .   | 0.0%                    |
|                | -100.0...100.0% | Multiplier   | 1 = 0.1%                |
| 4232           | CORRECTION SRC  | Selects the trim reference. See section <a href="#">Reference trimming</a> on page <a href="#">123</a> .   | <a href="#">PID2REF</a> |
|                | PID2REF         | PID2 reference selected by parameter <a href="#">4210</a> (ie signal <a href="#">0129 PID 2 SETPNT</a> value)  | 1                       |
|                | PID2OUTPUT      | PID2 output, ie signal <a href="#">0127 PID 2 OUTPUT</a> value   | 2                       |

| All parameters            |                  |  |           |
|---------------------------|------------------|--|-----------|
| No.                       | Name/Value       | Description  | Def/FbEq  |
| <b>44 PUMP PROTECTION</b> |                  | Set-up of pump protection.   |           |
| 4401                      | INLET PROT CTRL  | Enables, and selects the mode of, the primary supervision of pump/fan inlet pressure.<br><b>Note:</b> Inlet protection is active only when the active reference is PID.  | NOT SEL   |
|                           | NOT SEL          | Primary inlet pressure supervision not used  | 0         |
|                           | ALARM            | Detection of low inlet pressure generates an alarm on the control panel display.   | 1         |
|                           | PROTECT          | Detection of low inlet pressure generates an alarm on the control panel display. The output of the PI controller is ramped down (according to parameter <b>4417 PID OUT DEC TIME</b> ) to the forced reference (set by parameter <b>4408 INLET FORCED REF</b> ). The drive reverts to the original reference if the pressure subsequently exceeds the supervision level.<br>The following diagram describes the inlet pressure supervision function.   | 2         |
|                           |                  |  <p>The diagram consists of two vertically aligned graphs sharing a common time axis 't'.<br/>The top graph shows 'Measured inlet pressure' on the y-axis. A solid line represents the pressure, which starts at a steady state, then drops sharply, reaching a minimum, and then gradually recovers. A horizontal dashed line labeled '4403' represents the supervision limit. A lower horizontal dashed line labeled '4405' is also shown. A vertical dashed line labeled '4407' marks the start of the pressure recovery phase.<br/>The bottom graph shows 'EXT2 reference (from PID1OUT)' on the y-axis. A solid line represents the reference, which is constant at a high level (labeled '4408') until the pressure drops. At the start of the pressure drop, the reference begins to ramp down linearly (labeled '4417'). When the pressure reaches its minimum, the reference continues to ramp down until it reaches a lower constant level. After the pressure begins to recover, the reference ramps back up to its original high level.</p> |           |
|                           | FAULT            | Detection of low inlet pressure trips the drive on a fault.  | 3         |
| 4402                      | AI MEASURE INLET | Selects the analog input for pump/fan inlet pressure supervision.  | NOT SEL   |
|                           | NOT SEL          | No analog input selected   | 0         |
|                           | AI1              | Pump/fan inlet pressure monitored through analog input AI1   | 1         |
|                           | AI2              | See selection <b>AI1</b> .   | 2         |
| 4403                      | AI IN LOW LEVEL  | Sets the supervision limit for the primary inlet pressure measurement. If the value of the selected input falls below this limit, the action defined by parameter <b>4401 INLET PROT CTRL</b> is taken after the delay set by parameter <b>4407 INLET CTRL DLY</b> expires.  | 0.00%     |
|                           | 0.00...100.00%   | The range corresponds to 0...10 V or 0...20 mA on the analog input. With a bipolar input, the absolute input value is considered.  | 1 = 0.01% |
| 4404                      | VERY LOW CTRL    | Enables, and selects the mode of, the secondary inlet pressure supervision function. The function uses the analog input selected by parameter <b>4402 AI MEASURE INLET</b> .   | NOT SEL   |
|                           | NOT SEL          | Secondary inlet pressure supervision not used  | 0         |

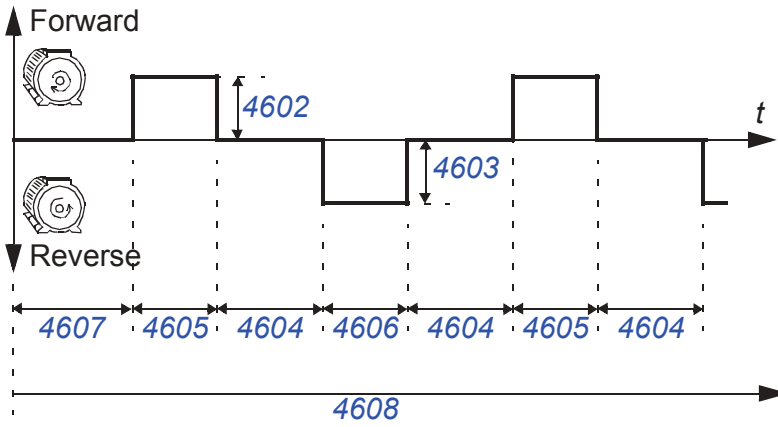
| All parameters |                  |   |                |
|----------------|------------------|---|----------------|
| No.            | Name/Value       | Description   | Def/FbEq       |
|                | STOP             | Detection of very low inlet pressure stops the drive. The drive starts again if the pressure exceeds the supervision level.   | 1              |
|                | FAULT            | Detection of very low inlet pressure trips the drive on a fault.  | 2              |
| 4405           | AI IN VERY LOW   | Supervision level for the secondary inlet pressure monitoring function. See parameter <i>4401 INLET PROT CTRL</i> .   | 0.00%          |
|                | 0.00...100.00%   | Supervision level   | 1 = 0.01%      |
| 4406           | DI STATUS INLET  | Selects the digital input for connection of a pressure switch at the pump/fan inlet. The "normal" state is 1 (active). If the selected input switches to 0 (inactive), the action defined by parameter <i>4401 INLET PROT CTRL</i> is executed after the delay set by parameter <i>4407 INLET CTRL DLY</i> expires. | <i>NOT SEL</i> |
|                | NOT SEL          | No digital input selected   | 0              |
|                | DI1              | Pump/fan inlet pressure monitored through digital input DI1   | 1              |
|                | DI2              | See selection DI1.  | 2              |
|                | DI3              | See selection DI1.  | 3              |
|                | DI4              | See selection DI1.  | 4              |
|                | DI5              | See selection DI1.  | 5              |
| 4407           | INLET CTRL DLY   | Sets the delay after which the action defined by parameter <i>4401 INLET PROT CTRL</i> is taken on detection of low inlet pressure  | 60.0 s         |
|                | 0.0...1800.0 s   | Delay time  | 1 = 0.1 s      |
| 4408           | INLET FORCED REF | This reference is used after detection of low inlet pressure. See parameter <i>4401 INLET PROT CTRL</i> .<br> <b>WARNING!</b> Make sure that it is safe to continue operation using this reference.                              | 0.0%           |
|                | -100.0...100.0%  | Forced reference  | 1 = 0.1%       |
| 4409           | OUTLET PROT CTRL | Enables, and selects the mode of, the primary supervision of pump/fan outlet pressure.<br><b>Note:</b> Outlet protection is active only when the active reference is PID.   | <i>NOT SEL</i> |
|                | NOT SEL          | Primary outlet pressure supervision not used  | 0              |
|                | ALARM            | Detection of high outlet pressure produces an alarm on the control panel display.   | 1              |

| All parameters |                  |  |           |
|----------------|------------------|--|-----------|
| No.            | Name/Value       | Description  | Def/FbEq  |
|                | PROTECT          | <p>Detection of high outlet pressure produces an alarm on the control panel display. The output of the PI controller is ramped down (according to parameter <a href="#">4417 PID OUT DEC TIME</a>) to the forced reference (set by parameter <a href="#">4416 OUTLET FORCED REF</a>). The drive reverts to the original reference if the pressure subsequently falls below the supervision level.</p> <p>The following diagram describes the outlet pressure supervision function.</p>  | 2         |
|                | FAULT            | Detection of high outlet pressure trips the drive on a fault.  | 3         |
| 4410           | AI MEAS OUTLET   | Selects the analog input for pump/fan outlet pressure supervision.   | NOT SEL   |
|                | NOT SEL          | No analog input selected   | 0         |
|                | AI1              | Pump/fan outlet pressure monitored through analog input AI1  | 1         |
|                | AI2              | See selection <a href="#">AI1</a> .  | 2         |
| 4411           | AI OUT HI LEVEL  | Sets the supervision limit for the primary outlet pressure measurement. If the value of the selected analog input exceeds this limit, the action defined by parameter <a href="#">4409 OUTLET PROT CTRL</a> is taken after a delay set with parameter <a href="#">4415 OUTLET CTRL DLY</a> expires.  | 100.00%   |
|                | 0.00...100.00%   | Supervision level  | 1 = 0.01% |
| 4412           | VERY HIGH CTRL   | Enables, and selects the mode of, the secondary outlet pressure supervision function. The function uses the analog input selected by parameter <a href="#">4410 AI MEAS OUTLET</a> .   | NOT SEL   |
|                | NOT SEL          | Secondary outlet pressure monitoring not used  | 0         |
|                | STOP             | Detection of very high outlet pressure stops the drive. The drive starts again if the pressure falls below the supervision level.  | 1         |
|                | FAULT            | Detection of very high outlet pressure trips the drive on a fault.   | 2         |
| 4413           | AI OUT VERY HIGH | Supervision level for secondary outlet pressure monitoring function. See parameter <a href="#">4409 OUTLET PROT CTRL</a> .   | 100.00%   |
|                | 0.00...100.00%   | Supervision level  | 1 = 0.01% |

| All parameters |                   |  |           |
|----------------|-------------------|--|-----------|
| No.            | Name/Value        | Description  | Def/FbEq  |
| 4414           | DI STATUS OUTLET  | Selects the digital input for connection of a pressure switch at the pump/fan outlet. The “normal” state is 1 (active). If the selected input switches to 0 (inactive), the action defined by parameter <a href="#">4409 OUTLET PROT CTRL</a> is taken after a delay set by parameter <a href="#">4415 OUTLET CTRL DLY</a> expires.  | NOT SEL   |
|                | NOT SEL           | No digital input selected.   | 0         |
|                | DI1               | Pump/fan outlet pressure monitored through digital input DI1   | 1         |
|                | DI2               | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .  | 2         |
|                | DI3               | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .  | 3         |
|                | DI4               | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .  | 4         |
|                | DI5               | See selection <a href="#">DI1</a> .  | 5         |
| 4415           | OUTLET CTRL DLY   | Sets the delay after which the action defined by parameter <a href="#">4409 OUTLET PROT CTRL</a> is taken on detection of high outlet pressure.  | 60.0 s    |
|                | 0.0...1800.0 s    | Delay time   | 1 = 0.1 s |
| 4416           | OUTLET FORCED REF | This reference is used after detection of high outlet pressure. See parameter <a href="#">4409 OUTLET PROT CTRL</a> .<br> <b>WARNING!</b> Make sure that it is safe to continue operation using this reference.  | 0.0%      |
|                | -100.0...100.0%   | Forced reference   | 1 = 0.1%  |
| 4417           | PID OUT DEC TIME  | PI controller ramp-down time. See selections <a href="#">PROTECT</a> for parameter <a href="#">4401 INLET PROT CTRL</a> and <a href="#">PROTECT</a> for parameter <a href="#">4409 OUTLET PROT CTRL</a> .  | 60.0 s    |
|                | 0.0...1800.0 s    | Delay time   | 1 = 0.1 s |
| 4418           | APPL PROFILE CTL  | Parameters <a href="#">4418 APPL PROFILE CTL</a> to <a href="#">4420 PROF LIMIT ON DLY</a> provide the Application profile protection feature, based on long-term monitoring of an internal status signal. If the selected signal exceeds (and remains above) the supervision limit for a longer time than the set delay (parameter <a href="#">4420 PROF LIMIT ON DLY</a> ), the internal status signal “PROFILE HIGH” is set to 1. The signal can be directed to a relay output (see parameter group <a href="#">14 RELAY OUTPUTS</a> ). | NOT SEL   |
|                | NOT SEL           | Not selected   | 0         |
|                | CONTROL DEV1      | Signal <a href="#">0126 PID 1 OUTPUT</a> is monitored and compared to parameter <a href="#">4419 PROFILE OUTP LIM</a> . Monitoring the deviation between the reference and the actual value gives an indication of the general condition of the pump, piping and valves.   | 1         |
|                | CONTROL DEV2      | Signal <a href="#">0127 PID 2 OUTPUT</a> is monitored and compared to parameter <a href="#">4419 PROFILE OUTP LIM</a> . Monitoring the deviation between the reference and the actual value gives an indication of the general condition of the pump, piping and valves.   | 2         |
|                | APPL OUTPUT       | Signal <a href="#">0116 APPL BLK OUTPUT</a> is monitored and compared to parameter <a href="#">4419 PROFILE OUTP LIM</a> . The signal constantly remaining at 100% may indicate a leak in the output piping.   | 3         |

| All parameters |                      |   |                |
|----------------|----------------------|---|----------------|
| No.            | Name/Value           | Description   | Def/FbEq       |
| 4419           | PROFILE<br>OUTP LIM  | Supervision limit for the Application profile protection  | 100.0%         |
|                | -500.0...500.0%      | Supervision limit   | 1 = 0.1%       |
| 4420           | PROF LIMIT<br>ON DLY | Delay time for the Application profile protection   | 0.00 h         |
|                | 0.00...100.00 h      | Delay time  | 1 = 0.01 h     |
| 4421           | PIPEFILL<br>ENABLE   | Enables the Precharge function, which calculates reference steps.   | <i>NOT SEL</i> |
|                | NOT SEL              | Not enabled   | 0              |
|                | DI1                  | When DI1 is active (1), Precharge is active when the drive is started. If DI1 becomes inactive (0) before Precharge is finished, normal PID control is enabled.   | 1              |
|                | DI2                  | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 2              |
|                | DI3                  | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 3              |
|                | DI4                  | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 4              |
|                | DI5                  | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 5              |
|                | ACTIVE               | Precharge is active at every start-up.  | 7              |
|                | DI1(INV)             | When DI1 is inactive (0), Precharge is active when the drive is started. If DI1 becomes active (1) before Precharge is finished, normal PID control is enabled.   | -1             |
|                | DI2(INV)             | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -2             |
|                | DI3(INV)             | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -3             |
|                | DI4(INV)             | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -4             |
|                | DI5(INV)             | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -5             |
| 4422           | PIPEFILL<br>STEP     | Defines the speed step used in Precharge. The PID reference ramp time is specified by parameter <i>4032 PID REF ACC TIME</i> .<br>The speed step is added to the reference after the time defined by parameter <i>4424 ACT CHANGE DELAY</i> has elapsed and the change in feedback defined by parameter <i>4423 REQ ACT CHANGE</i> has not been reached.          | 0.0%           |
|                | 0.0...100.0%         | Speed step in percent of the maximum speed output   | 1 = 0.1%       |
| 4423           | REQ ACT<br>CHANGE    | Defines the requested change in process feedback during the time that is set by parameter <i>4424 ACT CHANGE DELAY</i> .<br>If the requested change in the feedback is not reached, <i>4422 PIPEFILL STEP</i> is added to the speed reference.  | 0.0%           |
|                | 0.0...100.0%         | Value in percent of the maximum speed   | 1 = 0.1%       |
| 4424           | ACT CHANGE<br>DELAY  | Defines the time that is waited after the feedback value is compared with the old feedback value.<br>If parameter <i>4423 REQ ACT CHANGE</i> is measured in the feedback value, the speed reference stays as it is. If <i>REQ ACT CHANGE</i> is not seen in the feedback value, the value of parameter <i>4422 PIPEFILL STEP</i> is added to the speed reference. | 0.0 s          |
|                | 0.1...6000.0 s       | Delay time  | 1 = 0.1 s      |

| All parameters |                            |  |                     |
|----------------|----------------------------|--|---------------------|
| No.            | Name/Value                 | Description  | Def/FbEq            |
| 4425           | PID ENABLE DEV             | Defines the level when Precharge is disabled and PID is enabled. When the level is reached, PID is enabled. PID is executed as parameterized. If reference ramp times are set, they are used.  | 0.1%                |
|                | 0.0...100.0%               | Value in percent of the maximum feedback.  | 1 = 0.1%            |
| 4426           | PIPEFILL TIMEOUT           | Defines the maximum time Precharge is allowed to operate. If this time elapses, PID is preset and PID is allowed to run as it is parameterized – with or without reference ramps.  | 0 = NOT SEL         |
|                | 0 = NOT SEL<br>1...60000 s | 0: NOT SEL<br>1...60000 s: Max. Precharge operating time   | 1 = 1 s             |
| <b>45</b>      | <b>ENERGY SAVING</b>       | Set-up of calculation and optimization of energy savings.<br><b>Note:</b> The values of saved energy parameters <i>0174 SAVED KWH</i> , <i>0175 SAVED MWH</i> , <i>0176 SAVED AMOUNT 1</i> , <i>0177 SAVED AMOUNT 2</i> and <i>0178 SAVED CO2</i> are derived from subtracting the drive's energy consumed from the direct-on-line (DOL) consumption calculated on the basis of parameter <i>4508 PUMP POWER</i> . As such, the accuracy of the values is dependent on the accuracy of the power estimate entered in that parameter. |                     |
| 4501           | ENERGY OPTIMIZER           | Enables or disables the energy optimizer, which optimizes the flux so that the total energy consumption and motor noise level are reduced when the drive operates below the nominal load. The total efficiency (motor and drive) can be improved by 1...10% depending on load torque and speed.  | OFF                 |
|                | OFF                        | Disabled   | 0                   |
|                | ON                         | Enabled  | 1                   |
| 4502           | ENERGY PRICE               | Price of energy per kWh. Used for reference when energy savings are calculated. See parameters <i>0174 SAVED KWH</i> , <i>0175 SAVED MWH</i> , <i>0176 SAVED AMOUNT 1</i> , <i>0177 SAVED AMOUNT 2</i> and <i>0178 SAVED CO2</i> (reduction in carbon dioxide emissions in tn).  | 0.00 (Currency)     |
|                | 0.00...655.35              | Price of energy per kWh  | 1 = 0.01 (Currency) |
| 4507           | CO2 CONV FACTOR            | Conversion factor for converting energy into CO2 emissions (kg/kWh or tn/MWh). Used for multiplying the saved energy in MWh to calculate the value of parameter <i>0178 SAVED CO2</i> (reduction in carbon dioxide emissions in tn).   | 0.5 tn/MWh          |
|                | 0.0...10.0 tn/MWh          | Conversion factor  | 1 = 0.1 tn/MWh      |
| 4508           | PUMP POWER                 | Pump power when connected directly to supply (DOL). Used for reference when energy savings are calculated. See parameters <i>0174 SAVED KWH</i> , <i>0175 SAVED MWH</i> , <i>0176 SAVED AMOUNT 1</i> , <i>0177 SAVED AMOUNT 2</i> and <i>0178 SAVED CO2</i> .<br>It is possible to use this parameter as the reference power also for other applications than pumps. The reference power can also be some other constant power than a motor connected directly on-line.  | 100.0%              |
|                | 0.0...1000.0%              | Pump power in percent of nominal motor power   | 1 = 0.1%            |
| 4509           | ENERGY RESET               | Resets energy calculators <i>0174 SAVED KWH</i> , <i>0175 SAVED MWH</i> , <i>0176 SAVED AMOUNT 1</i> , <i>0177 SAVED AMOUNT 2</i> and <i>0178 SAVED CO2</i> .  | DONE                |

| All parameters                                   |                 |   |                |
|--|-----------------|---|----------------|
| No.  | Name/Value      | Description   | Def/FbEq       |
|  | DONE            | Reset not requested (normal operation).   | 0              |
|  | RESET           | Reset energy counters, The value reverts automatically to <i>DONE</i> .   | 1              |
| <b>46 PUMP CLEANING</b> Set-up of pump cleaning. |                 |   |                |
| 4601   | PUMP CLEAN TRIG | <p>Defines how the Pump cleaning function is triggered. The pump cleaning sequence consists of forward and reverse "steps".</p>  <p><b>WARNING!</b> Before enabling the Pump cleaning function, ensure it is safe to perform the pump cleaning sequence with the connected equipment.</p> <p><b>Notes:</b><br/>                     The Pump cleaning function overrides parameter <i>1003 DIRECTION</i>.<br/>                     The Pump cleaning function observes the maximum forward and reverse frequencies (parameters <i>2007 MINIMUM FREQ</i> and <i>2008 MAXIMUM FREQ</i>).<br/>                     The Pump cleaning function always uses acceleration time 2 (parameter <i>2205</i>) and deceleration time 2 (parameter <i>2206</i>).<br/>                     The drive must be ready and its Run enable signal must be present before the pump cleaning sequence can start.</p> | <i>NOT SEL</i> |
|  | NOT SEL         | No triggering source defined.   | 0              |
|  | DI1             | Trigger on the rising edge of digital input DI1   | 1              |
|  | DI2             | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 2              |
|  | DI3             | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 3              |
|  | DI4             | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 4              |
|  | DI5             | See selection <i>DI1</i> .  | 5              |
|  | DI1/SUP1OVR     | Enable on the rising edge of digital input DI1 or <i>SUPRV1 OVER</i> (parameter <i>1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1</i> ). See parameter group <i>32 SUPERVISION</i> .   | 7              |
|  | DI2/SUP1OVR     | See selection <i>DI1/SUP1OVR</i> .  | 8              |
|  | DI3/SUP1OVR     | See selection <i>DI1/SUP1OVR</i> .  | 9              |
|  | DI4/SUP1OVR     | See selection <i>DI1/SUP1OVR</i> .  | 10             |
|  | DI5/SUP1OVR     | See selection <i>DI1/SUP1OVR</i> .  | 11             |



| All parameters       |                |   |           |
|----------------------|----------------|---|-----------|
| No.                  | Name/Value     | Description   | Def/FbEq  |
|                      | SUPRV1 OVER    | Trigger on <i>SUPRV1 OVER</i> (parameter <i>1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1</i> ). See parameter group <i>32 SUPERVISION</i> .  | 12        |
|                      | DRIVE START    | Trigger when the drive receives a start command   | 13        |
|                      | TIMER TRIG     | Pump cleaning sequence is started periodically at intervals defined by parameter <i>4607 TRIG TIME</i> .  | 14        |
|                      | DI1(INV)       | Trigger on the falling edge of digital input DI1  | -1        |
|                      | DI2(INV)       | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -2        |
|                      | DI3(INV)       | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -3        |
|                      | DI4(INV)       | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -4        |
|                      | DI5(INV)       | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .   | -5        |
|                      | DI1(INV)S10    | Enable on the falling edge of digital input DI1, trigger on <i>SUPRV1 OVER</i> (parameter <i>1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1</i> ). See parameter group <i>32 SUPERVISION</i> . | -7        |
|                      | DI2(INV)S10    | See selection <i>DI1(INV)S10</i> .  | -8        |
|                      | DI3(INV)S10    | See selection <i>DI1(INV)S10</i> .  | -9        |
|                      | DI4(INV)S10    | See selection <i>DI1(INV)S10</i> .  | -10       |
|                      | DI5(INV)S10    | See selection <i>DI1(INV)S10</i> .  | -11       |
| 4602                 | FWD STEP       | Defines the forward step frequency for the pump cleaning sequence in percent of the nominal motor frequency (parameter <i>9907 MOTOR NOM FREQ</i> ).                | 0.0%      |
|                      | 0.0...100.0%   | Forward step frequency  | 1 = 0.1%  |
| 4603                 | REV STEP       | Defines the reverse step frequency for the pump cleaning sequence in percent of the nominal motor frequency (parameter <i>9907 MOTOR NOM FREQ</i> ).                | 0.0%      |
|                      | 0.0...100.0%   | Reverse step frequency  | 1 = 0.1%  |
| 4604                 | OFF TIME       | Defines the length of the interval between forward and reverse steps in the pump cleaning sequence in seconds.  | 0.0 s     |
|                      | 0.0...1000.0 s | Off time (step interval)  | 1 = 0.1 s |
| 4605                 | FWD TIME       | Defines the duration of each forward step in the pump cleaning sequence in seconds.   | 0.0 s     |
|                      | 0.0...1000.0 s | Forward step duration   | 1 = 0.1 s |
| 4606                 | REV TIME       | Defines the duration of each reverse step in the pump cleaning sequence in seconds.   | 0.0 s     |
|                      | 0.0...1000.0 s | Reverse step duration   | 1 = 0.1 s |
| 4607                 | TRIG TIME      | Defines the time for setting <i>TIMER TRIG</i> of parameter <i>4601 PUMP CLEAN TRIG</i> .   | 0.0 h     |
|                      | 0.0...200.0 h  | Trigger time in hours   | 1 = 0.1 h |
| 4608                 | COUNT          | Number of steps to be performed in the pump cleaning sequence.  | 0         |
|                      | 0...100        | Number of steps   | 1 = 1     |
| <b>52 PANEL COMM</b> |                | Communication settings for the control panel port on the drive  |           |
| 5201                 | STATION ID     | Defines the address of the drive. Two units with the same address are not allowed on-line.  | 1         |
|                      | 1...247        | Address   | 1 = 1     |

| All parameters         |                 |  |                |
|------------------------|-----------------|--|----------------|
| No.                    | Name/Value      | Description  | Def/FbEq       |
| 5202                   | BAUD RATE       | Defines the transfer rate of the link.   | 9.6 kbit/s     |
|                        | 9.6 kbit/s      | 9.6 kbit/s   | 1 = 0.1 kbit/s |
|                        | 19.2 kbit/s     | 19.2 kbit/s  |                |
|                        | 38.4 kbit/s     | 38.4 kbit/s  |                |
|                        | 57.6 kbit/s     | 57.6 kbit/s  |                |
|                        | 115.2 kbit/s    | 115.2 kbit/s   |                |
| 5203                   | PARITY          | Defines the use of parity and stop bit(s). The same setting must be used in all on-line stations.  | 8 NONE 1       |
|                        | 8 NONE 1        | 8 data bits, no parity bit, one stop bit   | 0              |
|                        | 8 NONE 2        | 8 data bits, no parity bit, two stop bits  | 1              |
|                        | 8 EVEN 1        | 8 data bits, even parity indication bit, one stop bit  | 2              |
|                        | 8 ODD 1         | 8 data bits, odd parity indication bit, one stop bit   | 3              |
| 5204                   | OK MESSAGES     | Number of valid messages received by the drive. During normal operation, this number increases constantly.   | 0              |
|                        | 0...65535       | Number of messages   | 1 = 1          |
| 5205                   | PARITY ERRORS   | Number of characters with a parity error received from the Modbus link. If the number is high, check that the parity settings of the devices connected on the bus are the same.<br><b>Note:</b> High electromagnetic noise levels generate errors.             | 0              |
|                        | 0...65535       | Number of characters   | 1 = 1          |
| 5206                   | FRAME ERRORS    | Number of characters with a framing error received by the Modbus link. If the number is high, check that the communication speed settings of the devices connected on the bus are the same.<br><b>Note:</b> High electromagnetic noise levels generate errors. | 0              |
|                        | 0...65535       | Number of characters   | 1 = 1          |
| 5207                   | BUFFER OVERRUNS | Number of characters which overflow the buffer, ie number of characters which exceed the maximum message length, 128 bytes.  | 0              |
|                        | 0...65535       | Number of characters   | 1 = 1          |
| 5208                   | CRC ERRORS      | Number of messages with a CRC (cyclic redundancy check) error received by the drive. If the number is high, check CRC calculation for possible errors.<br><b>Note:</b> High electromagnetic noise levels generate errors.                                      | 0              |
|                        | 0...65535       | Number of messages   | 1 = 1          |
| <b>53 EFB PROTOCOL</b> |                 | Embedded fieldbus link settings. See chapter <i>Fieldbus control with the embedded fieldbus</i> on page 287.   |                |
| 5301                   | EFB PROTOCOL ID | Contains the identification and program revision of the protocol.<br><b>Note:</b> You can reset this parameter only with parameter <i>9802 COMM PROT SEL</i> .   |                |
|                        | 0000...FFFF hex | Format XXYY hex, where XX = protocol ID and YY = program revision of the protocol.   |                |
| 5302                   | EFB STATION ID  | Defines the address of the device. Two units with the same address are not allowed on-line.  | 1              |
|                        | 0...65535       | Address  | 1 = 1          |

| All parameters |                  |  |                   |
|----------------|------------------|--|-------------------|
| No.            | Name/Value       | Description  | Def/FbEq          |
| 5303           | EFB BAUD RATE    | Defines the transfer rate of the link.   | 9.6 kbit/s        |
|                | 1.2 kbit/s       | 1.2 kbit/s   | 1 =<br>0.1 kbit/s |
|                | 2.4 kbit/s       | 2.4 kbit/s   |                   |
|                | 4.8 kbit/s       | 4.8 kbit/s   |                   |
|                | 9.6 kbit/s       | 9.6 kbit/s   |                   |
|                | 19.2 kbit/s      | 19.2 kbit/s  |                   |
|                | 38.4 kbit/s      | 38.4 kbit/s  |                   |
|                | 57.6 kbit/s      | 57.6 kbit/s  |                   |
|                | 76.8 kbit/s      | 76.8 kbit/s  |                   |
| 5304           | EFB PARITY       | Defines the use of parity and stop bit(s) and the data length. The same setting must be used in all on-line stations.  | 8 NONE 1          |
|                | 8 NONE 1         | No parity bit, one stop bit, 8 data bits   | 0                 |
|                | 8 NONE 2         | No parity bit, two stop bits, 8 data bits  | 1                 |
|                | 8 EVEN 1         | Even parity indication bit, one stop bit, 8 data bits  | 2                 |
|                | 8 ODD 1          | Odd parity indication bit, one stop bit, 8 data bits   | 3                 |
| 5305           | EFB CTRL PROFILE | Selects the communication profile. See section <a href="#">Communication profiles</a> on page 302.   | ABB DRV LIM       |
|                | ABB DRV LIM      | ABB drives limited profile   | 0                 |
|                | DCU PROFILE      | DCU profile  | 1                 |
|                | ABB DRV FULL     | ABB drives profile   | 2                 |
| 5306           | EFB OK MESSAGES  | Number of valid messages received by the drive. During normal operation, this number increases constantly.   | 0                 |
|                | 0...65535        | Number of messages   | 1 = 1             |
| 5307           | EFB CRC ERRORS   | Number of messages with an CRC (cyclic redundancy check) error received by the drive. If the number is high, check CRC calculation for possible errors.<br><b>Note:</b> High electromagnetic noise levels generate errors. | 0                 |
|                | 0...65535        | Number of messages   | 1 = 1             |
| 5308           | EFB UART ERRORS  | Number of messages with a character error received by the drive  | 0                 |
|                | 0...65535        | Number of messages   | 1 = 1             |
| 5309           | EFB STATUS       | Status of the EFB protocol   | IDLE              |
|                | IDLE             | EFB protocol is configured, but not receiving any messages.  | 0                 |
|                | EXECUT INIT      | EFB protocol is initializing.  | 1                 |
|                | TIME OUT         | A time out has occurred in the communication between the network master and the EFB protocol.  | 2                 |
|                | CONFIG ERROR     | EFB protocol has a configuration error.  | 3                 |
|                | OFF-LINE         | EFB protocol is receiving messages that are NOT addressed to this drive.   | 4                 |
|                | ON-LINE          | EFB protocol is receiving messages that are addressed to this drive.   | 5                 |

| All parameters |                 |   |          |
|----------------|-----------------|---|----------|
| No.            | Name/Value      | Description   | Def/FbEq |
|                | RESET           | EFB protocol is performing a hardware reset.  | 6        |
|                | LISTEN ONLY     | EFB protocol is in listen-only mode.  | 7        |
| 5310           | EFB PAR 10      | Selects an actual value to be mapped to Modbus register 40005.  | 0        |
|                | 0...65535       | Parameter index   | 1 = 1    |
| 5311           | EFB PAR 11      | Selects an actual value to be mapped to Modbus register 40006.  | 0        |
|                | 0...65535       | Parameter index   | 1 = 1    |
| 5312           | EFB PAR 12      | Selects an actual value to be mapped to Modbus register 40007.  | 0        |
|                | 0...65535       | Parameter index   | 1 = 1    |
| 5313           | EFB PAR 13      | Selects an actual value to be mapped to Modbus register 40008.  | 0        |
|                | 0...65535       | Parameter index   | 1 = 1    |
| 5314           | EFB PAR 14      | Selects an actual value to be mapped to Modbus register 40009.  | 0        |
|                | 0...65535       | Parameter index   | 1 = 1    |
| 5315           | EFB PAR 15      | Selects an actual value to be mapped to Modbus register 40010.  | 0        |
|                | 0...65535       | Parameter index   | 1 = 1    |
| 5316           | EFB PAR 16      | Selects an actual value to be mapped to Modbus register 40011.  | 0        |
|                | 0...65535       | Parameter index   | 1 = 1    |
| 5317           | EFB PAR 17      | Selects an actual value to be mapped to Modbus register 40012.  | 0        |
|                | 0...65535       | Parameter index   | 1 = 1    |
| 5318           | EFB PAR 18      | For Modbus: Sets an additional delay before the drive begins transmitting response to the master request.                   | 0        |
|                | 0...65535       | Delay in milliseconds   | 1 = 1    |
| 5319           | EFB PAR 19      | ABB drives profile ( <i>ABB DRV LIM</i> or <i>ABB DRV FULL</i> ) Control word. Read only copy of the Fieldbus Control word. | 0000 hex |
|                | 0000...FFFF hex | Control word  |          |
| 5320           | EFB PAR 20      | ABB drives profile ( <i>ABB DRV LIM</i> or <i>ABB DRV FULL</i> ) Status word. Read only copy of the Fieldbus Status word.   | 0000 hex |
|                | 0000...FFFF hex | Status word   |          |
| 5321           | MDB DATA IN 1   | Modbus register 40013 (read-only). Supported only by STD MODBUS.  | 0        |
|                | 0...9999        | Parameter index   | 1 = 1    |
| 5322           | MDB DATA IN 2   | Modbus register 40014 (read-only). Supported only by STD MODBUS.  | 0        |
|                | 0...9999        | Parameter index   | 1 = 1    |

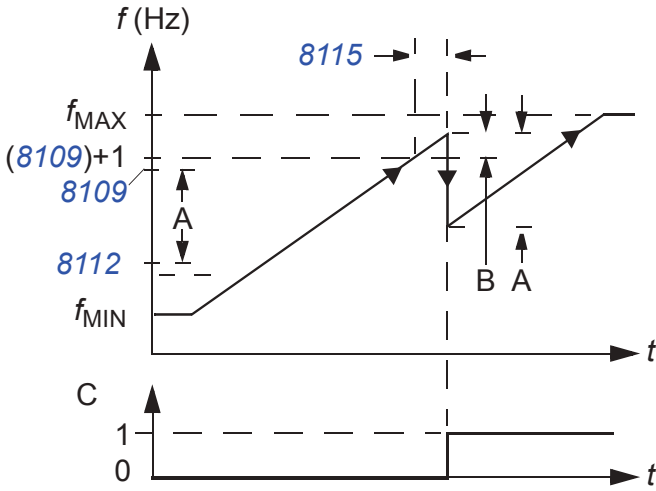
| All parameters |                      |   |                |
|----------------|----------------------|---|----------------|
| No.            | Name/Value           | Description   | Def/FbEq       |
| 5323           | MDB DATA OUT 1       | Modbus register 40080 (write-only). Supported only by STD MODBUS.   | 0              |
|                | 0...9999             | Parameter index   | 1 = 1          |
| 5324           | MDB DATA OUT 2       | Modbus register 40081 (write-only). Supported only by STD MODBUS.   | 0              |
|                | 0...9999             | Parameter index   | 1 = 1          |
| 5325           | MDB DATA OUT 3       | Modbus register 40082 (write-only). Supported only by STD MODBUS.   | 0              |
|                | 0...9999             | Parameter index   | 1 = 1          |
| 5326           | MDB DATA OUT 4       | Modbus register 40083 (write-only). Supported only by STD MODBUS.   | 0              |
|                | 0...9999             | Parameter index   | 1 = 1          |
| 5327           | MDB DATA OUT 5       | Modbus register 40084 (write-only). Supported only by STD MODBUS.   | 0              |
|                | 0...9999             | Parameter index   | 1 = 1          |
| 5328           | MDB DATA OUT 6       | Modbus register 40085 (write-only). Supported only by STD MODBUS.   | 0              |
|                | 0...9999             | Parameter index   | 1 = 1          |
| 5329           | MDB DATA OUT 7       | Modbus register 40086 (write-only). Supported only by STD MODBUS.   | 0              |
|                | 0...9999             | Parameter index   | 1 = 1          |
| 5330           | MDB DATA OUT 8       | Modbus register 40087 (write-only). Supported only by STD MODBUS.   | 0              |
|                | 0...9999             | Parameter index   | 1 = 1          |
| 5331           | MDB DATA OUT 9       | Modbus register 40088 (write-only). Supported only by STD MODBUS.   | 0              |
|                | 0...9999             | Parameter index   | 1 = 1          |
| 5332           | MDB DATA OUT 10      | Modbus register 40089 (write-only). Supported only by STD MODBUS.   | 0              |
|                | 0...9999             | Parameter index   | 1 = 1          |
| <b>64</b>      | <b>LOAD ANALYZER</b> | Load analyzing function for peak value and amplitude. See section <a href="#">Load analyzer</a> on page 153.            |                |
| 6401           | PVL SIGNAL           | Defines the signal logged for peak value  | 103            |
|                | x...x                | Parameter index in group <i>01 OPERATING DATA</i> . Eg 102 = <i>0102 SPEED</i> .  | 1 = 1          |
| 6402           | PVL FILTER TIME      | Defines the filter time for peak value logging  | 0.1 s          |
|                | 0.0... 120.0 s       | Filter time   | 1 = 0.1 s      |
| 6403           | LOGGERS RESET        | Defines the source for the reset of the peak value logger and amplitude logger 2. Resetting always resets both loggers. | <i>NOT SEL</i> |
|                | NOT SEL              | No reset selected   | 0              |
|                | DI1                  | Reset loggers on the rising edge of DI1.  | 1              |

| All parameters |                         |  |            |
|----------------|-------------------------|--|------------|
| No.            | Name/Value              | Description  | Def/FbEq   |
|                | DI2                     | See selection <i>DI1</i> .   | 2          |
|                | DI3                     | See selection <i>DI1</i> .   | 3          |
|                | DI4                     | See selection <i>DI1</i> .   | 4          |
|                | DI5                     | See selection <i>DI1</i> .   | 5          |
|                | RESET                   | Reset loggers. Parameter is set to NOT SEL.  | 7          |
|                | DI1(INV)                | Reset loggers on the falling edge of DI1.  | -1         |
|                | DI2(INV)                | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .  | -2         |
|                | DI3(INV)                | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .  | -3         |
|                | DI4(INV)                | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .  | -4         |
|                | DI5(INV)                | See selection <i>DI1(INV)</i> .  | -5         |
| 6404           | AL2 SIGNAL              | Defines the signal logged for amplitude logger 2   | 103        |
|                | x...x                   | Parameter index in group <i>01 OPERATING DATA</i> . Eg 102 = <i>0102 SPEED</i> .   | 1 = 1      |
| 6405           | AL2 SIGNAL BASE         | Defines the base value from which the percentage distribution is calculated. Representation and default value depends on the signal selected with parameter <i>6404 AL2 SIGNAL</i> .               | -          |
|                | -                       | -  | -          |
| 6406           | PEAK VALUE              | Detected peak value of the signal selected with parameter <i>6401 PVL SIGNAL</i>   | -          |
|                | -                       | -  | -          |
| 6407           | PEAK TIME 1             | Date of the peak value detection   | -          |
|                | 0...65535 d             | Day on which the peak value was detected.<br>Format: Date if the real time clock is operating. / The number of days elapsed after the power-on if the real time clock is not used, or was not set. | 1 = 1 d    |
| 6408           | PEAK TIME 2             | Time of the peak value detection   | -          |
|                | 00:00:00...<br>23:59:58 | hours:minutes:seconds  | 1 = 2 s    |
| 6409           | CURRENT AT PEAK         | Current at the moment of the peak value  | -          |
|                | 0.0...6553.5 A          |  | 1 = 0.1 A  |
| 6410           | UDC AT PEAK             | DC voltage at the moment of the peak value   | -          |
|                | 0...65535 V             |  | 1 = 1 V    |
| 6411           | FREQ AT PEAK            | Output frequency at the moment of the peak value   | -          |
|                | 0.0...6553.5 Hz         |  | 1 = 0.1 Hz |
| 6412           | TIME OF RESET 1         | Last reset date of the peak logger and amplitude logger 2  | -          |
|                | 0...65535 d             | Day of the last reset.<br>Format: Date if the real time clock is operating. / The number of days elapsed after the power-on if the real time clock is not used, or was not set.                    | 1 = 1 d    |
| 6413           | TIME OF RESET 2         | Last reset time of the peak logger and amplitude logger 2  | -          |

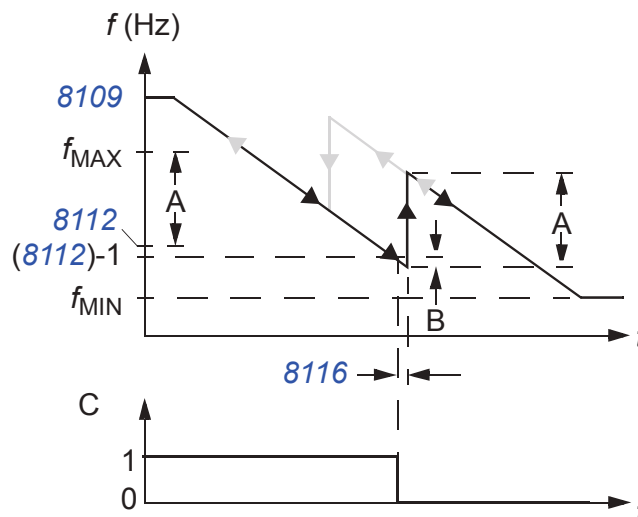
| All parameters |                         |  |          |
|----------------|-------------------------|--|----------|
| No.            | Name/Value              | Description  | Def/FbEq |
|                | 00:00:00...<br>23:59:58 | hours:minutes:seconds  | 1 = 2 s  |
| 6414           | AL1RANGE0T<br>O10       | Amplitude logger 1 (current in percent of nominal current $I_{2N}$ ) 0...10% distribution  | -        |
|                | 0.0...100.0%            |  | 1 = 0.1% |
| 6415           | AL1RANGE10<br>TO20      | Amplitude logger 1 (current in percent of nominal current $I_{2N}$ ) 10...20% distribution | -        |
|                | 0.0...100.0%            |  | 1 = 0.1% |
| 6416           | AL1RANGE20<br>TO30      | Amplitude logger 1 (current in percent of nominal current $I_{2N}$ ) 20...30% distribution | -        |
|                | 0.0...100.0%            |  | 1 = 0.1% |
| 6417           | AL1RANGE30<br>TO40      | Amplitude logger 1 (current in percent of nominal current $I_{2N}$ ) 30...40% distribution | -        |
|                | 0.0...100.0%            |  | 1 = 0.1% |
| 6418           | AL1RANGE40<br>TO50      | Amplitude logger 1 (current in percent of nominal current $I_{2N}$ ) 40...50% distribution | -        |
|                | 0.0...100.0%            |  | 1 = 0.1% |
| 6419           | AL1RANGE50<br>TO60      | Amplitude logger 1 (current in percent of nominal current $I_{2N}$ ) 50...60% distribution | -        |
|                | 0.0...100.0%            |  | 1 = 0.1% |
| 6420           | AL1RANGE60<br>TO70      | Amplitude logger 1 (current in percent of nominal current $I_{2N}$ ) 60...70% distribution | -        |
|                | 0.0...100.0%            |  | 1 = 0.1% |
| 6421           | AL1RANGE70<br>TO80      | Amplitude logger 1 (current in percent of nominal current $I_{2N}$ ) 70...80% distribution | -        |
|                | 0.0...100.0%            |  | 1 = 0.1% |
| 6422           | AL1RANGE80<br>TO90      | Amplitude logger 1 (current in percent of nominal current $I_{2N}$ ) 80...90% distribution | -        |
|                | 0.0...100.0%            |  | 1 = 0.1% |
| 6423           | AL1RANGE90<br>TO        | Amplitude logger 1 (current in percent of nominal current $I_{2N}$ ) over 90% distribution | -        |
|                | 0.0...100.0%            |  | 1 = 0.1% |
| 6424           | AL2RANGE0T<br>O10       | Amplitude logger 2 (selection with parameter <a href="#">6404</a> ) 0...10% distribution   | -        |
|                | 0.0...100.0%            |  | 1 = 0.1% |
| 6425           | AL2RANGE10<br>TO20      | Amplitude logger 2 (selection with parameter <a href="#">6404</a> ) 10...20% distribution  | -        |
|                | 0.0...100.0%            |  | 1 = 0.1% |
| 6426           | AL2RANGE20<br>TO30      | Amplitude logger 2 (selection with parameter <a href="#">6404</a> ) 20...30% distribution  | -        |
|                | 0.0...100.0%            |  | 1 = 0.1% |
| 6427           | AL2RANGE30<br>TO40      | Amplitude logger 2 (selection with parameter <a href="#">6404</a> ) 30...40% distribution  | -        |
|                | 0.0...100.0%            |  | 1 = 0.1% |

| All parameters        |                     |   |          |
|-----------------------|---------------------|---|----------|
| No.                   | Name/Value          | Description   | Def/FbEq |
| 6428                  | AL2RANGE40<br>TO50  | Amplitude logger 2 (selection with parameter <a href="#">6404</a> )<br>40...50% distribution  | -        |
|                       | 0.0...100.0%        |   | 1 = 0.1% |
| 6429                  | AL2RANGE50<br>TO60  | Amplitude logger 2 (selection with parameter <a href="#">6404</a> )<br>50...60% distribution  | -        |
|                       | 0.0...100.0%        |   | 1 = 0.1% |
| 6430                  | AL2RANGE60<br>TO70  | Amplitude logger 2 (selection with parameter <a href="#">6404</a> )<br>60...70% distribution  | -        |
|                       | 0.0...100.0%        |   | 1 = 0.1% |
| 6431                  | AL2RANGE70<br>TO80  | Amplitude logger 2 (selection with parameter <a href="#">6404</a> )<br>70...80% distribution  | -        |
|                       | 0.0...100.0%        |   | 1 = 0.1% |
| 6432                  | AL2RANGE80<br>TO90  | Amplitude logger 2 (selection with parameter <a href="#">6404</a> )<br>80...90% distribution  | -        |
|                       | 0.0...100.0%        |   | 1 = 0.1% |
| 6433                  | AL2RANGE90<br>TO    | Amplitude logger 2 (selection with parameter <a href="#">6404</a> ) over<br>90% distribution  | -        |
|                       | 0.0...100.0%        |   | 1 = 0.1% |
| <b>81 PFC CONTROL</b> |                     | Set-up of Pump-Fan Control (PFC) mode. See section <a href="#">PFC and SPFC control</a> on page <a href="#">155</a> .   |          |
| 8103                  | REFERENCE<br>STEP 1 | <p>Sets a percentage value that is added to the process reference. Applies only when <u>at least one</u> auxiliary (constant speed) motor is running.</p> <p><b>Example:</b> The drive operates three parallel pumps that maintain water pressure in a pipe.</p> <p>Parameter <a href="#">4011 INTERNAL SETPNT</a> sets a constant pressure reference that controls the pressure in the pipe. The speed regulated pump operates alone at low water consumption levels.</p> <p>As water consumption increases, first one constant speed pump operates, then, the second.</p> <p>As flow increases, the pressure at the output end of the pipe drops relative to the pressure measured at the input end. As auxiliary motors step in to increase the flow, the adjustments below correct the reference to more closely match the output pressure.</p> <p>When the first auxiliary pump operates, increase the reference with parameter <a href="#">8103 REFERENCE STEP 1</a>.</p> <p>When two auxiliary pumps operate, increase the reference with parameter <a href="#">8103 REFERENCE STEP 1</a> + parameter <a href="#">8104 REFERENCE STEP 2</a>.</p> <p>When three auxiliary pumps operate, increase the reference with parameter <a href="#">8103 REFERENCE STEP 1</a> + parameter <a href="#">8104 REFERENCE STEP 2</a> + parameter <a href="#">8105 REFERENCE STEP 3</a>.</p> | 0.0%     |
|                       | 0.0...100.0%        | Value in percent  | 1 = 0.1% |
| 8104                  | REFERENCE<br>STEP 2 | <p>Sets a percentage value that is added to the process reference. Applies only when <u>at least two</u> auxiliary (constant speed) motors are running.</p> <p>See parameter <a href="#">8103 REFERENCE STEP 1</a>.</p>   | 0.0%     |



| All parameters |                  |   |                          |
|----------------|------------------|---|--------------------------|
| No.            | Name/Value       | Description   | Def/FbEq                 |
|                | 0.0...100.0%     | Value in percent  | 1 = 0.1%                 |
| 8105           | REFERENCE STEP 3 | Sets a percentage value that is added to the process reference. Applies only when <u>at least three</u> auxiliary (constant speed) motors are running.<br>See parameter <a href="#">8103 REFERENCE STEP 1</a> .   | 0.0%                     |
|                | 0.0...100.0%     | Value in percent  | 1 = 0.1%                 |
| 8109           | START FREQ 1     | <p>Sets the frequency limit used to start the first auxiliary motor. The first auxiliary motor starts if:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>no auxiliary motors are running</li> <li>drive output frequency exceeds limit <math>8109 + 1</math> Hz</li> <li>output frequency stays above a relaxed limit (<math>8109 - 1</math> Hz) for at least time <a href="#">8115 AUX MOT START D</a>.</li> </ul> <p>After the first auxiliary motor starts, output frequency decreases by value (<math>8109</math> START FREQ 1) - (<math>8112</math> LOW FREQ 1).</p> <p>In effect, the output of the speed regulated motor drops to compensate for the input from the auxiliary motor.</p> <p>See the figure, where:</p> <p>A = (<math>8109</math> START FREQ 1) - (<math>8112</math> LOW FREQ 1)<br/>           B = Output frequency increase during the start delay.<br/>           C = Diagram showing auxiliary motor's run status as frequency increases (1 = On).</p> <p><b>Note:</b> <math>8109</math> START FREQ 1 value must be between <math>8112</math> LOW FREQ 1 and (<math>2008</math> MAXIMUM FREQ) -1.</p> | E: 50.0 Hz<br>U: 60.0 Hz |
|                |                  |   |                          |
|                | 0.0...500.0 Hz   | Frequency   | 1 = 0.1 Hz               |
| 8110           | START FREQ 2     | <p>Sets the frequency limit used to start the second auxiliary motor. See <a href="#">8109 START FREQ 1</a> for a complete description of the operation.</p> <p>The second auxiliary motor starts if:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>one auxiliary motor is running</li> <li>drive output frequency exceeds limit <math>8110 + 1</math> Hz</li> <li>output frequency stays above the relaxed limit (<math>8110 - 1</math> Hz) for at least time <a href="#">8115 AUX MOT START D</a>.</li> </ul>  | E: 50.0 Hz<br>U: 60.0 Hz |
|                | 0.0...500.0 Hz   | Frequency   | 1 = 0.1 Hz               |

| All parameters |                 |  |                          |
|----------------|-----------------|--|--------------------------|
| No.            | Name/Value      | Description  | Def/FbEq                 |
| 8111           | START FREQ<br>3 | <p>Sets the frequency limit used to start the third auxiliary motor. See <a href="#">8109 START FREQ 1</a> for a complete description of the operation.</p> <p>The third auxiliary motor starts if:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>two auxiliary motors are running</li> <li>drive output frequency exceeds limit <math>8111 + 1</math> Hz</li> <li>output frequency stays above the relaxed limit (<math>8111 - 1</math> Hz) for at least time <a href="#">8115 AUX MOT START D</a>.</li> </ul>   | E: 50.0 Hz<br>U: 60.0 Hz |
|                | 0.0...500.0 Hz  | Frequency  | 1 = 0.1 Hz               |
| 8112           | LOW FREQ 1      | <p>Sets the frequency limit used to stop the first auxiliary motor. The first auxiliary motor stops if:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>only one (the first) auxiliary motor is running</li> <li>drive output frequency drops below limit <math>8112 - 1</math> Hz.</li> <li>output frequency stays below the relaxed limit (<math>8112 + 1</math> Hz) for at least time: <a href="#">8116 AUX MOT STOP D</a>.</li> </ul> <p>After the first auxiliary motor stops, output frequency increases by value (<a href="#">8109 START FREQ 1</a>) - (<a href="#">8112 LOW FREQ 1</a>).</p> <p>In effect, the output of the speed regulated motor increases to compensate for the loss of the auxiliary motor.</p> <p>See the figure, where:</p> <p>A = (<a href="#">8109 START FREQ 1</a>) - (<a href="#">8112 LOW FREQ 1</a>)<br/>           B = Output frequency decrease during the stop delay.<br/>           C = Diagram showing auxiliary motor's run status as frequency decreases (1 = On).</p> <p>Grey path = Shows hysteresis – if time is reversed, the path backwards is not the same. For details on the path for starting, see the diagram at <a href="#">8109 START FREQ 1</a>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> <a href="#">8112 LOW FREQ 1</a> value must be between (<a href="#">2007 MINIMUM FREQ</a>) + 1 Hz and <a href="#">8109 START FREQ 1</a></p> | E: 25.0 Hz<br>U: 30.0 Hz |
|                | 0.0...500.0 Hz  | Frequency  | 1 = 0.1 Hz               |

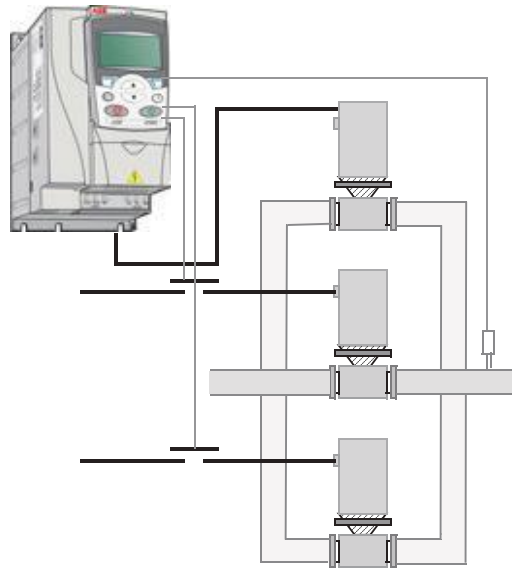


| All parameters |                 |   |                          |
|----------------|-----------------|---|--------------------------|
| No.            | Name/Value      | Description   | Def/FbEq                 |
| 8113           | LOW FREQ 2      | <p>Sets the frequency limit used to stop the second auxiliary motor. See <a href="#">8112 LOW FREQ 1</a> for a complete description of the operation.</p> <p>The second auxiliary motor stops if:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• two auxiliary motors are running</li> <li>• drive output frequency drops below limit <a href="#">8113</a> - 1 Hz</li> <li>• output frequency stays below the relaxed limit (<a href="#">8113</a> + 1 Hz) for at least time <a href="#">8116 AUX MOT STOP D</a>.</li> </ul> | E: 25.0 Hz<br>U: 30.0 Hz |
|                | 0.0...500.0 Hz  | Frequency   | 1 = 0.1 Hz               |
| 8114           | LOW FREQ 3      | <p>Sets the frequency limit used to stop the third auxiliary motor. See <a href="#">8112 LOW FREQ 1</a> for a complete description of the operation.</p> <p>The third auxiliary motor stops if:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• three auxiliary motors are running</li> <li>• drive output frequency drops below limit <a href="#">8114</a> - 1 Hz</li> <li>• output frequency stays below the relaxed limit (<a href="#">8114</a> + 1 Hz) for at least time <a href="#">8116 AUX MOT STOP D</a>.</li> </ul> | E: 25.0 Hz<br>U: 30.0 Hz |
|                | 0.0...500.0 Hz  | Frequency   | 1 = 0.1 Hz               |
| 8115           | AUX MOT START D | <p>Sets the start delay for the auxiliary motors.</p> <p>The output frequency must remain above the start frequency limit (parameter <a href="#">8109</a>, <a href="#">8110</a> or <a href="#">8111</a>) for this time period before the auxiliary motor starts.</p> <p>See <a href="#">8109 START FREQ 1</a> for a complete description of the operation.</p>  | 5.0 s                    |
|                | 0.0...3600.0 s  | Delay time  | 1 = 0.1 s                |
| 8116           | AUX MOT STOP D  | <p>Sets the stop delay for the auxiliary motors.</p> <p>The output frequency must remain below the low frequency limit (parameter <a href="#">8112</a>, <a href="#">8113</a> or <a href="#">8114</a>) for this time period before the auxiliary motor stops.</p> <p>See <a href="#">8112 LOW FREQ 1</a> for a complete description of the operation.</p>  | 3.0 s                    |
|                | 0.0...3600.0 s  | Delay time  | 1 = 0.1 s                |

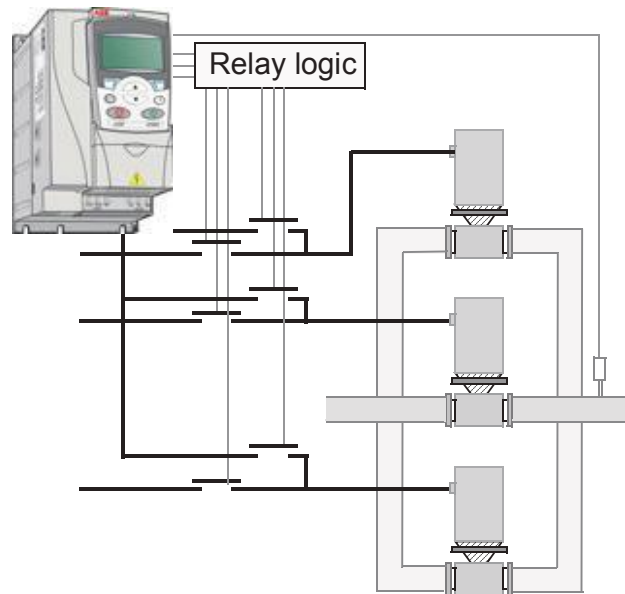
| All parameters |                   |   |          |
|----------------|-------------------|---|----------|
| No.            | Name/Value        | Description   | Def/FbEq |
| 8117           | NR OF AUX MOT     | <p>Sets the number of auxiliary motors. Each auxiliary motor requires a relay output, which the drive uses to send start/stop signals.</p> <p>The Autochange function, if used, requires an additional relay output for the speed regulated motor.</p> <p>The following describes the set-up of the required relay outputs.</p> <p><b>Relay outputs</b></p> <p>As noted above, each auxiliary motor requires a relay output, which the drive uses to send start/stop signals. The following describes how the drive keeps track of motors and relays.</p> <p>The drive provides one relay output RO 1. An external relay output module can be added to provide relay outputs RO 2 ... RO 4.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> If five auxiliary motors are needed (Autochange disabled), use transistor output TO (parameter <a href="#">1805 DO SIGNAL</a>) in addition to relay outputs RO 1 ... RO 4. In relay order (= auxiliary motor order), TO is set between RO 1 and RO 2 (see page <a href="#">271</a>). Transistor output must be set to digital mode, ie parameter <a href="#">1804 TO MODE</a> is set to 0 (<a href="#">DIGITAL</a>). Note that maximum voltage at TO is 30 V DC.</p> <p>Parameters <a href="#">1401...1403</a> and <a href="#">1410</a> define, respectively, how relays RO 1 ... RO 4 are used – the parameter value 31 (<a href="#">PFC</a>) defines the relay as used for PFC.</p> <p>The drive assigns auxiliary motors to relays in ascending order. If the Autochange function is disabled, the first auxiliary motor is the one connected to the first relay with a parameter setting = 31 (<a href="#">PFC</a>), and so on.</p> <p>If the Autochange function is used, the assignments rotate. Initially, the speed regulated motor is the one connected to the first relay with a parameter setting = 31 (<a href="#">PFC</a>), the first auxiliary motor is the one connected to the second relay with a parameter setting = 31 (<a href="#">PFC</a>), and so on. The fourth auxiliary motor uses the same reference step, low frequency and start frequency values as the third auxiliary motor.</p> | 1        |
|                | 0...4 (5 with TO) | Number of auxiliary motors  | 1 = 1    |

All parameters

| No. | Name/Value | Description | Def/FbEq |
|-----|------------|-------------|----------|
|-----|------------|-------------|----------|



Standard PFC mode



PFC with Autochange mode

**All parameters**

| No. | Name/Value | Description | Def/FbEq |
|-----|------------|-------------|----------|
|-----|------------|-------------|----------|

The table below shows the PFC motor assignments for some typical settings in the relay output parameters (1401...1403 and 1410), where the settings are either = 31 (PFC), or = X (anything but 31), and where the Autochange function is disabled (8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV = 0).

| Parameter setting |    |    |   |    | Relay assignment    |      |      |      |
|-------------------|----|----|---|----|---------------------|------|------|------|
| 1                 | 1  | 1  | 1 | 8  | Autochange disabled |      |      |      |
| 4                 | 4  | 4  | 4 | 1  | RO 1                | RO 2 | RO 3 | RO 4 |
| 0                 | 0  | 0  | 1 | 1  |                     |      |      |      |
| 1                 | 2  | 3  | 0 | 7  |                     |      |      |      |
| 31                | X  | X  | X | 1  | Aux.                | X    | X    | X    |
| 31                | 31 | X  | X | 2  | Aux.                | Aux. | X    | X    |
| 31                | 31 | 31 | X | 3  | Aux.                | Aux. | Aux. | X    |
| X                 | 31 | 31 | X | 2  | X                   | Aux. | Aux. | X    |
| 31                | 31 | X  | X | 1* | Aux.                | Aux. | X    | X    |

\* = One additional relay output for the PFC that is in use. One motor is in "sleep" when the other is rotating.

If five auxiliary motors are needed, use the transistor output (parameter 1805 DO SIGNAL) as an additional relay output. In relay order, TO is set between RO 1 and RO 2. The table below shows the PFC motor assignments for some typical settings when TO is in use.

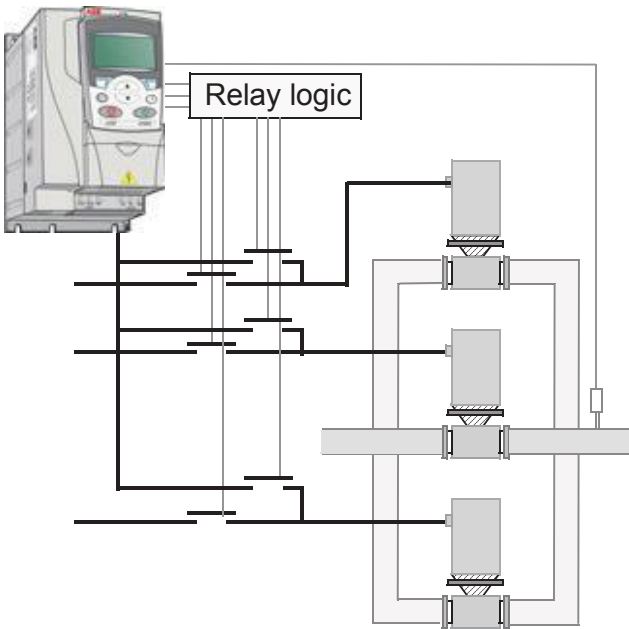
| Parameter setting |    |    |    |    |    | Relay assignment    |      |      |      |      |
|-------------------|----|----|----|----|----|---------------------|------|------|------|------|
| 1                 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 8  | Autochange disabled |      |      |      |      |
| 4                 | 8  | 4  | 4  | 4  | 1  | RO 1                | TO   | RO 2 | RO 3 | RO 4 |
| 0                 | 0  | 0  | 0  | 1  | 1  |                     |      |      |      |      |
| 1                 | 5  | 2  | 3  | 0  | 7  |                     |      |      |      |      |
| 31                | X  | X  | X  | X  | 1  | Aux.                | X    | X    | X    | X    |
| 31                | 31 | X  | X  | X  | 2  | Aux.                | Aux. | X    | X    | X    |
| 31                | 31 | 31 | X  | X  | 3  | Aux.                | Aux. | Aux. | X    | X    |
| 31                | 31 | 31 | 31 | X  | 4  | Aux.                | Aux. | Aux. | Aux. | X    |
| 31                | 31 | 31 | 31 | 31 | 5  | Aux.                | Aux. | Aux. | Aux. | Aux. |
| 31                | 31 | 31 | 31 | X  | 4* | Aux.                | Aux. | Aux. | Aux. | X    |

\* = One additional relay output for the PFC that is in use. One motor is in "sleep" when the other is rotating.

The table below shows the PFC motor assignments for some typical settings in the relay output parameters (1401...1403 and 1410), where the settings are either = 31 (PFC), or = X (anything but 31), and where the Autochange function is enabled (8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV > 0).

| Parameter setting |    |    |   |     | Relay assignment   |      |      |      |
|-------------------|----|----|---|-----|--------------------|------|------|------|
| 1                 | 1  | 1  | 1 | 8   | Autochange enabled |      |      |      |
| 4                 | 4  | 4  | 4 | 1   | RO 1               | RO 2 | RO 3 | RO 4 |
| 0                 | 0  | 0  | 1 | 1   |                    |      |      |      |
| 1                 | 2  | 3  | 0 | 7   |                    |      |      |      |
| 31                | 31 | X  | X | 1   | PFC                | PFC  | X    | X    |
| 31                | 31 | 31 | X | 2   | PFC                | PFC  | PFC  | X    |
| X                 | 31 | 31 | X | 1   | X                  | PFC  | PFC  | X    |
| 31                | 31 | X  | X | 0** | PFC                | PFC  | X    | X    |

\*\* = No auxiliary motors, but the Autochange function is in use. Working as a standard PID-control.

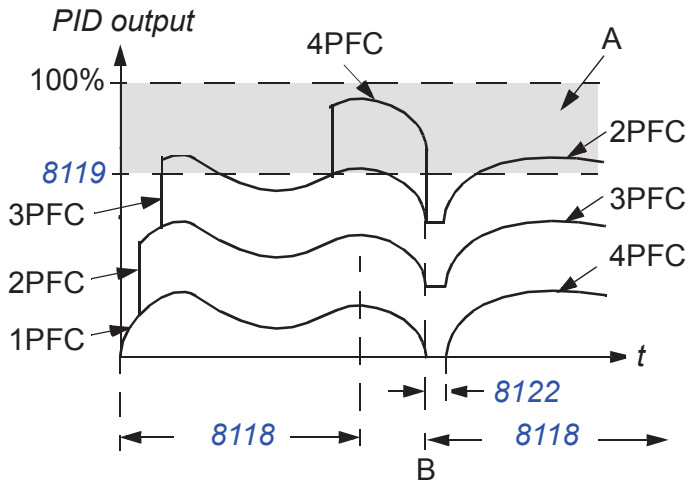
| All parameters |   |   |               |
|----------------|---|---|---------------|
| No.            | Name/Value  | Description   | Def/FbEq      |
| 8118           | AUTOCHNG<br>INTERV                                    | <p>Controls operation of the Autochange function and sets the interval between changes.</p> <p>The Autochange time interval only applies to the time when the speed regulated motor is running.</p> <p>See parameter <a href="#">8119 AUTOCHNG LEVEL</a> for an overview of the Autochange function.</p> <p>The drive always coasts to stop when Autochange is performed. Autochange enabled requires parameter <a href="#">8120 INTERLOCKS</a> &gt; 0.</p> <p><b>⚠ WARNING!</b> When enabled, the Autochange function requires the interlocks (<a href="#">8120 INTERLOCKS</a> &gt; 0) enabled. During Autochange the power output is interrupted and the drive coasts to stop, preventing damage to the contacts.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">PFC with Autochange mode</p> | 0.0 = NOT SEL |
|                | -0.1 = TEST<br>MODE<br>0.0 = NOT SEL<br>0.1...336.0 h | -0.1: Test mode. Forces the interval to value 36...48 s.<br>0.0: Disables the Autochange function.<br>0.1...336 h: The operating time interval (the time when the start signal is on) between automatic motor changes.  | 1 = 0.1 h     |

| All parameters |                |  |          |
|----------------|----------------|--|----------|
| No.            | Name/Value     | Description  | Def/FbEq |
| 8119           | AUTOCHNG LEVEL | <p>Sets an upper limit, as a percent of output capacity, for the Autochange logic. When the output from the PID/PFC control block exceeds this limit, Autochange is prevented. For example, use this parameter to deny Autochange when the pump-fan system is operating near maximum capacity.</p> <p><b>Autochange overview</b></p> <p>The purpose of the Autochange operation is to equalize duty time between multiple motors used in a system. At each Autochange operation, a different motor takes a turn connected to the drive output – the speed regulated motor. The starting order of the other motors rotates.</p> <p>The Autochange function requires:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>external switch gear for changing the drive's output power connections</li> <li>parameter <i>8120 INTERLOCKS</i> &gt; 0.</li> </ul> <p>Autochange is performed when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the running time since the previous Autochange reaches the time set by <i>8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV</i></li> <li>the PFC input is below the level set by this parameter, <i>8119 AUTOCHNG LEVEL</i>.</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b> The drive always coasts to stop when Autochange is performed.</p> <p>In an Autochange, the Autochange function does all of the following (see the figure):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Initiates a change when the running time, since the last Autochange, reaches <i>8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV</i>, and PFC input is below limit <i>8119 AUTOCHNG LEVEL</i>.</li> <li>Stops the speed regulated motor.</li> <li>Switches off the contactor of the speed regulated motor.</li> <li>Increments the starting order counter, to change the starting order for the motors.</li> <li>Identifies the next motor in line to be the speed regulated motor.</li> <li>Switches off the above motor's contactor, if the motor was running. Any other running motors are not interrupted.</li> <li>Switches on the contactor of the new speed regulated motor. The Autochange switch gear connects this motor to the drive power output.</li> <li>Delays motor start for time <i>8122 PFC START DELAY</i>.</li> <li>Starts the speed regulated motor.</li> <li>Identifies the next constant speed motor in the rotation.</li> <li>Switches the above motor on, but only if the new speed regulated motor had been running (as a constant speed motor) – This step keeps an equal number of motors running before and after Autochange.</li> <li>Continues with normal PFC operation.</li> </ul> | 50.0%    |



**All parameters**

| No. | Name/Value | Description | Def/FbEq |
|-----|------------|-------------|----------|
|-----|------------|-------------|----------|

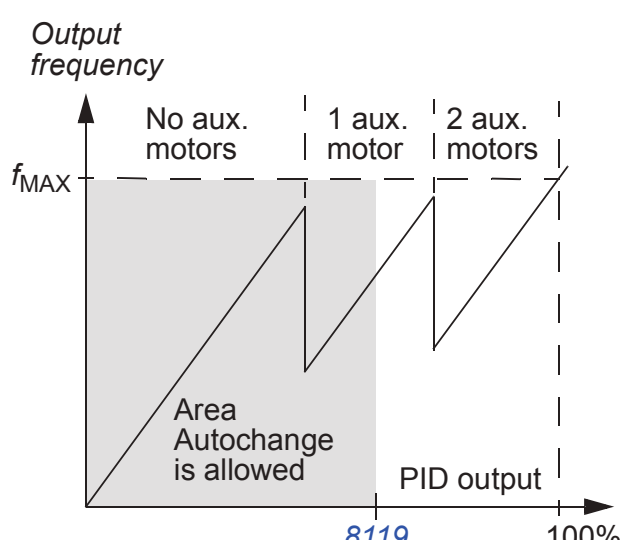


A = Area above **8119 AUTOCHNG LEVEL** – Autochange not allowed  
 B = Autochange occurs  
 1PFC, etc. = PID output associated with each motor.

**Starting order counter**

The operation of the starting-order counter:

- The relay output parameter definitions (**1401...1403** and **1410**) establish the initial motor sequence. (The lowest parameter number with a value 31 (**PFC**) identifies the relay connected to 1PFC, the first motor, and so on.)
- Initially, 1PFC = speed regulated motor, 2PFC = 1st auxiliary motor, etc.
- The first Autochange shifts the sequence to: 2PFC = speed regulated motor, 3PFC = 1st auxiliary motor, ..., 1PFC = last auxiliary motor.
- The next Autochange shifts the sequence again, and so on.
- If the Autochange cannot start a needed motor because all inactive motors are interlocked, the drive displays an alarm (**2015 PFC I LOCK**).
- When the drive power supply is switched off, the counter preserves the current Autochange rotation positions in permanent memory. When power is restored, the Autochange rotation starts at the position stored in memory.
- If the PFC relay configuration is changed (or if the PFC enable value is changed), the rotation is reset according to parameters **1401...1403** and **1410**.

| All parameters |              |  |            |
|----------------|--------------|--|------------|
| No.            | Name/Value   | Description  | Def/FbEq   |
|                |              |  <p>The graph shows Output frequency on the y-axis and PID output on the x-axis. The y-axis has a mark for <math>f_{MAX}</math>. The x-axis has marks for 8119 and 100%. The graph is divided into three regions: 'No aux. motors', '1 aux. motor', and '2 aux. motors'. A shaded area labeled 'Area Autochange is allowed' is shown between the 'No aux. motors' and '1 aux. motor' regions. The frequency increases linearly with PID output, with a step increase at the transition points between motor counts.</p>  |            |
|                | 0.0...100.0% | Value in percent   | 1 = 0.1%   |
| 8120           | INTERLOCKS   | <p>Defines operation of the Interlock function. When the Interlock function is enabled:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• an interlock is active when its command signal is absent</li> <li>• an interlock is inactive when its command signal is present.</li> <li>• the drive does not start if a start command occurs when the speed regulated motor's interlock is active – the control panel displays an alarm (<i>2015 PFC I LOCK</i>).</li> </ul> <p>Wire each Interlock circuit as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Wire a contact of the motor's On/Off switch to the Interlock circuit – the drive's PFC logic can then recognize that the motor is switched off and start the next available motor.</li> <li>• Wire a contact of the motor thermal relay (or other protective device in the motor circuit) to the Interlock input – the drive's PFC logic can then recognize that a motor fault is activated and stop the motor.</li> </ul> | <i>D13</i> |
|                | NOT SEL      | <p>Disables the Interlock function. All digital inputs are available for other purposes.</p> <p>Requires <i>8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV</i> = 0.0 (The Autochange function must be disabled if Interlock function is disabled.)</p>   | 0          |

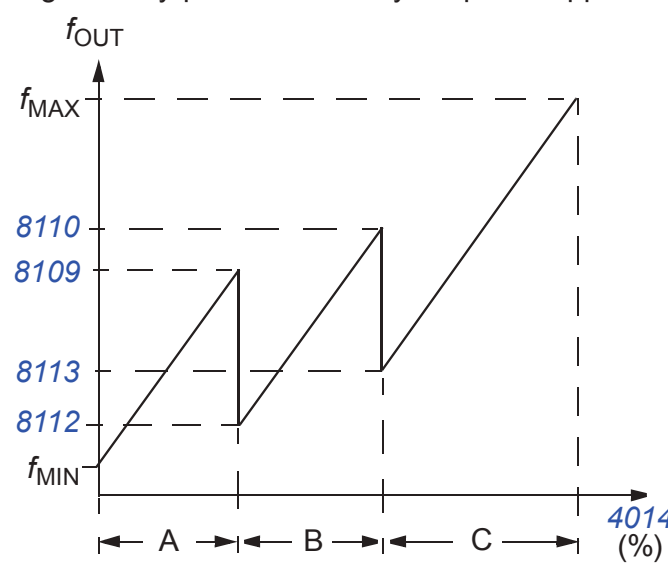
| All parameters    |  |  |                   |  |   |   |   |             |   |   |   |   |  |  |   |  |  |   |  |   |   |             |  |   |
|-------------------|--|--|-------------------|--|---|---|---|-------------|---|---|---|---|--|--|---|--|--|---|--|---|---|-------------|--|---|
| No.               | Name/Value   | Description  | Def/FbEq          |  |   |   |   |             |   |   |   |   |  |  |   |  |  |   |  |   |   |             |  |   |
|                   | DI1  | <p>Enables the Interlock function and assigns a digital input (starting with DI1) to the interlock signal for each PFC relay. These assignments are defined in the following table and depend on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the number of PFC relays (number of parameters <b>1401...1403</b> and <b>1410</b> with value = 31 [<b>PFC</b>])</li> <li>the Autochange function status (disabled if <b>8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV</b> = 0.0, and otherwise enabled).</li> </ul> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>No. of PFC relays</th> <th>Autochange disabled (Parameter <b>8118</b>)</th> <th>Autochange enabled (Parameter <b>8118</b>)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>DI1: Speed reg motor<br/>DI2...DI5: Free</td> <td>Not allowed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>DI1: Speed reg motor<br/>DI2: First PFC relay<br/>DI3...DI5: Free</td> <td>DI1: First PFC relay<br/>DI2...DI5: Free</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>DI1: Speed reg motor<br/>DI2: First PFC relay<br/>DI3: Second PFC relay<br/>DI4...DI5: Free</td> <td>DI1: First PFC relay<br/>DI2: Second PFC relay<br/>DI3...DI5: Free</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>DI1: Speed reg motor<br/>DI2: First PFC relay<br/>DI3: Second PFC relay<br/>DI4: Third PFC relay<br/>DI5...DI5: Free</td> <td>DI1: First PFC relay<br/>DI2: Second PFC relay<br/>DI3: Third PFC relay<br/>DI4...DI5: Free</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>DI1: Speed reg motor<br/>DI2: First PFC relay<br/>DI3: Second PFC relay<br/>DI4: Third PFC relay<br/>DI5: Fourth PFC relay</td> <td>DI1: First PFC relay<br/>DI2: Second PFC relay<br/>DI3: Third PFC relay<br/>DI4: Fourth PFC relay<br/>DI5: Free</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>Not allowed</td> <td>DI1: First PFC relay<br/>DI2: Second PFC relay<br/>DI3: Third PFC relay<br/>DI4: Fourth PFC relay<br/>DI5: Fifth PFC relay</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | No. of PFC relays | Autochange disabled (Parameter <b>8118</b> ) | Autochange enabled (Parameter <b>8118</b> ) | 0 | DI1: Speed reg motor<br>DI2...DI5: Free | Not allowed | 1 | DI1: Speed reg motor<br>DI2: First PFC relay<br>DI3...DI5: Free | DI1: First PFC relay<br>DI2...DI5: Free | 2 | DI1: Speed reg motor<br>DI2: First PFC relay<br>DI3: Second PFC relay<br>DI4...DI5: Free | DI1: First PFC relay<br>DI2: Second PFC relay<br>DI3...DI5: Free | 3 | DI1: Speed reg motor<br>DI2: First PFC relay<br>DI3: Second PFC relay<br>DI4: Third PFC relay<br>DI5...DI5: Free | DI1: First PFC relay<br>DI2: Second PFC relay<br>DI3: Third PFC relay<br>DI4...DI5: Free | 4 | DI1: Speed reg motor<br>DI2: First PFC relay<br>DI3: Second PFC relay<br>DI4: Third PFC relay<br>DI5: Fourth PFC relay | DI1: First PFC relay<br>DI2: Second PFC relay<br>DI3: Third PFC relay<br>DI4: Fourth PFC relay<br>DI5: Free | 5 | Not allowed | DI1: First PFC relay<br>DI2: Second PFC relay<br>DI3: Third PFC relay<br>DI4: Fourth PFC relay<br>DI5: Fifth PFC relay | 1 |
| No. of PFC relays | Autochange disabled (Parameter <b>8118</b> )   | Autochange enabled (Parameter <b>8118</b> )  |                   |  |   |   |   |             |   |   |   |   |  |  |   |  |  |   |  |   |   |             |  |   |
| 0                 | DI1: Speed reg motor<br>DI2...DI5: Free  | Not allowed  |                   |  |   |   |   |             |   |   |   |   |  |  |   |  |  |   |  |   |   |             |  |   |
| 1                 | DI1: Speed reg motor<br>DI2: First PFC relay<br>DI3...DI5: Free  | DI1: First PFC relay<br>DI2...DI5: Free  |                   |  |   |   |   |             |   |   |   |   |  |  |   |  |  |   |  |   |   |             |  |   |
| 2                 | DI1: Speed reg motor<br>DI2: First PFC relay<br>DI3: Second PFC relay<br>DI4...DI5: Free                               | DI1: First PFC relay<br>DI2: Second PFC relay<br>DI3...DI5: Free   |                   |  |   |   |   |             |   |   |   |   |  |  |   |  |  |   |  |   |   |             |  |   |
| 3                 | DI1: Speed reg motor<br>DI2: First PFC relay<br>DI3: Second PFC relay<br>DI4: Third PFC relay<br>DI5...DI5: Free       | DI1: First PFC relay<br>DI2: Second PFC relay<br>DI3: Third PFC relay<br>DI4...DI5: Free   |                   |  |   |   |   |             |   |   |   |   |  |  |   |  |  |   |  |   |   |             |  |   |
| 4                 | DI1: Speed reg motor<br>DI2: First PFC relay<br>DI3: Second PFC relay<br>DI4: Third PFC relay<br>DI5: Fourth PFC relay | DI1: First PFC relay<br>DI2: Second PFC relay<br>DI3: Third PFC relay<br>DI4: Fourth PFC relay<br>DI5: Free  |                   |  |   |   |   |             |   |   |   |   |  |  |   |  |  |   |  |   |   |             |  |   |
| 5                 | Not allowed  | DI1: First PFC relay<br>DI2: Second PFC relay<br>DI3: Third PFC relay<br>DI4: Fourth PFC relay<br>DI5: Fifth PFC relay   |                   |  |   |   |   |             |   |   |   |   |  |  |   |  |  |   |  |   |   |             |  |   |

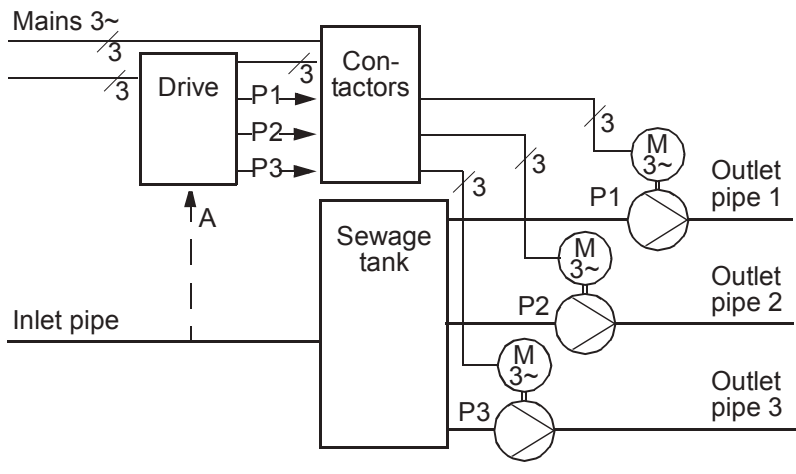
| All parameters    |  |  |                   |  |   |   |  |             |   |  |  |   |   |   |   |  |   |   |             |   |   |             |             |   |
|-------------------|--|--|-------------------|--|---|---|--|-------------|---|--|--|---|---|---|---|--|---|---|-------------|---|---|-------------|-------------|---|
| No.               | Name/Value   | Description  | Def/FbEq          |  |   |   |  |             |   |  |  |   |   |   |   |  |   |   |             |   |   |             |             |   |
|                   | DI2  | <p>Enables the Interlock function and assigns a digital input (starting with DI2) to the interlock signal for each PFC relay. These assignments are defined in the following table and depend on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the number of PFC relays (number of parameters <b>1401...1403</b> and <b>1410</b> with value = 31 [<b>PFC</b>])</li> <li>the Autochange function status (disabled if <b>8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV</b> = 0.0, and otherwise enabled).</li> </ul> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>No. of PFC relays</th> <th>Autochange disabled (Parameter <b>8118</b>)</th> <th>Autochange enabled (Parameter <b>8118</b>)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>DI1: Free<br/>DI2: Speed reg motor<br/>DI3...DI5: Free</td> <td>Not allowed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>DI1: Free<br/>DI2: Speed reg motor<br/>DI3: First PFC relay<br/>DI4...DI5: Free</td> <td>DI1: Free<br/>DI2: First PFC relay<br/>DI3...DI5: Free</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>DI1: Free<br/>DI2: Speed reg motor<br/>DI3: First PFC relay<br/>DI4: Second PFC relay<br/>DI5...DI5: Free</td> <td>DI1: Free<br/>DI2: First PFC relay<br/>DI3: Second PFC relay<br/>DI4...DI5: Free</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>DI1: Free<br/>DI2: Speed reg motor<br/>DI3: First PFC relay<br/>DI4: Second PFC relay<br/>DI5: Third PFC relay</td> <td>DI1: Free<br/>DI2: First PFC relay<br/>DI3: Second PFC relay<br/>DI4: Third PFC relay<br/>DI5: Free</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>Not allowed</td> <td>DI1: Free<br/>DI2: First PFC relay<br/>DI3: Second PFC relay<br/>DI4: Third PFC relay<br/>DI5: Fourth PFC relay</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>Not allowed</td> <td>Not allowed</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | No. of PFC relays | Autochange disabled (Parameter <b>8118</b> ) | Autochange enabled (Parameter <b>8118</b> ) | 0 | DI1: Free<br>DI2: Speed reg motor<br>DI3...DI5: Free | Not allowed | 1 | DI1: Free<br>DI2: Speed reg motor<br>DI3: First PFC relay<br>DI4...DI5: Free | DI1: Free<br>DI2: First PFC relay<br>DI3...DI5: Free | 2 | DI1: Free<br>DI2: Speed reg motor<br>DI3: First PFC relay<br>DI4: Second PFC relay<br>DI5...DI5: Free | DI1: Free<br>DI2: First PFC relay<br>DI3: Second PFC relay<br>DI4...DI5: Free | 3 | DI1: Free<br>DI2: Speed reg motor<br>DI3: First PFC relay<br>DI4: Second PFC relay<br>DI5: Third PFC relay | DI1: Free<br>DI2: First PFC relay<br>DI3: Second PFC relay<br>DI4: Third PFC relay<br>DI5: Free | 4 | Not allowed | DI1: Free<br>DI2: First PFC relay<br>DI3: Second PFC relay<br>DI4: Third PFC relay<br>DI5: Fourth PFC relay | 5 | Not allowed | Not allowed | 2 |
| No. of PFC relays | Autochange disabled (Parameter <b>8118</b> )   | Autochange enabled (Parameter <b>8118</b> )  |                   |  |   |   |  |             |   |  |  |   |   |   |   |  |   |   |             |   |   |             |             |   |
| 0                 | DI1: Free<br>DI2: Speed reg motor<br>DI3...DI5: Free   | Not allowed  |                   |  |   |   |  |             |   |  |  |   |   |   |   |  |   |   |             |   |   |             |             |   |
| 1                 | DI1: Free<br>DI2: Speed reg motor<br>DI3: First PFC relay<br>DI4...DI5: Free                               | DI1: Free<br>DI2: First PFC relay<br>DI3...DI5: Free   |                   |  |   |   |  |             |   |  |  |   |   |   |   |  |   |   |             |   |   |             |             |   |
| 2                 | DI1: Free<br>DI2: Speed reg motor<br>DI3: First PFC relay<br>DI4: Second PFC relay<br>DI5...DI5: Free      | DI1: Free<br>DI2: First PFC relay<br>DI3: Second PFC relay<br>DI4...DI5: Free  |                   |  |   |   |  |             |   |  |  |   |   |   |   |  |   |   |             |   |   |             |             |   |
| 3                 | DI1: Free<br>DI2: Speed reg motor<br>DI3: First PFC relay<br>DI4: Second PFC relay<br>DI5: Third PFC relay | DI1: Free<br>DI2: First PFC relay<br>DI3: Second PFC relay<br>DI4: Third PFC relay<br>DI5: Free  |                   |  |   |   |  |             |   |  |  |   |   |   |   |  |   |   |             |   |   |             |             |   |
| 4                 | Not allowed  | DI1: Free<br>DI2: First PFC relay<br>DI3: Second PFC relay<br>DI4: Third PFC relay<br>DI5: Fourth PFC relay  |                   |  |   |   |  |             |   |  |  |   |   |   |   |  |   |   |             |   |   |             |             |   |
| 5                 | Not allowed  | Not allowed  |                   |  |   |   |  |             |   |  |  |   |   |   |   |  |   |   |             |   |   |             |             |   |

**All parameters**

| No.               | Name/Value   | Description  | Def/FbEq          |  |   |   |  |             |   |  |  |   |  |   |       |             |  |       |             |             |   |
|-------------------|--|--|-------------------|--|---|---|--|-------------|---|--|--|---|--|---|-------|-------------|--|-------|-------------|-------------|---|
|                   | DI3  | <p>Enables the Interlocks function and assigns a digital input (starting with DI3) to the interlock signal for each PFC relay. These assignments are defined in the following table and depend on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the number of PFC relays (number of parameters <b>1401...1403</b> and <b>1410</b> with value = 31 [<b>PFC</b>])</li> <li>the Autochange function status (disabled if <b>8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV</b> = 0.0, and otherwise enabled).</li> </ul> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>No. of PFC relays</th> <th>Autochange disabled (Parameter <b>8118</b>)</th> <th>Autochange enabled (Parameter <b>8118</b>)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>DI1...DI2: Free<br/>DI3: Speed reg motor<br/>DI4...DI5: Free</td> <td>Not allowed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>DI1...DI2: Free<br/>DI3: Speed reg motor<br/>DI4: First PFC relay<br/>DI5...DI5: Free</td> <td>DI1...DI2: Free<br/>DI3: First PFC relay<br/>DI4...DI5: Free</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>DI1...DI2: Free<br/>DI3: Speed reg motor<br/>DI4: First PFC relay<br/>DI5: Second PFC relay</td> <td>DI1...DI2: Free<br/>DI3: First PFC relay<br/>DI4: Second PFC relay<br/>DI5: Free</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Not allowed</td> <td>DI1...DI2: Free<br/>DI3: First PFC relay<br/>DI4: Second PFC relay<br/>DI5: Third PFC relay</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4...5</td> <td>Not allowed</td> <td>Not allowed</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | No. of PFC relays | Autochange disabled (Parameter <b>8118</b> ) | Autochange enabled (Parameter <b>8118</b> ) | 0 | DI1...DI2: Free<br>DI3: Speed reg motor<br>DI4...DI5: Free | Not allowed | 1 | DI1...DI2: Free<br>DI3: Speed reg motor<br>DI4: First PFC relay<br>DI5...DI5: Free | DI1...DI2: Free<br>DI3: First PFC relay<br>DI4...DI5: Free | 2 | DI1...DI2: Free<br>DI3: Speed reg motor<br>DI4: First PFC relay<br>DI5: Second PFC relay | DI1...DI2: Free<br>DI3: First PFC relay<br>DI4: Second PFC relay<br>DI5: Free | 3     | Not allowed | DI1...DI2: Free<br>DI3: First PFC relay<br>DI4: Second PFC relay<br>DI5: Third PFC relay | 4...5 | Not allowed | Not allowed | 3 |
| No. of PFC relays | Autochange disabled (Parameter <b>8118</b> )   | Autochange enabled (Parameter <b>8118</b> )  |                   |  |   |   |  |             |   |  |  |   |  |   |       |             |  |       |             |             |   |
| 0                 | DI1...DI2: Free<br>DI3: Speed reg motor<br>DI4...DI5: Free                               | Not allowed  |                   |  |   |   |  |             |   |  |  |   |  |   |       |             |  |       |             |             |   |
| 1                 | DI1...DI2: Free<br>DI3: Speed reg motor<br>DI4: First PFC relay<br>DI5...DI5: Free       | DI1...DI2: Free<br>DI3: First PFC relay<br>DI4...DI5: Free   |                   |  |   |   |  |             |   |  |  |   |  |   |       |             |  |       |             |             |   |
| 2                 | DI1...DI2: Free<br>DI3: Speed reg motor<br>DI4: First PFC relay<br>DI5: Second PFC relay | DI1...DI2: Free<br>DI3: First PFC relay<br>DI4: Second PFC relay<br>DI5: Free  |                   |  |   |   |  |             |   |  |  |   |  |   |       |             |  |       |             |             |   |
| 3                 | Not allowed  | DI1...DI2: Free<br>DI3: First PFC relay<br>DI4: Second PFC relay<br>DI5: Third PFC relay   |                   |  |   |   |  |             |   |  |  |   |  |   |       |             |  |       |             |             |   |
| 4...5             | Not allowed  | Not allowed  |                   |  |   |   |  |             |   |  |  |   |  |   |       |             |  |       |             |             |   |
|                   | DI4  | <p>Enables the Interlock function and assigns a digital input (starting with DI4) to the interlock signal for each PFC relay. These assignments are defined in the following table and depend on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the number of PFC relays (number of parameters <b>1401...1403</b> and <b>1410</b> with value = 31 [<b>PFC</b>])</li> <li>the Autochange function status (disabled if <b>8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV</b> = 0.0, and otherwise enabled).</li> </ul> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>No. of PFC relays</th> <th>Autochange disabled (Parameter <b>8118</b>)</th> <th>Autochange enabled (Parameter <b>8118</b>)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>DI1...DI3: Free<br/>DI4: Speed reg motor<br/>DI5: Free</td> <td>Not allowed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>DI1...DI3: Free<br/>DI4: Speed reg motor<br/>DI5: First PFC relay</td> <td>DI1...DI3: Free<br/>DI4: First PFC relay<br/>DI5: Free</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Not allowed</td> <td>DI1...DI3: Free<br/>DI4: First PFC relay<br/>DI5: Second PFC relay</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3...5</td> <td>Not allowed</td> <td>Not allowed</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>  | No. of PFC relays | Autochange disabled (Parameter <b>8118</b> ) | Autochange enabled (Parameter <b>8118</b> ) | 0 | DI1...DI3: Free<br>DI4: Speed reg motor<br>DI5: Free       | Not allowed | 1 | DI1...DI3: Free<br>DI4: Speed reg motor<br>DI5: First PFC relay                    | DI1...DI3: Free<br>DI4: First PFC relay<br>DI5: Free       | 2 | Not allowed  | DI1...DI3: Free<br>DI4: First PFC relay<br>DI5: Second PFC relay              | 3...5 | Not allowed | Not allowed  | 4     |             |             |   |
| No. of PFC relays | Autochange disabled (Parameter <b>8118</b> )   | Autochange enabled (Parameter <b>8118</b> )  |                   |  |   |   |  |             |   |  |  |   |  |   |       |             |  |       |             |             |   |
| 0                 | DI1...DI3: Free<br>DI4: Speed reg motor<br>DI5: Free                                     | Not allowed  |                   |  |   |   |  |             |   |  |  |   |  |   |       |             |  |       |             |             |   |
| 1                 | DI1...DI3: Free<br>DI4: Speed reg motor<br>DI5: First PFC relay                          | DI1...DI3: Free<br>DI4: First PFC relay<br>DI5: Free   |                   |  |   |   |  |             |   |  |  |   |  |   |       |             |  |       |             |             |   |
| 2                 | Not allowed  | DI1...DI3: Free<br>DI4: First PFC relay<br>DI5: Second PFC relay   |                   |  |   |   |  |             |   |  |  |   |  |   |       |             |  |       |             |             |   |
| 3...5             | Not allowed  | Not allowed  |                   |  |   |   |  |             |   |  |  |   |  |   |       |             |  |       |             |             |   |

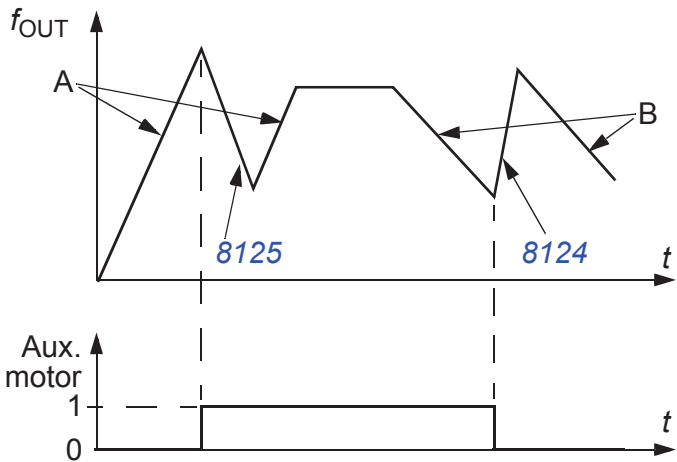
All parameters

| No.            | Name/Value                              | Description   | Def/FbEq       |                                      |                                     |   |   |             |   |             |   |       |             |             |   |
|----------------|---|---|----------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|---|-------------|---|-------------|---|-------|-------------|-------------|---|
|                | DI5                                     | <p>Enables the Interlock function and assigns a digital input (starting with DI5) to the interlock signal for each PFC relay. These assignments are defined in the following table and depend on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the number of PFC relays (number of parameters 1401...1403 and 1410 with value = 31 [PFC])</li> <li>the Autochange function status (disabled if 8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV = 0.0, and otherwise enabled).</li> </ul> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>No. PFC relays</th> <th>Autochange disabled (Parameter 8118)</th> <th>Autochange enabled (Parameter 8118)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>DI1...DI4: Free<br/>DI5: Speed reg motor</td> <td>Not allowed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Not allowed</td> <td>DI1...DI4: Free<br/>DI5: First PFC relay</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2...5</td> <td>Not allowed</td> <td>Not allowed</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | No. PFC relays | Autochange disabled (Parameter 8118) | Autochange enabled (Parameter 8118) | 0 | DI1...DI4: Free<br>DI5: Speed reg motor | Not allowed | 1 | Not allowed | DI1...DI4: Free<br>DI5: First PFC relay | 2...5 | Not allowed | Not allowed | 5 |
| No. PFC relays | Autochange disabled (Parameter 8118)    | Autochange enabled (Parameter 8118)   |                |                                      |                                     |   |   |             |   |             |   |       |             |             |   |
| 0              | DI1...DI4: Free<br>DI5: Speed reg motor | Not allowed   |                |                                      |                                     |   |   |             |   |             |   |       |             |             |   |
| 1              | Not allowed                             | DI1...DI4: Free<br>DI5: First PFC relay   |                |                                      |                                     |   |   |             |   |             |   |       |             |             |   |
| 2...5          | Not allowed                             | Not allowed   |                |                                      |                                     |   |   |             |   |             |   |       |             |             |   |
| 8121           | REG BYPASS CTRL                         | <p>Selects Regulator by-pass control. When enabled, Regulator by-pass control provides a simple control mechanism without a PID regulator.</p> <p>Use Regulator by-pass control only in special applications.</p>  <p>A = No auxiliary motors running<br/>B = One auxiliary motor running<br/>C = Two auxiliary motors running</p>   | NO             |                                      |                                     |   |   |             |   |             |   |       |             |             |   |

| All parameters |                 |  |            |
|----------------|-----------------|--|------------|
| No.            | Name/Value      | Description  | Def/FbEq   |
|                |                 | <p><b>Example:</b> In the diagram below, the pumping station's outlet flow is controlled by the measured inlet flow (A).</p>   |            |
|                | NO              | Disables Regulator by-pass control. The drive uses the normal PFC reference <i>1106 REF2 SELECT</i> .  | 0          |
|                | YES             | <p>Enables Regulator by-pass control.</p> <p>The process PID regulator is bypassed. Actual value of PID is used as the PFC reference (input). (Normally <i>1106 REF2 SELECT</i> is used as the PFC reference.)</p> <p>The drive uses the feedback signal defined by <i>4014 FBK SEL</i> (or <i>4114</i>) for the PFC frequency reference.</p> <p>The first figure for parameter <i>8121</i> shows the relation between the control signal <i>4014 FBK SEL</i> (or <i>4114</i>) and the speed regulated motor's frequency in a three-motor system.</p>  | 1          |
| 8122           | PFC START DELAY | <p>Sets the start delay for speed regulated motors in the system. Using the delay, the drive works as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Switches on the contactor of the speed regulated motor, connecting the motor to the drive power output.</li> <li>• Delays motor start for time <i>8122 PFC START DELAY</i>.</li> <li>• Starts the speed regulated motor.</li> <li>• Starts auxiliary motors. See parameter <i>8115 AUX MOT START D</i> for delay.</li> </ul> <p><b>⚠ WARNING!</b> Motors equipped with star-delta starters require a PFC start delay.</p> <p>After the drive relay output switches a motor on, the star-delta starter must switch to the star-connection and then back to the delta-connection before the drive applies power. So, the PFC start delay must be longer than the time setting of the star-delta starter.</p> | 0.50 s     |
|                | 0.01...10.00 s  | Delay time   | 1 = 0.01 s |

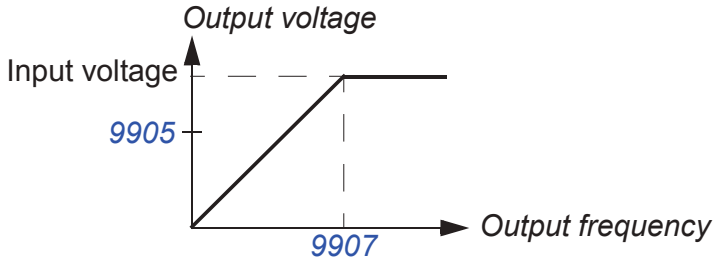
| All parameters |                   |   |               |
|----------------|-------------------|---|---------------|
| No.            | Name/Value        | Description   | Def/FbEq      |
| 8123           | PFC ENABLE        | <p>Selects PFC control or SPFC control. When enabled, PFC control or SPFC control does the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Switches in, or out, auxiliary constant speed motors as output demand increases or decreases. Parameters <a href="#">8109 START FREQ 1</a> to <a href="#">8114 LOW FREQ 3</a> define the switch points in terms of the drive output frequency.</li> <li>Adjusts the speed regulated motor output down, as auxiliary motors are added, and adjusts the speed regulated motor output up, as auxiliary motors are taken off line.</li> <li>Provides Interlock functions, if enabled.</li> </ul> | NOT SEL       |
|                | NOT SEL           | Disabled  | 0             |
|                | ACTIVE            | PFC control enabled   | 1             |
|                | SPFC ACTIVE       | SPFC control enabled. Soft pump and fan control is used for alternation applications where lower pressure peaks are desirable when a new auxiliary motor is started.  | 2             |
|                | SPFC + AUTOCHANGE | SPFC control with autochange enabled. Autochange with soft pump and fan control (SPFC) is active only when auxiliary motors are not running. The speed regulated motor alternates according to the autochange logic.  | 3             |
| 8124           | ACC IN AUX STOP   | <p>Sets the PFC acceleration time for a zero-to-maximum frequency ramp. This PFC acceleration ramp:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>applies to the speed regulated motor when an auxiliary motor is switched off</li> <li>replaces the acceleration ramp defined in group <a href="#">22 ACCEL/DECEL</a></li> <li>applies only until the output of the regulated motor increases by an amount equal to the output of the switched off auxiliary motor. Then the acceleration ramp defined in group <a href="#">22 ACCEL/DECEL</a> applies.</li> </ul>  | 0.0 = NOT SEL |



| All parameters |                                 |   |               |
|----------------|---------------------------------|---|---------------|
| No.            | Name/Value                      | Description   | Def/FbEq      |
|                |                                 |  <p>A = speed regulated motor accelerating using group 22 <i>ACCEL/DECCEL</i> parameters (2202 or 2205).<br/>B = speed regulated motor decelerating using group 22 <i>ACCEL/DECCEL</i> parameters (2203 or 2206).<br/>At aux. motor start, speed regulated motor decelerates using 8125 <i>DEC IN AUX START</i>.<br/>At aux. motor stop, speed regulated motor accelerates using 8124 <i>ACC IN AUX STOP</i>.</p>   |               |
|                | 0.0 = NOT SEL<br>0.1...1800.0 s | 0.0: Not selected<br>0.1...1800 s: Activates this function using the value entered as the acceleration time.  | 1 = 0.1 s     |
| 8125           | DEC IN AUX START                | Sets the PFC deceleration time for a maximum-to-zero frequency ramp. This PFC deceleration ramp: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>applies to the speed regulated motor when an auxiliary motor is switched on.</li> <li>replaces the deceleration ramp defined in group 22 <i>ACCEL/DECCEL</i></li> <li>applies only until the output of the regulated motor decreases by an amount equal to the output of the auxiliary motor. Then the deceleration ramp defined in group 22 <i>ACCEL/DECCEL</i> applies.</li> </ul> See the figure for parameter 8124 <i>ACC IN AUX STOP</i> . | 0.0 = NOT SEL |
|                | 0.0 = NOT SEL<br>0.1...1800.0 s | 0.0: Not selected<br>0.1...1800 s: Activates this function using the value entered as the deceleration time.  | 1 = 0.1 s     |
| 8126           | TIMED AUTOCHNG                  | Sets the Autochange using a timed function. See parameter 8119 <i>AUTOCHNG LEVEL</i> .  | NOT SEL       |
|                | NOT SEL                         | Not selected  | 0             |
|                | TIMED FUNC 1                    | Enables Autochange when timed function 1 is active.   | 1             |
|                | TIMED FUNC 2                    | See selection <i>TIMED FUNC 1</i> .   | 2             |
|                | TIMED FUNC 3                    | See selection <i>TIMED FUNC 1</i> .   | 3             |
|                | TIMED FUNC 4                    | See selection <i>TIMED FUNC 1</i> .   | 4             |

| All parameters          |                 |  |                     |
|-------------------------|-----------------|--|---------------------|
| No.                     | Name/Value      | Description  | Def/FbEq            |
| 8127                    | MOTORS          | Sets the actual number of PFC controlled motors (maximum 7 motors: 1 speed regulated, 3 connected direct-on-line and 3 spare motors).<br>This value includes also the speed regulated motor.<br>This value must be compatible with the number of relays allocated to PFC if the Autochange function is used.<br>If Autochange function is not used, the speed regulated motor does not need to have a relay output allocated to PFC but it needs to be included in this value. | 2                   |
|                         | 1...7           | Number of PFC motors   | 1 = 1               |
| 8128                    | AUX START ORDER | Sets the start order of the auxiliary motors.  | <i>EVEN RUNTIME</i> |
|                         | EVEN RUNTIME    | Time sharing is active. Evens out the cumulative run time of the auxiliary motors. The start order depends on the run times: The auxiliary motor whose cumulative run time is shortest is started first, then the motor whose cumulative run time is the second shortest etc. When the demand drops, the first motor to be stopped is the one whose cumulative run time is longest.  | 1                   |
|                         | RELAY ORDER     | The start order is fixed to be the order of the relays.  | 2                   |
| <b>98 OPTIONS</b>       |                 | External serial communication activation   |                     |
| 9802                    | COMM PROT SEL   | Activates the external serial communication and selects the interface.<br><b>Note:</b> Before activating embedded fieldbus communication, set parameter <i>1611 PARAMETER VIEW</i> to LONG VIEW (3).   | <i>STD MODBUS</i>   |
|                         | NOT SEL         | No communication   | 0                   |
|                         | STD MODBUS      | Embedded fieldbus, EIA-485 interface (I/O terminals 23...26). See chapter <i>Fieldbus control with the embedded fieldbus</i> on page 287.  | 1                   |
|                         | MODBUS RS232    | Embedded fieldbus. Interface: RS-232 (ie control panel connector). See chapter <i>Fieldbus control with the embedded fieldbus</i> on page 287.   | 10                  |
| <b>99 START-UP DATA</b> |                 | Language selection. Definition of motor set-up data.   |                     |
| 9901                    | LANGUAGE        | Selects the display language used on the Assistant control panel.<br><b>Note:</b> With the ACS-CP-D Assistant control panel, the following languages are available: English (0), Chinese (1), Korean (2) and Japanese (3).   | <i>ENGLISH</i>      |
|                         | ENGLISH         | British English  | 0                   |
|                         | ENGLISH (AM)    | American English   | 1                   |
|                         | DEUTSCH         | German   | 2                   |
|                         | ITALIANO        | Italian  | 3                   |
|                         | ESPAÑOL         | Spanish  | 4                   |
|                         | PORTUGUES       | Portuguese   | 5                   |
|                         | NEDERLANDS      | Dutch  | 6                   |
|                         | FRANÇAIS        | French   | 7                   |
|                         | DANSK           | Danish   | 8                   |

| All parameters |                 |  |                     |
|----------------|-----------------|--|---------------------|
| No.            | Name/Value      | Description  | Def/FbEq            |
|                | SUOMI           | Finnish  | 9                   |
|                | SVENSKA         | Swedish  | 10                  |
|                | RUSSKI          | Russian  | 11                  |
|                | POLSKI          | Polish   | 12                  |
|                | TÜRKÇE          | Turkish  | 13                  |
|                | CZECH           | Czech  | 14                  |
|                | MAGYAR          | Hungarian  | 15                  |
|                | ELLINIKA        | Greek  | 16                  |
| 9902           | APPLIC<br>MACRO | Selects the application macro. See chapter <i>Application macros</i> on page 101.  | ABB<br>STANDA<br>RD |
|                | ABB<br>STANDARD | Standard macro for constant speed applications   | 1                   |
|                | 3-WIRE          | 3-wire macro for constant speed applications   | 2                   |
|                | ALTERNATE       | Alternate macro for start forward and start reverse applications   | 3                   |
|                | MOTOR POT       | Motor potentiometer macro for digital signal speed control applications  | 4                   |
|                | HAND/AUTO       | Hand/Auto macro to be used when two control devices are connected to the drive: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Device 1 communicates through the interface defined by external control location EXT1.</li> <li>• Device 2 communicates through the interface defined by external control location EXT2.</li> </ul> EXT1 or EXT2 is active at a time. Switching between EXT1/2 through digital input.       | 5                   |
|                | PID CONTROL     | PID control. For applications in which the drive controls a process value, eg pressure control by the drive running the pressure boost pump. Measured pressure and the pressure reference are connected to the drive.  | 6                   |
|                | PFC<br>CONTROL  | PFC (Pump and fan control) macro for pump alternation applications   | 7                   |
|                | SPFC<br>CONTROL | SPFC (Soft pump and fan control) macro for pump alternation applications where lower pressure peaks are desirable when a new auxiliary motor is started.   | 15                  |
|                | AC500<br>MODBUS | AC500 PLC macro. See section <i>AC500 Modbus macro</i> on page 113.  | 21                  |
|                | LOAD FD SET     | FlashDrop parameter values as defined by the FlashDrop file. Parameter view is selected by parameter 1611 <i>PARAMETER VIEW</i> .<br>FlashDrop is an optional device for fast copying of parameters to unpowered drives. FlashDrop allows easy customization of the parameter list, eg selected parameters can be hidden. For more information, see <i>MFDT-01 FlashDrop user's manual</i> (3AFE68591074 [English]). | 31                  |
|                | USER S1<br>LOAD | User 1 macro loaded into use. Before loading, check that the saved parameter settings and the motor model are suitable for the application.  | 0                   |

| All parameters |   |   |   |
|----------------|---|---|---|
| No.            | Name/Value  | Description   | Def/FbEq  |
|                | USER S1<br>SAVE   | Save User 1 macro. Stores the current parameter settings and the motor model.   | -1  |
|                | USER S2<br>LOAD   | User 2 macro loaded into use. Before loading, check that the saved parameter settings and the motor model are suitable for the application.   | -2  |
|                | USER S2<br>SAVE   | Save User 2 macro. Stores the current parameter settings and the motor model.   | -3  |
| 9905           | MOTOR NOM<br>VOLT   | <p>Defines the nominal motor voltage. Must be equal to the value on the motor rating plate. The drive cannot supply the motor with a voltage greater than the input power voltage. Note that the output voltage is not limited by the nominal motor voltage but increased linearly up to the value of the input voltage.</p>  <p><b>WARNING!</b> Never connect a motor to a drive which is connected to power line with voltage level higher than the rated motor voltage.</p> | 200 V units:<br>230 V<br>400 V<br>E units:<br>400 V<br>400 V<br>U units:<br>460 V |
|                | 200 V units:<br>115...345 V<br>400 V E units:<br>200...600 V<br>400 V U units:<br>230...690 V | Voltage.<br><b>Note:</b> The stress on the motor insulations is always dependent on the drive supply voltage. This also applies to the case where the motor voltage rating is lower than the rating of the drive and the supply of the drive.   | 1 = 1 V   |
| 9906           | MOTOR NOM<br>CURR   | Defines the nominal motor current. Must be equal to the value on the motor rating plate.  | $I_{2N}$  |
|                | $0.2...2.0 \cdot I_{2N}$  | Current   | 1 = 0.1 A   |
| 9907           | MOTOR NOM<br>FREQ   | Defines the nominal motor frequency, ie the frequency at which the output voltage equals the nominal motor voltage:<br>Field weakening point = Nom. frequency · Supply voltage / Motor nom. voltage   | E: 50.0 Hz<br>U: 60.0 Hz  |
|                | 10.0...500.0 Hz   | Frequency   | 1 = 0.1 Hz  |
| 9908           | MOTOR NOM<br>SPEED  | Defines the nominal motor speed. Must be equal to the value on the motor rating plate.  | Type dependent  |
|                | 50...18000 rpm  | Speed   | 1 = 1 rpm   |
| 9909           | MOTOR NOM<br>POWER  | Defines the nominal motor power. Must equal the value on the motor rating plate.  | $P_N$   |
|                | $0.2...3.0 \cdot P_N$ kW  | Power   | 1 =<br>0.1 kW /<br>0.1 hp   |

| All parameters |                 |  |          |
|----------------|-----------------|--|----------|
| No.            | Name/Value      | Description  | Def/FbEq |
| 9914           | PHASE INVERSION | Inverts two phases in the motor cable. This changes the direction of the motor rotation without having to exchange the positions of two motor cable phase conductors at the drive output terminals or at the motor connection box. | NO       |
|                | NO              | Phases not inverted  | 0        |
|                | YES             | Phases inverted  | 1        |



# Fieldbus control with the embedded fieldbus

---

## What this chapter contains

The chapter describes how the drive can be controlled by external devices over a communication network using embedded fieldbus.

## System overview

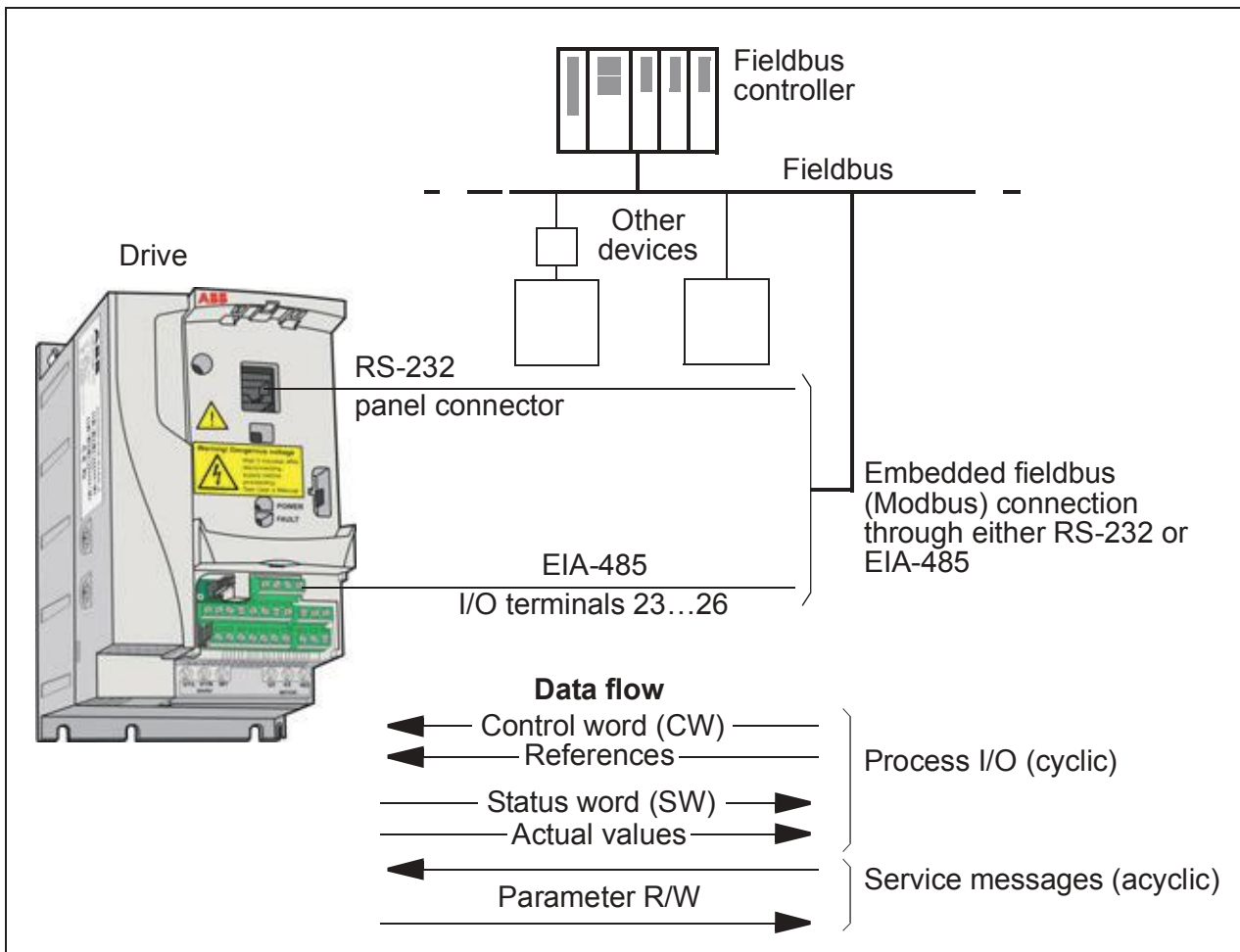
The drive is connected to an external control system through embedded fieldbus. The embedded fieldbus supports Modbus RTU protocol. Modbus is a serial, asynchronous protocol. Transaction is half-duplex.

The embedded fieldbus can be connected with either RS-232 (control panel connector X2) or EIA-485 (I/O terminals 23...26). The maximum length of the communication cable with RS-232 is restricted to 3 meters.

RS-232 is designed for a point-to-point application (a single master controlling one slave). EIA-485 is designed for a multipoint application (a single master controlling one or more slaves).

**Note:** The RS-232 connection is supported from software version 4.02A onwards.

---



**Note:** The RS-232 connection is supported from software version 4.02A onwards.

The drive can be set to receive all of its control information through the fieldbus interface, or the control can be distributed between the fieldbus interface and other available sources, eg digital and analog inputs.

## Setting up communication through the embedded Modbus

Before configuring the drive for fieldbus control, install the fieldbus according to instructions given in section [Connecting the embedded fieldbus](#) on page 54.

The communication through the fieldbus link is initialized by setting parameter [9802 COMM PROT SEL](#) to [STD MODBUS](#) or [MODBUS RS232](#). The communication parameters in group [53 EFB PROTOCOL](#) must also be adjusted. See the table below.

| Parameter   | Alternative settings   | Setting for fieldbus control                            | Function/Information   |
|---|--|---|--|
| COMMUNICATION INITIALIZATION  |  |   |  |
| <a href="#">9802 COMM PROT SEL</a>  | <a href="#">NOT SEL</a><br><a href="#">STD MODBUS</a><br><a href="#">MODBUS RS232</a>                            | STD MODBUS (with EIA-485)<br>MODBUS RS232 (with RS-232) | Initializes embedded fieldbus communication.   |
| ADAPTER MODULE CONFIGURATION  |  |   |  |
| <a href="#">1611 PARAMETER VIEW</a>                                       | <a href="#">FLASHDROP</a><br><a href="#">SHORT VIEW</a><br><a href="#">LONG VIEW</a>                             | <a href="#">LONG VIEW</a>                               | Selects the long view.   |
| <a href="#">5302 EFB STATION ID</a>                                       | 0...65535  | Any   | Defines the station ID address of the EIA-485/RS-232 link. No two stations on line may have the same address.        |
| <a href="#">5303 EFB BAUD RATE</a>  | 1.2 kbit/s<br>2.4 kbit/s<br>4.8 kbit/s<br>9.6 kbit/s<br>19.2 kbit/s<br>38.4 kbit/s<br>57.6 kbit/s<br>76.8 kbit/s |   | Defines the communication speed of the EIA-485/RS-232 link.  |
| <a href="#">5304 EFB PARITY</a>   | <a href="#">8 NONE 1</a><br><a href="#">8 NONE 2</a><br><a href="#">8 EVEN 1</a><br><a href="#">8 ODD 1</a>      |   | Selects the parity setting. The same settings must be used in all on-line stations.                                  |
| <a href="#">5305 EFB CTRL PROFILE</a>                                     | <a href="#">ABB DRV LIM</a><br><a href="#">DCU PROFILE</a><br><a href="#">ABB DRV FULL</a>                       | Any   | Selects the communication profile used by the drive. See section <a href="#">Communication profiles</a> on page 302. |
| <a href="#">5310 EFB PAR 10</a><br>...<br><a href="#">5317 EFB PAR 17</a> | 0...65535  | Any   | Selects an actual value to be mapped to Modbus register 400xx.   |

After the configuration parameters in group [53 EFB PROTOCOL](#) have been set, the [Drive control parameters](#) on page 291 must be checked and adjusted when necessary.





The new settings take effect when the drive is next powered up, or when parameter *5302 EFB STATION ID* setting is cleared and reset.

## Drive control parameters

After the Modbus communication has been set up, the drive control parameters listed in the table below should be checked and adjusted when necessary.

The **Setting for fieldbus control** column gives the value to use when the Modbus interface is the desired source or destination for that particular signal. The **Function/Information** column gives a description of the parameter.

| Parameter                        | Setting for fieldbus control  | Function/Information  | Modbus register address |                  |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|---|-------------------------|------------------|
| CONTROL COMMAND SOURCE SELECTION |                               |   | ABB DRV                 | DCU              |
| 1001 EXT1 COMMANDS               | COMM                          | Enables 0301 FB CMD WORD 1 bits 0...1 (START/STOP) when EXT1 is selected as the active control location.  |                         | 40031 bits 0...1 |
| 1002 EXT2 COMMANDS               | COMM                          | Enables 0301 FB CMD WORD 1 bits 0...1 (START/STOP) when EXT2 is selected as the active control location.  |                         | 40031 bits 0...1 |
| 1003 DIRECTION                   | FORWARD<br>REVERSE<br>REQUEST | Enables rotation direction control as defined by parameters 1001 and 1002. The direction control is explained in section <i>Reference handling</i> on page 297.                       |                         | 40031 bit 2      |
| 1102 EXT1/EXT2 SEL               | COMM                          | Enables EXT1/EXT2 selection through 0301 FB CMD WORD 1 bit 5 (with ABB drives profile 5319 EFB PAR 19 bit 11).  | 40001 bit 11            | 40031 bit 5      |
| 1103 REF1 SELECT                 | COMM<br>COMM+A11<br>COMM*A11  | Fieldbus reference REF1 is used when EXT1 is selected as the active control location. See section <i>Fieldbus references</i> on page 294 for information on the alternative settings. | 40002 for REF1          |                  |
| 1106 REF2 SELECT                 | COMM<br>COMM+A11<br>COMM*A11  | Fieldbus reference REF2 is used when EXT2 is selected as the active control location. See section <i>Fieldbus references</i> on page 294 for information on the alternative settings. | 40003 for REF2          |                  |
| OUTPUT SIGNAL SOURCE SELECTION   |                               |   | ABB DRV                 | DCU              |
| 1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1              | COMM<br>COMM(-1)              | Enables relay output RO control by signal 0134 COMM RO WORD.  | 40134 for signal 0134   |                  |
| 1501 AO1 CONTENT SEL             | 135                           | Directs the contents of fieldbus reference 0135 COMM VALUE 1 to analog output AO.   | 40135 for signal 0135   |                  |
| SYSTEM CONTROL INPUTS            |                               |   | ABB DRV                 | DCU              |
| 1601 RUN ENABLE                  | COMM                          | Enables the control of the inverted Run enable signal (Run disable) through 0301 FB CMD WORD 1 bit 6 (with ABB drives profile 5319 EFB PAR 19 bit 3).                                 | 40001 bit 3             | 40031 bit 6      |

| Parameter  | Setting for fieldbus control               | Function/Information   | Modbus register address |              |
|--|--|--|-------------------------|--------------|
| 1604 <i>FAULT RESET SEL</i>                        | <i>COMM</i>                                | Enables fault reset through fieldbus <i>0301 FB CMD WORD 1</i> bit 4 (with ABB drives profile <i>5319 EFB PAR 19</i> bit 7). | 40001 bit 7             | 40031 bit 4  |
| 1606 <i>LOCAL LOCK</i>                             | <i>COMM</i>                                | Local control mode lock signal through <i>0301 FB CMD WORD 1</i> bit 14  | -                       | 40031 bit 14 |
| 1607 <i>PARAM SAVE</i>                             | <i>DONE SAVE...</i>                        | Saves parameter value changes (including those made through fieldbus control) to permanent memory.                           | 41607                   |              |
| 1608 <i>START ENABLE 1</i>                         | <i>COMM</i>                                | Inverted Start enable 1 (Start disable) through <i>0302 FB CMD WORD 2</i> bit 18   | -                       | 40032 bit 18 |
| 1609 <i>START ENABLE 2</i>                         | <i>COMM</i>                                | Inverted Start enable 2 (Start disable) through <i>0302 FB CMD WORD 2</i> bit 19   | -                       | 40032 bit 19 |
| LIMITS   |  |  | ABB DRV                 | DCU          |
| 2201 <i>ACC/DEC 1/2 SEL</i>                        | <i>COMM</i>                                | Acceleration/deceleration ramp pair selection through <i>0301 FB CMD WORD 1</i> bit 10                                       | -                       | 40031 bit 10 |
| 2209 <i>RAMP INPUT 0</i>                           | <i>COMM</i>                                | Ramp input to zero through <i>0301 FB CMD WORD 1</i> bit 13 (with ABB drives profile <i>5319 EFB PAR 19</i> bit 6)           | 40001 bit 6             | 40031 bit 13 |
| COMMUNICATION FAULT FUNCTIONS                      |  |  | ABB DRV                 | DCU          |
| 3018 <i>COMM FAULT FUNC</i>                        | <i>NOT SEL FAULT CONST SP 7 LAST SPEED</i> | Determines drive action in case fieldbus communication is lost.  | 43018                   |              |
| 3019 <i>COMM FAULT TIME</i>                        | 0.1...60.0 s                               | Defines the time between communication loss detection and the action selected with parameter <i>3018 COMM FAULT FUNC</i> .   | 43019                   |              |
| PID CONTROLLER REFERENCE SIGNAL SOURCE SELECTION   |  |  | ABB DRV                 | DCU          |
| 4010/ <i>SET POINT</i><br>4110/ <i>SEL</i><br>4210 | <i>COMM COMM+AI1 COMM*AI1</i>              | PID control reference (REF2)   | 40003 for REF2          |              |

## Fieldbus control interface

The communication between a fieldbus system and the drive consists of 16-bit input and output data words (with ABB drives profile) and 32-bit input and output words (with DCU profile).

### ■ Control word and Status word

The Control word (CW) is the principal means of controlling the drive from a fieldbus system. The Control word is sent by the fieldbus controller to the drive. The drive switches between its states according to the bit-coded instructions of the Control word.

The Status word (SW) is a word containing status information, sent by the drive to the fieldbus controller.

### ■ References

References (REF) are 16-bit signed integers. A negative reference (eg reverse direction of rotation) is formed by calculating the two's complement from the corresponding positive reference value. The contents of each reference word can be used as the frequency or process reference.

### ■ Actual values

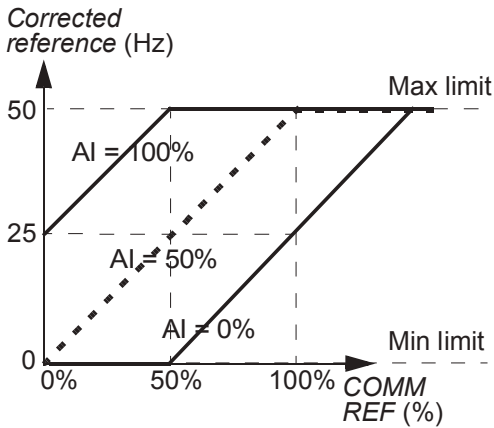
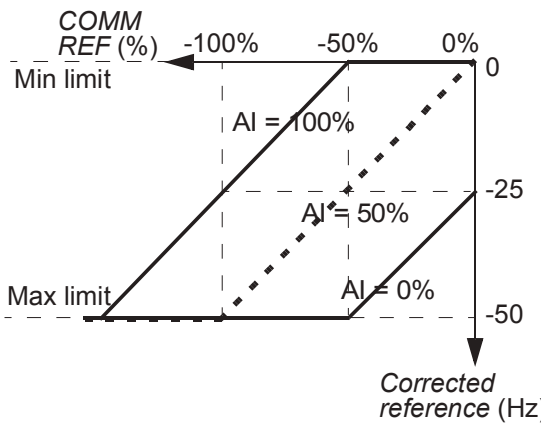
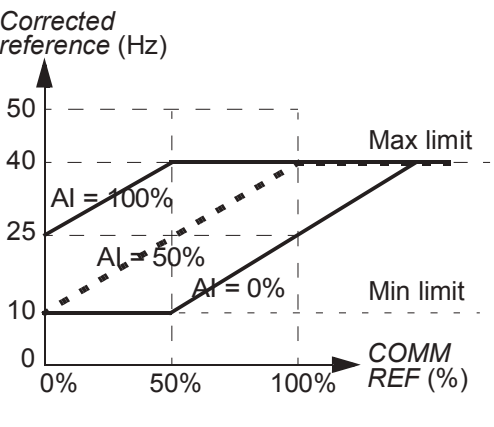
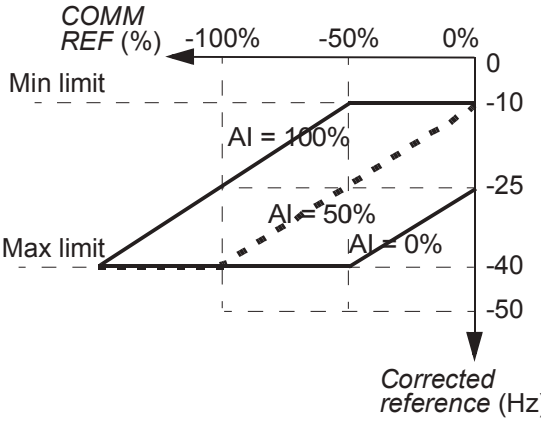
Actual values (ACT) are 16-bit words containing selected values of the drive.

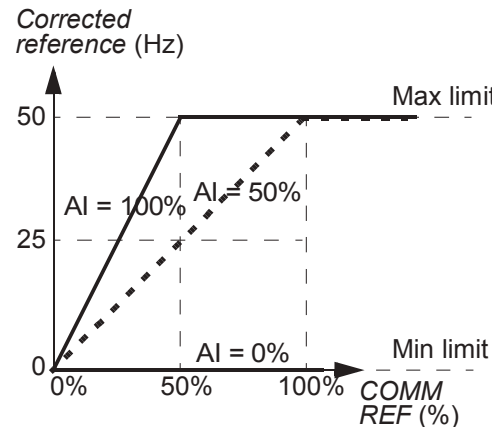
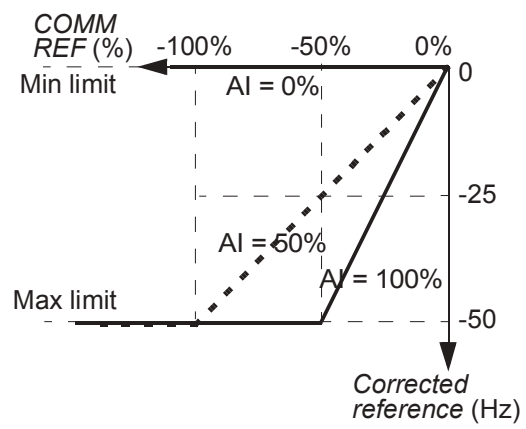
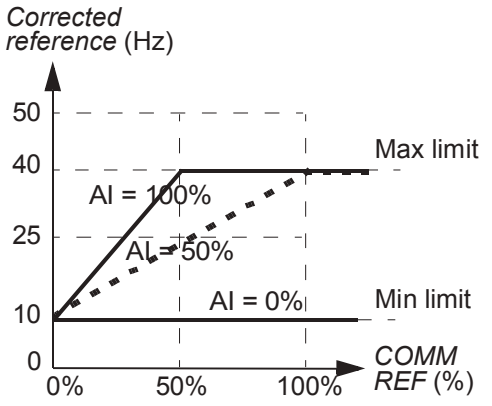
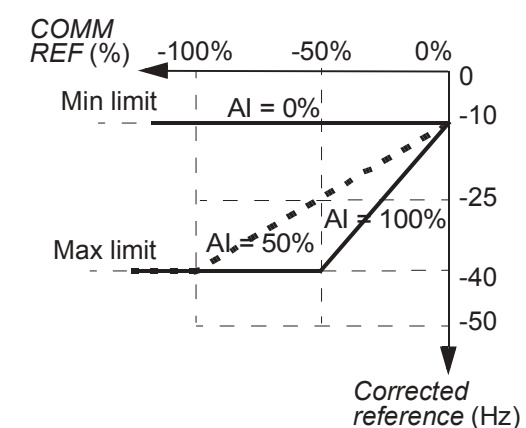
---

## Fieldbus references

### Reference selection and correction

Fieldbus reference (called COMM in signal selection contexts) is selected by setting a reference selection parameter – **1103** or **1106** – to **COMM**, **COMM+AI1** or **COMM\*AI1**. When **1103 REF1 SELECT** or **1106 REF2 SELECT** is set to **COMM**, the fieldbus reference is forwarded as such without correction. When parameter **1103** or **1106** is set to **COMM+AI1** or **COMM\*AI1**, the fieldbus reference is corrected using analog input AI1 as shown in the following examples.

| Setting  | When $COMM \geq 0$  | When $COMM \leq 0$   |
|--|---|--|
| <b>COMM+AI1</b>  | $COMM(\%) \cdot (MAX-MIN) + MIN + (AI(\%) - 50\%) \cdot (MAX-MIN)$  | $COMM(\%) \cdot (MAX-MIN) - MIN + (AI(\%) - 50\%) \cdot (MAX-MIN)$  |
|  |    |    |
| <p>Maximum limit is defined by parameter <b>1105 REF1 MAX</b> / <b>1108 REF2 MAX</b>.<br/>Minimum limit is defined by parameter <b>1104 REF1 MIN</b> / <b>1107 REF2 MIN</b>.</p> |   |  |

| Setting  | When COMM ≥ 0   | When COMM ≤ 0   |
|--|---|---|
| COM<br>M*AI1   | $\text{COMM}(\%) \cdot (\text{AI}(\%) / 50\%) \cdot (\text{MAX}-\text{MIN}) + \text{MIN}$ | $\text{COMM}(\%) \cdot (\text{AI}(\%) / 50\%) \cdot (\text{MAX}-\text{MIN}) - \text{MIN}$ |
|  |          |         |
|  |         |        |
| <p>Maximum limit is defined by parameter <a href="#">1105 REF1 MAX</a> / <a href="#">1108 REF2 MAX</a>.<br/>Minimum limit is defined by parameter <a href="#">1104 REF1 MIN</a> / <a href="#">1107 REF2 MIN</a>.</p> |   |   |

## ■ Fieldbus reference scaling

Fieldbus references REF1 and REF2 are scaled as shown in the following table.

**Note:** Any correction of the reference (see section [Reference selection and correction](#) on page 296) is applied before scaling.

| Reference | Range                   | Reference type | Scaling   | Remarks  |
|-----------|-------------------------|----------------|---|--|
| REF1      | -32767<br>...<br>+32767 | Frequency      | -20000 = <b>-(par. 1105)</b><br>0 = 0<br>+20000 = <b>(par. 1105)</b><br>(20000 corresponds to 100%) | Final reference limited by <a href="#">1104/1105</a> . Actual motor speed limited by <a href="#">2007/2008</a> . |
| REF2      | -32767<br>...<br>+32767 | Frequency      | -10000 = <b>-(par. 1108)</b><br>0 = 0<br>+10000 = <b>(par. 1108)</b><br>(10000 corresponds to 100%) | Final reference limited by <a href="#">1107/1108</a> . Actual motor speed limited by <a href="#">2007/2008</a> . |
|           |                         | PID reference  | -10000 = <b>-(par. 1108)</b><br>0 = 0<br>+10000 = <b>(par. 1108)</b><br>(10000 corresponds to 100%) | Final reference limited by <a href="#">4012/4013</a> (PID set1) or <a href="#">4112/4113</a> (PID set2).         |

**Note:** The settings of parameters [1104 REF1 MIN](#) and [1107 REF2 MIN](#) have no effect on the reference scaling.

## Reference handling

The control of rotation direction is configured for each control location (EXT1 and EXT2) using the parameters in group **10 START/STOP/DIR**. Fieldbus references are bipolar, ie they can be negative or positive. The following diagrams illustrate how group 10 parameters and the sign of the fieldbus reference interact to produce the reference REF1/REF2.

|   | Direction determined by the sign of COMM | Direction determined by digital command, eg digital input, control panel |
|---|--|--|
| Par. 1003<br><i>DIRECTION = FORWARD</i> |  |  |
| Par. 1003<br><i>DIRECTION = REVERSE</i> |  |  |
| Par. 1003<br><i>DIRECTION = REQUEST</i> |  |  |

## Actual value scaling

The scaling of the integers sent to the master as Actual values depends on the selected function. See chapter *Actual signals and parameters* on page 163.



## Modbus mapping

The following Modbus function codes are supported by the drive.

| Function                              | Code Hex (dec) | Additional information  |
|---------------------------------------|----------------|---|
| Read Coil Status                      | 01 (01)        | Reads discrete output status. The individual bits of the control word are mapped to coils 1...16. Relay outputs are mapped sequentially beginning with Coil 33 (eg, RO1 = Coil 33).   |
| Read Discrete Input Status            | 02 (02)        | Reads discrete input status. The individual bits of the status word are mapped to inputs 1...16 or 1...32, depending on the active profile. Terminal inputs are mapped sequentially beginning with input 33 (eg, DI1 = Input 33).   |
| Read Multiple Holding Registers       | 03 (03)        | Reads the contents of registers in a slave device. Parameter sets, control, status and reference values are mapped as holding registers.  |
| Read Multiple Input Registers         | 04 (04)        | Reads multiple input registers. The 2 analog input channels are mapped as input registers 1 and 2.  |
| Force Single Coil                     | 05 (05)        | Writes a single discrete output. The individual bits of the control word are mapped to Coils 1...16. Relay outputs are mapped sequentially beginning with Coil 33 (eg, RO1 = Coil 33).  |
| Write Single Holding Register         | 06 (06)        | Writes to a single register in a slave device. Parameter sets, control, status and reference values are mapped as holding registers.  |
| Diagnostics                           | 08 (08)        | Provides a series of tests for checking the communication between the master and the slave devices, or for checking various internal error conditions within the slave.<br>The following subcodes are supported:<br><u>00 Return Query Data:</u> The data passed in the request data field is to be returned in the response. The entire response message should be identical to the request.<br><u>01 Restart Communications Option:</u> The slave device serial line port must be initialized and restarted, and all of its communication event counters cleared. If the port is currently in Listen Only Mode, no response is returned. If the port is not currently in Listen Only Mode, a normal response is returned before the restart.<br><u>04 Force Listen Only Mode:</u> Forces the addressed slave device to Listen Only Mode. This isolates it from the other devices on the network, allowing them to continue communicating without interruption from the addressed remote device. No response is returned. The only function that is processed after this mode is entered is the Restart Communications Option function (subcode 01). |
| Force Multiple Coils                  | 0F (15)        | Writes multiple discrete outputs. The individual bits of the control word are mapped to Coils 1...16. Relay outputs are mapped sequentially beginning with Coil 33 (eg, RO1 = Coil 33).   |
| Write Multiple Holding Registers      | 10 (16)        | Writes to the registers (1 to approximately 120 registers) in a slave device. Parameter sets, control, status and reference values are mapped as holding registers.   |
| Read/Write Multiple Holding Registers | 17 (23)        | Performs a combination of one read operation and one write operation (function codes 03 and 10) in a single Modbus transaction. The write operation is performed before the read operation.   |

## ■ Register mapping

The drive parameters, Control/Status word, references and actual values are mapped to the area 4xxxx so that:

- 40001...40099 are reserved for drive control/status, reference and actual values.
- 40101...49999 are reserved for drive parameters *0101*...9999. (Eg 40102 is parameter *0102*). In this mapping, the thousands and hundreds correspond to the group number, while the tens and ones correspond to the parameter number within a group.

The register addresses that do not correspond with drive parameters are invalid. If there is an attempt to read or write invalid addresses, the Modbus interface returns an exception code to the controller. See [Exception codes](#) on page 301.

---

The following table gives information on the contents of the Modbus addresses 40001...40012 and 40031...40034.

| Modbus register       | Access | Information  |
|-----------------------|--------|--|
| 40001                 | R/W    | Control word. Supported only by ABB drives profile, ie when <i>5305 EFB CTRL PROFILE</i> setting is <i>ABB DRV LIM</i> or <i>ABB DRV FULL</i> . Parameter <i>5319 EFB PAR 19</i> shows a copy of the Control word in hexadecimal format. |
| 40002                 | R/W    | External reference REF1. See section <i>Fieldbus references</i> on page 294.   |
| 40003                 | R/W    | External reference REF2. See section <i>Fieldbus references</i> on page 294.   |
| 40004                 | R      | Status word. Supported only by ABB drives profile, ie when <i>5305 EFB CTRL PROFILE</i> setting is <i>ABB DRV LIM</i> or <i>ABB DRV FULL</i> . Parameter <i>5320 EFB PAR 20</i> shows a copy of the Control word in hexadecimal format.  |
| 40005<br>...<br>40012 | R      | Actual value 1...8. Use parameter <i>5310... 5317</i> to select an actual value to be mapped to Modbus register 40005...40012.   |
| 40013<br>...<br>40014 | R      | Modbus Data IN 1 and 2. Use parameter <i>5321</i> and <i>5322</i> to select an actual value to be mapped to Modbus register 40013 and 40014. Supported only by <i>STD MODBUS</i> .   |
| 40031                 | R/W    | <i>0301 FB CMD WORD 1</i> , ie the least significant word of the DCU profile 32-bit Control word.<br>Supported only by DCU profile, ie when <i>5305 EFB CTRL PROFILE</i> setting is <i>DCU PROFILE</i> .                                 |
| 40032                 | R/W    | <i>0302 FB CMD WORD 2</i> , ie the most significant word of the DCU profile 32-bit Control word.<br>Supported only by DCU profile, ie when <i>5305 EFB CTRL PROFILE</i> setting is <i>DCU PROFILE</i> .                                  |
| 40033                 | R      | <i>0303 FB STS WORD 1</i> , ie the least significant word of the DCU profile 32-bit Status word.<br>Supported only by DCU profile, ie when <i>5305 EFB CTRL PROFILE</i> setting is <i>DCU PROFILE</i> .                                  |
| 40034                 | R      | <i>0304 FB STS WORD 2</i> , ie the most significant word of the DCU profile 32-bit Status word.<br>Supported only by DCU profile, ie when <i>5305 EFB CTRL PROFILE</i> setting is <i>DCU PROFILE</i> .                                   |
| 40080<br>...<br>40089 | W      | Modbus Data OUT 1...10. Use parameter <i>5323...5332</i> to select an actual value to be mapped to Modbus register 40080...40089. Supported only by <i>STD MODBUS</i> .  |

**Note:** Parameter writes through standard Modbus are always volatile, ie modified values are not automatically stored to permanent memory. Use parameter *1607 PARAM SAVE* to save all changed values.

## ■ Function codes

Supported function codes for the holding 4xxxx register are:

| Code Hex (dec) | Function name                | Additional information  |
|----------------|------------------------------|---|
| 03 (03)        | Read 4X Register             | Reads the binary contents of registers (4X references) in a slave device.   |
| 06 (06)        | Preset single 4X register    | Presets a value into a single register (4X reference). When broadcast, the function presets the same register reference in all attached slaves.   |
| 10 (16)        | Preset multiple 4X registers | Presets values into a sequence of registers (4X references). When broadcast, the function presets the same register references in all attached slaves.                                  |
| 17 (23)        | Read/Write 4X registers      | Performs a combination of one read operation and one write operation (function codes 03 and 10) in a single Modbus transaction. Write operation is performed before the read operation. |

**Note:** In the Modbus data message, register 4xxxx is addressed as xxxx -1. For example register 40002 is addressed as 0001.

## ■ Exception codes

Exception codes are serial communication responses from the drive. The drive supports the standard Modbus exception codes listed in the following table.

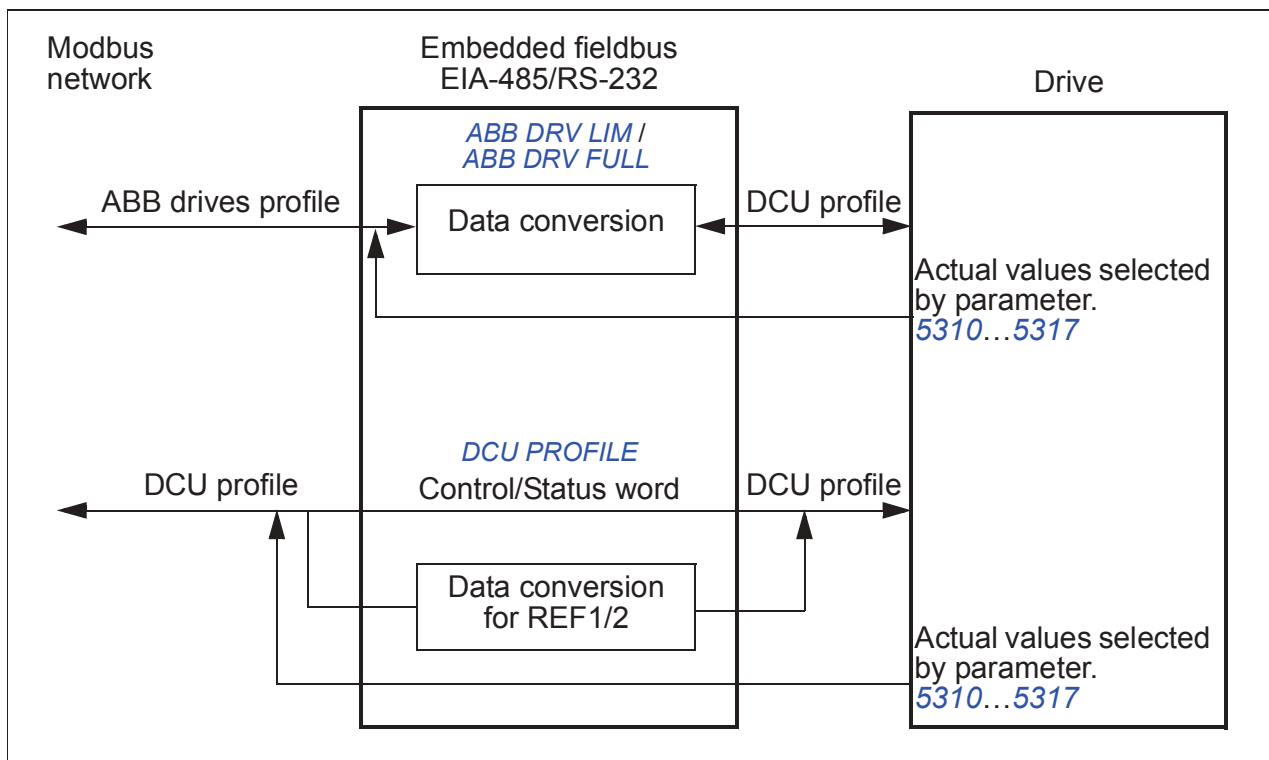
| Code | Name                 | Description   |
|------|----------------------|---|
| 01   | Illegal Function     | Unsupported command   |
| 02   | Illegal Data Address | Address does not exist or is read/write protected.  |
| 03   | Illegal Data Value   | Incorrect value for the drive: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Value is outside minimum or maximum limits.</li> <li>• Parameter is read-only.</li> <li>• Message is too long.</li> <li>• Parameter write is not allowed when start is active.</li> <li>• Parameter write is not allowed when factory macro is selected.</li> </ul> |

## Communication profiles

The embedded fieldbus supports three communication profiles:

- DCU communication profile (*DCU PROFILE*)
- ABB drives limited communication profile (*ABB DRV LIM*)
- ABB drives full communication profile (*ABB DRV FULL*).

The DCU profile extends the control and status interface to 32 bits, and it is the internal interface between the main drive application and the embedded fieldbus environment. The ABB drives limited is based on the PROFIBUS interface. ABB drives full profile supports two Control word bits not supported by the (*ABB DRV LIM*) implementation.



### ■ ABB drives communication profile

Two implementations of the ABB drives communication profile are available: ABB drives full and ABB drives limited. The ABB drives communication profile is active when parameter *5305 EFB CTRL PROFILE* is set to *ABB DRV FULL* or *ABB DRV LIM*. The Control word and Status word for the profile are described below.

The ABB drives communication profiles can be used through both EXT1 and EXT2. The Control word commands are in effect when parameter *1001 EXT1 COMMANDS* or *1002 EXT2 COMMANDS* (whichever control location is active) is set to *COMM*.

The table below and the state diagram on page 306 describe the Control word content for the ABB drives profile. The upper case boldface text refers to the states shown in the diagram.

| ABB drives profile Control word, parameter 5319 EFB PAR 19 |  |       |  |
|--|--|-------|--|
| Bit  | Name   | Value | Comments   |
| 0  | OFF1 CONTROL   | 1     | Enter <b>READY TO OPERATE</b> .  |
|  |  | 0     | Stop along currently active deceleration ramp (2203/2206). Enter OFF1 ACTIVE; proceed to READY TO SWITCH ON unless other interlocks (OFF2, OFF3) are active.   |
| 1  | OFF2 CONTROL   | 1     | Continue operation (OFF2 inactive).  |
|  |  | 0     | Emergency OFF, drive coast to stop. Enter <b>OFF2 ACTIVE</b> ; proceed to <b>SWITCH-ON INHIBITED</b> .   |
| 2  | OFF3 CONTROL   | 1     | Continue operation (OFF3 inactive).  |
|  |  | 0     | Emergency stop, drive stops within time defined by par. 2208. Enter <b>OFF3 ACTIVE</b> ; proceed to <b>SWITCH-ON INHIBITED</b> .<br><b>WARNING:</b> Ensure motor and driven machine can be stopped using this stop mode. |
| 3  | INHIBIT OPERATION  | 1     | Enter <b>OPERATION ENABLED</b> . (Note: The Run enable signal must be active; see parameter 1601. If par. 1601 is set to COMM, this bit also activates the Run enable signal.)   |
|  |  | 0     | Inhibit operation. Enter <b>OPERATION INHIBITED</b> .  |
| 4  | <b>Note:</b> Bit 4 is supported only by <i>ABB DRV FULL</i> profile. |       |  |
|  | RAMP_OUT_ZERO ( <i>ABB DRV FULL</i> )                                | 1     | Enter <b>RAMP FUNCTION GENERATOR: OUTPUT ENABLED</b> .   |
|  |  | 0     | Force Ramp function generator output to zero. Drive ramps to stop (current and DC voltage limits in force).  |
| 5  | RAMP_HOLD  | 1     | Enable ramp function. Enter <b>RAMP FUNCTION GENERATOR: ACCELERATOR ENABLED</b> .  |
|  |  | 0     | Halt ramping (Ramp function generator output held).  |
| 6  | RAMP_IN_ZERO   | 1     | Normal operation. Enter <b>OPERATING</b> .   |
|  |  | 0     | Force Ramp function generator input to zero.   |
| 7  | RESET  | 0=>1  | Fault reset if an active fault exists. Enter <b>SWITCH-ON INHIBITED</b> . Effective if par. 1604 is set to COMM.   |
|  |  | 0     | Continue normal operation.   |
| 8...<br>9  | Not in use   |       |  |
| 10   | <b>Note:</b> Bit 10 is supported only by <i>ABB DRV FULL</i> .       |       |  |
|  | REMOTE_CMD ( <i>ABB DRV FULL</i> )                                   | 1     | Fieldbus control enabled.  |
|  |  | 0     | Control word ≠ 0 or Reference ≠ 0: Retain last Control word and Reference.<br>Control word = 0 and Reference = 0: Fieldbus control enabled.<br>Reference and deceleration/acceleration ramp are locked.                  |
| 11   | EXT CTRL LOC   | 1     | Select external control location EXT2. Effective if par. 1102 is set to COMM.  |
|  |  | 0     | Select external control location EXT1. Effective if par. 1102 is set to COMM.  |

| ABB drives profile Control word, parameter <i>5319 EFB PAR 19</i> |            |       |  |
|---|------------|-------|--|
| Bit   | Name       | Value | Comments   |
| 12  | MOTOR_HEAT | 1     | Start motor heating.   |
|   |            | 0     | Stop motor heating. See parameter <i>2115</i> , option COMM. |
| 13...<br>15   | Reserved   |       |  |

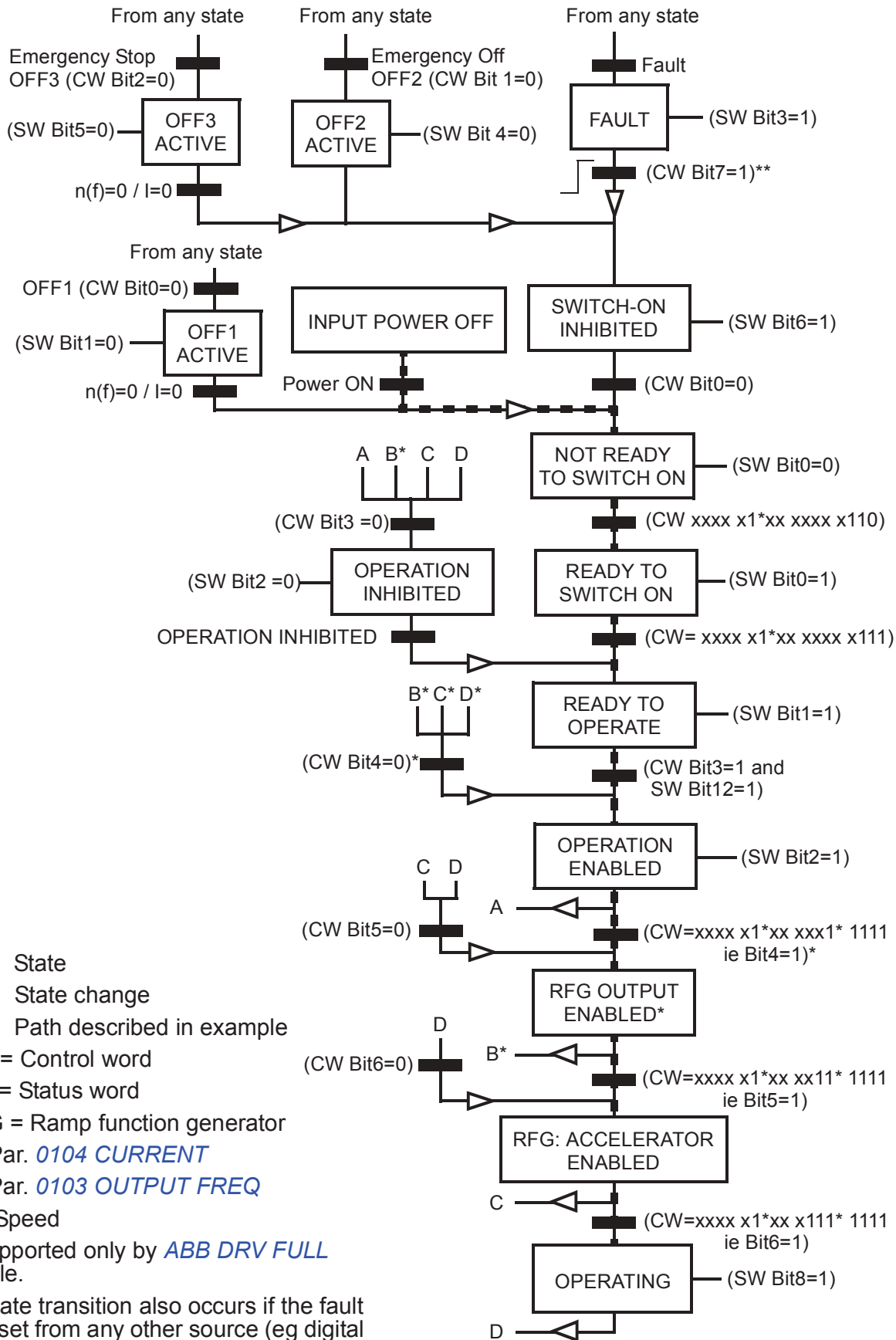
The table below and the state diagram on page [306](#) describe the Status word content for the ABB drives profile. The upper case boldface text refers to the states shown in the diagram.

| ABB drives profile (EFB) Status word, parameter <i>5320 EFB PAR 20</i> |              |       |  |
|--|--------------|-------|--|
| Bit  | Name         | Value | STATE/Description<br>(Correspond to states/boxes in the state diagram)   |
| 0  | RDY_ON       | 1     | <b>READY TO SWITCH ON</b>  |
|  |              | 0     | <b>NOT READY TO SWITCH ON</b>  |
| 1  | RDY_RUN      | 1     | <b>READY TO OPERATE</b>  |
|  |              | 0     | <b>OFF1 ACTIVE</b>   |
| 2  | RDY_REF      | 1     | <b>OPERATION ENABLED</b>   |
|  |              | 0     | <b>OPERATION INHIBITED</b>   |
| 3  | TRIPPED      | 0...1 | <b>FAULT.</b> See chapter <i>Fault tracing</i> on page <a href="#">311</a> .   |
|  |              | 0     | No fault   |
| 4  | OFF_2_STA    | 1     | OFF2 inactive  |
|  |              | 0     | <b>OFF2 ACTIVE</b>   |
| 5  | OFF_3_STA    | 1     | OFF3 inactive  |
|  |              | 0     | <b>OFF3 ACTIVE</b>   |
| 6  | SWC_ON_INHIB | 1     | <b>SWITCH-ON INHIBITED</b>   |
|  |              | 0     | Switch-on inhibit not active   |
| 7  | ALARM        | 1     | Alarm. See chapter <i>Fault tracing</i> on page <a href="#">311</a> .  |
|  |              | 0     | No alarm   |
| 8  | AT_SETPOINT  | 1     | <b>OPERATING.</b> Actual value equals reference value (= is within tolerance limits, ie the difference between the output frequency and the frequency reference is less than or equal to 4/1%* of the nominal motor frequency).<br>* Asymmetric hysteresis: 4% when frequency enters the reference area, 1% when frequency exits the reference area. |
|  |              | 0     | Actual value differs from reference value (= is outside tolerance limits).   |
| 9  | REMOTE       | 1     | Drive control location: REMOTE (EXT1 or EXT2)  |
|  |              | 0     | Drive control location: LOCAL  |

| ABB drives profile (EFB) Status word, parameter <i>5320 EFB PAR 20</i> |                |       |  |
|--|----------------|-------|--|
| Bit  | Name           | Value | STATE/Description<br>(Correspond to states/boxes in the state diagram)   |
| 10   | ABOVE_LIMIT    | 1     | Supervised parameter value exceeds the supervision high limit. Bit value is 1 until the supervised parameter value falls below the supervision low limit. See parameter group <a href="#">32 SUPERVISION</a> . |
|  |                | 0     | Supervised parameter value falls below the supervision low limit. Bit value is 0 until the supervised parameter value exceeds the supervision high limit. See parameter group <a href="#">32 SUPERVISION</a> . |
| 11   | EXT CTRL LOC   | 1     | External control location EXT2 selected  |
|  |                | 0     | External control location EXT1 selected  |
| 12   | EXT RUN ENABLE | 1     | External Run enable signal received  |
|  |                | 0     | No external Run enable received  |
| 13   | MOTOR_HEAT     | 1     | Motor heating is On  |
|  |                | 0     | Motor heating is Off   |
| 14...<br>15  | Reserved       |       |  |



The state diagram below describes the start-stop function of Control word (CW) and Status word (SW) bits for the ABB drives profile.



□ State

■ State change

--- Path described in example

CW = Control word

SW = Status word

RFG = Ramp function generator

I = Par. 0104 CURRENT

f = Par. 0103 OUTPUT FREQ

n = Speed

\* Supported only by ABB DRV FULL profile.

\*\* State transition also occurs if the fault is reset from any other source (eg digital input).

## ■ DCU communication profile

Because the DCU profile extends the control and status interface to 32 bits, two different signals are needed for both the control (0301 and 0302) and status (0303 and 0304) words.

The following tables describe the Control word content for the DCU profile.

| DCU profile Control word, parameter 0301 FB CMD WORD 1 |             |       |  |
|--|-------------|-------|--|
| Bit  | Name        | Value | Information  |
| 0  | STOP        | 1     | Stop according to either the stop mode parameter (2102) or the stop mode requests (bits 7 and 8).<br><b>Note:</b> Simultaneous STOP and START commands result in a stop command. |
|  |             | 0     | No operation   |
| 1  | START       | 1     | Start<br><b>Note:</b> Simultaneous STOP and START commands result in a stop command.   |
|  |             | 0     | No operation   |
| 2  | REVERSE     | 1     | Reverse direction. The direction is defined by using the XOR operation on bit 2 and 31 (= sign of the reference) values.   |
|  |             | 0     | Forward direction.   |
| 3  | LOCAL       | 1     | Enter the local control mode.  |
|  |             | 0     | Enter external control mode.   |
| 4  | RESET       | -> 1  | Reset.   |
|  |             | other | No operation   |
| 5  | EXT2        | 1     | Switch to external control EXT2.   |
|  |             | 0     | Switch to external control EXT1.   |
| 6  | RUN_DISABLE | 1     | Activate Run disable.  |
|  |             | 0     | Activate Run enable.   |
| 7  | STPMODE_R   | 1     | Stop along currently active deceleration ramp (bit 10). Bit 0 value must be 1 (= STOP).  |
|  |             | 0     | No operation   |
| 8  | STPMODE_EM  | 1     | Emergency stop. But does not cause an EMERGENCY STOP alarm.<br>Bit 0 value must be 1 (=STOP).  |
|  |             | 0     | No operation   |
| 9  | STPMODE_C   | 1     | Coast to stop. Bit 0 value must be 1 (= STOP).   |
|  |             | 0     | No operation   |
| 10   | RAMP_2      | 1     | Use acceleration/deceleration ramp pair 2 (defined by parameters 2205...2207).   |
|  |             | 0     | Use acceleration/deceleration ramp pair 1 (defined by parameters 2202...2204).   |
| 11   | RAMP_OUT_0  | 1     | Force ramp output to zero.   |
|  |             | 0     | No operation   |
| 12   | RAMP_HOLD   | 1     | Halt ramping (Ramp function generator output held).  |
|  |             | 0     | No operation   |

DCU profile Control word, parameter **0301 FB CMD WORD 1**

| Bit | Name             | Value | Information  |
|-----|------------------|-------|--|
| 13  | RAMP_IN_0        | 1     | Force ramp input to zero.  |
|     |                  | 0     | No operation   |
| 14  | REQ_LOCALLO<br>C | 1     | Enable local lock. Entering the local control mode is disabled (LOC/REM key of the panel). |
|     |                  | 0     | No operation   |
| 15  | Reserved         |       |  |

DCU profile Control word, parameter **0302 FB CMD WORD 2**

| Bit         | Name           | Value | Information   |
|-------------|----------------|-------|---|
| 16          | FBLOCAL_CTL    | 1     | Fieldbus local mode for Control word requested.<br><b>Example:</b> If the drive is in remote control and the start/stop/direction command source is DI for external control location 1 (EXT1): by setting bit 16 to value 1, the start/stop/direction is controlled by the fieldbus command word. |
|             |                | 0     | No fieldbus local mode  |
| 17          | FBLOCAL_REF    | 1     | Fieldbus local mode Control word for reference requested. See example in bit 16 FBLOCAL_CTL.  |
|             |                | 0     | No fieldbus local mode  |
| 18          | START_DISABLE1 | 1     | No Start enable   |
|             |                | 0     | Enable start. Effective if parameter <b>1608</b> setting is <b>COMM</b> .   |
| 19          | START_DISABLE2 | 1     | No Start enable   |
|             |                | 0     | Enable start. Effective if parameter <b>1609</b> setting is <b>COMM</b> .   |
| 20...<br>21 | Reserved       |       |   |
| 22          | MOTOR_HEAT     | 1     | Start motor heating   |
|             |                | 0     | Stop motor heating. See parameter <b>2115</b> option <b>COMM</b> .  |
| 23...<br>26 | Reserved       |       |   |
| 27          | REF_CONST      | 1     | Constant speed reference request. This is an internal control bit. Only for supervision.  |
|             |                | 0     | No operation  |
| 28          | REF_AVE        | 1     | Average speed reference request. This is an internal control bit. Only for supervision.   |
|             |                | 0     | No operation  |
| 29          | LINK_ON        | 1     | Master detected on fieldbus link. This is an internal control bit. Only for supervision.  |
|             |                | 0     | Fieldbus link is down.  |
| 30          | REQ_STARTINH   | 1     | Start inhibit. Not supported by STD MODBUS.   |
|             |                | 0     | No start inhibit.   |
| 31          | Reserved       |       |   |

The following tables describe the Status word content for the DCU profile.

| DCU profile Status word, parameter <i>0303 FB STS WORD 1</i> |                 |       |  |
|--|-----------------|-------|--|
| Bit  | Name            | Value | Information  |
| 0  | READY           | 1     | Drive is ready to receive start command.   |
|  |                 | 0     | Drive is not ready.  |
| 1  | ENABLED         | 1     | External Run enable signal received.   |
|  |                 | 0     | No external Run enable signal received.  |
| 2  | STARTED         | 1     | Drive has received start command.  |
|  |                 | 0     | Drive has not received start command.  |
| 3  | RUNNING         | 1     | Drive is modulating.   |
|  |                 | 0     | Drive is not modulating.   |
| 4  | ZERO_SPEED      | 1     | Drive is at zero speed.  |
|  |                 | 0     | Drive has not reached zero speed.  |
| 5  | ACCELERATE      | 1     | Drive is accelerating.   |
|  |                 | 0     | Drive is not accelerating.   |
| 6  | DECELERATE      | 1     | Drive is decelerating.   |
|  |                 | 0     | Drive is not decelerating.   |
| 7  | AT_SETPOINT     | 1     | Drive is at setpoint. Actual value equals reference value (ie is within tolerance limits). |
|  |                 | 0     | Drive has not reached setpoint.  |
| 8  | LIMIT           | 1     | Operation is limited by group <i>20 LIMITS</i> settings.                                   |
|  |                 | 0     | Operation is within group <i>20 LIMITS</i> settings.                                       |
| 9  | SUPER1 OVER     | 1     | A supervised parameter (group <i>32 SUPERVISION</i> ) is outside its limits.               |
|  |                 | 0     | All supervised parameters are within limits.   |
| 10   | REV_REF         | 1     | Drive reference is in reverse direction.   |
|  |                 | 0     | Drive reference is in forward direction.   |
| 11   | REV_ACT         | 1     | Drive is running in reverse direction.   |
|  |                 | 0     | Drive is running in forward direction.   |
| 12   | PANEL_LOCAL     | 1     | Control is in control panel (or PC tool) local mode.                                       |
|  |                 | 0     | Control is not in control panel local mode.  |
| 13   | FIELDDBUS_LOCAL | 1     | Control is in fieldbus local mode  |
|  |                 | 0     | Control is not in fieldbus local mode.   |
| 14   | EXT2_ACT        | 1     | Control is in EXT2 mode.   |
|  |                 | 0     | Control is in EXT1 mode.   |
| 15   | FAULT           | 1     | Drive is in a fault state.   |
|  |                 | 0     | Drive is not in a fault state.   |

DCU profile Status word, parameter *0304 FB STS WORD 2*

| Bit         | Name         | Value | Information  |
|-------------|--------------|-------|--|
| 16          | ALARM        | 1     | An alarm is on.  |
|             |              | 0     | No alarms are on.  |
| 17          | NOTICE       | 1     | A maintenance request is pending.                        |
|             |              | 0     | No maintenance request                                   |
| 18          | DIRLOCK      | 1     | Direction lock is ON. (Direction change is locked.)      |
|             |              | 0     | Direction lock is OFF.                                   |
| 19          | LOCALLOCK    | 1     | Local mode lock is ON. (Local mode is locked.)           |
|             |              | 0     | Local mode lock is OFF.                                  |
| 20          | CTL_MODE     | 1     | N/A  |
|             |              | 0     | Drive is in scalar control mode.                         |
| 21          | Reserved     |       |  |
| 22          | MOTOR_HEAT   | 1     | Motor heating is On                                      |
|             |              | 0     | Motor heating is Off                                     |
| 23...<br>25 | Reserved     |       |  |
| 26          | REQ_CTL      | 1     | Control word requested from fieldbus                     |
|             |              | 0     | No operation   |
| 27          | REQ_REF1     | 1     | Reference 1 requested from fieldbus                      |
|             |              | 0     | Reference 1 is not requested from fieldbus.              |
| 28          | REQ_REF2     | 1     | Reference 2 requested from fieldbus                      |
|             |              | 0     | Reference 2 is not requested from fieldbus.              |
| 29          | REQ_REF2EXT  | 1     | External PID reference 2 requested from fieldbus         |
|             |              | 0     | External PID reference 2 is not requested from fieldbus. |
| 30          | ACK_STARTINH | 1     | Start inhibit from fieldbus                              |
|             |              | 0     | No start inhibit from fieldbus                           |
| 31          | Reserved     |       |  |



# Fault tracing

---

## What this chapter contains

The chapter tells how to reset faults and view fault history. It also lists all alarm and fault messages including the possible cause and corrective actions.

## Safety

---



**WARNING!** Only qualified electricians are allowed to maintain the drive. Read the safety instructions in chapter [Safety](#) on page [15](#) before you work on the drive.

---



## Alarm and fault indications

Fault is indicated with a red LED. See section [LEDs](#) on page [333](#).

An alarm or fault message on the panel display indicates abnormal drive status. Using the information given in this chapter most alarm and fault causes can be identified and corrected. If not, contact an ABB representative.

The four digit code number in parenthesis after the fault is for the fieldbus communication. See chapter [Fieldbus control with the embedded fieldbus](#) on page [287](#).

## How to reset

The drive can be reset either by pressing the keypad key  (Basic control panel) or  (Assistant control panel), through digital input or fieldbus, or by switching the supply voltage off for a while. The source for the fault reset signal is selected by

---

parameter *1604 FAULT RESET SEL*. When the fault has been removed, the motor can be restarted.

## Fault history

When a fault is detected, it is stored in the fault history. The latest faults are stored together with the time stamp.

Parameters *0401 LAST FAULT*, *0412 PREVIOUS FAULT 1* and *0413 PREVIOUS FAULT 2* store the most recent faults. Parameters *0404...0409* show drive operation data at the time the latest fault occurred. The Assistant control panel provides additional information about the fault history. See section *Fault logger mode* on page *94* for more information.

---

## Alarm messages generated by the drive

| CODE | ALARM   | CAUSE   | WHAT TO DO   |
|------|---|---|--|
| 2001 | OVERCURRENT<br><i>0308</i> bit 0<br>(programmable fault function <i>1610</i> )            | Output current limit controller is active.  | Check motor load.<br>Check acceleration time ( <i>2202</i> and <i>2205</i> ).<br>Check motor and motor cable (including phasing).<br>Check ambient conditions. Load capacity decreases if installation site ambient temperature exceeds 40 °C.<br>See section <i>Derating</i> on page <i>338</i> . |
| 2002 | OVERVOLTAGE<br><i>0308</i> bit 1<br>(programmable fault function <i>1610</i> )            | DC overvoltage controller is active.  | Check deceleration time ( <i>2203</i> and <i>2206</i> ).<br>Check input power line for static or transient overvoltage.  |
| 2003 | UNDERVOLTAGE<br><i>0308</i> bit 2<br>(programmable fault function <i>1610</i> )           | DC undervoltage controller is active.   | Check input power supply.  |
| 2004 | DIR LOCK<br><i>0308</i> bit 3   | Change of direction is not allowed.   | Check parameter <i>1003 DIRECTION</i> settings.  |
| 2005 | IO COMM<br><i>0308</i> bit 4<br>(programmable fault function <i>3018</i> , <i>3019</i> )  | Fieldbus communication break  | Check status of fieldbus communication. See chapter <i>Fieldbus control with the embedded fieldbus</i> on page <i>287</i> .<br>Check fault function parameter settings.<br>Check connections.<br>Check if master can communicate.  |
| 2006 | AI1 LOSS<br><i>0308</i> bit 5<br>(programmable fault function <i>3001</i> , <i>3021</i> ) | Analog input AI1 signal has fallen below limit defined by parameter <i>3021 AI1 FAULT LIMIT</i> . | Check fault function parameter settings.<br>Check for proper analog control signal levels.<br>Check connections.   |
| 2007 | AI2 LOSS<br><i>0308</i> bit 6<br>(programmable fault function <i>3001</i> , <i>3022</i> ) | Analog input AI2 signal has fallen below limit defined by parameter <i>3022 AI2 FAULT LIMIT</i> . | Check fault function parameter settings.<br>Check for proper analog control signal levels.<br>Check connections.   |



| CODE       | ALARM   | CAUSE   | WHAT TO DO   |
|------------|---|---|--|
| 2008       | PANEL LOSS<br><i>0308</i> bit 7<br>(programmable fault function <i>3002</i> )               | Control panel selected as active control location for drive has ceased communicating.   | Check panel connection.<br>Check fault function parameters.<br>Check control panel connector.<br>Refit control panel in mounting platform.<br>If drive is in external control mode (REM) and is set to accept start/stop, direction commands or references through control panel:<br>Check group <i>10 START/STOP/DIR</i> and <i>11 REFERENCE SELECT</i> settings. |
| 2009       | DEVICE OVERTEMP<br><i>0308</i> bit 8  | Drive IGBT temperature is excessive. Alarm limit is 120 °C.   | Check ambient conditions. See also section <i>Derating</i> on page <i>338</i> .<br>Check air flow and fan operation.<br>Check motor power against drive power.   |
| 2010       | MOTOR TEMP<br><i>0308</i> bit 9<br>(programmable fault function <i>3005...3009 / 3503</i> ) | Motor temperature is too high (or appears to be too high) due to excessive load, insufficient motor power, inadequate cooling or incorrect start-up data. | Check motor ratings, load and cooling.<br>Check start-up data.<br>Check fault function parameters.   |
|            |   | Measured motor temperature has exceeded alarm limit set by parameter <i>3503 ALARM LIMIT</i> .  | Check value of alarm limit.<br>Check that actual number of sensors corresponds to value set by parameter <i>3501 SENSOR TYPE</i> .<br>Let motor cool down. Ensure proper motor cooling: Check cooling fan, clean cooling surfaces, etc.  |
| 2012       | MOTOR STALL<br><i>0308</i> bit 11<br>(programmable fault function <i>3010...3012</i> )      | Motor is operating in stall region due to eg excessive load or insufficient motor power.  | Check motor load and drive ratings.<br>Check fault function parameters.  |
| 2013<br>1) | AUTORESET<br><i>0308</i> bit 12   | Automatic reset alarm   | Check parameter group <i>31 AUTOMATIC RESET</i> settings.  |
| 2014<br>1) | AUTOCHANGE<br><i>0308</i> bit 13  | PFC Autochange function is active.  | See parameter group <i>81 PFC CONTROL</i> , section <i>PFC control macro</i> on page <i>110</i> and section <i>SPFC control macro</i> on page <i>111</i> .   |
| 2015       | PFC I LOCK<br><i>0308</i> bit 14  | PFC Interlocks are active.  | Drive cannot start <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>any motor (when Autochange is used)</li> <li>the speed regulated motor (when Autochange is not used).</li> </ul> See parameter group <i>81 PFC CONTROL</i> .   |
| 2018<br>1) | PID SLEEP<br><i>0309</i> bit 1  | Sleep function has entered sleeping mode.   | See parameter groups <i>40 PROCESS PID SET 1... 41 PROCESS PID SET 2</i> .   |

| CODE | ALARM   | CAUSE   | WHAT TO DO  |
|------|---|---|---|
| 2021 | START ENABLE 1 MISSING<br><i>0309</i> bit 4   | No Start enable 1 signal received   | Check parameter <i>1608 START ENABLE 1</i> settings.<br>Check digital input connections.<br>Check fieldbus communication settings.        |
| 2022 | START ENABLE 2 MISSING<br><i>0309</i> bit 5   | No Start enable 2 signal received   | Check parameter <i>1609 START ENABLE 2</i> settings.<br>Check digital input connections.<br>Check fieldbus communication settings.        |
| 2023 | EMERGENCY STOP<br><i>0309</i> bit 6   | Drive has received emergency stop command and ramps to stop according to ramp time defined by parameter <i>2208 EMERG DEC TIME</i> .  | Check that it is safe to continue operation.<br>Return emergency stop push button to normal position.                                     |
| 2025 | FIRST START<br><i>0309</i> bit 8  | Motor identification magnetization is on. This alarm belongs to normal start-up procedure.  | Wait until drive indicates that motor identification is completed.  |
| 2026 | INPUT PHASE LOSS<br><i>0309</i> bit 9<br>(programmable fault function <i>3016</i> ) | Intermediate circuit DC voltage is oscillating due to missing input power line phase or blown fuse.<br>Alarm is generated when DC voltage ripple exceeds 14% of nominal DC voltage. | Check input power line fuses.<br>Check for input power supply imbalance.<br>Check fault function parameters.                              |
| 2027 | USER LOAD CURVE<br><i>0309</i> bit 10   | Condition defined by <i>3701 USER LOAD C MODE</i> has been valid longer than half of the time set by <i>3703 USER LOAD C TIME</i> .   | See parameter group <i>37 USER LOAD CURVE</i> .   |
| 2028 | START DELAY<br><i>0309</i> bit 11   | Start delay in progress   | See parameter <i>2113 START DELAY</i> .   |
| 2030 | INLET LOW<br><i>0309</i> bit 13   | Pressure at pump/fan inlet too low  | Check for a closed valve on the inlet side of the pump/fan.<br>Check piping for leaks.<br>See parameter group <i>44 PUMP PROTECTION</i> . |
| 2031 | OUTLET HIGH<br><i>0309</i> bit 14   | Pressure at pump/fan outlet too high  | Check piping for blocks.<br>See parameter group <i>44 PUMP PROTECTION</i> .   |
| 2032 | PIPE FILL<br><i>0309</i> bit 15   | Pipe fill in progress   | See parameters <i>4421...4426</i> .   |

| CODE               | ALARM                                 | CAUSE                                | WHAT TO DO  |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---|
| 2033               | INLET VERY LOW<br><i>0310</i> bit 0   | Pressure at pump/fan inlet too low   | Check for a closed valve on the inlet side of the pump/fan.<br>Check piping for leaks.<br>See parameter group <i>44 PUMP PROTECTION</i> . |
| 2034               | OUTLET VERY HIGH<br><i>0310</i> bit 1 | Pressure at pump/fan outlet too high | Check piping for blocks.<br>See parameter group <i>44 PUMP PROTECTION</i> .   |
| 2038 <sup>1)</sup> | MOTOR HEATING                         | Motor heating is active.             | See parameter <i>2115 MOT. HEATING SEL</i> .  |

<sup>1)</sup> Even when the relay output is configured to indicate alarm conditions (eg parameter *1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1 = 5 (ALARM)* or *16 (FLT/ALARM)*), this alarm is not indicated by a relay output.

## Alarms generated by the Basic control panel

The Basic control panel indicates control panel alarms with a code, A5xxx.

| ALARM CODE | CAUSE   | WHAT TO DO   |
|------------|---|--|
| 5001       | Drive is not responding.  | Check panel connection.  |
| 5002       | Incompatible communication profile  | Contact your local ABB representative.   |
| 5010       | Corrupted panel parameter backup file   | Retry parameter upload.<br>Retry parameter download.   |
| 5011       | Drive is controlled from another source.  | Change drive control to the local control mode.  |
| 5012       | Direction of rotation is locked.  | Enable change of direction. See parameter <a href="#">1003 DIRECTION</a> .   |
| 5013       | Panel control is disabled because start inhibit is active.                      | Start from the panel is not possible. Reset the emergency stop command or remove the 3-wire stop command before starting from the panel. See section <a href="#">3-wire macro</a> on page <a href="#">105</a> and parameters <a href="#">1001 EXT1 COMMANDS</a> , <a href="#">1002 EXT2 COMMANDS</a> and <a href="#">2109 EMERG STOP SEL</a> . |
| 5014       | Panel control is disabled because of drive fault.                               | Reset drive fault and retry.   |
| 5015       | Panel control is disabled because the local control mode lock is active.        | Deactivate the local control mode lock and retry. See parameter <a href="#">1606 LOCAL LOCK</a> .  |
| 5018       | Parameter default value is not found.   | Contact your local ABB representative.   |
| 5019       | Writing non-zero parameter value is prohibited.                                 | Only parameter reset is allowed.   |
| 5020       | Parameter or parameter group does not exist or parameter value is inconsistent. | Contact your local ABB representative.   |
| 5021       | Parameter or parameter group is hidden.   | Contact your local ABB representative.   |
| 5022       | Parameter is write protected.   | Parameter value is read-only and cannot be changed.  |
| 5023       | Parameter change is not allowed, when drive is running.                         | Stop drive and change parameter value.   |
| 5024       | Drive is executing a task.  | Wait until task is completed.  |
| 5025       | Software is being uploaded or downloaded.                                       | Wait until upload/download is complete.  |
| 5026       | Value is at or below minimum limit.   | Contact your local ABB representative.   |
| 5027       | Value is at or above maximum limit.   | Contact your local ABB representative.   |
| 5028       | Invalid value   | Contact your local ABB representative.   |

| ALARM CODE | CAUSE   | WHAT TO DO   |
|------------|---|--|
| 5029       | Memory is not ready.  | Retry.   |
| 5030       | Invalid request   | Contact your local ABB representative.   |
| 5031       | Drive is not ready for operation, eg due to low DC voltage.                               | Check input power supply.  |
| 5032       | Parameter error   | Contact your local ABB representative.   |
| 5040       | Parameter download error. Selected parameter set is not in current parameter backup file. | Perform upload function before download.   |
| 5041       | Parameter backup file does not fit into memory.   | Contact your local ABB representative.   |
| 5042       | Parameter download error. Selected parameter set is not in current parameter backup file. | Perform upload function before download.   |
| 5043       | No start inhibit  |  |
| 5044       | Parameter backup file restoring error   | Check that file is compatible with drive.  |
| 5050       | Parameter upload aborted  | Retry parameter upload.  |
| 5051       | File error  | Contact your local ABB representative.   |
| 5052       | Parameter upload has failed.  | Retry parameter upload.  |
| 5060       | Parameter download aborted  | Retry parameter download.  |
| 5062       | Parameter download has failed.  | Retry parameter download.  |
| 5070       | Panel backup memory write error   | Contact your local ABB representative.   |
| 5071       | Panel backup memory read error  | Contact your local ABB representative.   |
| 5080       | Operation is not allowed because the drive is not in the local control mode.              | Switch to the local control mode.  |
| 5081       | Operation is not allowed because of active fault.   | Check cause of fault and reset fault.  |
| 5083       | Operation is not allowed because parameter lock is on.                                    | Check parameter <b>1602 PARAMETER LOCK</b> setting.  |
| 5084       | Operation is not allowed because drive is performing a task.                              | Wait until task is completed and retry.  |
| 5085       | Parameter download from source to destination drive has failed.                           | Check that source and destination drive types are same, ie ACS310. See the type designation label of the drive.    |
| 5086       | Parameter download from source to destination drive has failed.                           | Check that source and destination drive type designations are the same. See type designation labels of the drives. |

| ALARM CODE | CAUSE   | WHAT TO DO   |
|------------|---|--|
| 5087       | Parameter download from source to destination drive has failed because parameter sets are incompatible. | Check that source and destination drive information are same. See parameters in group <a href="#">33 INFORMATION</a> . |
| 5088       | Operation has failed because of drive memory error.   | Contact your local ABB representative.   |
| 5089       | Download has failed because of CRC error.   | Contact your local ABB representative.   |
| 5090       | Download has failed because of data processing error.   | Contact your local ABB representative.   |
| 5091       | Operation has failed because of parameter error.  | Contact your local ABB representative.   |
| 5092       | Parameter download from source to destination drive has failed because parameter sets are incompatible. | Check that source and destination drive information are same. See parameters in group <a href="#">33 INFORMATION</a> . |

## Fault messages generated by the drive

| CODE | FAULT  | CAUSE  | WHAT TO DO   |
|------|--|--|--|
| 0001 | OVERCURRENT<br>(2310)<br>0305 bit 0  | Output current has exceeded trip level.  | Check motor load.<br>Check acceleration time (2202 and 2205).<br>Check motor and motor cable (including phasing).<br>Check ambient conditions. Load capacity decreases if installation site ambient temperature exceeds 40 °C.<br>See section <i>Derating</i> on page 338. |
| 0002 | DC OVERVOLT<br>(3210)<br>0305 bit 1  | Excessive intermediate circuit DC voltage. DC overvoltage trip limit is 420 V for 200 V drives and 840 V for 400 V drives.                                   | Check that overvoltage controller is on (parameter 2005 OVERVOLT CTRL).<br>Check input power line for static or transient overvoltage.<br>Check deceleration time (2203, 2206).  |
| 0003 | DEV OVERTEMP<br>(4210)<br>0305 bit 2   | Drive IGBT temperature is excessive. Fault trip limit is 135 °C.   | Check ambient conditions. See also section <i>Derating</i> on page 338.<br>Check air flow and fan operation.<br>Check motor power against drive power.   |
| 0004 | SHORT CIRC<br>(2340)<br>0305 bit 3   | Short circuit in motor cable(s) or motor   | Check motor and motor cable.   |
| 0006 | DC UNDERVOLT<br>(3220)<br>0305 bit 5   | Intermediate circuit DC voltage is not sufficient due to missing input power line phase, blown fuse, rectifier bridge internal fault or too low input power. | Check that undervoltage controller is on (parameter 2006 UNDERVOLT CTRL).<br>Check input power supply and fuses.   |
| 0007 | AI1 LOSS<br>(8110)<br>0305 bit 6<br>(programmable fault function 3001, 3021) | Analog input AI1 signal has fallen below limit defined by parameter 3021 AI1 FAULT LIMIT.  | Check fault function parameter settings.<br>Check for proper analog control signal levels.<br>Check connections.   |
| 0008 | AI2 LOSS<br>(8110)<br>0305 bit 7<br>(programmable fault function 3001, 3022) | Analog input AI2 signal has fallen below limit defined by parameter 3022 AI2 FAULT LIMIT.  | Check fault function parameter settings.<br>Check for proper analog control signal levels.<br>Check connections.   |

| CODE | FAULT   | CAUSE   | WHAT TO DO   |
|------|---|---|--|
| 0009 | MOT OVERTEMP<br>(4310)<br>0305 bit 8<br>(programmable fault function<br>3005...3009 / 3504) | Motor temperature is too high (or appears to be too high) due to excessive load, insufficient motor power, inadequate cooling or incorrect start-up data. | Check motor ratings, load and cooling.<br>Check start-up data.<br>Check fault function parameters.   |
|      |   | Measured motor temperature has exceeded fault limit set by parameter 3504 FAULT LIMIT.  | Check value of fault limit.<br>Check that actual number of sensors corresponds to value set by parameter 3501 SENSOR TYPE.<br>Let motor cool down. Ensure proper motor cooling: Check cooling fan, clean cooling surfaces, etc.  |
| 0010 | PANEL LOSS<br>(5300)<br>0305 bit 9<br>(programmable fault function 3002)                    | Control panel selected as active control location for drive has ceased communicating.   | Check panel connection.<br>Check fault function parameters.<br>Check control panel connector.<br>Refit control panel in mounting platform.<br>If drive is in external control mode (REM) and is set to accept start/stop, direction commands or references through control panel:<br>Check group 10 START/STOP/DIR and 11 REFERENCE SELECT settings. |
| 0012 | MOTOR STALL<br>(7121)<br>0305 bit 11<br>(programmable fault function<br>3010...3012)        | Motor is operating in stall region due to eg excessive load or insufficient motor power.  | Check motor load and drive ratings.<br>Check fault function parameters.  |
| 0014 | EXT FAULT 1<br>(9000)<br>0305 bit 13<br>(programmable fault function 3003)                  | External fault 1  | Check external devices for faults.<br>Check parameter 3003 EXTERNAL FAULT 1 setting.   |
| 0015 | EXT FAULT 2<br>(9001)<br>0305 bit 14<br>(programmable fault function 3004)                  | External fault 2  | Check external devices for faults.<br>Check parameter 3004 EXTERNAL FAULT 2 setting.   |
| 0016 | EARTH FAULT<br>(2330)<br>0305 bit 15<br>(programmable fault function 3017)                  | Drive has detected earth (ground) fault in motor or motor cable.  | Check motor.<br>Check motor cable. Motor cable length must not exceed maximum specifications. See section <i>Motor connection data</i> on page 348.<br><b>Note:</b> Disabling earth fault (ground fault) may void the warranty.  |



| CODE | FAULT  | CAUSE  | WHAT TO DO   |
|------|--|--|--|
| 0018 | THERM FAIL<br>(5210)<br>0306 bit 1   | Drive internal fault.<br>Thermistor used for<br>drive internal<br>temperature<br>measurement is open<br>or short circuited.  | Contact your local ABB<br>representative.  |
| 0021 | CURR MEAS<br>(2211)<br>0306 bit 4  | Drive internal fault.<br>Current measurement<br>is out of range.   | Contact your local ABB<br>representative.  |
| 0022 | SUPPLY PHASE<br>(3130)<br>0306 bit 5   | Intermediate circuit DC<br>voltage is oscillating<br>due to missing input<br>power line phase or<br>blown fuse.<br><br>Trip occurs when DC<br>voltage ripple exceeds<br>14% of nominal DC<br>voltage.                    | Check input power line fuses.<br>Check for input power supply<br>imbalance.<br>Check fault function parameters.  |
| 0024 | OVERSPEED<br>(7310)<br>0306 bit 7  | Motor is turning faster<br>than highest allowed<br>speed due to<br>incorrectly set<br>minimum/maximum<br>speed.<br><br>Operating range limits<br>are set by parameters<br>2007 MINIMUM FREQ<br>and 2008 MAXIMUM<br>FREQ. | Check minimum/maximum frequency<br>settings.<br>Check adequacy of motor braking<br>torque.   |
| 0026 | DRIVE ID<br>(5400)<br>0306 bit 9   | Internal drive ID fault  | Contact your local ABB<br>representative.  |
| 0027 | CONFIG FILE<br>(630F)<br>0306 bit 10   | Internal configuration<br>file error   | Contact your local ABB<br>representative.  |
| 0028 | SERIAL 1 ERR<br>(7510)<br>0306 bit 11<br>(programmable fault<br>function 3018, 3019) | Fieldbus<br>communication break  | Check status of fieldbus<br>communication. See chapter <i>Fieldbus<br/>control with the embedded fieldbus</i> on<br>page 287.<br>Check fault function parameter<br>settings.<br>Check connections.<br>Check if master can communicate. |
| 0029 | EFB CON FILE<br>(6306)<br>0306 bit 12  | Configuration file<br>reading error  | Contact your local ABB<br>representative.  |
| 0030 | FORCE TRIP<br>(FF90)<br>0306 bit 13  | Trip command<br>received from fieldbus   | See appropriate communication<br>module manual.  |

| CODE | FAULT  | CAUSE  | WHAT TO DO  |
|------|--|--|---|
| 0031 | EFB 1<br>(FF92)<br>0307 bit 0  | Error from the embedded fieldbus (EFB) protocol application. The meaning is protocol dependent.  | See chapter <i>Fieldbus control with the embedded fieldbus</i> on page 287.   |
| 0032 | EFB 2<br>(FF93)<br>0307 bit 1  |  |   |
| 0033 | EFB 3<br>(FF94)<br>0307 bit 2  |  |   |
| 0034 | MOTOR PHASE<br>(FF56)<br>0306 bit 4  | Motor circuit fault due to missing motor phase or motor thermistor relay (used in motor temperature measurement) fault.  | Check motor and motor cable.<br>Check motor thermistor relay (if used).   |
| 0035 | OUTP WIRING<br>(FF95)<br>0306 bit 15<br>(programmable fault function 3023) | Incorrect input power and motor cable connection (ie, input power cable is connected to drive motor connection).<br><br>The fault can be erroneously declared if the drive is faulty or the input power is a delta grounded system and the motor cable capacitance is large. | Check input power connections.  |
| 0036 | INCOMPATIBLE SW<br>(630F)<br>0307 bit 3                                    | Loaded software is not compatible.   | Contact your local ABB representative.  |
| 0038 | USER LOAD CURVE<br>(FF6B)<br>0307 bit 4                                    | Condition defined by 3701 USER LOAD C MODE has been valid longer than the time set by 3703 USER LOAD C TIME.   | See parameter group 37 USER LOAD CURVE.   |
| 0039 | UNKNOWN EXTENSION<br>(7086)<br>0307 bit 5                                  | Option module not supported by the drive firmware is connected to the drive.   | Check connections.  |
| 0040 | INLET VERY LOW<br>(8A81)<br>0307 bit 6                                     | Pressure at pump/fan inlet too low   | Check for a closed valve on the inlet side of the pump/fan.<br>Check piping for leaks.<br>See parameter group 44 PUMP PROTECTION. |
| 0041 | OUTLET VERY HIGH<br>(8A83)<br>0307 bit 7                                   | Pressure at pump/fan outlet too high   | Check piping for blocks.<br>See parameter group 44 PUMP PROTECTION.   |

| CODE | FAULT                                    | CAUSE                                       | WHAT TO DO  |
|------|--|---|---|
| 0042 | INLET LOW<br>(8A80)<br>0307 bit 8        | Pressure at pump/fan inlet too low          | Check for a closed valve on the inlet side of the pump/fan.<br>Check piping for leaks.<br>See parameter group <b>44 PUMP PROTECTION</b> .   |
| 0043 | OUTLET HIGH<br>(8A82)<br>0307 bit 9      | Pressure at pump/fan outlet too high        | Check piping for blocks.<br>See parameter group <b>44 PUMP PROTECTION</b> .   |
| 0101 | SERF CORRUPT<br>(FF55)<br>0307 bit 14    | Drive internal error                        | Write down fault code and contact your local ABB representative.  |
| 0103 | SERF MACRO<br>(FF55)<br>0307 bit 14      |   |   |
| 0201 | DSP T1 OVERLOAD<br>(6100)<br>0307 bit 13 |   |   |
| 0202 | DSP T2 OVERLOAD<br>(6100)<br>0307 bit 13 |   |   |
| 0203 | DSP T3 OVERLOAD<br>(6100)<br>0307 bit 13 |   |   |
| 0204 | DSP STACK ERROR<br>(6100)<br>0307 bit 12 |   |   |
| 0206 | CB ID ERROR<br>(5000)<br>0307 bit 11     |   |   |
| 1000 | PAR HZRPM<br>(6320)<br>0307 bit 15       | Incorrect frequency limit parameter setting | Check parameter settings. Check that following applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>2007 MINIMUM FREQ</b> &lt; <b>2008 MAXIMUM FREQ</b></li> <li>• <b>2007 MINIMUM FREQ / 9907 MOTOR NOM FREQ</b> and <b>2008 MAXIMUM FREQ / 9907 MOTOR NOM FREQ</b> are within range.</li> </ul> |
| 1001 | PAR PFC REF NEG<br>(6320)<br>0307 bit 15 | Incorrect PFC parameters                    | Check parameter group <b>81 PFC CONTROL</b> settings. Check that following applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>2007 MINIMUM FREQ</b> &gt; 0 when <b>8123</b> is <b>ACTIVE</b> or <b>SPFC ACTIVE</b>.</li> </ul>  |

| CODE | FAULT  | CAUSE  | WHAT TO DO   |
|------|--|--|--|
| 1003 | PAR AI SCALE<br>(6320)<br>0307 bit 15            | Incorrect analog input<br>AI signal scaling  | Check parameter group <b>13 ANALOG INPUTS</b> settings. Check that following applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>1301 MINIMUM AI1</b> &lt; <b>1302 MAXIMUM AI1</b></li> <li>• <b>1304 MINIMUM AI2</b> &lt; <b>1305 MAXIMUM AI2</b>.</li> </ul>  |
| 1004 | PAR AO SCALE<br>(6320)<br>0307 bit 15            | Incorrect analog output<br>AO signal scaling   | Check parameter group <b>15 ANALOG OUTPUTS</b> settings. Check that following applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>1504 MINIMUM AO1</b> &lt; <b>1505 MAXIMUM AO1</b>.</li> </ul>   |
| 1006 | PAR EXT RO<br>(6320)<br>0307 bit 15              | Incorrect extension<br>relay output<br>parameters  | Check parameter settings. Check that following applies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MREL relay output extension module is connected to the drive.</li> <li>• <b>1402...1403 RELAY OUTPUT 2 ... RELAY OUTPUT 3</b> and <b>1410 RELAY OUTPUT 4</b> have non-zero values.</li> </ul> <p>See <i>MREL-01 relay output extension module user's manual</i> (3AUA0000035974 [English]).</p> |
| 1012 | PAR PFC IO 1<br>(6320)<br>0307 bit 15            | I/O configuration for<br>PFC not complete  | Check parameter settings. Following must apply: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• There are enough relays parameterized for PFC.</li> <li>• No conflict exists between parameter group <b>14 RELAY OUTPUTS</b>, parameter <b>8117 NR OF AUX MOT</b> and parameter <b>8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV</b>.</li> </ul>   |
| 1013 | PAR PFC IO 2<br>(6320)<br>0307 bit 15            | I/O configuration for<br>PFC not complete  | Check parameter settings. Following must apply: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The actual number of PFC motors (parameter <b>8127 MOTORS</b>) matches the PFC motors in parameter group <b>14 RELAY OUTPUTS</b> and parameter <b>8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV</b>.</li> </ul>  |
| 1014 | PAR PFC IO 3<br>(6320)<br>0307 bit 15            | I/O configuration for<br>PFC not complete.<br>The drive is unable to<br>allocate a digital input<br>(interlock) for each<br>PFC motor. | See parameters <b>8120 INTERLOCKS</b> and <b>8127 MOTORS</b> .   |
| 1015 | PAR USER<br>DEFINED U/F<br>(6320)<br>0307 bit 15 | Incorrect voltage to<br>frequency<br>(U/f) ratio voltage<br>setting.   | Check parameter <b>2610 USER DEFINED U1...2617 USER DEFINED F4</b> settings.   |

| CODE | FAULT                                 | CAUSE   | WHAT TO DO   |
|------|---------------------------------------|---|--|
| 1016 | PAR USER LOAD C (6320)<br>0307 bit 15 | Incorrect user load curve parameter setting   | Check parameter settings. Following must apply: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 3704 LOAD FREQ 1 &lt;</li><li>• 3707 LOAD FREQ 2 &lt;</li><li>• 3710 LOAD FREQ 3 &lt;</li><li>• 3713 LOAD FREQ 4 &lt;</li><li>• 3716 LOAD FREQ 5 &lt;</li><li>• 3705 LOAD TORQ LOW 1 &lt;</li><li>• 3706 LOAD TORQ HIGH 1 &lt;</li><li>• 3708 LOAD TORQ LOW 2 &lt;</li><li>• 3709 LOAD TORQ HIGH 2 &lt;</li><li>• 3711 LOAD TORQ LOW 3 &lt;</li><li>• 3712 LOAD TORQ HIGH 3 &lt;</li><li>• 3714 LOAD TORQ LOW 4 &lt;</li><li>• 3715 LOAD TORQ HIGH 4 &lt;</li><li>• 3717 LOAD TORQ LOW 5 &lt;</li><li>• 3718 LOAD TORQ HIGH 5 &lt;</li></ul> |
| 1017 | PAR SETUP 1 (6320)<br>0307 bit 15     | It is not allowed to use frequency input signal and frequency output signal simultaneously. | Disable frequency output or frequency input: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• change transistor output to digital mode (value of parameter 1804 TO MODE = DIGITAL), or</li><li>• change frequency input selection to other value in parameter groups 11 REFERENCE SELECT, 40 PROCESS PID SET 1, 41 PROCESS PID SET 2 and 42 EXT / TRIM PID.</li></ul>   |

## Embedded fieldbus faults

Embedded fieldbus faults can be traced by monitoring group *53 EFB PROTOCOL* parameters. See also fault/alarm *SERIAL 1 ERR*.

### ■ No master device

If there is no master device on line, parameter *5306 EFB OK MESSAGES* and *5307 EFB CRC ERRORS* values remain unchanged.

What to do:

- Check that the network master is connected and properly configured.
- Check the cable connection.

### ■ Same device address

If two or more devices have the same address, parameter *5307 EFB CRC ERRORS* value increases with every read/write command.

What to do:

- Check the device addresses. No two devices on line may have the same address.

### ■ Incorrect wiring

If the communication wires are swapped (terminal A on one device is connected to terminal B on another device), parameter *5306 EFB OK MESSAGES* value remains unchanged and parameter *5307 EFB CRC ERRORS* increases.

What to do:

- Check the EIA-485/RS-232 interface connection.
-

www.nicsanat.com

021-87700210

NIC SANAT

نیک صنعت



,

# 15

## Maintenance and hardware diagnostics

---

### What this chapter contains

The chapter contains preventive maintenance instructions and LED indicator descriptions.

### Maintenance intervals

If installed in an appropriate environment, the drive requires very little maintenance. The table lists the routine maintenance intervals recommended by ABB.

| Maintenance   | Interval               | Instruction   |
|---|------------------------|---|
| Reforming of capacitors                                   | Every year when stored | See <i>Capacitors</i> on page 331.  |
| Check of dustiness, corrosion and temperature             | Every year             |   |
| Replacement of the cooling fan (frame sizes R1...R4)      | Every three years      | See <i>Cooling fan</i> on page 330.   |
| Check and tightening of the power terminals               | Every six years        | See <i>Power connections</i> on page 332.                                   |
| Replacement of the battery in the Assistant control panel | Every ten years        | See <i>Changing the battery in the Assistant control panel</i> on page 332. |

Consult your local ABB Service representative for more details on the maintenance. On the Internet, go to <http://www.abb.com/drives> and select *Drive Services – Maintenance and Field Services*.

---



## Cooling fan

The life span of the cooling fan depends on the drive usage and ambient temperature. Automatic fan On/Off control increases the life span (see parameter [1612 FAN CONTROL](#)).


When the Assistant control panel is in use, the Notice handler assistant informs when the definable value of the operating hour counter is reached (see parameter [2901 COOLING FAN TRIG](#)). This information can also be passed to the relay output (see group [14 RELAY OUTPUTS](#)) regardless of the used panel type.

Fan failure can be predicted by the increasing noise from the fan bearings. If the drive is operated in a critical part of a process, fan replacement is recommended once these symptoms start appearing. Replacement fans are available from ABB. Do not use other than ABB specified spare parts.

### ■ Replacing the cooling fan (frame sizes R1...R4)

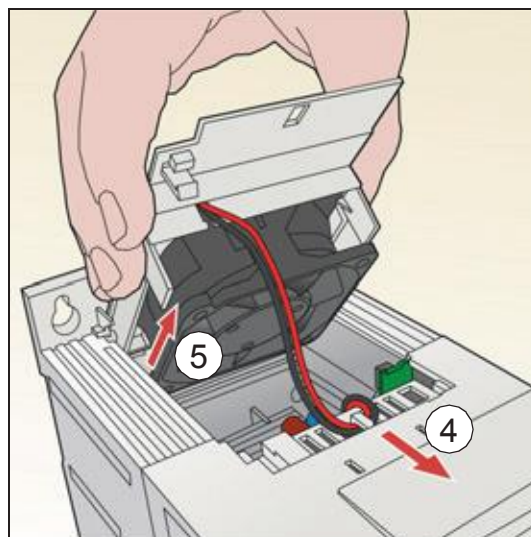
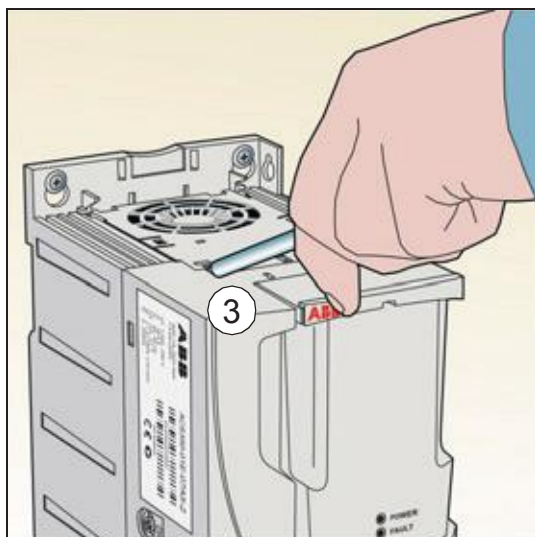
Only frame sizes R1...R4 include a fan; frame size R0 has natural cooling.

---

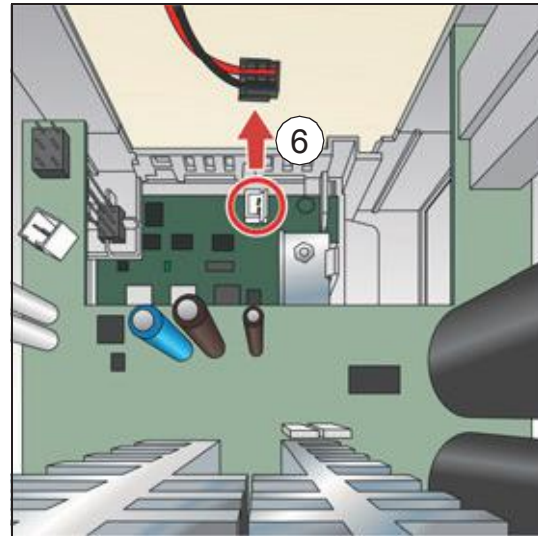
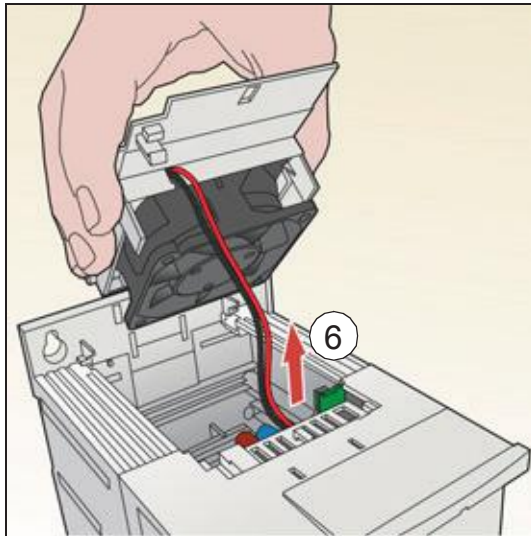
 **WARNING!** Read and follow the instructions in chapter [Safety](#) on page [15](#). Ignoring the instructions can cause physical injury or death, or damage to the equipment.

---

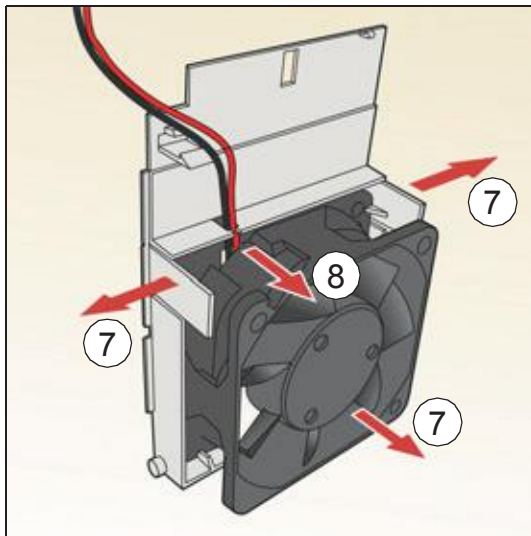
1. Stop the drive and disconnect it from the power line. Wait for five minutes to let the drive DC capacitors discharge. Ensure by measuring with a multimeter (impedance at least 1 Mohm) that there is no voltage present.
2. Remove the hood if the drive has the NEMA 1 option.
3. Lever the fan holder off the drive frame with, for example, a screwdriver.
4. Free the fan cable from the clip in the drive frame.
5. Lift the holder from the hinges.



6. Disconnect the fan cable. The figure below on the right shows the location of the fan cable connector in frame size R2. The inside views in different frame sizes are not identical, but the fan cable connector is always on the control board that is against the front of the drive.



7. Free the fan cable from the clip in the fan holder.
8. Remove the fan from the holder.



9. Install the new fan in reverse order.
10. Restore power.

## Capacitors

### ■ Reforming the capacitors

The capacitors must be reformed if the drive has been stored for a year. See section [Type designation label](#) on page 26 for how to find out the manufacturing time from the serial number. For information on reforming the capacitors, refer to *Guide for capacitor reforming in ACS50, ACS55, ACS150, ACS310, ACS350, ACS355,*

ACS550 and ACH550 (3AFE68735190 [English]), available on the Internet (go to <http://www.abb.com> and enter the code in the Search field).

## Power connections

---



**WARNING!** Read and follow the instructions in chapter *Safety* on page 15. Ignoring the instructions can cause physical injury or death, or damage to the equipment.

---

1. Stop the drive and disconnect it from the power line. Wait for five minutes to let the drive DC capacitors discharge. Ensure by measuring with a multimeter (impedance at least 1 Mohm) that there is no voltage present.
2. Check the tightness of the power cable connections. Use the tightening torques given in section *Terminal and lead-through data for the power cables* on page 346.
3. Restore power.

## Control panel

### ■ Cleaning the control panel

Use a soft damp cloth to clean the control panel. Avoid harsh cleaners which could scratch the display window.

### ■ Changing the battery in the Assistant control panel

A battery is only used in Assistant control panels that have the clock function available and enabled. The battery keeps the clock operating in memory during power interruptions.

The expected life for the battery is greater than ten years. To remove the battery, use a coin to rotate the battery holder on the back of the control panel. Replace the battery with type CR2032.

**Note:** The battery is NOT required for any control panel or drive functions, except the clock.

---

## LEDs

There is a green and a red LED on the front of the drive. They are visible through the panel cover but invisible if a control panel is attached to the drive. The Assistant control panel has one LED. The table below describes the LED indications.

| Where   | LED off                                    | LED lit and steady |   | LED blinking |   |
|---|--|--------------------|---|--------------|---|
| On the front of the drive.<br>If a control panel is attached to the drive, switch to remote control (otherwise a fault is generated), and then remove the panel to be able to see the LEDs. | No power                                   | Green              | Power supply on the board OK  | Green        | Drive in an alarm state   |
|   |  | Red                | Drive in a fault state. To reset the fault, press RESET from the control panel or switch off the drive power. | Red          | Drive in a fault state. To reset the fault, switch off the drive power. |
| At the top left corner of the Assistant control panel   | Panel has no power or no drive connection. | Green              | Drive in a normal state   | Green        | Drive in an alarm state   |
|   |  | Red                | Drive in a fault state. To reset the fault, press RESET from the control panel or switch off the drive power. | Red          | -   |

www.nicsanat.com

021-87700210

NIC SANAT

نیک صنعت



۰



# Technical data

---

## What this chapter contains

The chapter contains the technical specifications of the drive, for example, the ratings, sizes and technical requirements as well as provisions for fulfilling the requirements for CE and other marks.

## Ratings

**Note:** When choke is not used, input current is effected by supply network and impedance.

Use the table in *Fuses and alternate short-circuit protection* (page 340) to correctly size the input cabling as well as input fuses or MMP for branch circuit protection. Sizing will be determined by the actual input current which is dependent on the input line voltage and the input choke selection and rated motor current. If motor rated current is below  $I_{2N}$ ,  $I_{1N}$  is reduced relatively.

| Type   | Input without choke or reactor |                  | Input with choke or 5% reactor |                  | Output   |          |            |       |      | Frame size |
|--|--------------------------------|------------------|--------------------------------|------------------|----------|----------|------------|-------|------|------------|
|  | $I_{1N}$                       | $I_{1N}$ (480 V) | $I_{1N}$                       | $I_{1N}$ (480 V) | $I_{LD}$ | $I_{2N}$ | $I_{2max}$ | $P_N$ |      |            |
| $x = E/U$ <sup>1)</sup>  | A                              | A                | A                              | A                | A        | A        | A          | kW    | hp   |            |
| <b>1-phase <math>U_N = 200...240</math> V (200, 208, 220, 230, 240 V)</b>      |                                |                  |                                |                  |          |          |            |       |      |            |
| 01x-02A4-2   | 6.1                            | -                | 4.5                            | -                | 2.3      | 2.4      | 4.0        | 0.37  | 0.5  | R0         |
| 01x-04A7-2   | 11.4                           | -                | 8.1                            | -                | 4.5      | 4.7      | 7.9        | 0.75  | 1    | R1         |
| 01x-06A7-2   | 16.1                           | -                | 11.0                           | -                | 6.5      | 6.7      | 11.4       | 1.1   | 1.5  | R1         |
| 01x-07A5-2   | 16.8                           | -                | 12.0                           | -                | 7.2      | 7.5      | 12.6       | 1.5   | 2    | R2         |
| 01x-09A8-2   | 21.0                           | -                | 15.0                           | -                | 9.4      | 9.8      | 16.5       | 2.2   | 3    | R2         |
| <b>3-phase <math>U_N = 200...240</math> V (200, 208, 220, 230, 240 V)</b>      |                                |                  |                                |                  |          |          |            |       |      |            |
| 03x-02A6-2   | 4.7                            | -                | 2.6                            | -                | 2.4      | 2.6      | 4.2        | 0.37  | 0.5  | R0         |
| 03x-03A9-2   | 6.7                            | -                | 3.6                            | -                | 3.5      | 3.9      | 6.1        | 0.55  | 0.75 | R0         |
| 03x-05A2-2   | 8.4                            | -                | 4.8                            | -                | 4.7      | 5.2      | 8.2        | 0.75  | 1    | R1         |
| 03x-07A4-2   | 13.0                           | -                | 7.2                            | -                | 6.7      | 7.4      | 11.7       | 1.1   | 1.5  | R1         |
| 03x-08A3-2   | 13.2                           | -                | 8.2                            | -                | 7.5      | 8.3      | 13.1       | 1.5   | 2    | R1         |
| 03x-10A8-2   | 15.7                           | -                | 11.0                           | -                | 9.8      | 10.8     | 17.2       | 2.2   | 3    | R2         |
| 03x-14A6-2   | 23.9                           | -                | 14.0                           | -                | 13.3     | 14.6     | 23.3       | 3     | 3    | R2         |
| 03x-19A4-2   | 27.3                           | -                | 18.0                           | -                | 17.6     | 19.4     | 30.8       | 4     | 5    | R2         |
| 03x-26A8-2   | 45.0                           | -                | 27.0                           | -                | 24.4     | 26.8     | 42.7       | 5.5   | 7.5  | R3         |
| 03x-34A1-2   | 55.0                           | -                | 34.0                           | -                | 31.0     | 34.1     | 54.3       | 7.5   | 10   | R4         |
| 03x-50A8-2   | 76.0                           | -                | 47.0                           | -                | 46.2     | 50.8     | 80.9       | 11.0  | 15   | R4         |
| <b>3-phase <math>U_N = 380...480</math> V (380, 400, 415, 440, 460, 480 V)</b> |                                |                  |                                |                  |          |          |            |       |      |            |
| 03x-01A3-4   | 2.4                            | 2.0              | 1.3                            | 1.1              | 1.2      | 1.3      | 2.1        | 0.37  | 0.5  | R0         |
| 03x-02A1-4   | 4.0                            | 3.3              | 2.0                            | 1.7              | 1.9      | 2.1      | 3.3        | 0.55  | 0.75 | R0         |
| 03x-02A6-4   | 4.5                            | 3.8              | 2.5                            | 2.1              | 2.4      | 2.6      | 4.2        | 0.75  | 1    | R1         |
| 03x-03A6-4   | 6.6                            | 5.5              | 3.5                            | 2.9              | 3.3      | 3.6      | 5.8        | 1.1   | 1.5  | R1         |
| 03x-04A5-4   | 7.6                            | 6.3              | 3.8                            | 3.2              | 4.1      | 4.5      | 7.2        | 1.5   | 2    | R1         |
| 03x-06A2-4   | 10.6                           | 8.8              | 5.3                            | 4.4              | 5.6      | 6.2      | 9.8        | 2.2   | 3    | R1         |
| 03x-08A0-4   | 12.8                           | 10.7             | 6.8                            | 5.7              | 7.3      | 8.0      | 12.8       | 3     | 3    | R1         |
| 03x-09A7-4   | 15.0                           | 12.5             | 8.6                            | 7.2              | 8.8      | 9.7      | 15.4       | 4     | 5    | R1         |
| 03x-13A8-4   | 20.7                           | 17.2             | 12.3                           | 10.3             | 12.5     | 13.8     | 21.9       | 5.5   | 7.5  | R3         |

| Type                    | Input without choke or reactor |                  | Input with choke or 5% reactor |                  | Output   |          |            |       |    | Frame size |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------|--------------------------------|------------------|----------|----------|------------|-------|----|------------|
|                         | $I_{1N}$                       | $I_{1N}$ (480 V) | $I_{1N}$                       | $I_{1N}$ (480 V) | $I_{LD}$ | $I_{2N}$ | $I_{2max}$ | $P_N$ |    |            |
| $x = E/U$ <sup>1)</sup> | A                              | A                | A                              | A                | A        | A        | A          | kW    | hp |            |
| 03x-17A2-4              | 24.3                           | 20.3             | 13.0                           | 10.8             | 15.6     | 17.2     | 27.3       | 7.5   | 10 | R3         |
| 03x-25A4-4              | 34.0                           | 28.3             | 20.0                           | 16.7             | 23.1     | 25.4     | 40.4       | 11    | 15 | R3         |
| 03x-34A1-4              | 57.2                           | 47.7             | 27.0                           | 22.5             | 31.0     | 34.1     | 54.3       | 15    | 20 | R4         |
| 03x-41A8-4              | 67.1                           | 55.9             | 34.9                           | 29.1             | 38.0     | 41.8     | 66.5       | 18.5  | 25 | R4         |
| 03x-48A4-4              | 73.7                           | 61.4             | 41.6                           | 34.7             | 44.0     | 48.4     | 77.0       | 22.0  | 30 | R4         |

<sup>1)</sup> E = EMC filter connected (metal EMC filter screw installed),

U = EMC filter disconnected (plastic EMC filter screw installed), U.S. parameterization.

00578903.xls J

## Definitions

Input

$I_{1N}$  continuous rms input current (for dimensioning cables, fuses, or MMPs) with  $I_{2N}$  motor current at rated speed and power. If motor rated current is below  $I_{2N}$ ,  $I_{1N}$  is reduced relatively.

$I_{1N}$  (480 V) continuous rms input current (for dimensioning cables, fuses, or MMPs) for drives with 480 V with  $I_{2N}$  motor current at rated speed and power. If motor rated current is below  $I_{2N}$ ,  $I_{1N}$  is reduced relatively.

Output

$I_{LD}$  continuous output current at max ambient temperature of +50 °C. 10% overloadability for one minute every ten minutes.

$I_{2N}$  maximum continuous output current at ambient temperature of +40 °C. No overloadability, derating 1% for every additional 1 °C up to 50 °C.

$I_{2max}$  maximum instantaneous output current. Available for two seconds every ten minutes at start-up, or as long as allowed by the drive temperature.

$P_N$  typical motor power. The kilowatt ratings apply to most IEC 4-pole motors. The horsepower ratings apply to most NEMA 4-pole motors. Drive should be selected based on motor current relative to loading capacity ( $I_{LD}$  or  $I_{2N}$ ).

**R0...R4** ACS310 is manufactured in frame sizes R0...R4. Some instructions and other information that only concern certain frame sizes are marked with the symbol of the frame size (R0...R4).



## ■ Sizing

Drive sizing is based on the rated motor current and power. To achieve the rated motor power given in the table, the rated current of the drive must be higher than or equal to the rated motor current. The rated power of the drive must also be higher than or equal to compared to the rated motor power. The power ratings are the same regardless of the supply voltage within one voltage range.

In multimotor systems, the drive output current rating  $I_{LD}$  must be equal to or greater than the calculated sum of the input currents of all motors.

### Note:

- The maximum allowed motor shaft power is limited to  $1.5 \cdot P_N$ . If the limit is exceeded, motor torque and current are automatically restricted. The function protects the input bridge of the drive against overload.
- The ratings apply at ambient temperature of 40 °C (104 °F) for  $I_{2N}$  and 50 °C (122 °F) for  $I_{LD}$ .

## ■ Derating

**$I_{2N}$ :** The load capacity decreases if the installation site ambient temperature exceeds 40 °C (104 °F) or if the altitude exceeds 1000 meters (3300 ft) or the switching frequency is changed from 4 kHz to 8, 12 or 16 kHz.

**$I_{LD}$ :** The load capacity decreases if the altitude exceeds 1000 meters (3300 ft) or the switching frequency is changed from 4 kHz to 8, 12 or 16 kHz.

### Temperature derating, $I_{2N}$

In the temperature range +40 °C...+50 °C (+104 °F...+122 °F), the rated output current ( $I_{2N}$ ) is decreased by 1% for every additional 1 °C (1.8 °F). The output current is calculated by multiplying the current given in the rating table by the derating factor.

**Example:** If the ambient temperature is 50 °C (+122 °F), the derating factor is  $100\% - 1 \frac{\%}{^{\circ}\text{C}} \cdot 10^{\circ}\text{C} = 90\%$  or 0.90. The output current is then  $0.90 \cdot I_{2N}$ .

### Altitude derating, $I_{2N}$ and $I_{LD}$ (= all currents)

In altitudes 1000...2000 m (3300...6600 ft) above sea level, the derating is 1% for every 100 m (330 ft).

### Switching frequency derating, $I_{2N}$ and $I_{LD}$ (= all currents)

Derate according to the switching frequency used (see parameter *2606 SWITCHING FREQ*) as follows:

| Switching frequency | Drive voltage rating                 |   |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------|---|
|                     | $U_N = 200...240$ V                  | $U_N = 380...480$ V   |
| <b>4 kHz</b>        | No derating                          | No derating   |
| <b>8 kHz</b>        | Derate $I_{2N}$ and $I_{LD}$ to 90%. | Derate $I_{2N}$ and $I_{LD}$ to 75% for R0 or to 80% for R1...R4.   |
| <b>12 kHz</b>       | Derate $I_{2N}$ and $I_{LD}$ to 80%. | Derate $I_{2N}$ and $I_{LD}$ to 50% for R0 or to 65% for R1...R4 and derate maximum ambient temperature to 30 °C (86 °F). |
| <b>16 kHz</b>       | Derate $I_{2N}$ and $I_{LD}$ to 75%. | Derate $I_{2N}$ and $I_{LD}$ to 50% and derate maximum ambient temperature to 30 °C (86 °F).                              |

## Fuses and alternate short-circuit protection

### Fuses

The rated fuse currents given in the table are the maximums for the mentioned fuse types. If smaller fuse ratings are used, check that the fuse rms current rating is larger than the rated  $I_{1N}$  current given in section *Ratings* on page 336. If 150% output power is needed, multiply current  $I_{1N}$  by 1.5. See also section *Selecting the power cables* on page 36.

**Check that the operating time of the fuse is below 0.5 seconds.** The operating time depends on the fuse type, the supply network impedance as well as the cross-sectional area, material and length of the supply cable. In case the 0.5 seconds operating time is exceeded with the gG or T fuses, ultra rapid (aR) fuses reduces in most cases the operating time to an acceptable level.

#### Note:

- Do not use larger fuses when the input power cable is selected according to this table.
- Choose the correct fuse size according to the actual input current which depends on the input line voltage and the input choke selection.
- You can use other fuse types if they meet the current rating of the fuse in the table and also if the melting curve of the other fuses does not exceed the melting curve of the fuse in the table.

### Alternate short-circuit protection

In accordance with the National Electrical Code (NEC), the following ABB type E manual motor protectors can be used as an alternate to the recommended fuses as a means of branch circuit protection:

- MS132 and S1-M3-25
- MS451-xxE
- MS495-xxE.

When the correct ABB type E manual motor protector is selected from the table and used for branch circuit protection, the drive is suitable for use in a circuit capable of delivering not more than 65 kA RMS symmetrical amperes at the drive maximum rated voltage. See the appropriate ratings in the following table.

IP20 open type and IP21 UL type 1 ACS310 can use ABB type E manual motor protectors for branch circuit protection. See the MMP rating table for the minimum enclosure volume of IP20 open type ACS310 mounted in an enclosure.

## Fuses and MMPs

| Type  | Fuses |                          |       | MMPs  |          |                                    |                               |                 |
|---|-------|--------------------------|-------|-------|----------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------|
|   | gG    | UL Class T or CC (600 V) |       | Frame | $I_{1N}$ | MMP Type E <sup>3,4)</sup>         | Min. Encl. Vol. <sup>6)</sup> |                 |
| $x = E/U^{1)}$  | A     | min A <sup>2)</sup>      | max A |       | A        |                                    | dm <sup>3</sup>               | in <sup>3</sup> |
| <b>1-phase <math>U_N = 200...240 V</math> (200, 208, 220, 230, 240 V)</b>                                       |       |                          |       |       |          |                                    |                               |                 |
| 01x-02A4-2  | 10    | 6                        | 10    | R0    | 6.1      | MS132-6.3 & S1-M3-25 <sup>5)</sup> | 18.9                          | 1152            |
| 01x-04A7-2  | 16    | 10                       | 20    | R1    | 11.4     | MS451-16E                          | 18.9                          | 1152            |
| 01x-06A7-2  | 16    | 15                       | 25    | R1    | 16.1     | MS451-20E                          | 18.9                          | 1152            |
| 01x-07A5-2  | 20    | 15                       | 30    | R2    | 16.8     | MS451-20E                          | -                             | -               |
| 01x-09A8-2  | 25    | 15                       | 35    | R2    | 21.0     | MS451-25E                          | -                             | -               |
| <b>3-phase <math>U_N = 200...240 V</math> (200, 208, 220, 230, 240 V)</b>                                       |       |                          |       |       |          |                                    |                               |                 |
| 03x-02A6-2  | 10    | 3                        | 10    | R0    | 4.7      | MS132-6.3 & S1-M3-25 <sup>5)</sup> | 18.9                          | 1152            |
| 03x-03A9-2  | 10    | 6                        | 10    | R0    | 6.7      | MS132-10 & S1-M3-25 <sup>5)</sup>  | 18.9                          | 1152            |
| 03x-05A2-2  | 10    | 6                        | 15    | R1    | 8.4      | MS132-10 & S1-M3-25 <sup>5)</sup>  | 18.9                          | 1152            |
| 03x-07A4-2  | 16    | 10                       | 15    | R1    | 13.0     | MS451-16E                          | 18.9                          | 1152            |
| 03x-08A3-2  | 16    | 10                       | 15    | R1    | 13.2     | MS451-16E                          | 18.9                          | 1152            |
| 03x-10A8-2  | 16    | 15                       | 20    | R2    | 15.7     | MS451-20E                          | -                             | -               |
| 03x-14A6-2  | 25    | 15                       | 30    | R2    | 23.9     | MS451-25E                          | -                             | -               |
| 03x-19A4-2  | 25    | 20                       | 35    | R2    | 27.3     | MS451-32E                          | -                             | -               |
| 03x-26A8-2  | 63    | 30                       | 60    | R3    | 45.0     | MS451-50E                          | -                             | -               |
| 03x-34A1-2  | 80    | 35                       | 80    | R4    | 55.0     | MS495-63E                          | -                             | -               |
| 03x-50A8-2  | 100   | 50                       | 100   | R4    | 76.0     | MS495-90E                          | -                             | -               |
| <b>3-phase <math>U_N = 380...480 V</math> (380, 400, 415, 440, 460, 480 V) (MMP ratings for 480Y/277V only)</b> |       |                          |       |       |          |                                    |                               |                 |
| 03x-01A3-4  | 10    | 2                        | 10    | R0    | 2.0      | MS132-2.5 & S1-M3-25 <sup>5)</sup> | 18.9                          | 1152            |
| 03x-02A1-4  | 10    | 2                        | 10    | R0    | 3.3      | MS132-4.0 & S1-M3-25 <sup>5)</sup> | 18.9                          | 1152            |
| 03x-02A6-4  | 10    | 3                        | 10    | R1    | 3.8      | MS132-6.3 & S1-M3-25 <sup>5)</sup> | 18.9                          | 1152            |
| 03x-03A6-4  | 10    | 3                        | 10    | R1    | 5.5      | MS132-6.3 & S1-M3-25 <sup>5)</sup> | 18.9                          | 1152            |
| 03x-04A5-4  | 16    | 6                        | 15    | R1    | 6.3      | MS132-10 & S1-M3-25 <sup>5)</sup>  | 18.9                          | 1152            |
| 03x-06A2-4  | 16    | 6                        | 15    | R1    | 8.8      | MS132-10 & S1-M3-25 <sup>5)</sup>  | 18.9                          | 1152            |
| 03x-08A0-4  | 16    | 6                        | 20    | R1    | 11.0     | MS451-16E                          | 18.9                          | 1152            |
| 03x-09A7-4  | 20    | 10                       | 25    | R1    | 12.0     | MS451-16E                          | 18.9                          | 1152            |
| 03x-13A8-4  | 25    | 10                       | 30    | R3    | 17.0     | MS451-20E                          | -                             | -               |
| 03x-17A2-4  | 35    | 15                       | 35    | R3    | 20.0     | MS451-25E                          | -                             | -               |
| 03x-25A4-4  | 50    | 20                       | 50    | R3    | 28.0     | MS451-32E                          | -                             | -               |
| 03x-34A1-4  | 80    | 25                       | 80    | R4    | 48.0     | MS451-50E                          | -                             | -               |
| 03x-41A8-4  | 100   | 30                       | 100   | R4    | 56.0     | MS495-63E                          | -                             | -               |
| 03x-48A4-4  | 100   | 35                       | 100   | R4    | 61.0     | MS495-63E                          | -                             | -               |

00578903.xls.J

<sup>1)</sup> E = EMC filter connected (metal EMC filter screw installed),

U = EMC filter disconnected (plastic EMC filter screw installed), U.S parameterization.

<sup>2)</sup> minimum fuse size can be used with input choke according to table in Rating section

<sup>3)</sup> All manual motor protections listed are type E self-protected up to 65kA.

See ABB publication AC1010 for complete technical data on ABB type E manual motor protectors

<sup>4)</sup> Manual motor protectors may require adjusting the trip limit from the factory setting at or above the drive input. Amps to avoid nuisance tripping. If the manual motor protector is set to the maximum current trip level and nuisance tripping is occurring, then select the next size MMP. (MS132-10 is the highest size in MS132 frame size to meet type E at 65kA, the next size up is the MS451-16E)

5) Requires the use of S1-M3-25 line side feeder terminal with the manual motor protector to meet type E self protection class.

6) For all drives, the enclosure must be sized to accommodate the specific thermal considerations of the applications as well as provide free space for cooling. See section, *Free space requirements* on page 344.

For UL only: The minimum enclosure volume is specified in the UL listing for drive frames R0 and R1 when applied with the ABB type E MMP shown in the table. ACS310 drives are intended to be mounted in an enclosure unless a NEMA 1 kit is added.

For ratings marked with \*-\* the minimum size is determined by the thermal requirements of the drive and any other equipment in the enclosure.

## ■ Size of copper conductor in cablings

Cable dimensioning for rated currents ( $I_{1N}$ ) is shown in the table below.

| Type   | Size of copper conductor in cablings |     |                       |     |                 |     |
|--|--------------------------------------|-----|-----------------------|-----|-----------------|-----|
|  | Supply<br>(U1, V1, W1)               |     | Motor<br>(U2, V2, W2) |     | PE              |     |
| x = E/U <sup>1)</sup>  | mm <sup>2</sup>                      | AWG | mm <sup>2</sup>       | AWG | mm <sup>2</sup> | AWG |
| <b>1-phase <math>U_N = 200...240</math> V (200, 208, 220, 230, 240 V)</b>      |                                      |     |                       |     |                 |     |
| 01x-02A4-2   | 2.5                                  | 14  | 0.75                  | 18  | 2.5             | 14  |
| 01x-04A7-2   | 2.5                                  | 14  | 0.75                  | 18  | 2.5             | 14  |
| 01x-06A7-2   | 2.5                                  | 10  | 1.5                   | 14  | 2.5             | 10  |
| 01x-07A5-2   | 2.5                                  | 10  | 1.5                   | 14  | 2.5             | 10  |
| 01x-09A8-2   | 6                                    | 10  | 2.5                   | 12  | 6               | 10  |
| <b>3-phase <math>U_N = 200...240</math> V (200, 208, 220, 230, 240 V)</b>      |                                      |     |                       |     |                 |     |
| 03x-02A6-2   | 2.5                                  | 14  | 1.5                   | 14  | 2.5             | 14  |
| 03x-03A9-2   | 2.5                                  | 14  | 1.5                   | 14  | 2.5             | 14  |
| 03x-05A2-2   | 2.5                                  | 14  | 1.5                   | 14  | 2.5             | 14  |
| 03x-07A4-2   | 2.5                                  | 12  | 1.5                   | 14  | 2.5             | 12  |
| 03x-08A3-2   | 2.5                                  | 12  | 1.5                   | 14  | 2.5             | 12  |
| 03x-10A8-2   | 2.5                                  | 12  | 2.5                   | 12  | 2.5             | 12  |
| 03x-14A6-2   | 6.0                                  | 10  | 6                     | 10  | 6.0             | 10  |
| 03x-19A4-2   | 6.0                                  | 10  | 6                     | 10  | 6.0             | 10  |
| 03x-26A8-2   | 10.0                                 | 8   | 10                    | 8   | 10.0            | 8   |
| 03x-34A1-2   | 16.0                                 | 6   | 16                    | 6   | 16.0            | 6   |
| 03x-50A8-2   | 25.0                                 | 2   | 25                    | 2   | 16.0            | 4   |
| <b>3-phase <math>U_N = 380...480</math> V (380, 400, 415, 440, 460, 480 V)</b> |                                      |     |                       |     |                 |     |
| 03x-01A3-4   | 2.5                                  | 14  | 1.5                   | 14  | 2.5             | 14  |
| 03x-02A1-4   | 2.5                                  | 14  | 1.5                   | 14  | 2.5             | 14  |
| 03x-02A6-4   | 2.5                                  | 14  | 1.5                   | 14  | 2.5             | 14  |
| 03x-03A6-4   | 2.5                                  | 12  | 1.5                   | 14  | 2.5             | 12  |
| 03x-04A5-4   | 2.5                                  | 12  | 1.5                   | 14  | 2.5             | 12  |
| 03x-06A2-4   | 2.5                                  | 12  | 1.5                   | 14  | 2.5             | 12  |
| 03x-08A0-4   | 2.5                                  | 12  | 1.5                   | 14  | 2.5             | 12  |
| 03x-09A7-4   | 2.5                                  | 12  | 2.5                   | 12  | 2.5             | 12  |
| 03x-13A8-4   | 6.0                                  | 10  | 6                     | 10  | 6.0             | 10  |
| 03x-17A2-4   | 6.0                                  | 8   | 6                     | 8   | 6.0             | 8   |
| 03x-25A4-4   | 10.0                                 | 8   | 10                    | 8   | 10.0            | 8   |

| Type       | Size of copper conductor in cablings |                 |                    |                 |      |                 |
|------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------|------|-----------------|
|            | Supply (U1, V1, W1)                  |                 | Motor (U2, V2, W2) |                 | PE   |                 |
|            | x = E/U <sup>1)</sup>                | mm <sup>2</sup> | AWG                | mm <sup>2</sup> | AWG  | mm <sup>2</sup> |
| 03x-34A1-4 | 16.0                                 | 6               | 16                 | 6               | 16.0 | 6               |
| 03x-41A8-4 | 25.0                                 | 4               | 16                 | 4               | 16.0 | 4               |
| 03x-48A4-4 | 25.0                                 | 4               | 25                 | 4               | 16.0 | 4               |

<sup>1)</sup> E = EMC filter connected (metal EMC filter screw installed),

U = EMC filter disconnected (plastic EMC filter screw installed), U.S parameterization.

## Dimensions, weights and free space requirements

### ■ Dimensions and weights

| Frame size | Dimensions and weights   |      |     |      |     |      |     |       |     |      |        |      |
|------------|--------------------------|------|-----|------|-----|------|-----|-------|-----|------|--------|------|
|            | IP20 (cabinet) / UL open |      |     |      |     |      |     |       |     |      |        |      |
|            | H1                       |      | H2  |      | H3  |      | W   |       | D   |      | Weight |      |
|            | mm                       | in   | mm  | in   | mm  | in   | mm  | in    | mm  | in   | kg     | lb   |
| R0         | 169                      | 6.65 | 202 | 7.95 | 239 | 9.41 | 70  | 2.76  | 161 | 6.34 | 1.2    | 2.6  |
| R1         | 169                      | 6.65 | 202 | 7.95 | 239 | 9.41 | 70  | 2.76  | 161 | 6.34 | 1.4    | 3.1  |
| R2         | 169                      | 6.65 | 202 | 7.95 | 239 | 9.41 | 105 | 4.13  | 165 | 6.50 | 1.8    | 4.0  |
| R3         | 169                      | 6.65 | 202 | 7.95 | 236 | 9.29 | 169 | 6.65  | 169 | 6.65 | 2.9    | 6.4  |
| R4         | 181                      | 7.13 | 202 | 7.95 | 244 | 9.61 | 260 | 10.24 | 169 | 6.65 | 5.1    | 11.2 |

00578903.xls G

| Frame size | Dimensions and weights |       |     |       |     |       |     |      |        |      |
|------------|------------------------|-------|-----|-------|-----|-------|-----|------|--------|------|
|            | IP20 / NEMA 1          |       |     |       |     |       |     |      |        |      |
|            | H4                     |       | H5  |       | W   |       | D   |      | Weight |      |
|            | mm                     | in    | mm  | in    | mm  | in    | mm  | in   | kg     | lb   |
| R0         | 257                    | 10.12 | 280 | 11.02 | 70  | 2.76  | 169 | 6.65 | 1.6    | 3.5  |
| R1         | 257                    | 10.12 | 280 | 11.02 | 70  | 2.76  | 169 | 6.65 | 1.8    | 4.0  |
| R2         | 257                    | 10.12 | 282 | 11.10 | 105 | 4.13  | 169 | 6.65 | 2.2    | 4.9  |
| R3         | 260                    | 10.24 | 299 | 11.77 | 169 | 6.65  | 177 | 6.97 | 3.5    | 7.7  |
| R4         | 270                    | 10.63 | 320 | 12.60 | 260 | 10.24 | 177 | 6.97 | 5.7    | 12.6 |

00578903.xls G

### Symbols

#### IP20 (cabinet) / UL open

**H1** height without fastenings and clamping plate

**H2** height with fastenings, without clamping plate

**H3** height with fastenings and clamping plate

#### IP20 / NEMA 1

**H4** height with fastenings and connection box

**H5** height with fastenings, connection box and hood



## Free space requirements

| Frame size | Free space required |    |       |    |              |    |
|------------|---------------------|----|-------|----|--------------|----|
|            | Above               |    | Below |    | On the sides |    |
|            | mm                  | in | mm    | in | mm           | in |
| R0...R4    | 75                  | 3  | 75    | 3  | 0            | 0  |

00578903.xls G

## Losses, cooling data and noise

### Losses and cooling data

Frame size R0 has natural convection cooling. Frame sizes R1...R4 are provided with an internal fan. The air flow direction is from bottom to top.

The table below specifies the heat dissipation in the main circuit at nominal load and in the control circuit with minimum load (I/O and panel not in use) and maximum load (all digital inputs in the on state and the panel, fieldbus and fan in use). The total heat dissipation is the sum of the heat dissipation in the main and control circuits.

| Type   | Heat dissipation |      |                 |     |        |     | Air flow          |                      |
|--|------------------|------|-----------------|-----|--------|-----|-------------------|----------------------|
|  | Main circuit     |      | Control circuit |     |        |     |                   |                      |
|  | Rated / LD       |      | Min             |     | Max    |     | m <sup>3</sup> /h | ft <sup>3</sup> /min |
| W  | BTU/Hr           | W    | BTU/Hr          | W   | BTU/Hr |     |                   |                      |
| <b>1-phase <math>U_N = 200...240</math> V (200, 208, 220, 230, 240 V)</b>      |                  |      |                 |     |        |     |                   |                      |
| 01x-02A4-2   | 19               | 65   | 6.1             | 21  | 22.7   | 78  | -                 | -                    |
| 01x-04A7-2   | 38               | 130  | 9.5             | 32  | 26.4   | 90  | 24                | 14                   |
| 01x-06A7-2   | 60               | 205  | 9.5             | 32  | 26.4   | 90  | 24                | 14                   |
| 01x-07A5-2   | 62               | 212  | 11              | 36  | 27.5   | 94  | 21                | 12                   |
| 01x-09A8-2   | 83               | 283  | 11              | 36  | 27.5   | 94  | 21                | 12                   |
| <b>3-phase <math>U_N = 200...240</math> V (200, 208, 220, 230, 240 V)</b>      |                  |      |                 |     |        |     |                   |                      |
| 03x-02A6-2   | 19               | 65   | 6.1             | 21  | 23     | 78  | -                 | -                    |
| 03x-03A9-2   | 31               | 106  | 6.1             | 21  | 23     | 78  | -                 | -                    |
| 03x-05A2-2   | 38               | 130  | 9.5             | 32  | 26     | 90  | 24                | 14                   |
| 03x-07A4-2   | 60               | 205  | 9.5             | 32  | 26     | 90  | 24                | 14                   |
| 03x-08A3-2   | 62               | 212  | 9.5             | 32  | 26     | 90  | 21                | 12                   |
| 03x-10A8-2   | 83               | 283  | 11              | 36  | 28     | 94  | 21                | 12                   |
| 03x-14A6-2   | 112              | 383  | 11              | 36  | 28     | 94  | 52                | 31                   |
| 03x-19A4-2   | 152              | 519  | 11              | 36  | 28     | 94  | 52                | 31                   |
| 03x-26A8-2   | 250              | 854  | 17              | 57  | 35     | 120 | 71                | 42                   |
| 03x-34A1-2   | 270              | 922  | 33              | 110 | 58     | 200 | 96                | 57                   |
| 03x-50A8-2   | 430              | 1469 | 33              | 110 | 58     | 200 | 96                | 57                   |
| <b>3-phase <math>U_N = 380...480</math> V (380, 400, 415, 440, 460, 480 V)</b> |                  |      |                 |     |        |     |                   |                      |
| 03x-01A3-4   | 11               | 38   | 6.6             | 23  | 24     | 83  | -                 | -                    |
| 03x-02A1-4   | 16               | 55   | 6.6             | 23  | 24     | 83  | -                 | -                    |
| 03x-02A6-4   | 21               | 72   | 9.8             | 33  | 29     | 98  | 13                | 8                    |
| 03x-03A6-4   | 31               | 106  | 9.8             | 33  | 29     | 98  | 13                | 8                    |
| 03x-04A5-4   | 40               | 137  | 9.8             | 33  | 29     | 98  | 13                | 8                    |
| 03x-06A2-4   | 61               | 208  | 9.8             | 33  | 29     | 98  | 19                | 11                   |
| 03x-08A0-4   | 74               | 253  | 14              | 48  | 33     | 110 | 24                | 14                   |
| 03x-09A7-4   | 94               | 321  | 14              | 48  | 33     | 110 | 24                | 14                   |



| Type                             | Heat dissipation |        |                 |        |     |        | Air flow          |                      |
|----------------------------------|------------------|--------|-----------------|--------|-----|--------|-------------------|----------------------|
|                                  | Main circuit     |        | Control circuit |        |     |        |                   |                      |
|                                  | Rated / LD       |        | Min             |        | Max |        |                   |                      |
| ACS310-<br>x = E/U <sup>1)</sup> | W                | BTU/Hr | W               | BTU/Hr | W   | BTU/Hr | m <sup>3</sup> /h | ft <sup>3</sup> /min |
| 03x-13A8-4                       | 130              | 444    | 12              | 41     | 31  | 110    | 52                | 31                   |
| 03x-17A2-4                       | 173              | 591    | 12              | 41     | 31  | 110    | 52                | 31                   |
| 03x-25A4-4                       | 266              | 908    | 17              | 57     | 35  | 120    | 71                | 42                   |
| 03x-34A1-4                       | 350              | 1195   | 33              | 110    | 58  | 200    | 96                | 57                   |
| 03x-41A8-4                       | 440              | 1503   | 33              | 110    | 58  | 200    | 96                | 57                   |
| 03x-48A4-4                       | 530              | 1810   | 33              | 110    | 58  | 200    | 96                | 57                   |

00578903.xls G

<sup>1)</sup> E = EMC filter connected (metal EMC filter screw installed),  
U = EMC filter disconnected (plastic EMC filter screw installed), U.S parameterization,

## ■ Noise

| Frame size | Noise level |
|------------|-------------|
|            | dBA         |
| R0         | <30         |
| R1         | 50...62     |
| R2         | 50...62     |
| R3         | 50...62     |
| R4         | <62         |

00578903.xls D

## Terminal and lead-through data for the power cables

| Frame size | Max. cable diameter for NEMA 1 |      | U1, V1, W1, U2, V2, W2            |     |                   |        | PE                                |     |                   |        |
|------------|--------------------------------|------|-----------------------------------|-----|-------------------|--------|-----------------------------------|-----|-------------------|--------|
|            | U1, V1, W1, U2, V2, W2         |      | Max. terminal size flexible/rigid |     | Tightening torque |        | Max. clamp size solid or stranded |     | Tightening torque |        |
|            | mm                             | in   | mm <sup>2</sup>                   | AWG | N·m               | lbf·in | mm <sup>2</sup>                   | AWG | N·m               | lbf·in |
| R0         | 16                             | 0.63 | 4.0/6.0                           | 10  | 0.8               | 7      | 25                                | 3   | 1.2               | 11     |
| R1         | 16                             | 0.63 | 4.0/6.0                           | 10  | 0.8               | 7      | 25                                | 3   | 1.2               | 11     |
| R2         | 16                             | 0.63 | 4.0/6.0                           | 10  | 0.8               | 7      | 25                                | 3   | 1.2               | 11     |
| R3         | 29                             | 1.14 | 10.0/16.0                         | 6   | 1.7               | 15     | 25                                | 3   | 1.2               | 11     |
| R4         | 35                             | 1.38 | 25.0/35.0                         | 2   | 2.5               | 22     | 25                                | 3   | 1.2               | 11     |

00578903.xls G

## Terminal and lead-through data for the control cables

| Conductor size    |         |   |         |  |         | Tightening torque |        |
|-------------------|---------|---|---------|--|---------|-------------------|--------|
| Solid or stranded |         | Stranded, with ferrule without plastic sleeve |         | Stranded, with ferrule with plastic sleeve |         |                   |        |
| Min/Max           | Min/Max | Min/Max                                       | Min/Max | Min/Max                                    | Min/Max | N·m               | lbf·in |
| mm <sup>2</sup>   | AWG     | mm <sup>2</sup>                               | AWG     | mm <sup>2</sup>                            | AWG     |                   |        |
| 0.14/1.5          | 26/16   | 0.25/1.5                                      | 23/16   | 0.25/1.5                                   | 23/16   | 0.4               | 3.5    |

## Electric power network specification

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <b>Voltage (<math>U_1</math>)</b> | 200/208/220/230/240 V AC 1-phase for 200 V AC drives<br>200/208/220/230/240 V AC 3-phase for 200 V AC drives<br>380/400/415/440/460/480 V AC 3-phase for 400 V AC drives<br>$\pm 10\%$ variation from converter nominal voltage is allowed as default.                 |
| <b>Short-circuit capacity</b>     | Maximum allowed prospective short-circuit current at the input power connection as defined in IEC 60439-1 is 100 kA. The drive is suitable for use in a circuit capable of delivering not more than 100 kA rms symmetrical amperes at the drive maximum rated voltage. |
| <b>Frequency</b>                  | 50/60 Hz $\pm 5\%$ , maximum rate of change 17%/s  |
| <b>Imbalance</b>                  | Max. $\pm 3\%$ of nominal phase to phase input voltage   |

## Motor connection data

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <b>Motor type</b>  | AC induction motor   |
| <b>Voltage (<math>U_2</math>)</b>                        | 0 to $U_1$ , 3-phase symmetrical, $U_{max}$ at the field weakening point |
| <b>Short-circuit protection (IEC 61800-5-1, UL 508C)</b> | The motor output is short-circuit proof by IEC 61800-5-1 and UL 508C.    |
| <b>Frequency</b>   | 0...500 Hz   |
| <b>Frequency resolution</b>                              | 0.01 Hz  |
| <b>Current</b>   | See section <i>Ratings</i> on page 336.                                  |
| <b>Power limit</b>                                       | $1.5 \cdot P_N$  |
| <b>Field weakening point</b>                             | 10...500 Hz  |
| <b>Switching frequency</b>                               | 4, 8, 12 or 16 kHz   |

**Maximum recommended motor cable length** **Operational functionality and motor cable length**  
The drive is designed to operate with optimum performance with the following maximum motor cable lengths. The motor cable lengths may be extended with output chokes as shown in the table.

| Frame size                                      | Maximum motor cable length |     |
|---|----------------------------|-----|
|   | m                          | ft  |
| <b>Standard drive, without external options</b> |                            |     |
| R0  | 30                         | 100 |
| R1...R4   | 50                         | 165 |
| <b>With external output chokes</b>              |                            |     |
| R0  | 60                         | 195 |
| R1...R4   | 100                        | 330 |

### EMC compatibility and motor cable length

To comply with the European EMC Directive (standard IEC/ EN 61800-3), use the following maximum motor cable lengths for 4 kHz switching frequency.

| All frame sizes                                 | Maximum motor cable length, 4 kHz |                              |
|---|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
|   | m                                 | ft                           |
| <b>With internal EMC filter</b>                 |                                   |                              |
| Second environment (category C3 <sup>1)</sup> ) | 30                                | 100                          |
| First environment (category C2 <sup>1)</sup> )  | -                                 | -                            |
| First environment (category C1 <sup>1)</sup> )  | -                                 | -                            |
| <b>With optional external EMC filter</b>        |                                   |                              |
| Second environment (category C3 <sup>1)</sup> ) | 30 (at least) <sup>2)</sup>       | 100 (at least) <sup>2)</sup> |
| First environment (category C2 <sup>1)</sup> )  | 30 (at least) <sup>2)</sup>       | 100 (at least) <sup>2)</sup> |
| First environment (category C1 <sup>1)</sup> )  | 10 (at least) <sup>2)</sup>       | 30 (at least) <sup>2)</sup>  |

<sup>1)</sup> See the terms in section *Definitions* on page 353.

<sup>2)</sup> Maximum motor cable length is determined by the drive's operational factors. Contact your local ABB representative for the exact maximum lengths when using external EMC filters.

**Note:** The internal EMC filter must be disconnected by removing the EMC screw (see the figure on page 46) while using the low leakage current EMC filter (LRFI-XX).

**Note:** Radiated emissions are according to C2 with and without an external EMC filter.

**Note:** Category C1 with conducted emissions only. Radiated emissions are not compatible when measured with standard emission measurement setup and should be checked or measured on cabinet and machine installations case by case.

**Note:** In multimotor systems, the calculated sum of all motor cable lengths must not exceed the maximum motor cable length given in the table.

**Note:** The external EMC filter must be installed onto a metal plate to ensure efficient cooling.

## Control connection data

|                                       |  |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>Analog inputs X1A: 2 and 5</b>     | Voltage signal, unipolar               | 0 (2)...10 V, $R_{in} > 312 \text{ kohm}$        |
|                                       | bipolar                                | -10...10 V, $R_{in} > 312 \text{ kohm}$          |
|                                       | Current signal, unipolar               | 0 (4)...20 mA, $R_{in} = 100 \text{ ohm}$        |
|                                       | bipolar                                | -20...20 mA, $R_{in} = 100 \text{ ohm}$          |
|                                       | Potentiometer reference value (X1A: 4) | 10 V $\pm$ 1%, max. 10 mA, $R < 10 \text{ kohm}$ |
|                                       | Resolution                             | 0.1%   |
|                                       | Accuracy                               | $\pm$ 1%   |
| <b>Analog output X1A: 7</b>           |  | 0 (4)...20 mA, load $< 500 \text{ ohm}$          |
| <b>Auxiliary voltage X1A: 9</b>       |  | 24 V DC $\pm$ 10%, max. 200 mA                   |
| <b>Digital inputs X1A: 12...16</b>    | Voltage                                | 12...24 V DC with internal or external supply    |
| <b>(frequency input X1A: 16)</b>      | Type                                   | PNP and NPN                                      |
|                                       | Frequency input                        | Pulse train 0...16 kHz (X1A: 16 only)            |
|                                       | Input impedance                        | 2.4 kohm   |
| <b>Relay output X1B: 17...19</b>      | Type                                   | NO + NC  |
|                                       | Max. switching voltage                 | 250 V AC / 30 V DC                               |
|                                       | Max. switching current                 | 0.5 A / 30 V DC; 5 A / 230 V AC                  |
|                                       | Max. continuous current                | 2 A rms  |
| <b>Digital output X1B: 20...21</b>    | Type                                   | Transistor output PNP                            |
|                                       | Max. switching voltage                 | 30 V DC  |
|                                       | Max. switching current                 | 100 mA / 30 V DC, short-circuit protected        |
|                                       | Frequency                              | 10 Hz ... 16 kHz                                 |
|                                       | Resolution                             | 1 Hz   |
|                                       | Accuracy                               | 0.2%   |
| <b>EIA-485 interface X1C: 23...26</b> | Cable                                  | Shielded twisted pair, impedance 100...150 ohm   |
|                                       | Termination                            | Daisy-chained bus, without drop lines            |
|                                       | Isolation                              | Bus interface isolated from the drive            |
|                                       | Transfer rate                          | 1.2...76.8 kbit/s                                |
|                                       | Communication type                     | Serial, asynchronous, half duplex                |
|                                       | Protocol                               | Modbus   |

## Clearance and creepage distance

The clearance and creepage distance between I/O connections and mains circuit is 5.5 mm, which guarantees safety insulation of overvoltage category 3 (IEC 60664-1).

## Efficiency

Approximately 95 to 98% at nominal power level, depending on the drive size and options

## Degrees of protection

IP20 (cabinet installation) / UL open: Standard enclosure. The drive must be installed in a cabinet to fulfil the requirements for shielding from contact.

IP20 / NEMA 1: Achieved with an option kit including a hood and a connection box.

## Ambient conditions

Environmental limits for the drive are given below. The drive is to be used in a heated indoor controlled environment.

|  | <b>Operation</b><br>installed for<br>stationary use   | <b>Storage</b><br>in the protective<br>package                                      | <b>Transportation</b><br>in the protective<br>package                               |
|--|---|---|---|
| <b>Installation site altitude</b>  | 0 to 2000 m (6600 ft) above sea level (above 1000 m [3300 ft], see section <a href="#">Derating</a> on page 338)  | -   | -   |
| <b>Air temperature</b>   | -10 to +50 °C (14 to 122 °F). No frost allowed. See section <a href="#">Derating</a> on page 338.   | -40 to +70 °C (-40 to +158 °F)  | -40 to +70 °C (-40 to +158 °F)  |
| <b>Relative humidity</b>   | 0 to 95%  | Max. 95%  | Max. 95%  |
|  | No condensation allowed. Maximum allowed relative humidity is 60% in the presence of corrosive gases.   |   |   |
| <b>Contamination levels</b><br>(IEC 60721-3-3,<br>IEC 60721-3-2,<br>IEC 60721-3-1) | No conductive dust allowed.   |   |   |
|  | According to IEC 60721-3-3, chemical gases: Class 3C2<br>solid particles: Class 3S2.<br><b>Note:</b> The drive must be installed in clean air according to enclosure classification.<br><b>Note:</b> Cooling air must be clean, free from corrosive materials and electrically conductive dust. | According to IEC 60721-3-1, chemical gases: Class 1C2<br>solid particles: Class 1S2 | According to IEC 60721-3-2, chemical gases: Class 2C2<br>solid particles: Class 2S2 |
| <b>Sinusoidal vibration</b><br>(IEC 60721-3-3)                                     | Tested according to IEC 60721-3-3, mechanical conditions: Class 3M4<br>2...9 Hz, 3.0 mm (0.12 in)<br>9...200 Hz, 10 m/s <sup>2</sup> (33 ft/s <sup>2</sup> )  | -   | -   |
| <b>Shock</b><br>(IEC 60068-2-27,<br>ISTA 1A)                                       | Not allowed during operation.   | According to ISTA 1A. Max. 100 m/s <sup>2</sup> (330 ft/s <sup>2</sup> ), 11 ms.    | According to ISTA 1A. Max. 100 m/s <sup>2</sup> (330 ft/s <sup>2</sup> ), 11 ms.    |
| <b>Free fall</b>   | Not allowed   | 76 cm (30 in)   | 76 cm (30 in)   |

## Materials

---

|                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| <b>Drive enclosure</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• PC/ABS 2 mm, PC+10%GF 2.5...3 mm and PA66+25%GF 1.5 mm, all in color NCS 1502-Y (RAL 9002 / PMS 420 C)</li><li>• hot-dip zinc coated steel sheet 1.5 mm, thickness of coating 20 micrometers</li><li>• extruded aluminium AISi.</li></ul>   |
| <b>Package</b>         | Corrugated cardboard.   |
| <b>Disposal</b>        | <p>The drive contains raw materials that should be recycled to preserve energy and natural resources. The package materials are environmentally compatible and recyclable. All metal parts can be recycled. The plastic parts can either be recycled or burned under controlled circumstances, according to local regulations. Most recyclable parts are marked with recycling marks.</p> <p>If recycling is not feasible, all parts excluding electrolytic capacitors and printed circuit boards can be landfilled. The DC capacitors contain electrolyte, which is classified as hazardous waste within the EU. They must be removed and handled according to local regulations.</p> <p>For further information on environmental aspects and more detailed recycling instructions, please contact your local ABB distributor.</p> |

## Applicable standards

---

|                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
|                                 | The drive complies with the following standards:  |
| • <b>IEC/EN 61800-5-1: 2003</b> | Electrical, thermal and functional safety requirements for adjustable frequency a.c. power drives   |
| • <b>IEC/EN 60204-1: 2006</b>   | Safety of machinery. Electrical equipment of machines. Part 1: General requirements. <i>Provisions for compliance:</i> The final assembler of the machine is responsible for installing<br>- an emergency-stop device<br>- a supply disconnecting device. |
| • <b>IEC/EN 61800-3: 2004</b>   | Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems. Part 3: EMC requirements and specific test methods   |
| • <b>UL 508C</b>                | UL Standard for Safety, Power Conversion Equipment, third edition   |

## CE marking

The CE mark is attached to the drive to verify that the drive follows the provisions of the European Low Voltage and EMC Directives.

### ■ Compliance with the European EMC Directive

The EMC Directive defines the requirements for immunity and emissions of electrical equipment used within the European Union. The EMC product standard (EN 61800-3:2004) covers requirements stated for drives. See section [Compliance with EN 61800-3:2004](#) on page 353.

## Compliance with EN 61800-3:2004

### ■ Definitions

EMC stands for **E**lectromagnetic **C**ompatibility. It is the ability of electrical/electronic equipment to operate without problems within an electromagnetic environment. Likewise, the equipment must not disturb or interfere with any other product or system within its locality.

*First environment* includes establishments connected to a low-voltage network which supplies buildings used for domestic purposes.

*Second environment* includes establishments connected to a network not directly supplying domestic premises.

*Drive of category C1:* drive of rated voltage less than 1000 V, intended for use in the first environment.

*Drive of category C2:* drive of rated voltage less than 1000 V and intended to be installed and commissioned only by a professional when used in the first environment.

**Note:** A professional is a person or organization having necessary skills in installing and/or commissioning power drive systems, including their EMC aspects.

Category C2 has the same EMC emission limits as the earlier class first environment restricted distribution. EMC standard IEC/EN 61800-3 does not any more restrict the distribution of the drive, but the using, installation and commissioning are defined.

*Drive of category C3:* drive of rated voltage less than 1000 V, intended for use in the second environment and not intended for use in the first environment.

Category C3 has the same EMC emission limits as the earlier class second environment unrestricted distribution.

### ■ Category C1

The emission limits are complied with the following provisions:

---



1. The optional EMC filter is selected according to the ABB documentation and installed as specified in the EMC filter manual.
2. The motor and control cables are selected as specified in this manual.
3. The drive is installed according to the instructions given in this manual.
4. For the maximum motor cable length with 4 kHz switching frequency, see page [349](#).

**WARNING!** In a domestic environment, this product may cause radio inference, in which case supplementary mitigation measures may be required.

### ■ Category C2

The emission limits are complied with the following provisions:

1. The optional EMC filter is selected according to the ABB documentation and installed as specified in the EMC filter manual.
2. The motor and control cables are selected as specified in this manual.
3. The drive is installed according to the instructions given in this manual.
4. For the maximum motor cable length with 4 kHz switching frequency, see page [349](#).

**WARNING!** In a domestic environment, this product may cause radio inference, in which case supplementary mitigation measures may be required.

### ■ Category C3

The immunity performance of the drive complies with the demands of IEC/EN 61800-3, second environment (see page [353](#) for IEC/EN 61800-3 definitions).

The emission limits are complied with the following provisions:

1. The internal EMC filter is connected (the metal screw at EMC is in place) or the optional EMC filter is installed.
2. The motor and control cables are selected as specified in this manual.
3. The drive is installed according to the instructions given in this manual.
4. With the internal EMC filter: motor cable length 30 m (100 ft) with 4 kHz switching frequency. For the maximum motor cable length with an optional external EMC filter, see page [349](#).

**WARNING!** A drive of category C3 is not intended to be used on a low-voltage public network which supplies domestic premises. Radio frequency interference is expected if the drive is used on such a network.

**Note:** It is not allowed to install a drive with the internal EMC filter connected on IT (ungrounded) systems. The supply network becomes connected to ground potential through the EMC filter capacitors which may cause danger or damage the drive.

---

**Note:** It is not allowed to install a drive with the internal EMC filter connected on a corner-grounded TN system as this would damage the drive.

## UL marking

See the type designation label for the valid markings of your drive.

The UL mark is attached to the drive to verify that it meets UL requirements.

### ■ UL checklist

**Input power connection** – See section [Electric power network specification](#) on page 348.

**Disconnecting device (disconnecting means)** – See [Selecting the supply disconnecting device \(disconnecting means\)](#) on page 35.

**Ambient conditions** – The drives are to be used in a heated indoor controlled environment. See section [Ambient conditions](#) on page 351 for specific limits.

**Input cable fuses** – For installation in the United States, branch circuit protection must be provided in accordance with the National Electrical Code (NEC) and any applicable local codes. To fulfil this requirement, use the UL classified fuses given in section [Fuses and alternate short-circuit protection](#) on page 340.

For installation in Canada, branch circuit protection must be provided in accordance with Canadian Electrical Code and any applicable provincial codes. To fulfil this requirement, use the UL classified fuses given in section [Fuses and alternate short-circuit protection](#) on page 340.

**Power cable selection** – See section [Selecting the power cables](#) on page 36.

**Power cable connections** – For the connection diagram and tightening torques, see section [Connecting the power cables](#) on page 47.

**Overload protection** – The drive provides overload protection in accordance with the National Electrical Code (US).

## C-Tick marking

See the type designation label for the valid markings of your drive.

C-Tick marking is required in Australia and New Zealand. A C-Tick mark is attached to the drive to verify compliance with the relevant standard (IEC 61800-3:2004 – Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems – Part 3: EMC product standard including specific test methods), mandated by the Trans-Tasman Electromagnetic Compatibility Scheme.

The Trans-Tasman Electromagnetic Compatibility Scheme (EMCS) was introduced by the Australian Communication Authority (ACA) and the Radio Spectrum Management Group (RSM) of the New Zealand Ministry of Economic Development

(NZMED) in November 2001. The aim of the scheme is to protect the radio frequency spectrum by introducing technical limits for emission from electrical/electronic products.

For fulfilling the requirements of the standard, see section [Compliance with EN 61800-3:2004](#) on page 353.

## RoHS marking

The RoHS mark is attached to the drive to verify that drive follows the provisions of the European RoHS Directive. RoHS = the restriction of the use of certain hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment.

## Declaration of incorporation



### Declaration of Incorporation

(According to Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC)

Manufacturer: ABB Oy  
Address: P.O Box 184, FIN-00381 Helsinki, Finland. Street address: Hiomotie 13,

herewith declare under our sole responsibility that the frequency converters with type markings:

ACS310-...

are intended to be incorporated into machinery or to be assembled with other machinery to constitute machinery covered by Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC and relevant essential health and safety requirements of the Directive and its Annex I have been complied with.

The technical documentation is compiled in accordance with part B of Annex VII, the assembly instructions are prepared according Annex VI and the following harmonised European standard has been applied:

EN 60204-1:2006 + A1:2009  
*Safety of machinery - Electrical equipment of machines- Part 1: general requirements*

and that the following technical standard have been used:

EN 60529 (1991 + corrigendum May 1993 + amendment A1:2000)  
*Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP codes)*

The person authorized to compile the technical documentation:

Name: Jukka Päri  
Address: P.O Box 184, FIN-00381 Helsinki

The products referred in this Declaration of Incorporation are in conformity with Low voltage directive 2006/95/EC and EMC directive 2004/108/EC. The Declaration of Conformity according to these directives is available from the manufacturer.

ABB Oy furthermore declares that it is not allowed to put the equipment into service until the machinery into which it is to be incorporated or of which it is to be a component has been found and declared to be in conformity with the provisions of the Directive 2006/42/EC and with national implementing legislation, i.e. as a whole, including the equipment referred to in this Declaration.

ABB Oy gives an undertaking to the national authorities to transmit, in response to a reasoned request by the national authorities, relevant information on the partly completed machinery. The method of transmission can be either electrical or paper format and it shall be agreed with the national authority when the information is asked. This transmission of information shall be without prejudice to the intellectual property rights of the manufacturer.

Helsinki, 29.12.2009



Panu Virolainen

Vice President  
ABB Oy, BAU Drives



# Dimension drawings

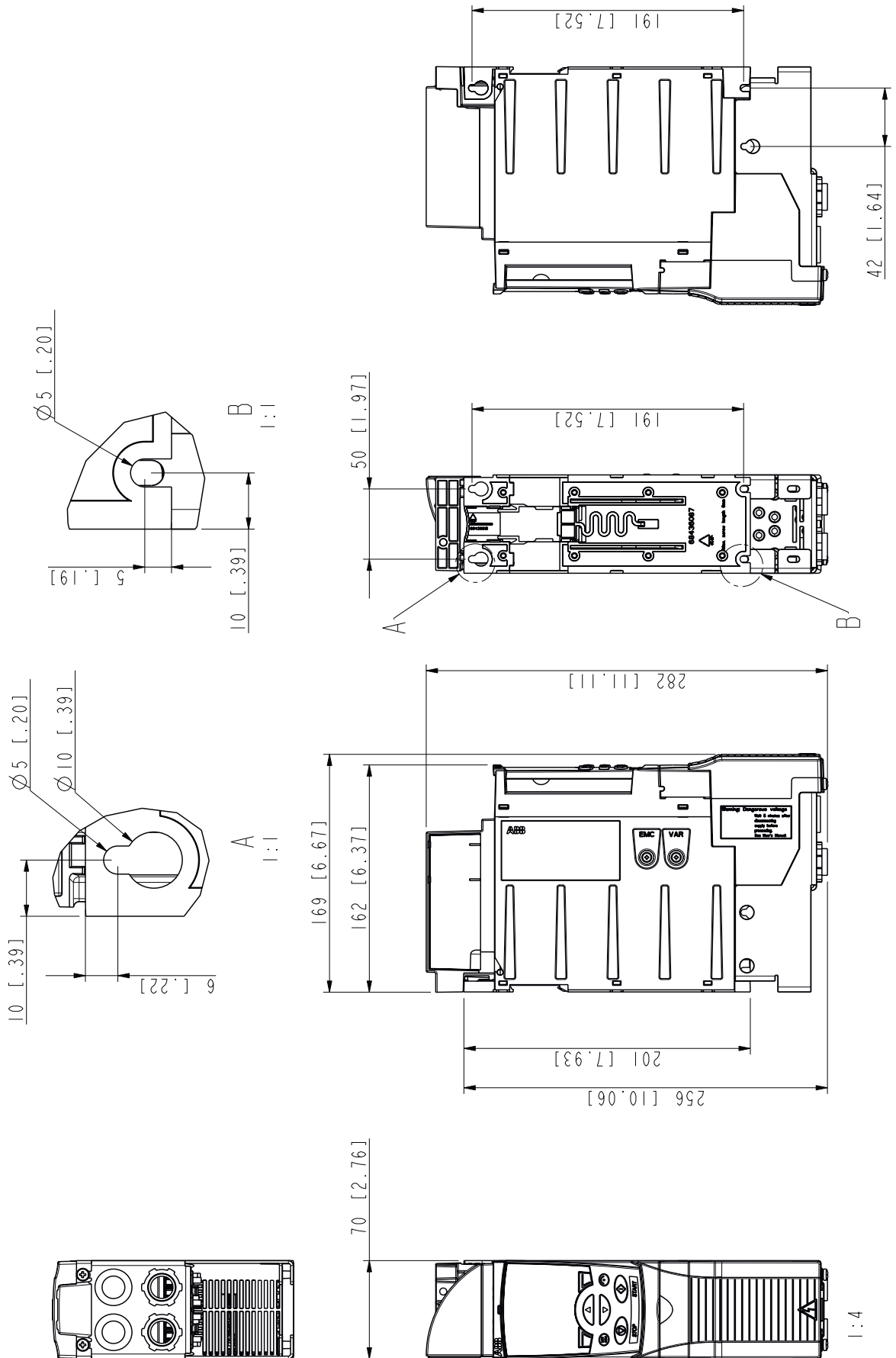
---

Dimension drawings of the ACS310 are shown below. The dimensions are given in millimeters and [inches].



# Frame sizes R0 and R1, IP20 / NEMA 1

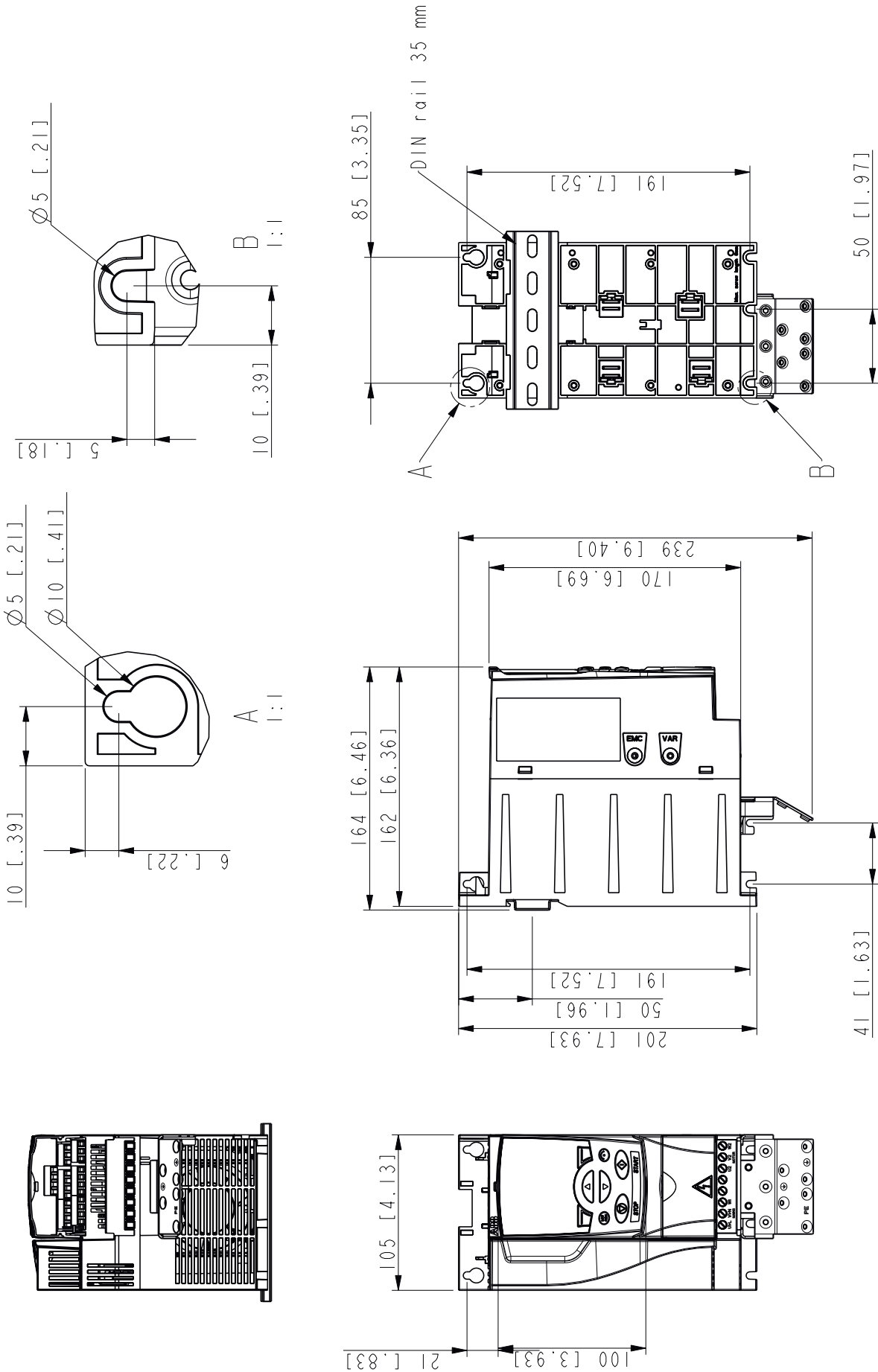
R1 and R0 are identical except for the fan at the top of R1.



Frame sizes R0 and R1, IP20 / NEMA 1

3AUJA0000051086-A

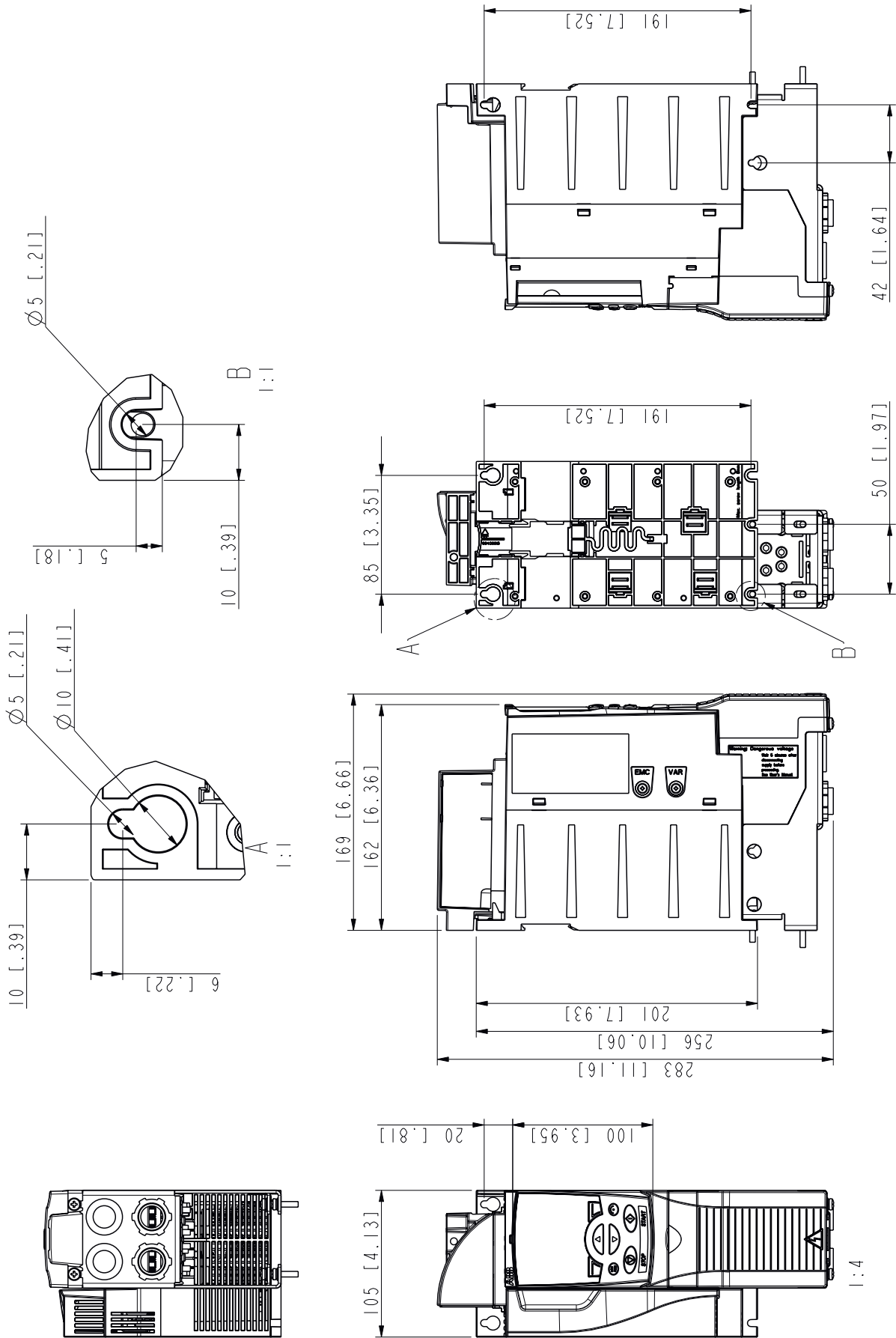
# Frame size R2, IP20 (cabinet installation) / UL open



Frame size R2, IP20 (cabinet installation) / UL open

3AU0000051090-A

# Frame size R2, NEMA 1

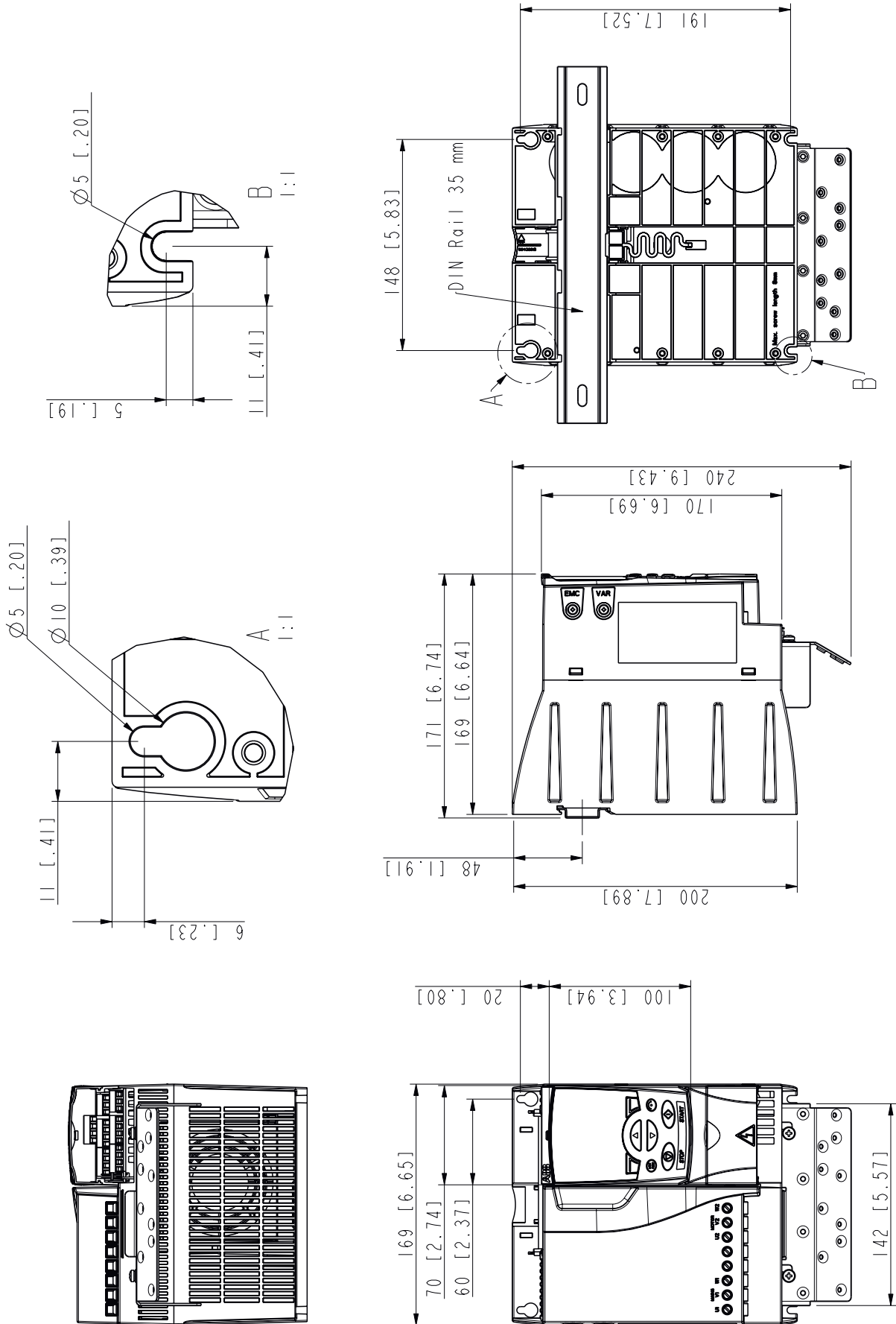


Frame size R2, IP20 / NEMA 1

3AJA0000051097-A



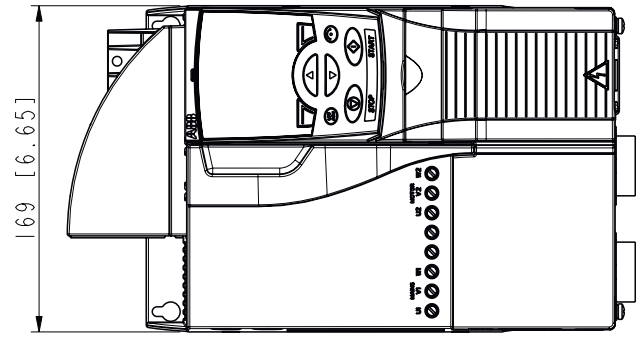
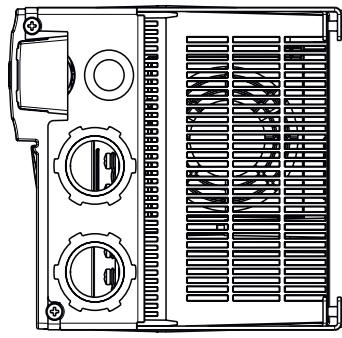
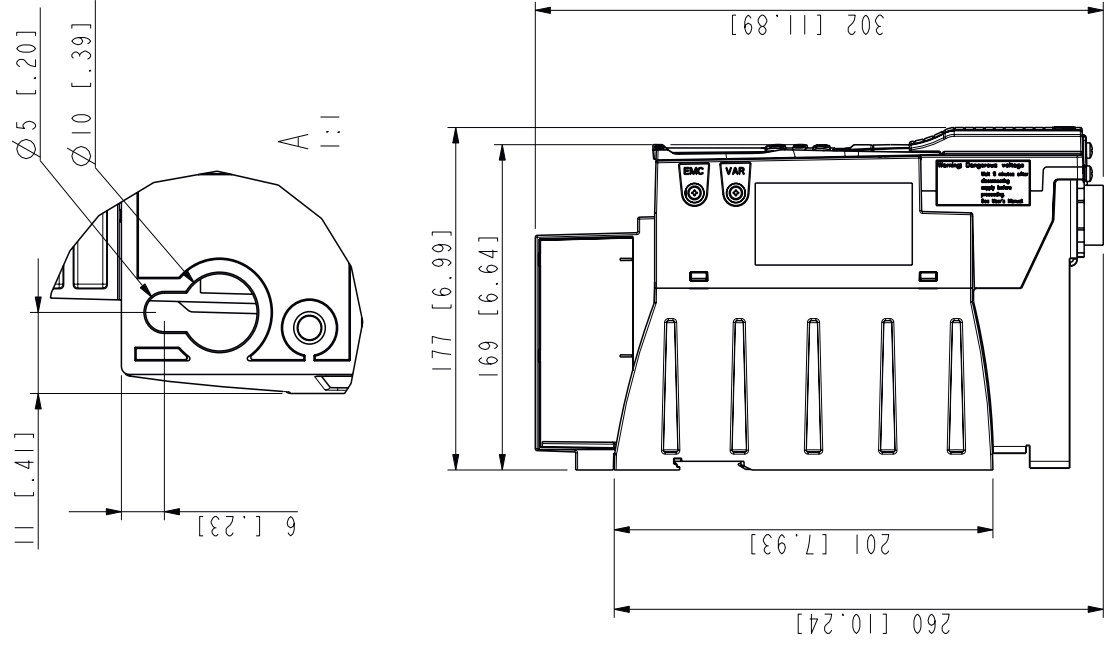
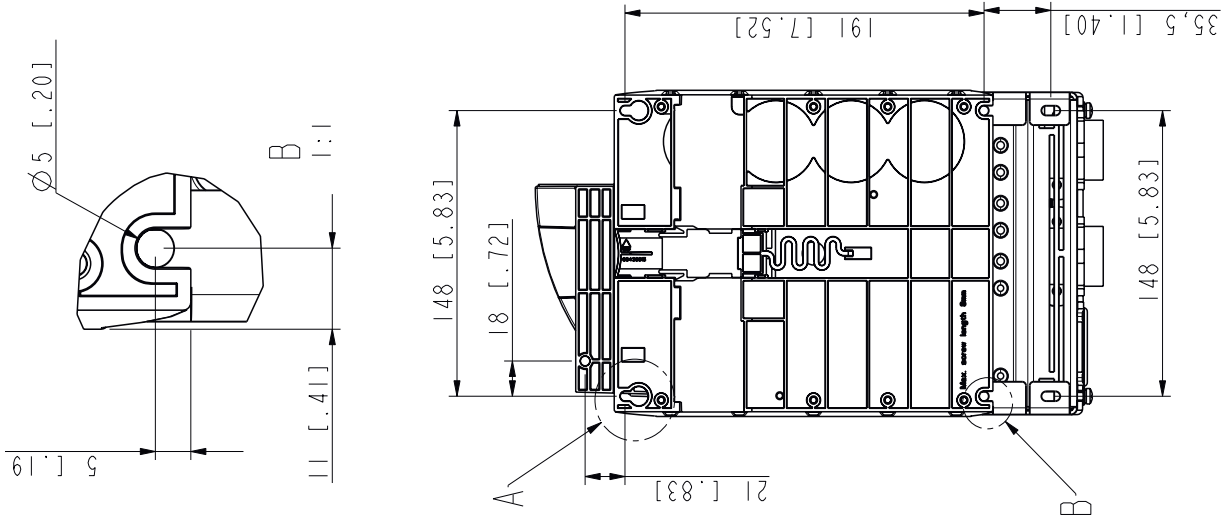
# Frame size R3, IP20 (cabinet installation) / UL open



Frame size R3, IP20 (cabinet installation) / UL open

3AU0000051109-A

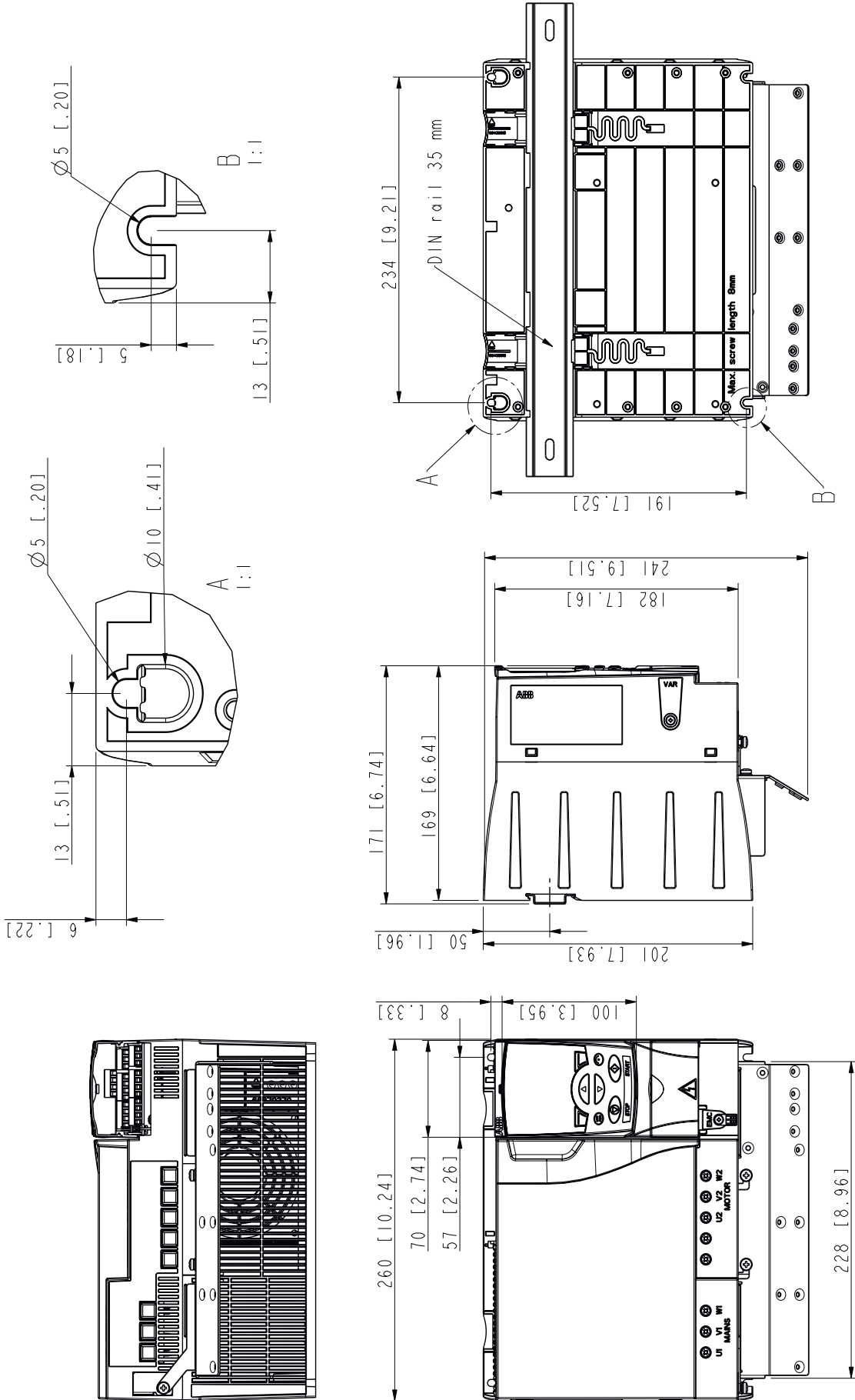
# Frame size R3, NEMA 1



Frame size R3, IP20 / NEMA 1

3AJA0000051118-A

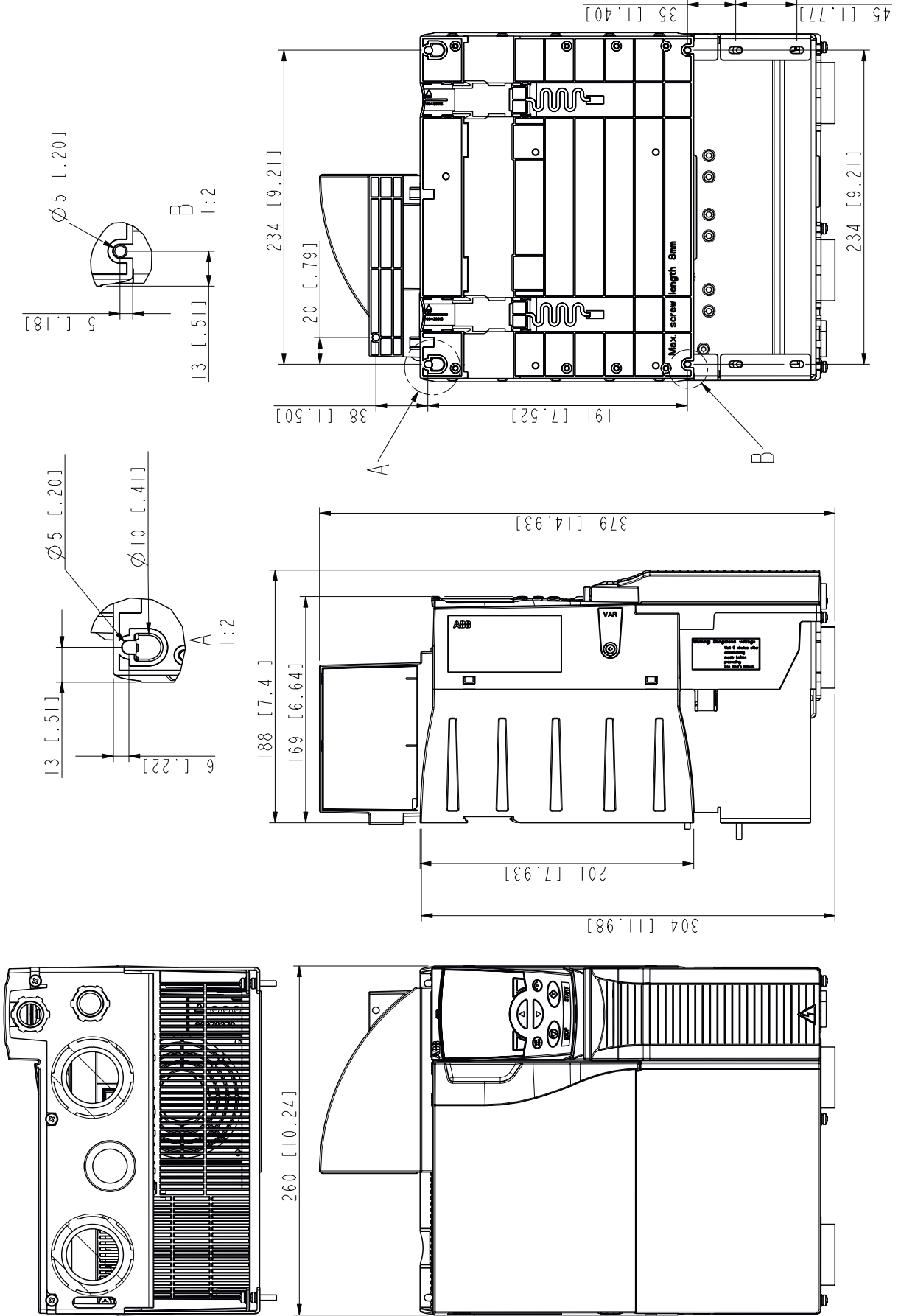
# Frame size R4, IP20 (cabinet installation) / UL open



Frame size R4, IP20 (cabinet installation) / UL open

3AU0000051130-A

# Frame size R4, NEMA 1



Frame size R4, IP20 / NEMA 1

3AUJ0000051133-A

www.nicsanat.com

021-87700210

NIC SANAT

نیک صنعت



# INDEX

---

## Numerics

- 0xxxx register
  - EFB mapping 299
- 3-wire macro 105
- 4xxxx register
  - EFB mapping 299

## A

- ABB standard macro 104
- abbreviations 21
- ACC/DEC RAMP SHPE 206
- actual values
  - scaling, EFB comm 297
- AI MIN FUNCTION 212
- alternate macro 106
- analog output
  - parameter group 147
- APPL SW VERSION 222
- applicability 19
- assistant 115
- assistant control panel 67, 80
- audience 19
- autochange
  - overview 273
  - starting order counter 274
- automatic reset 137
  - see reset, automatic

## B

- backing up parameters (Assistant panel) 97
- basic control panel 67, 69
- bypass connection 42

## C

- clamping plates 34
- comm (EFB)
  - actual value scaling 297
  - analog output control, activate 291
  - control word 307
  - diagnostics 298
  - exception codes 301
  - fault, no master station on line 327
  - fault, swapped wires 327
  - input ref. sel., activate 291
  - misc. drive control, activate 297
  - PID control setpoint source, activate 291
  - reference scaling, ABB drives profile 296
  - relay output control, activate 297
  - set-up 289
  - state diagram 306
- comm (FBA)
  - analog output control, activate 291
  - configuration 290
  - relay output control, activate 291
- connection procedure 48
- contrast, control panel 87
- control panel 332
  - contrast 87
  - display contrast 87
- control panel (Assistant)

parameter backup mode 97  
control panel (Basic)  
controls overview 70  
CONTROL SW VERSION 222  
control word  
comm (EFB), description 307  
controls overview (Basic panel) 70

## **D**

declaration of incorporation 356  
diagnostics  
EFB comm 298  
DIN rail installation 33  
duty/assist cycle 141

## **E**

EIA-485 54  
embedded fieldbus 287, 327  
EU directives 36  
exception codes, EFB modbus 301  
External control 177  
external control 120  
EXTERNAL FAULT 213  
EXTERNAL FAULT 134

## **F**

Fault History 312  
Fault reset 193  
Firmware version 222  
frame size 21



## H

hand/auto macro 108

## I

installation 32

installation checklist 55

insulation 45

IR COMPENSATION 208, 209

## L

Living zero 212

local control 119

## M

macro 101

Maintenance

    Capacitors 331

    Fan 330

maintenance intervals 329

mapping

    EFB modbus 301

modbus

    EFB coils 299

    EFB holding registers 299

    EFB mapping summary 301

    EFB supported features 298

    EFB technical data 298

Modbus mapping 298

Motor overload protection 238, 248, 249

motor potentiometer macro 107

motor temperature

    measure, parameter group 147

## O

operation principle 23  
overview 24  
OVERVOLTAGE CTRL 199

## P

PANEL LOSS 213  
parameter  
    restore (Assistant panel) 97  
PARAMETER LOCK 193  
parameter lock 138  
PFC control macro 110  
PID  
    process sets, parameter groups 141  
    setpoint source, EFB comm activate 291  
PID control macro 109  
PID controller  
    basic set-up 141  
pipe fill 160  
power cables 36  
power connections 25  
power limit 137  
power loss ride-through 129  
process PID sets, parameter groups 141  
Program version 222

## R

ratings 336  
reference scaling  
    EFB, ABB drives profile 296  
required tools 30  
reset, automatic

parameter group  
residual current devices 42  
RS-232 54

## **S**

safety 15, 311  
scaling  
    actual values, EFB comm 297  
    reference (EFB, ABB drives profile) 296  
speed, constant  
    parameter group 147  
SPFC control macro 111  
standards 352  
START FUNCTION 200  
starting order counter 274  
Starting the drive 177  
start-up 57  
state diagram  
    comm (EFB) 306  
STOP FUNCTION 167, 201  
Stopping the drive 177

## **T**

terms 21  
TEST DATE 222  
thermal overload protection 41  
timer functions  
    parameter group 147  
type designation 26, 27

## **U**

UNDERVOLTAGE CTRL 199



unpacking 31  
US requirements 38  
USER MACRO IO CHG 194  
user macros 112

## **V**

Version 222

## **W**

warnings  
    use of warnings 15

# Further information

---

## Product and service inquiries

Address any inquiries about the product to your local ABB representative, quoting the type designation and serial number of the unit in question. A listing of ABB sales, support and service contacts can be found by navigating to [www.abb.com/searchchannels](http://www.abb.com/searchchannels).

## Product training

For information on ABB product training, navigate to [new.abb.com/service/training](http://new.abb.com/service/training).

## Providing feedback on ABB Drives manuals

Your comments on our manuals are welcome. Navigate to [new.abb.com/drives/manuals-feedback-form](http://new.abb.com/drives/manuals-feedback-form).

## Document library on the Internet

You can find manuals and other product documents in PDF format on the Internet at [www.abb.com/drives/documents](http://www.abb.com/drives/documents).

[www.abb.com/drives](http://www.abb.com/drives)  
[www.abb.com/drivespartners](http://www.abb.com/drivespartners)

3AUA0000044201 Rev D (EN) 2016-01-11

